



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



## Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

## Linee guide per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

## Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>



PROPERTY OF  
*University of  
Michigan  
Libraries*

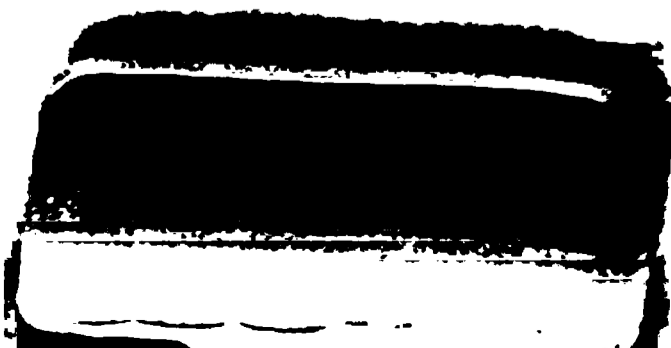
1817



---

ARTES SCIENTIA VERITAS

---













GAIVS IVLIVS CAESAR.

From the marble bust in the British Museum.

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

C. IVLI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

With Introduction, Notes, Appendix and Vocabulary

BY  
HARRY F. TOWLE  
AND  
PAUL R. JENKS  
BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN



UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

NEW YORK

BOSTON

NEW ORLEANS

1903

177  
- 2 -  
T

COPYRIGHT, 1908, BY  
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

••• 2615

## PREFACE

THE second year of the Latin course, in which Caesar's Gallic War is usually read, is confessedly the crucial period in the pupil's career. The work of the first year is devoted principally to learning the forms and acquiring as large a vocabulary as possible. But little attention is paid to syntax, and the reading material is carefully selected to suit the stage of progress of the learner. In the second year, on the other hand, not only must he review his forms, and enlarge his knowledge of syntax, but he must make his first acquaintance with a world-renowned classic, written for mature minds and of all grades of difficulty. To meet the needs of pupils at this period in their course this edition has been prepared, and the editors have endeavored to embody in it the results of many years experience in the class room.

A large proportion of any school commentary on the Gallic War must be devoted to the explanation of syntactical difficulties. The usual practice is to refer for detailed treatment of any construction to some grammar in common use. This is open to two objections. The first and most important is that the grammar is of secondary importance to most pupils. Their principal attention is given to the translation of the text, and every teacher knows how difficult it is to get them to follow up the references given in the notes. The second difficulty is that the most of the class are as yet unable to make discriminating use of the comprehensive treatment found in the grammar, so that a confusion frequently results. To meet

these difficulties a complete treatise on the Syntax of the Gallic War has been inserted in this edition in the shape of an appendix to the commentary. Here every construction found in the text is explained in the simplest manner, and illustrated by examples, all of which are taken from the text, with references to the passages where they occur. Many hints as to differences between Latin and English idiom are also given, so that this Appendix is an important adjunct to the commentary in every way. For further study, references to the standard grammars are added under every heading.

In the conviction that the student should be encouraged to work out things for himself, but little assistance in the way of translation is provided. Instead, suggestive analyses of the thought have been inserted, with sufficient references to the Appendix, when the construction seems to demand it, to make the meaning of the author clear. The editors also believe that too much attention is usually paid in the early chapters to Indirect Discourse, and that it can be readily handled in translation without changing it to the direct form; they have, however, provided the direct form of several chapters in the notes, and those who prefer to make an exhaustive study of it will find it fully discussed in the Appendix, with a careful comparison of the rules for Indirect Discourse in English.

In illustrating the subject matter of the narrative the constant aim of the editors has been to interest and stimulate the pupil, but not to overload the commentary with unimportant details.

Much of the material often found in the notes is given in the Vocabulary. Here, too, the student is assisted to choose the right meaning of a word by references to its occurrence in the text, and phrases and idiom are explained, and, when necessary, translated.

The Introduction contains a brief discussion of Caesar's career and a sketch of the conditions of Roman society before his rise to power. The customary information as to the military system of the Romans is also added.

The Sixth and Seventh books are edited with footnotes for sight reading.

The text is based upon the recent editions of Meusel (Berlin, 1894) and Du Pontet (Oxford, 1900).

The thanks of the editors are due to Professor Lodge, who has read all the proofs and made many helpful suggestions, and to Miss Mary A. Cogswell, of Wellesley College, for material assistance in the preparation of the Vocabulary.

HARRY F. TOWLE.

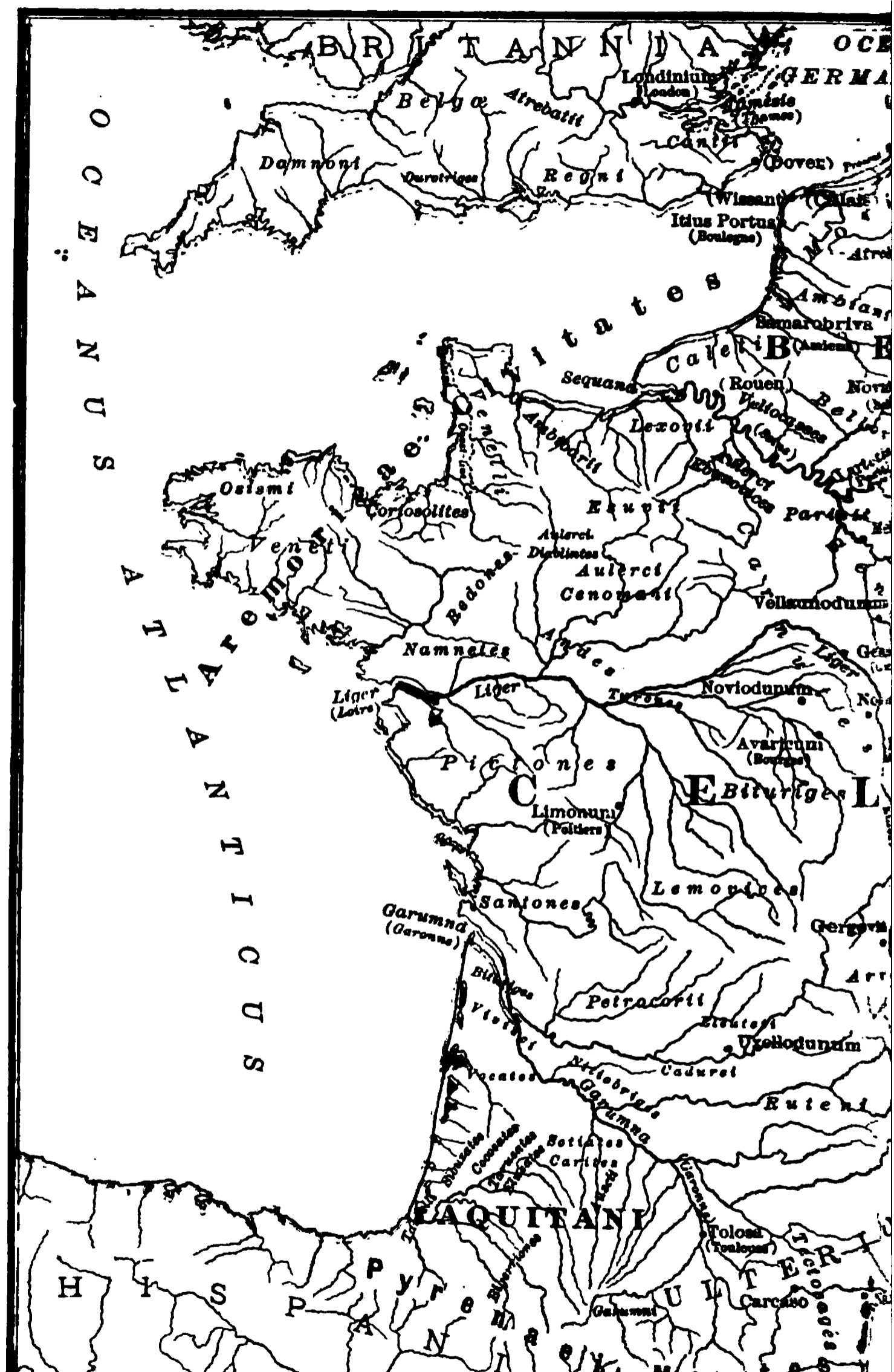
PAUL R. JENKS.

BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL,  
BROOKLYN, *May* 15, 1903.

## MAPS AND CAMPAIGN PLANS

Map of Gaul . . . . .	<i>Facing page</i>	vii
Campaign of 58 B.C. . . . .	"	1
Map of Helvetia . . . . .	"	16
Battle with Ariovistus . . . . .	"	34
Campaign of 57 B.C. . . . .	"	38
Battle on the Aisne . . . . .	"	43
Battle with the Nervii . . . . .	"	48
Siege of Aduatuca . . . . .	"	54
Campaign of 56 B.C. . . . .	"	58
Campaign of 55-54 B.C. . . . .	"	76
Campaign of 54 B.C. . . . .	"	98
Campaign of 52 B.C. . . . .	"	163
Siege of Avaricum . . . . .	"	176
Siege of Gergovia . . . . .	"	184
Expedition of Labienus . . . . .	"	199
Victory over Vercingetorix . . . . .	"	205
Siege of Alesia . . . . .	"	208





# MAP OF GAUL

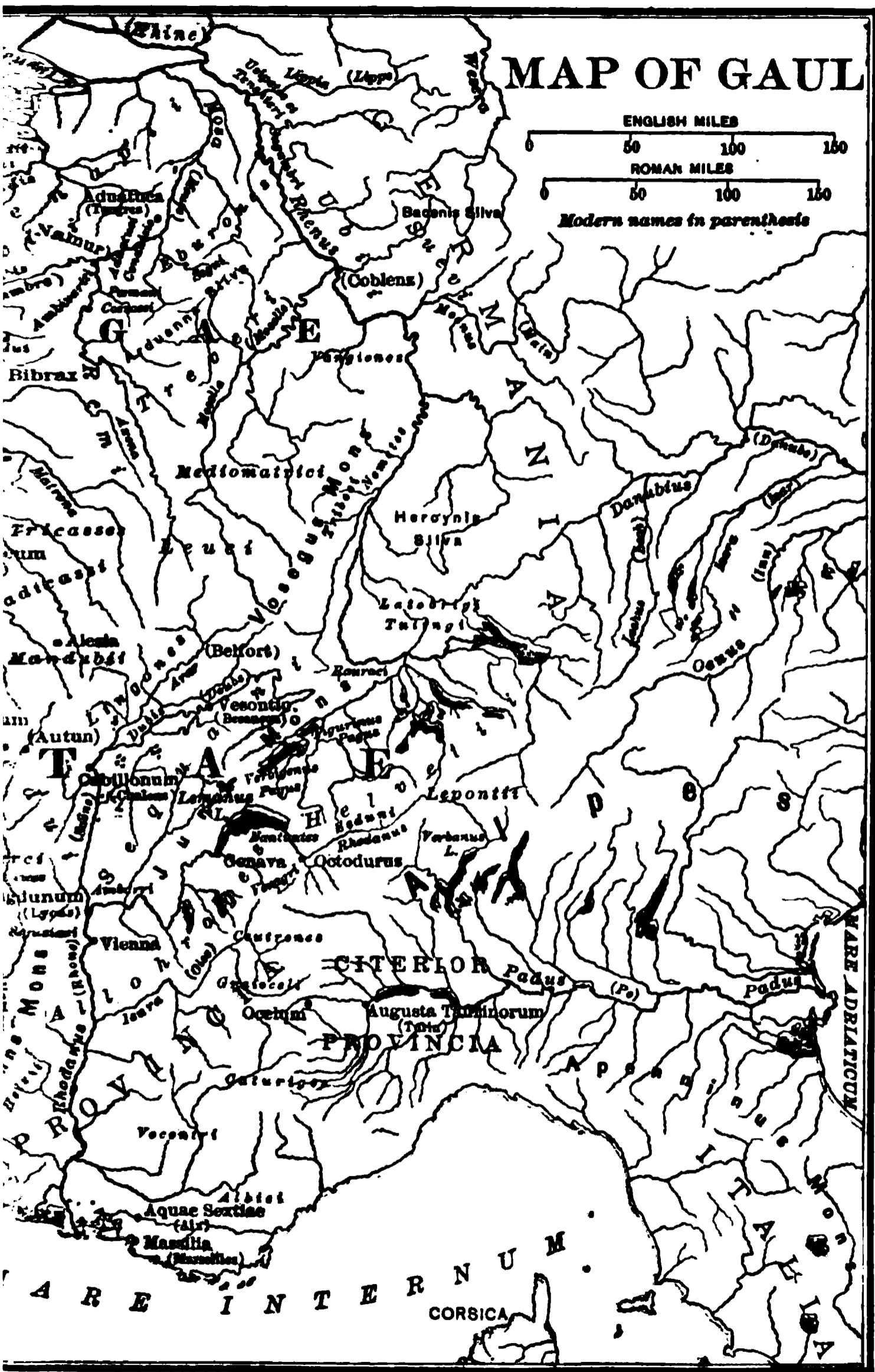
ENGLISH MILES

0 50 100 150

ROMAN MILES

0 50 100 150

Modern names in parenthesis





## INTRODUCTION

BEFORE entering upon the study of the literary work of Caesar it is well for the student to acquire some knowledge of the man and the times in which he lived. Too often is the reader of the Gallic War left under the impression that the fame of Caesar rests mainly on his having written a history of his campaigns in foreign lands, a book which has made young people more or less miserable, however it may have commanded the admiration of scholars. The character and achievements of this man are worthy of study quite apart from his career in Gaul.

As a writer, it is true, he will be famous to the end of time; but as an orator he was also conspicuous in an age of orators; as a successful military leader he has no superior; as a statesman neither ancient nor modern times have furnished his equal; and as an example of success due to a fixed purpose in life, prosecuted with an unyielding will and with restless energy, he has left a name that dominates history.

### THE ROMAN COMMONWEALTH.

During the four hundred years which elapsed from the expulsion of the kings to the birth of Caesar, the Roman Commonwealth underwent many changes in its government, in its moral and social life, and in the extent of its dominion.

**The Roman Government.**—At the beginning, the offices of the state were restricted to the aristocracy or patricians alone, while the plebeians, or common people, had almost no voice; hence arose political strife; the plebeians striving con-

tinually to improve their political status, the patricians striving as pertinaciously to retain their privileges unimpaired. To the determined assaults of the plebeians, however, the patricians gradually yielded, and one office after another was opened to plebeian candidacy until, finally, in 367 B.C. the consulship was brought within the grasp of the humblest citizen in the state. From that time, so far as appearances and law went, the Roman Commonwealth was a democracy, though not of the modern pattern.

**The Roman Empire.**—The city of Rome was situated in the midst of a fertile valley, in a location commanding the surrounding country, and it was thus brought into conflict with adjoining peoples at the very beginning of its life. In the course of years, however, by an uninterrupted series of wars, the dominion of the city gradually extended, and first one section of Italy and then another was brought under its influence, until in 275 B.C. the Roman government extended over the whole of Italy south of the river Aesis.

Shortly afterwards, the Romans came into contact with the rapidly expanding Carthaginian power by reason of the attempts of the Carthaginians to obtain control of Sicily. The result of this contact was the First Punic War (264–224 B.C.), which ended in Roman victory and the establishment of the Roman power in Sicily, the first of the long roll of Roman provinces.

Later, the Romans obtained a foothold in Spain, and they were reaching out in still other directions when the Second Punic War (219–202 B.C.) stopped their progress for a time, and brought them almost to the verge of destruction. The end of this war, however, was the complete overthrow of the Carthaginian power, and Rome became the dominating force in the Mediterranean.

Having obtained by the victory over the Carthaginians the control of the West, her attention was now directed toward the East. Here country after country was gradually subdued until, at the time when Caesar was born, the Roman Empire extended from Spain to Asia Minor, and embraced the whole coast of the Mediterranean without a break.

**The Character of the Romans.**—The effect of this perpetually expanding power upon the moral and political life of the people of Rome was demoralizing. In the earliest period they had been a brave, patriotic and thrifty people, fighting among themselves to decide the questions of political supremacy, but sinking all their internal differences to present a united front to foreign attack. With increasing power and dominion came a vast increase in wealth and luxury. This was particularly the case after the Second Punic War, when the control of so many subject states brought into Rome a steady stream of wealth from the East and the South and, at the same time, flooded the city with the dregs of Eastern and Southern populations: idle, indolent and vicious.

The great losses in the Roman Commonwealth during the Second Punic War had been repaired by the admission to citizenship of slaves and freedmen, men of entirely different quality from that of the sturdy old Roman stock. Almost all the farmers of Italy had been driven from their homes by Hannibal, and vast districts had been left desolate. These were bought up by the rich nobles of Rome and farmed with great companies of slaves. Accordingly there ensued a steady decrease in the number of free landed proprietors, the class which formed the real strength of the nation.

The increase in wealth had caused a decay in the morals of the leading citizens, and political rivalry for the best

interest of the state had given way to political rivalry for personal aggrandizement. Roman nobles now strove with each other for themselves, and not for Rome, and, as a consequence, made use of their wealth to corrupt still further the commonwealth, to destroy the independent spirit of the old democracy and to make the voting population a tool in the hands of the highest bidder.

**The Gracchi.**—In the year 133 B.C. a public-spirited Roman tribune, Tiberius Gracchus, attempted to remedy some of these evils by the passage of an Agrarian law to distribute the public lands now occupied by the nobles into small farms for the poor people. Great dissension was the result, which finally culminated in a bloody riot in which Gracchus and three hundred of his followers were killed. Ten years later Gaius Gracchus, brother of Tiberius, tried a similar scheme; but he, too, was killed in 121 B.C. with many of his partisans. After that time the spirit of bitter partisanship and of rivalry between the nobility on the one hand and the democratic rabble on the other grew rapidly more and more intense, and it became evident to every discerning eye that it would not be long before the Roman Government would fall a prey to the strongest in arms. The first man to come to the front in this way was Gaius Marius.

**Marius.**—Marius was a man of humble birth who very early, as an officer in the army of Metellus, during the war in Africa against Jugurtha showed exceptional military talent. With this he combined such influence with the people that he was made consul in 106 B.C., and was sent to replace Metellus in the African war. He returned to Rome in triumph in 104 B.C. with Jugurtha as a captive. This success made him not merely general of the army, but leader of the popular party. Such was his strength that he was elected consul year after

year until 102 B.C., when he defeated the Teutones and Cimbri in two great battles—and after quelling the invaders returned to Rome supreme over all rivals.

**Sulla.**—At this time a young noble, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, who had done honorable service with the army of Marius in Africa, began to be looked upon as a rising man. But his bearing was modest and he continued to live in an unpretentious way, all the while rising in reputation and extending his influence. During the supremacy of Marius we hear but little of him, although from his aristocratic connections we can understand that he looked with no favorable eye upon the excessive power and demagogic actions of Marius in the government. As Marius was the recognized head of the popular party, so Sulla was coming to be regarded as the one about whom the nobles must rally in order to oppose Marius should occasion arise.

#### LIFE OF CAESAR.

**Birth.**—Gaius Julius Caesar was born July 12, 100 B.C. His family, on his father's side, was of the noblest blood of the aristocrats, tracing its origin back to Aeneas, the leader of the Trojan exiles, and through him to Venus, goddess of Love and Beauty, and thus to Jupiter himself. His mother, Aurelia, was of a prominent plebeian family, while his father's sister Julia was the wife of the great democratic leader Marius.

**Childhood and Youth.**—Of his childhood we know almost nothing. But it is evident that the feelings of the household were on the side of the democratic party. We may therefore infer that from his earliest years he was accustomed to hear much discussion about the wrongs of the people and the tyranny of the aristocrats.

There is nothing recorded to indicate that Caesar in

his boyhood was especially precocious. He probably received the customary training of the sons of wealthy families of his time. He was taught Greek by Antonius Gniphos, an educated Gaul, but as to his further education we are ignorant. He is said to have been "a tall, handsome youth, with dark, piercing eyes, a large nose, full lips and, in general with a refined and intellectual bearing." He was almost foppish in the extreme care he bestowed upon his dress and personal appearance. Caesar's most intimate companions were the younger Marius, the adopted son of his uncle, and the two Ciceros, Marcus and Quintus, both of whom were to be closely connected with his public life.

At the age of fourteen he was made a priest of Jupiter by his uncle, and thus became a member of the Sacred College with a fixed income. Almost immediately afterwards Marius died and was succeeded as leader of his party by Cinna, an unscrupulous and cruel demagogue. At the age of sixteen Caesar lost his father by death. When only seventeen, he married Cinna's daughter, and by this marriage his alliance with the popular party was made complete.

**Caesar and Sulla.**—Meanwhile for several years Rome had been distracted by civil war. Marius had been banished, and then had been forcibly brought back by Cinna. After the restoration Marius and Cinna set on foot a bloody proscription in which they murdered all the most important of their political opponents. The aristocrats in despair turned to their general, Sulla, who was on his return to Rome, after having conducted military operations in the East with distinguished success. When he arrived in Italy he defeated the opposing forces of the popular party and entered Rome in triumph.

Sulla was immediately made dictator and a reign of terror for the democrats was then ushered in. Every leader of that

party was proscribed, and four thousand seven hundred were murdered. Caesar, now a youth of eighteen, strangely escaped proscription; but he did not pass unnoticed. The Dictator had his eye on this "youth in petticoats," and was interested in him. He made him the proposition that he desert his party and divorce his wife. Caesar, with the cool assurance for which he was ever noted, positively refused and defied the tyrant; and though his life was spared, his property was confiscated and his priesthood taken from him. All this was without effect, and now at last, being condemned to death, he deemed it prudent to go into hiding for a time. Once, indeed, he was discovered, but escaped by bribing the men sent to kill him. Powerful friends interceded for him, and at last the Dictator reluctantly yielded, saying, "Take him, since you will have it so—but I would have you know that the youth for whom you plead will sometime overthrow the aristocracy for whom you and I have fought so hard; in this young Caesar are many Mariuses."

**Caesar enters the Army.**—Caesar had now reached an age when it became necessary for him to choose a course in life. To the ambitious young Roman only two avenues to success were open — politics or a military career; for trade and commerce were in the hands of an inferior class. Literature was merely incidental to success in other fields. For success in politics oratory was an extremely useful accomplishment; and Caesar was a forceful though inexperienced speaker even at the age of twenty. But upon making his peace with Sulla, having not much confidence in the Dictator's sincerity, he thought it wiser to enter the army, and went to Asia. Here he distinguished himself at the siege of Mytilene by saving the life of a soldier, for which he was honored by the praetor with the gift of a civic crown. His military ser-

vice lasted until the death of Sulla, when he returned to Rome at the age of twenty-two and entered upon his political career.

**Caesar enters Politics.**—The usual method of acquiring political prominence was to prosecute some provincial officer. Caesar brought a charge of extortion against Dolabella, who had been governor of Macedonia. In this trial Caesar, who had little experience in public speaking, was opposed by some of the most famous advocates of the day. The result was a failure of the prosecution, and Caesar discovered that he needed special training if he was to win against experienced pleaders. Furthermore, the trial had aroused against him much enmity, and he deemed it best to leave Rome for a time. So he went to Rhodes to study oratory under the famous rhetorician, Apollonius Molo. (On his way he was captured by pirates, who took him to an island and held him for a large ransom. The pirates treated him well, and he seems to have enjoyed his captivity.) He told them, however, he would shortly return and hang them all, a threat which they seem to have made light of; for when the ransom was paid he was immediately set free. He at once proceeded to carry out his threat, and, gathering some vessels, returned to the island and captured the whole crew while they were dividing the money. They were all taken to Pergamus and put to death. He then proceeded to Rhodes, where he devoted two years to hard study. Upon the conclusion of his studies he returned to Rome to watch the course of events, ready at any time to take a hand in public affairs. The aristocrats were still in power, but trouble was brewing for that party on every hand. Caesar had done enough to render him a conspicuous leader of the popular party. But the time for action was not yet come. As a reward for his services in Asia he was chosen military tribune. He had im-

proved so much in oratorical ability that he was recognized as a powerful advocate.

**His "Cursus Honorum."**—In 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two, he was chosen *quaestor*, and thus obtained a seat in the Senate. This was the first step in the so-called *cursus honorum*, which led through successive offices to the consulship. In B.C. 65 he was chosen *aedile*. Among other duties the aediles had charge of the public games and exhibitions. They were expected to beautify the city and entertain the people with elaborate shows. And all this at their own expense. Caesar was well to do, but he went far beyond his means in presenting magnificent spectacles and erecting costly columns. His gladiatorial contests exceeded anything before known. Wild beasts were brought into the arena in cages of burnished silver. Costly porticos were added to temples and public buildings, and splendid statues were made to adorn the public places of the city. All this plunged Caesar into debt to the amount of a million and a half of dollars. A man who, at the age of thirty-two, could contract debts to such an enormous amount is worthy of regard for his audacity if for no other reason. By this means Caesar had won the favor of the multitude, and he was now the undisputed leader of the popular party.

He next became a candidate for the office of *Pontifex Maximus*, or head of the state religious order. He had been made a priest as early as his fourteenth year, as we have seen above, and it was perhaps natural that he should aspire to be head of the Church. It is a significant commentary upon the religious state of the times that a man who had no respect whatever for the gods of his country or for any god but Fortune, should thus be considered eligible for the highest position in the priesthood. The place was the most conspicuous in the

state, and its occupant held office for life. Caesar conducted his campaign for the office with his usual vigor. He borrowed still larger sums of money and spent them with a lavish hand. But the danger of the canvass must have been serious, for it is said that, as he left his mother on the morning of the election, he kissed her and remarked that he would return as Pontifex Maximus or never return at all. He was chosen by an overwhelming vote.

Soon after his election to the pontificate Caesar was chosen *praetor*, in 63 B.C. This was the time of Catiline's conspiracy, and party spirit ran high. Many have thought that Caesar knew more of the inside workings of that conspiracy than he ever told. Possibly this was true; but he was too shrewd a politician and too sure of his position of leadership to cast in his lot with a lawless faction. It is likely that his plans for his own future movements in public life were fairly well developed in his own mind by this time, and he could see nothing to be gained by an alliance with a party which did not include the real leaders of the state. During his term in the praetorship he conducted himself in a manner to strengthen his position in his party, while he looked to yet greater power in the future.

After this praetorship Caesar was sent to Spain as *propraetor*. His term there was eminently successful and very profitable to himself. For he brought back money enough to pay all his debts and have something for the rainy days to come. He had also turned large sums into the public treasury. Furthermore, he had settled all troubles in Spain. His popularity was immense, and it was a foregone conclusion that he would win the consulship in 60 B.C. when by age he would be eligible.

**Pompey and Crassus.**—While Caesar had been advancing

with rapid strides toward the position of popular idol, Pompey, who had succeeded Sulla as the general of the aristocrats, had been winning great fame in war until he was recognized as the first soldier of the age. He was, however, no politician, and lacked ability as an orator. The head of the financial world, and the wealthiest citizen, was Publius Crassus. Except Cicero these two were, perhaps, the most conspicuous members of the aristocratic party. It was at this time that Cicero wrote: "We have not a statesman or the shadow of one. My friend Pompey, who might have done something, sits silent admiring his fine clothes. Crassus will say nothing to make himself unpopular, and the rest are such idiots as to hope that though the constitution fall they will save their own fish-ponds."

**The First Triumvirate.**—Caesar saw his opportunity and took advantage of it. He formed a coalition with Pompey and Crassus for the division among themselves of the honors of the state. This is known in history as the First Triumvirate. In accordance with this agreement Caesar was chosen consul, the first of his party for a generation. He proposed many reforms, and most of them were adopted against the protest of the senatorial party. It was a stormy year politically, but it served admirably to emphasize Caesar's superiority to all the men of his time. By the terms of his agreement with Pompey and Crassus, Gaul was to be entrusted to him as proconsul for five years.

This brings us to the year 58 B.C., and the story of the next seven years is told by Caesar himself in the *Commentaries*. In 56 B.C. a meeting of the triumvirs was held and it was agreed that Caesar's term should be extended for five years more, at the end of which time he should be eligible for a second election to the consulship, thus giving ample time to complete the

conquest of Gaul before his return to Rome. In the year 53, however, the death of Crassus broke up the coalition, and Pompey was coaxed or flattered until he, too, withdrew his support from Caesar, and espoused the cause of the Senate. The Civil War followed. In the latter part of 50 B.C. Caesar crossed the Rubicon with his army. His success was instantaneous, though the war continued in various quarters until 45 B.C., when he returned to Rome the undisputed master of the Roman world. His great rival, Pompey, defeated at Pharsalia in Thessaly in 48 B.C., had fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered.

**Death.**—Caesar used his supreme power in a way very different from his predecessors Marius and Sulla. He at once set about repairing so far as he could the ravages of the civil wars, by making several laws which were designed to benefit the people. He reformed the Calendar, instituting the system which, with a slight modification, we still use. He also formed other great projects for the public welfare which he was destined not to carry out. In particular, he had shown marked clemency to his political opponents; but for this he was ill repaid. A conspiracy to take his life was formed by a number of leading citizens, some of whom were his intimate friends. On the “Ides of March” (March 15), 44 B.C., he was attacked in the senate-house and fell pierced with twenty-three wounds at the foot of the statue of his great rival Pompey.

#### CAESAR AS A MAN.

In person Caesar was tall and handsome—such a man as one would select out of a crowd as a born leader of men. His health was perfect, kept so by active physical exercise and a careful attention to hygienic laws as they were

then understood. He was a fearless horseman, and is said to have ridden in Gaul a remarkable horse, trained by himself, which would allow no one else to mount him.

As a friend he was steadfast to the end; as a foe, generous and ready to forgive. One thing, however, he could never overlook. That was treachery. This is proved by his treatment of certain persons and peoples in Gaul, who tried to overreach him by violating promises or treaties.

Much has been written of his vices. He has been painted as a monster of lust and rapacity. There is no evidence, however, that he was worse than others of his class and time. That he was conspicuously better in morals is not claimed. Nevertheless, in all his dissipations, he did not for a moment lose sight of the main purpose of his life, which was to reach the highest pinnacle of personal greatness, and raise his country to a position of unquestioned supremacy throughout the known world. One of the best evidences of the nobility of his character is found in his great love for his mother and his devotion to her as long as she lived.

#### CAESAR AS A SOLDIER.

Caesar's military skill and success place him among the first half-dozen captains of the world. Without special training and with comparative little previous experience, he raised and drilled an army that was simply invincible, whether pitted against the immensely more numerous hordes of the Gauls and Germans or the veteran legions of Pompey. "The conquest of Gaul," says Froude, "was effected by a force numerically insignificant, which was worked with the precision of a machine. The variety of uses to which it was capable of being turned implied, in the first place, extraordinary forethought in the selection of materials. Men whose nominal

duty was merely to fight were engineers, architects, mechanics of the highest order. In a few hours they could extemporize an impregnable fortress on an open hillside. They bridged the Rhine in a week. They built a fleet in a month. The legions at Alesia held twice their number pinned within their works, while they kept at bay the whole force of insurgent Gaul, entirely by scientific superiority. The machine, which was thus perfect, was composed of human beings who required supplies of tools and arms and clothes and food and shelter, and for all these it depended on the forethought of its commander." These soldiers loved their great leader almost to idolatry, and believed in him with a confidence that nothing could shake. The long march, the hard labor of fortifying the camp, the hardships of the siege, all were borne cheerfully for the general's sake.

Caesar's courage and self-confidence were unbounded. He never sent a soldier where he would not go himself, and he never faltered in his belief that victory would perch on his banner. Quick to see what was needed in any emergency and swift to move, he never lost a point of advantage or failed to make the most of an enemy's mistake. With entire disregard of danger he was always in the thickest of the fight. Personally known to every soldier and knowing most of them by name, he thus brought home to each the responsibility resting upon him. Apparently he was rash at times; yet his rashness had method in it and success gave it another name. In several instances in Gaul he seems to have been unnecessarily cruel in his treatment of his surrendered foes. We must remember, however, that he was dealing with unscrupulous barbarians, ready to rise against him at any time. Furthermore, it was one of Caesar's leading characteristics to go by the shortest way to his objective point. Gaul was to be

subdued and that thoroughly. Hence it was necessary to remove ruthlessly all obstacles to that end.

### CAESAR AS A STATESMAN.

After his final victory over the Senate, Caesar had very little time to show his strength as a constructive statesman. There is, however, no doubt of his ability in this direction. During his consulship, in the year 59 B.C., he had proposed and carried extensive reforms in many directions. The "Leges Juliae" were enacted, a code of laws which is celebrated even to this day.

The government of the aristocracy was tyrannical and corrupt in the extreme. Bribery of juries was universal, and the administration of justice was a mockery and a stench in the nostrils of all decent men. Elections were a farce, and the people were the legitimate prey of unscrupulous and greedy politicians. These laws of Caesar's were intended to restrain the power of the Senate and enlarge and increase the rights and powers of the people.

Upon his return to Rome as dictator Caesar had the opportunity to fashion anew the government according to his long-cherished ideas. His plans were comprehensive and far-reaching. But the consummation was not to be his. Death claimed him, and his successor took up the unfinished task.

In all his projects Caesar undoubtedly aimed at making Rome indeed imperial. With unerring judgment he discovered the need for reform in all departments of government, and he had implicit confidence in his own ability to bring that reform to pass. His ability as an orator was conspicuous, and when he spoke in the Senate or elsewhere men listened as to no one else excepting Cicero. One prime element in his success as a statesman, as well as in war, was his perfect knowledge of men. He selected his agents with care, and they were in-

variably the fittest for the purpose. Liberty and Justice were his watch-words; freedom and equal rights for all, his unswerving present aim.

#### CAESAR AS AN AUTHOR.

Caesar's literary efforts covered a wide range, embracing almost every known topic. He wrote a treatise on grammar, poems, tragedies, satirical essays, a work on augury and an extended history of his own campaigns. With the exception of the last his writings have practically all disappeared.

Caesar's most pronounced personal characteristic was simplicity. This quality is prominent in his writings. He tells his story in the plainest fashion, without attempting adornment or indulging in imagery. The great events of his years in Gaul, involving the conquering of an empire so completely that it never gave Rome further trouble, are treated as plain facts. Descriptions of the country are complete; the character and customs of the people are fully set forth; it is true anecdotes of individuals are introduced, but they are all significant; nothing essential is suppressed; nothing superfluous is stated.

Without the slightest attempt to magnify his own deeds, he appears everywhere as the central figure, the man of action, doing things for the sake of results, rather than for the purpose of making a name for himself.

Such, then, was Caius Julius Caesar. "The greatest name in history," says Merivale; the peerless soldier, the man of letters, the forceful, convincing orator, the foremost statesman of his day, the liberator of his country from the tyrannical grasp of a soulless aristocracy, the unyielding foe of shams and cant. To quote again: "He was great in everything he undertook; as a captain, a statesman, a lawgiver, a jurist, an orator, a poet, an historian, a grammarian, a mathematician and an architect."

## THE ARMY OF CAESAR.

Caesar's army consisted of legionary infantry, auxiliary infantry and cavalry. The cavalry was made up of foreigners—Germans, Gauls and Spaniards—who were disbanded at the end of each campaign. They were used to begin an attack and for pursuit of a beaten enemy, as well as for foraging. The auxiliary infantry were furnished by allied states, and served for a show of strength rather than for serious work in battle. There was a small corps of engineers (*fabri*), but the mechanical work was done as a rule by the soldiers themselves.

In the earlier period the legion was drawn up in three lines, of which the men in the first line were called *hastati*, those in the second line *principes*, those in the third line *triarii* or *pilani*. In Caesar's time the arrangement was different, but the same names were retained, being applied to the men of the third, second and first maniples of each cohort.

The main strength of the army lay in the regulars composing the legions.

Theoretically the legion may have consisted of 6,000 men. It is likely, however, that Caesar's legions averaged not more than 3,600 each at the time of their greatest fulness.

The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, each maniple again into two centuries. Assuming 3,600 as the strength of the legion we have:

10 cohorts	each having	360 men
30 maniples	“ “	120 “
60 centuries	“ “	60 “

Thus the maniple corresponded very nearly to a *company* in

CENTURIO.

LEOATIS.

IMPERATOR.

our army; the century, to a *platoon*. Beyond this the divisions hardly find their counterpart in modern armies, although the legion differed but little from a *brigade*.

### *Officers.*

The command of the legion was originally in the hands of the military tribunes, six in number, who acted in pairs and commanded in turn, each pair for a period of two months. As these officers were usually chosen for political reasons and were not necessarily trained soldiers, this method of commanding the legion fell into disuse under Caesar. Leaving the tribunes as nominal commanders, he placed a *legatus* in charge of each legion as the real commander in time of battle.

The legati were men of senatorial rank, and were the lieutenants of the commander-in-chief (*imperator*). They had no independent power, but derived all authority from their chief. Together with the quaestors they composed the staff of the general.

The *quaestors* had charge of the supplies for the army; paid the troops; furnished them with clothing, arms and equipments, food and shelter.

The *centurions* commanded the sub-divisions of the legion. Of these there were 60 in each legion, each maniple having two, a senior and a junior. The senior was in command of the whole maniple with the junior as his lieutenant. Of the six centurions in a cohort, the senior of the first maniple, called *pilus prior*, commanded the cohort, having the other five as lieutenants. Thus the senior centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, called *primus pilus prior* or *primipilus*, was the senior officer of the whole legion, and accordingly often, if not generally, led the legion.

EUCINATOR.

EUCINATOR.

EUCINATOR.

The centurions were taken from the ranks of the legionaries and corresponded closely to the officers of our army. The method of their classification is not known; but it is certain that they were classified and graded in ranks.

Those of the first rank (*primorum ordinum*) were summoned in councils with the *legati* and *tribunes*.

Another officer was known as *praefectus*, probably the Roman commander of the cavalry and of the auxiliary infantry.

### *The Legionary Soldier.*

Originally only Roman citizens were enrolled in the legions, but, owing to the changes in the character of the Roman government, from the time of Marius the service had been open to almost any one.

Caesar's legionaries were professional soldiers. Their term of service was twenty years, at the end of which they were usually rewarded with bounties of money or land. They received 225 *denarii*, or about \$45.00 a year as pay. The value of food, clothing and equipments furnished by the state was deducted from this sum. Each soldier was allowed 4 *modii*, or about one bushel of wheat a month, at a cost of about \$5.75 a year. The cost of clothing is not known.

The age for enlistment of the legionary was probably as a minimum seventeen years, and as a maximum forty-six years. There was undoubtedly a rule as to size; but big men were not required. Indeed, the soldiers of Caesar's army have always been considered as undersized when compared with the German giants. Occasionally barbarians were enrolled in the legions; but in the main the legionaries were Roman citizens hailing from Northern Italy, which was entirely Romanized and loyal to the government of that country.

*Clothing.*

The clothing consisted of a sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*) worn next the skin, and over this a coat of leather with metallic bands across the breast, back and shoulders (*lorica*). The officers wore a kind of chain mail (*lorica hamata*). Over all in cold weather was worn the military blanket (*sagum*).

## CHAIN MAIL.

On the feet were worn sandals (*calcei*) strapped to the feet and ankles.

*Armor.*

The defensive armor consisted of the helmet and the shield.

The helmet was made from iron (*cassis*) or leather strengthened with metal (*galea*). It had a crest and a plume, and was usually carried by the soldier, when on the march, hanging in front of the shoulder.

## GALEAE.

The shield (*scutum*) was of wood covered with leather. Its length was four feet and width two feet. It was curved to fit the body, and was carried on the left arm. The badge of the

cohort was painted on the outside, and the name of the owner on the inside. It had a metallic knob in the center called *umbo*. A covering was drawn over it when not in use, and one of the first preparations for battle was the removal of this covering, as in Book II., Chapter 21.

The *clipeus*, or Greek shield, was circular originally and large enough to cover three-quarters of the person. In later times it was smaller, covering the warrior from the neck to

## SCUTUM.

## CLYPEUS.

the knees. It was also made oval in shape. This kind of shield was not used in the time of Caesar, although the auxiliaries carried a shield (*parma*) resembling the *clipeus*.

Shields were adorned in various ways, by iron rims or by such devices as thunderbolts, wreaths, etc.



GLADIUS.

The offensive weapons were the short or Spanish sword (*gladius*) and a heavy javelin (*pilum*). The sword was two feet long in the blade, probably about four inches in width, two-edged and pointed. It was carried by a belt (*balteus*)

passing over the left shoulder, suspending the sword on the right side. There is no definite knowledge as to the javelin used in Caesar's time. It is likely that it consisted of a long iron point inserted in a shaft of wood. The whole length was from six to seven feet and the weight at least ten pounds.



PILA.

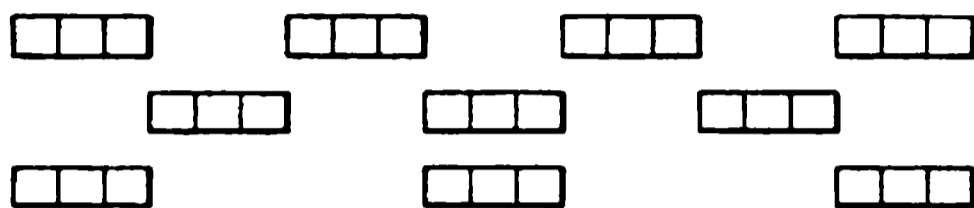
It could be thrown perhaps twenty or thirty yards, according to the weight of the soldier and the nature of the ground. The point was of soft iron, easily bent and thus rendered unfit to be thrown back when once hurled. In Book I., Chapter 25, the confusion of the Gauls was in great part due to the bending of the *pila* after they had pierced their shields.

Some have supposed that the legionary carried a light javelin in addition to the heavy *pilum*. Caesar says nothing of this weapon, and there is no good reason to suppose that it was used in his time. The weapons used by Roman soldiers were in a state of evolution at all times, as is the case with modern weapons. It is a long stride from the "old queen's arm," the flint-lock musket of the Revolution, to the Krag-Jørgensen repeating rifle of the United States army of to-day. This change came about only by gradual development through many intermediate steps. So the light and graceful steel javelin of later Roman times was the result of many improvements upon the weapon even of Caesar's age.

After the first volley of javelins, the sword came into play. Thus it was the most effective and the most in use of offensive arms. It was a terrible implement in the hands of skilled fighters. Being pointed, as well as sharpened on both sides, it was equally effective for thrusting and cutting. The former, however, was its customary use.

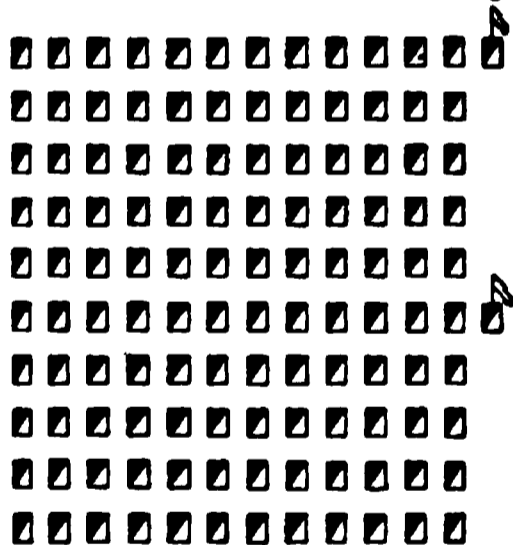
*Tactics of the Legion.*

In all arrangements for battle the tactical unit of the legion was the cohort. For offence the legion was arrayed either in two lines (*acies duplex*) or in three lines (*acies triplex*).



ACIES TRIPLEX.

When in two lines there were five cohorts in each line. When in three lines, four cohorts were in the first, and three in each of the others. Between the cohorts of the first line were spaces of about 120 feet, behind which at a distance of 120 feet stood the cohorts of the second line. The three cohorts of the third line were placed at the same distance to the rear of the second line. Each cohort was arranged by maniples, each maniple having twelve men in front, forming a *rank*, and ten men in depth forming a *file*. Allowing three feet of space for each man in rank and four feet on the right for the commanding officer, the front of each cohort would be 120 feet, and the front of the legion 840 feet. Supposing four feet to have been the distance allowed to each man in the file, we get a depth for the maniple of forty feet, and each cohort a depth of 120 feet. Thus the legion would have a depth of 600 feet.



MANIPLE.

*The Attack.*

Whenever possible the Roman battle line was formed on a hillside with the enemy in the plain at the foot.

In beginning the attack, the troops marched slowly forward for a time, then, at the proper time, broke into a run, the two front ranks carrying their javelins poised ready for hurling. When the right distance was reached, they hurled the javelins, often without stopping. The ranks whose javelins had been thrown then rushed on to the conflict with swords at close quarters, without giving the enemy time to recover from the confusion caused by the volley of javelins. The next three ranks hurled their javelins over the heads of the first two and in their turn advanced to fight with the sword. The five rear ranks waited in reserve until their services were needed to take the places of the fallen or to increase the numbers of the attacking troops. The second line advanced and waited two or three hundred feet behind the first. When the first had become weakened by losses, this line perhaps entered the fight in the same way. It is hardly to be supposed that the remnants of the first line were withdrawn however; but they probably melted into the oncoming second line. The third line was held in reserve, and often sent to the flanks when there was danger of the front lines being out-flanked.

In many cases the onset of the first line was sufficient to put the enemy to flight, especially if they were barbarians. For this reason the first line was usually the strongest and made up of the most experienced soldiers.

When the enemy had been beaten and turned to flee, as usually happened in Caesar's battles, the cavalry was sent in pursuit to complete the work of destruction.

The cavalry was also used to guard the flanks against attack, or to attack the enemy's flank. It was therefore usually located on the extreme edge of the wings. But an experienced general would also use it in other ways, and Caesar sometimes placed it in the rear, sometimes after the first line.

*On the March.*

The usual order of the march was in three divisions. In the van (*primum agmen*) came the cavalry and the light-armed troops; next the main body; and lastly the rear-guard (*novissimum agmen*).

The main body marched in single column, the number of ranks depending upon the width of the road, each legion accompanied by its own baggage-train.

At times, when approaching the enemy, the baggage of the whole army was massed together, with most of the legions in advance of the baggage-train.

Occasionally, when an attack was expected, the army advanced for a short distance in line of battle. This could of course not last long, although on two occasions we are told that the legions marched thus for three hours, covering about eight miles.

The rear-guard was made up of recruits, camp-followers, and the rabble that usually followed an army.

The legionary was forced to carry a burden of fifty pounds or more on the march. This was made up of his supply of food, cooking utensils, extra clothing, arms, helmet and shield. All that could be so placed was made into a bundle and carried on a stick over the shoulder, the rest was disposed on the person in the most convenient way. See the illustration on page xxvi.

The average distance covered in a day's march was about fifteen miles. But when the march was over, the soldiers' day's work was by no means done. A camp must be built and fortified—no small undertaking, when we consider the labor involved. There were a few engineers (*fabri*) with the army, but the working man was the legionary soldier.



*The Camp.*

The ideal site for a camp was on the slope of a hill with the rear of the camp at the top. The absolutely indispensable natural features were wood and water. Although we have no definite knowledge about Caesar's camps, we may assume that they differed in no great degree from the Roman camps of other times.

They were rectangular in shape, varying in size according

—

—

to the number of troops to be accommodated, having a width in front equal to two-thirds of their depth.

The fortification of the camp consisted of a surrounding wall (*vallum*) and a ditch (*fossa*). The ditch was nine feet wide and seven feet deep. The earth from this was thrown up to form the wall, which was made six feet high and six feet wide on the top. Sometimes stakes (*valli*) were set on the outer edge of the wall to make it stronger. As the wall was intended for fighting ground, it had some sort of steps on the inside so as to render it easy for the defenders to reach the top.

Camps built for a longer stay than a single night, or when an attack was expected, had breastworks made of trees on the top of the wall and wooden towers at intervals along the wall. Wider and deeper ditches and higher walls were often built in order to make a camp especially strong. It is estimated that from four to five hours was consumed each day in fortifying the camp.

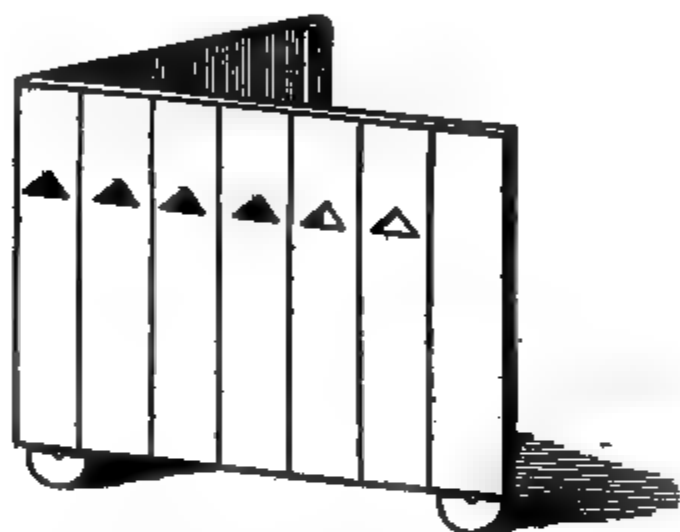
*Operations against Fortified Places.*

In subduing a fortified camp or town, the Romans sometimes attacked by assault and sometimes by a siege. The method depended upon the strength of the town's defence. These operations brought into use various weapons not yet mentioned. For the assault there were the scaling ladders, the battering-ram and movable huts or sheds (*vineae*) used to

cover the assaulting force and thus protect them from weapons thrown from the walls by the besieged.

The *testudo* was usually a movable shed, from the front of which projected the battering-ram (*aries*), worked by the men beneath the roof from which it was suspended.

Sometimes, however, the word was applied to a kind of shed formed by the shields of the soldiers who were attacking a wall, as in the illustration. See Book II, Chapter 6



PLUTEI.

*Plutei* were large movable, three-wheeled shields of wickerwork, covered with hides to turn the missiles of the besieged.

The battering-ram was a long, heavy piece of timber whose offensive end was capped with metal sometimes having the shape of a ram's head. Hence the name. With men enough behind it, it was effective against walls of stone and timber. Compared with shots from a modern cannon, however, it was a child's toy.

There was also a device called *falx muralis* or wall hook, consisting of a long beam suspended from upright supports with a single or double hook of metal at the end. This was used to pull stones from the top of a wall.

Another piece of apparatus was the *musculus*, a low, heavily built shed with a sloping roof. This was used to protect men at work filling up ditches or preparing to build the *agger*; sometimes also to cover the ram.

All the foregoing were used by light-armed troops or laborers preparing the way for the advance of the legionaries to the assault. When the preparations were completed and the walls cleared of defenders by the bowmen and slingers, the heavy-

## CATAPULT.

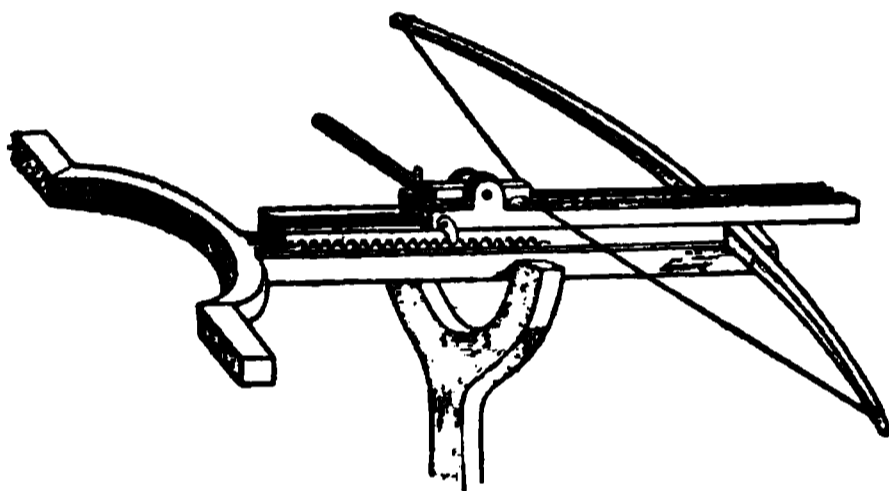
## BALLISTA.

armed troops rushed forward, scaled the walls, or forced a gate, and the assault was brought to a finish.

The siege was a more complicated method of attack, and involved a vast amount of labor in preparation, and brought into use another branch of the army and a different class of weapons (*tormenta*) called by courtesy artillery.

These engines were the *catapult*, *ballista* and *scorpio*. The two former were the heavy artillery; the catapult shooting large arrows, the ballista hurling stones or heavy blocks

of wood. The propelling force was obtained by an ingenious arrangement of twisted ropes, combined with a bow-spring. The catapult required at least two men to manage it, while the ballista needed six or more. The range of each machine was not more than 1200 feet. The *scorpio* was a small catapult capable of being handled by one man. It consisted of a steel bow fastened to a framework, and shot arrows of steel or iron, which were perhaps eighteen inches long, to a distance not greater than 400 feet. In all cases a windlass was used to load the machine and set it for action. The men



SCORPIO.

in charge of these engines constituted the artillery branch of the army. They may have been a section of the *fabri*, but we have no details of their organization.

The first work to be constructed for attack upon a stronghold was the *agger*, a mound of earth or timber or both, made as high as the walls of the town. The workmen were protected by the *plutei*, and those who brought the material passed through long galleries of *vineas*. The light-armed slingers and bowmen, placed in moving towers or behind other *plutei* for their protection, kept the walls of the town free from men. Bodies of heavy-armed troops also were held in reserve. When the *agger* was completed to a sufficient height, the troops of the besiegers took their place upon it and the fight-

ing began in earnest. Movable towers were often placed on the *agger* as a means of protecting the fighting men.

The illustration shows a restoration of the siege works before Avaricum, a town of the Bituriges, besieged by Caesar in the war against Vercingetorix, as narrated in Book VII, Chapters 14-

#### SIEGE WORKS BEFORE AVARICUM.

31. Close to the walls rises the Roman *agger*, with steps on the outside leading up to the top and flanked at each end with a high tower. In this siege the *agger* was eighty feet in height and was probably at least fifty feet broad at the top, so as to give room for a single manipule to form. The long lines of covered *vineas* leading across the low ground show the means by which the soldiers could reach their work without exposure. In this case preparations were being made for an assault, because the situation was such that the town could not be reduced by an enforced famine.

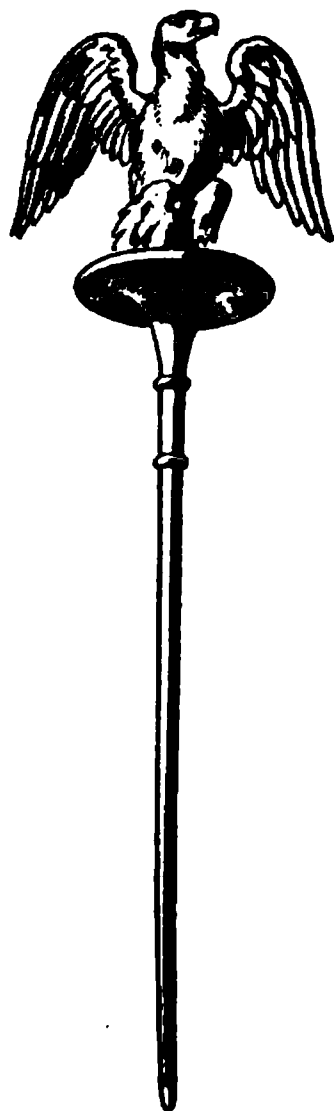
*Ships of War.*

In most of his campaigns in Gaul Caesar had no use for ships. When needed, however, they were built and equipped according to the Roman method. They carried a single sail, but were fitted with oars as their chief motive power. Some had as many as five tiers of rowers. They were fitted with

## WAR GALLEY.

sharp beaks (*rostrum*) at the prow for the purpose of ramming an enemy's ship. They sometimes carried a tower on deck for the protection of the fighting men. This was the case particularly when a low ship was attacking a high one, or when the object was to kill the opposing sailors by a shower of missiles. In battle a favorite manœuvre was to grapple the enemy's ship, so that the Roman heavy-armed soldiers could board it and settle the conflict by a hand-to-hand fight.

The illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall-painting of a naumachia, and represents a war galley. If this vessel had had a sail, it would have been near the stern.

*Standards and Musical Instruments.*

AQUILA.

The standard of the legion was the eagle (*aquila*), made of metal. This was in the care of the first cohort, and carried by a special officer (*aquilifer*).

Each cohort had its own standard-bearer (*signifer*) and its own emblem (*signum*). This was sometimes a figure of an animal on a staff.

The banner of the cavalry and light-armed troops (*vexillum*) was of cloth attached to a horizontal bar. See Commentary, page 30.

The commander-in-chief had his flag, as in modern armies. This was of white cloth with his name in red letters.



SIGNUM.

The musical instruments were the *tuba* (see Commentary, page 30), the *bucina* (see the *bucinator*, Introduction, page xxvi), the *lituus* and the *cornu*.



LITUUS.

## GAUL AND ITS PEOPLE.

The Great West, which Caesar went out to conquer in 58 B.C., may be roughly located as lying between the Pyrenees and the Rhine, the Mediterranean and the Atlantic. Cisalpine Gaul was thoroughly Romanized and entirely peaceful. On the southeast along the shore of the Mediterranean was the Roman province (Provincia) which had been won sixty years before Caesar's time. It was now all Roman and the centre of Transalpine Roman activity. The influence of the civilized life of the province was felt powerfully by the neighboring tribes; but this did not serve to extend at all the political control of the Romans.

The Gaul that was still unsubdued was divided, as we learn from the first chapter of the *Bellum Gallicum*, into three parts—the Celtic, the Aquitanian and the Belgic. Aquitania was located in the southwest, between the Garumna and the Pyrenees. This was small in area and, in the main, gave Caesar very little trouble. The country of the Belgians was bounded by the Sequana, the Matrona and the Rhine. Celtic Gaul, the great central portion, had for its boundaries the Sequana, the Matrona and the Garumna. This great country, with its mighty and lesser mountains, its noble rivers, its vast forests and fertile valleys, was the home of a large and fairly prosperous population. It has been estimated that the average number of inhabitants to the square mile was at least fifty.

Although Caesar mentions some tribes that subsisted on fish and the eggs of birds, it is evident that the great mass of the Gauls had advanced in civilization to a point far beyond the savage state. They were largely engaged in

agriculture and the raising of cattle. They had plenty of roads and bridges over the streams. Navigable rivers and the neighboring seas were alive with their ships carrying on the commerce of the times among the various tribes and between Gaul and Britain. Manufacturing seems not to have been much developed except in the working of metals. Copper implements and gold and copper coins, showing considerable skill, have been found in their tombs.

It was the custom of all the Gauls to settle in communities, or cantons. These were villages, of a greater or less size, having no walls. There were, however, many towns protected by strong walls of wood and stone. Helvetia alone had twelve walled towns and four hundred cantons. These strongholds were intended for the protection of all the people in time of war. Tribes having none of these sought the forests and swamps in time of danger.

The political conditions were the result of the habit of settling in communities or clans. The clans extended and the members multiplied; but the prince and the council of elders still made up the government. As the communities became larger, jealousies among the chiefs arose. The supporters of each rallied round their favorite, and the government of the canton came to be the rule of a faction. Thus the cantons were weakened and came to be the prey of more powerful communities or were united with them into leagues, such as the Belgian confederacy, against which Caesar had to contend. Inter-tribal conflicts were frequent, and practically all national feeling was lacking. They did meet at times in national assemblies, but the results were seldom beneficial to the people at large.

As warriors the Gauls were brave but untrained. Being extremely volatile by nature, they were roused to the highest

pitch of enthusiasm by slight successes or completely disheartened by slight reverses. Hence a single defeat was often sufficient to subdue a whole tribe. They were strong in cavalry, but had little skill or science as an infantry force. They fought in solid phalanx, an arrangement so unwieldy that they fell an easy prey to Caesar's well-trained legions. Their arms consisted of slings, bows and arrows, and spears of various kinds, and long swords of soft iron. High-crested helmets and shields formed their defensive armor.

We know little of the customs of the Gauls as regards dress. They wore trousers, however—an extremely barbaric habit from the Roman point of view.

### *Religion.*

The great religious system of Gaul was Druidism. This seems indeed to have been the only unifying force in the land. The Druids, or priests, were a class set apart and highly honored by the people. Young men from all parts of the country were sent to learn the principles of the order, and after a long term of apprenticeship they became members of the priesthood. All the learning of the time was monopolized by the Druids, and they were honored by exemption from war and taxation. They were the ministers of justice, and enforced their decrees by excommunication. This punishment carried with it exclusion from citizenship as well as from religious privileges. By the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, the Druids taught their disciples to hold death in contempt. Human sacrifices were offered up, the victims usually being criminals. In certain sections of Gaul there appear to have remained some vestiges of an older religion, which Druidism had, to a great degree, supplanted.

## BRITAIN.

Caesar made two campaigns into Britain, but in neither did he penetrate the interior of the country. He has given us a description of the islands far from accurate, but valuable from the fact that it is the earliest statement made by a personal observer. The conquest begun by Caesar was completed by his successors, and Britain remained a Roman province for 400 years.

## GERMANY.

Germany was never conquered by the Romans. Caesar twice crossed the Rhine, but made little impression on the vast hordes who inhabited the interior. The German invaders of Gaul were driven back across their great river, but only to return again to the attack, thus setting at defiance the almost invincible power of Rome.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY.

All of the histories of Rome that cover this period give an extended treatment of Caesar and his friends and foes. Of special importance, however, are those of MERIVALE and MOMMSEN. The former gives a sane and sympathetic account, in a beautiful and interesting style; the latter, a distorted and overdrawn picture, hardly relieved by the erudition shown in detail.

In addition we have :

FROUDE, J. A. *Caesar : a Sketch*. New York, 1879. Interesting but biased.

FOWLER, W. W. *Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System*. New York, 1892. Sound and sympathetic—the best account of the man.

DODGE, Col. F. A. *Julius Caesar*. Boston and New York, 1892. A military history, and not always reliable otherwise.

TROLLOPE, A. *The Commentaries of Caesar*. London and Philadelphia, 1880. Interesting.

HOLMES, T. R. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, 1899. A fascinating account of Caesar's work, with invaluable appendices on the ethnology and geography of Gaul, and many matters relating more strictly to Caesar's life.

NAPOLEON III. *Histoire de Jules César*. Paris and New York, 1865, 1866. The foundation of modern scientific discussion of Caesar's campaigns, and particularly important for its atlas.

The following books on the style and contents of the Commentaries are also important :

SIHLER, E. G. *A Complete Lexicon of the Latinity of Caesar's Gallic War*. Boston, 1891.

MEUSEL, H. *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Berlin, 1887-93.  
 MENGE, H., and PREUSS, S. *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Leipzig, 1890.

MERGUET, H. *Lexicon zu den Schriften Caesars*. Jena, 1886.  
 The last three give complete citations from both the Gallic War and the Civil War.

---

JUDSON, H. P. *Caesar's Army*. Boston, 1888. A convenient and useful book.

FRÖHLICH, F. *Das Kriegswesen Cäsars*. Zürich, 1891.

Ⓒ RÜSTOW, F. W. *Heerwesen und Kriegführung Cäsars*. Nordhausen, 1862. Atlas, Stuttgart, 1868.

LINDENSCHMIDT, L. *Tracht und Bewaffnung des römischen Heers*. 1882.

OEHLER, R. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de bello Gallico*. Leipzig, 1890.

VON KAMPEN, A. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de bello Gallico commentarios tabulae*. Gotha.

GURLITT, L. *Auschaumgstafeln zu Caesars Bellum Gallicum*. Gotha.

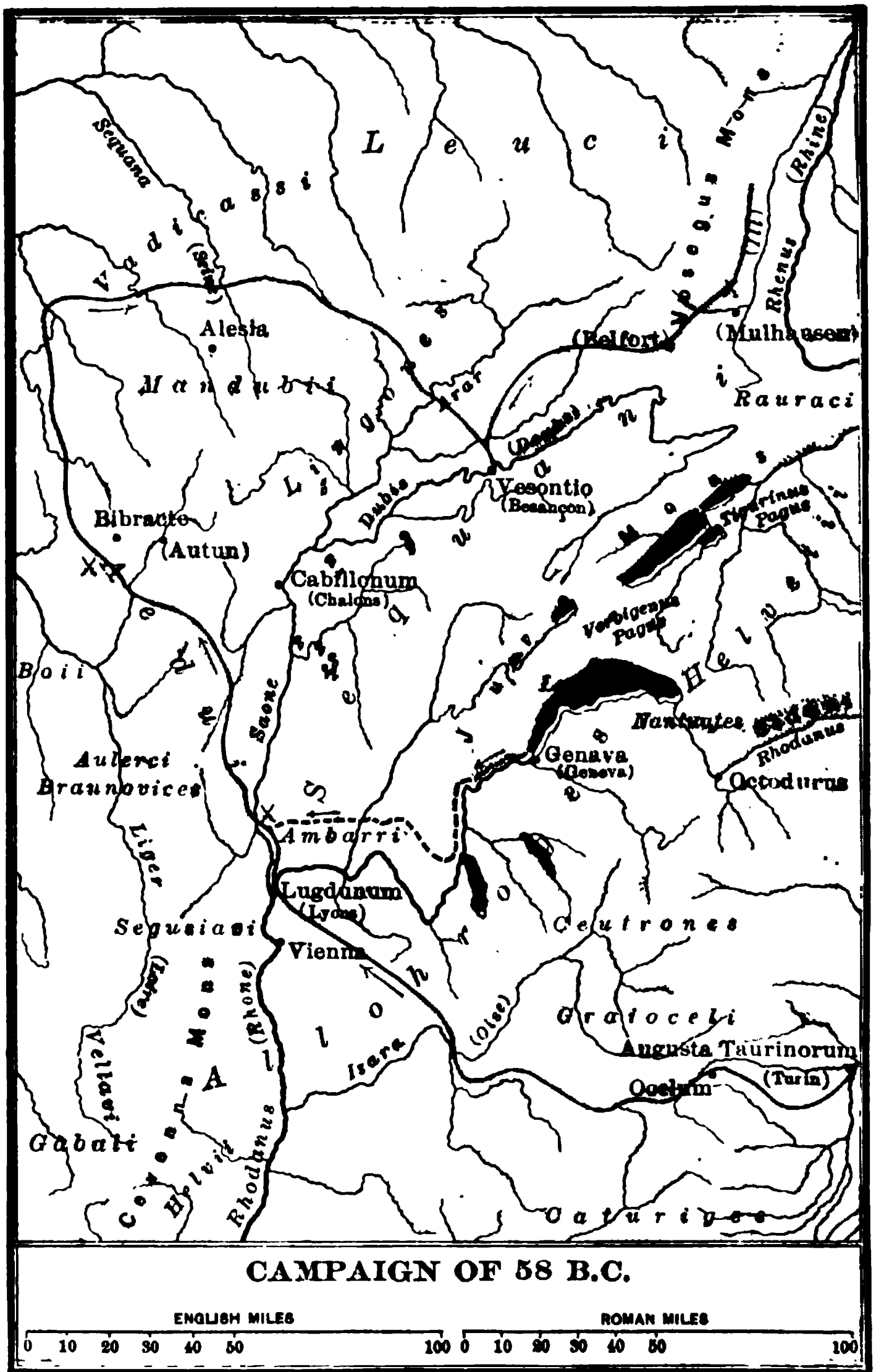
Important also are :

LODGE, HUBBELL and LITTLE. *Helps for the Teaching of Caesar*. In *Teachers College Record*, vol. iii (1902), nos. 3 and 4. A discussion of the various books introductory to Caesar, with detailed treatment of his vocabulary, syntax and style.

HEYNACHER, M. *Was ergibt sich aus dem Sprachgebrauch Caesars im Bellum Gallicum für die Behandlung der lateinischen Syntax in der Schule?* 2. ed. Berlin, 1886.

LEBRETON, J. *Caesariana Syntaxis quatenus a Cicero-niana differat*. Paris, 1901.





coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere  
frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem  
firmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās bien-  
nium et tertium annum profec-

C. IULI CAESARIS cōficiendās Orge- 50  
tēs suscipi-

# DE BELLO GALLICO

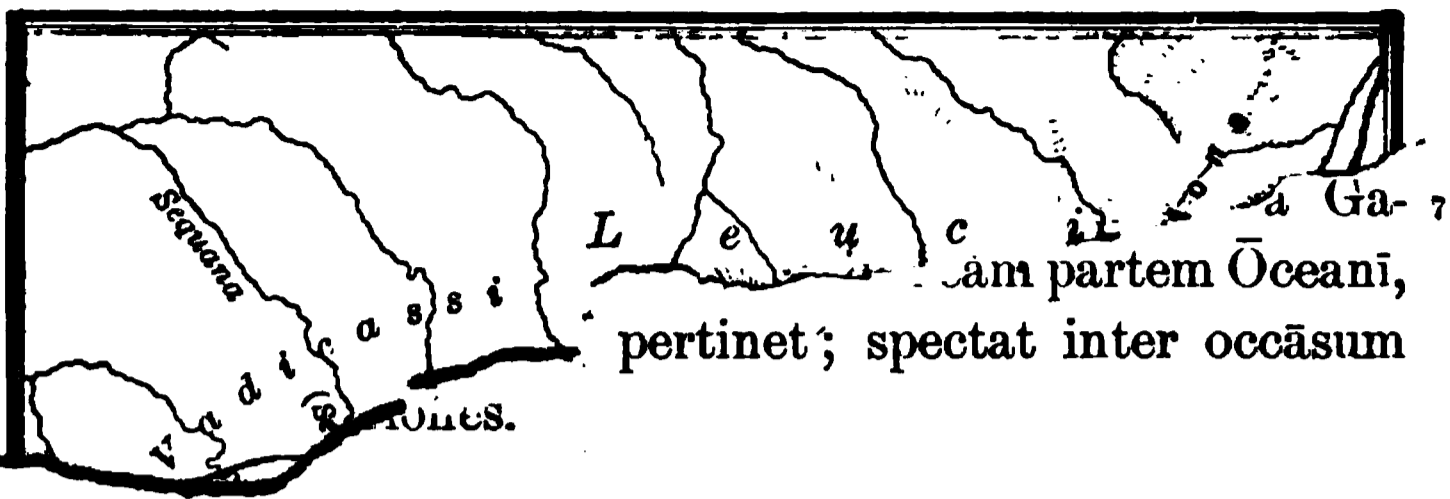
## COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

Rhē

Aquīt. 11

### I. DESCRIPTIO GALLIAE.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum lin-  
2. guā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. 5  
3. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximi-  
4. mīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, qui- 10  
buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum  
5. gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum 15  
est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad sep-  
6. tentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur;



## II. BELLUM HĒLVETICUM.

CC. 2-29.

*Mōtus Hēlvētiōrum excitātus ab Orgetorīge; ēius clandestīna cōnsilia, mors.*

25 2. Apud Hēlvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs ex-  
rent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, 2  
30 tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, 3  
quod undique locī nātūrā Hēlvētiī continentur: unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Hēlvētium ā Germānis dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Hēlvētiōs, tertiā lacū  
35 Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Hēlvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagā- 4  
rentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre affi-  
ciēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā 5  
40 bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrā-  
bantur, quī in longitudinem mīlia passuum ccxi., in lāti-  
tūdinem clxxx patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, com-  
45 parāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum

coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimū Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitas ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mor-

tuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, 4  
quī ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.

*Iter Helvētiī primō per prōvinciam temptant, sed Caesaris  
mūnitiōnibus interclūsī deinde per Sēquanōs.*

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōn-  
80 stituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi 2  
iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua  
omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reli-  
qua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter 3  
quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum  
85 reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula sub-  
eunda essent, trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque  
domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et 4  
Latobrigīs ~~fratibz~~, utī eōdem ~~ut~~ cōsiliō oppidīs ~~et~~  
vicisque exūstīs, unā cum iīs proficiscantur, Bōiōsque, quī  
90 trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsi-  
erant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi  
āsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō  
exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,  
95 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā sin-  
gulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat,  
ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvin-  
ciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā 2  
quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper  
100 pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullīs locīs vadō  
trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proxi- 3  
mumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns  
ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,  
quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidē-

rentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos ut per suos fines 105  
 4 eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectiōnem comparatis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eos per prōvinciam 110  
 nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci et, quam māximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ūteriōrem  
 2 contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omninō in Galliā ūteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genā- 115  
 3 vam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiū certiores facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea 120  
 quod aliud iter haberent nūllum: rogāre, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat  
 4 L. Cassium cōsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultate 125  
 per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā  
 5 et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites, quos imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur. 130

8. Interea eā legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram quī fines Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque 135

perducit. Eo opere perfectō, praesidia disponit, castella 2  
 communit, quō facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur,  
 prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lē- 3  
 gātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre  
 140 et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ullī per prōvinciam  
 dare et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit.  
 Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque com- 4  
 plūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō  
 flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si  
 145 perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et mīlitum  
 concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs  
 invitīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā 2  
 sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem  
 150 Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrā-  
 rent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plū- 3  
 rimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte  
 Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat; et, cupiditāte  
 rēgnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās  
 155 civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque 4  
 rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs  
 Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent,  
 perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Hel-  
 vētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

160 10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per  
 agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs  
 facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae  
 civitās est in prōvinciā. Id si fieret, intellegēbat māgnō 2  
 cum periculō prōvinciae futurum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs,  
 165 populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frū-  
 mentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī, 3

quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit ; ipse in  
 Italiā māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs  
 cōscribit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex  
 hibernīs ēducit et, quā proximum iter in ūteriōrem Gal- 170  
 liam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīque legiōnibus ire con-  
 tendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs, locis su-  
 periōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.  
 Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriō-  
 ris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ūteriōris 175  
 prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit : inde in Allobrogum finēs,  
 ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt  
 extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

*Gallōrum dē Helvētiōrum iniūriīs querēlae.*

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum  
 suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant 180  
 eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab  
 iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt  
 rogātum auxilium : Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rō-  
 mānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī,  
 agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida 185  
 expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, ne-  
 cessāriī et cōsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem  
 faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim  
 hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhoda-  
 num vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem 190  
 recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil  
 esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expec-  
 tandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōn-  
 sumptis in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

*Clādēs Tigurinōrum.*

195 12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sē-  
 quanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitāte, ita  
 ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn possit. Id  
 Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iunctīs trānsībant. Ubi per  
 explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cō-  
 200 piārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē par-  
 tem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā  
 cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem  
 pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs  
 et inopināntēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit:  
 205 reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās ab-  
 didērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus: nam omnis  
 civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hīc pāgus  
 ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L.  
 Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iu-  
 210 gum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immor-  
 tālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem  
 populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit.  
 Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam prīvātās  
 iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L.  
 215 Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium,  
 interfēcerant.

*Helvētiī per lēgātōs cum Caesare agunt.*

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut  
 cōsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque  
 ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū  
 220 commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōfēce-  
 rant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intelle-  
 gerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūius lēgatiōnis Divicō

princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat.  
 3 Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum  
 Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs 225  
 Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset:  
 4 sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris  
 incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristināe virtūtis Helvētiō-  
 5 rum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī,  
 quī flūmen trānsissent, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē 230  
 ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueret aut  
 6 ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis  
 didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut  
 7 insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi  
 cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne 235  
 exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis  
 darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent,  
 memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō  
 2 populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi 240  
 cōnsciū fuisse, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēcep-  
 tum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret, quārē  
 3 timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī  
 veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium  
 iniūriarū, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim 245  
 temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allo-  
 4 brogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā  
 victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē  
 impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre.  
 5 Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex 250  
 commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum  
 ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem  
 6 impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs

ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturōs in-  
 255 tellegat, et si Aeduīs de iniuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum  
 intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis  
 pacem esse facturum. Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs a  
 maiōribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non  
 dare consuerint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse tēstem.  
 260 Hōc respōnsō datō discēssit.

*Equitatus Caesaris ab Helvētiis pulsus. Utriusque exercitus iter.*

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit  
 Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mī-  
 lium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eorum so-  
 ciis coactum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quas in par-  
 265 tes hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen  
 insecuti aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium  
 committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō  
 sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multi-  
 tudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn  
 270 numquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere  
 coeperunt. Caesar suos a proeliō continēbat ac satis ha-  
 bēbat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pābulātiōnibus popu-  
 lātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter  
 275 primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum  
 interesset.

*Caesaris cum Aeduōrum principibus, Liscō et Diviciācō, de  
 civitātis condiciōne et Dumnorīgis perfidiā colloquium.*

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frumentum, quod  
 essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frīgora,  
 quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita  
 280 est, nōn modo frumenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed

3 nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat : eō autem  
 frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat, prop-  
 tereā utī minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āver-  
 4 terant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere  
 5 Aeduī : cōferri, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius 285  
 dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum mīliti-  
 bus mētīrī oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quō-  
 rum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō  
 et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūī praeerat, quem ‘vergo-  
 bretum’ appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae 290  
 necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt,  
 6 quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam  
 necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab iīs nōn  
 sublevētur ; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum pre-  
 cibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, 295  
 quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod  
 antea tacuerat, prōpōnit : Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōri-  
 tās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs pos-  
 2 sint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā 300  
 ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant,  
 3 quod dēbeant : praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae ob-  
 tinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia  
 4 perferre ; neque dubitāre dēbere quīn, sī Helvētiōs supe-  
 rāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertā- 305  
 5 tem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in  
 castris gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī : hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn  
 6 posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariam rem coāctus Cae-  
 sarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō  
 fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse. 810

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī

frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesen-  
 tibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit,  
 Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxe-  
 315 rat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab  
 aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem,  
 summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem  
 grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs por-  
 tōria reliquaue omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō  
 320 redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī  
 audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse  
 et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; mā-  
 gnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et cir-  
 cum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finiti-  
 325 mās cīvītātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā  
 mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentis-  
 simō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorō-  
 rem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvītātēs  
 collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīni-  
 330 tātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs,  
 quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus  
 frāter in antīquum locum grātiaē atque honōris sit resti-  
 tūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per  
 Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī  
 335 nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā  
 dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod  
 proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset fac-  
 tum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius  
 equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī  
 340 mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse  
 equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs, cum ad hās sūspiciōnēs cer-

tissimae res accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Hel-  
 vētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset,  
 quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitatīs, sed etiam 345  
 Inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum  
 accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābatur, quārē in eum  
 aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē animadvertere  
 2 iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod  
 Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, 350  
 summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam;  
 temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Divi-  
 3 ciāci animum offenderet, verēbatur. Itaque prius quam  
 quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et  
 cotidiānīs interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Trou- 355  
 cillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum,  
 cū summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō  
 4 colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in  
 conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit,  
 5 quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit 360  
 atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē  
 eō, causā cōgnitā, statuāt, vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus  
 obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret:  
 2 Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē 365  
 dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum  
 domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter  
 3 adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac  
 nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad  
 perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō 370  
 4 et existimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā  
 Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae  
 apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā

voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum, utī tōtius Galliae  
 875 animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns  
 ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsō-  
 lātus rogat, finem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē  
 grātiā esse ostendit, utī et rei pūblicae iniūriā et suum  
 dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorī-  
 880 gem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat,  
 ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prō-  
 pōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs sūspiciōnēs  
 vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit.  
 Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum lo-  
 385 quātur, scīre possit.

*Caesaris cōnsilium P. Cōnsidū errōre pervertitur.*

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs  
 sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs  
 octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū  
 āscēnsus, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsīt. Renūtiātum est facilem  
 890 esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prae-  
 tōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnō-  
 verant, summum iugum montis āscendere iubet; quid sui  
 cōnsiliū sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere,  
 quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem  
 395 ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus  
 habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī  
 fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenē-  
 rētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīn-  
 400 gentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captīvīs com-  
 perit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset,  
 Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem,

quem à Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī;  
 id sē à Gallicis armīs atque insīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar  
 suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. 405  
 Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum à Caesare, nē proelium  
 committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae  
 essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret,  
 monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.  
 Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et 410  
 montem à suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et  
 Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō  
 sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervālo, hostēs  
 sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra  
 pōnit. 415

*Helvētiōrum clādēs, fuga, reditus in finēs suōs.*

23. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīdium supererat,  
 cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod à  
 Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsis-  
 simō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, rei  
 frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs 420  
 āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs  
 L. Aemiliū, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūn-  
 tiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs  
 discēdere à sē existimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē, superi-  
 ōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve 425  
 eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfīderent,  
 commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs à novis-  
 simō āgmine insequi ac laccessere coepērunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar  
 in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret 430  
 hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō

triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum ;  
 [ita uti supra se] in summo iugo duas legiones, quas  
 in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia  
 435 auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et  
 intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iīs,  
 quī in superioriōre aciē cōstiterant, mūniri iussit. Helvētiī  
 cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum  
 locum contulērunt ; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō  
 440 equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem  
 succēssērunt.

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū  
 remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae  
 tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Milites ē locō 2  
 445 superioriōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrē-  
 gērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum  
 fecērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō, 3  
 quod plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et  
 colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque  
 450 sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant ; multī 4  
 ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū emit-  
 tere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi 5  
 et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille  
 passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et 6  
 455 succēdentibus nostris, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum  
 milibus circiter xv āgmen hostium claudēbant et novis-  
 simis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō  
 aggressi circumvenire ; et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī in  
 montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redin-  
 460 tegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō 7  
 intulērunt ; prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis  
 resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.





**X** 26. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem recepērunt, alteri ad 465  
 2 impedimenta et carrōs suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, 465  
 3 aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallō carrōs obiecerant et ē locō superiore in nostros veni- 470  
 4 entēs tela coniciebant, et non nulli inter carrōs raedasque matarās ac trāgulās subiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus ē filiis captus 475  
 5 est. **X** Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia cxxx super- 475  
 fuerunt eaque totā nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos 480  
 6 sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nunti- 480  
 osque misit, ne eos frumentō neve aliā rē iuvarent: qui si iuvissent, se eodem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse triduō intermissō, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

27. Helvētiū omnium rerum inopiā adducti legatōs dē 485  
 2 deditiōne ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedēs proiecissent suppliciterque locuti flentēs pacem petissent, atque eos in eo locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum expectāre iussisset, paru- 490  
 3 erunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsidēs, arma, 490  
 4 servos qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum milia vi eius pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive

timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur,  
 495 sive spē salutis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditi-  
 ciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī  
 posse exīstimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum  
 ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīit, quōrum per finēs ierant,  
 500 hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse  
 vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit;  
 reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in  
 dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in  
 finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iūssit; et quod  
 505 omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem  
 tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam  
 facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, resti-  
 tuere iūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit  
 eum locum, unde Helvētiū discēsserant, vacāre, nē propter  
 510 bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,  
 ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī  
 Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs peten-  
 tibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in  
 finibus suis collocārent, concēssit; quibus illī agrōs  
 515 dedērunt quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque  
 condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs  
 Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in  
 tabulīs nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō  
 520 exīssēt eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm  
 puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa  
 erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium cclxii, Tulingōrum mī-  
 lium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiv, Rauracōrum xxii, Bōiōrum  
 xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā

3 duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia cccLXVIII. Eōrum, 525  
quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperā-  
verat, repertus est numerus mīlium c. et x.

### III. BELLUM ARIOVISTI.

CC. 30-54.

*Conciliō Galliae habitō, principes civitātum cum Caesare  
sēcrētō agunt. Querēlae dē Ariovistō, Germānōrum rēge.*

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae  
lēgātī, principes civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum con-  
2 vērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvē- 530  
tiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīs-  
set, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam  
3 populī Rōmānī accidisse; propterea quod eō cōsiliō flō-  
rentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī  
Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque 535  
domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omni Gal-  
liā opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iūdicāssent, reli-  
4 quāsque civitātēs stipendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt, ut  
sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indicere id-  
que Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: sēsē habēre quāsdam 540  
5 rēs, quās ex commūnī cōsensū ab eō petere vellent. Eā  
rē permissā, diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrādō,  
nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōsiliō man-  
dātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō Idem principes civitātum, quī 545  
ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī  
sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret.  
2 Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prō-  
iēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea,  
quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, 550

impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, sum-  
 mum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro  
 his Diviciacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse  
 duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius  
 555 Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se  
 multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernibus  
 Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum  
 primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse: postea quam  
 agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac  
 560 barbari adamassent, tractos plures: nunc esse in Gallia  
 ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum his Aeduos  
 eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse;  
 magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobili-  
 tatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse.  
 565 Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute  
 et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante  
 in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare  
 nobilissimos civitatis et iure iurando civitatem obstringere,  
 sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium a populo  
 570 Romano imploraturus neque recusaturus, quo minus per-  
 petuo sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum  
 se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non  
 potuerit, ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob  
 eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad sena-  
 575 tum venire auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque iure  
 iurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed prius victoribus  
 Sequanis quam Aeduus victis accidisse, propterea quod  
 Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedis-  
 tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius  
 580 Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Se-  
 quanos decedere iuberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus

ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent,  
 11 quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs  
 annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque  
 omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent: neque enim cōnferen- 585  
 dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc  
 12 cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum  
 autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod  
 proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter  
 imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs pōscere et 590  
 in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad  
 13 nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse  
 barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius impe-  
 14 ria diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque  
 Rōmānō sit auxiliū, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, 595  
 quod Helvētīī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domici-  
 lium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortunam-  
 15 que, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta  
 Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus,  
 16 quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Cae- 600  
 sarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī vic-  
 tōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē māior  
 multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātūr, Galliamque  
 omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī 605  
 aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepē-  
 2 runt. Animadvertit Caesar tūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs  
 nihil eārum rerum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs,  
 capite dēmissō, terram intuērī. Eius rei quae causa esset,  
 3 mīrātus ex ipsīs quaeiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed 610  
 in eādē trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius  
 quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset,

Idem Diviciacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriores.  
 et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum,  
 615 quod soli nē in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium im-  
 plorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut  
 si coram adesset, horrerent; propterea quod reliquis tamen  
 fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos  
 Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate  
 620 eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

*Colloquium a Caesare postulatum, denegatur a rege. Legati a  
 Caesare mittuntur. Ariovisti responsum.*

33. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis  
 confirmavit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem curae futuram:  
 magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate  
 adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hac ora-  
 625 tione habitā, concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae  
 res eum hortabantur, qua re sibi eam rem cogitandam  
 et suscipiendam putaret, in primis, quod Aeduos, fratres  
 consanguineosque saepe numero a senatu appellatos, in  
 servitute atque in ditione videbat Germanorum teneri,  
 630 eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos in-  
 tellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpis-  
 simum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim  
 autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in  
 Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo  
 635 Romano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros  
 ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem  
 Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonique fecis-  
 sent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam conten-  
 derent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provinciā nostrā  
 640 Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam maturrimē oc-

5 currendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi  
spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn  
vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs  
mitteret, quī ab eō pōstulārent, utī aliquem locum 645  
medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē  
2 pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lē-  
gātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus  
esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit,  
3 illum ad sē venīrē oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine 650  
exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar  
possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque  
4 mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem  
mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut  
Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtiī esset. 655

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum  
2 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō  
suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōn-  
sulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset,  
hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in 660  
colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī  
rē dīscendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse,  
3 quae ab eō pōstulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem  
hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret:  
deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet Sēqua- 665  
nīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte eius  
reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve  
4 hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret. Sī id ita fēcisset,  
sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amīci-  
tiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam 670  
M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, senātus cēnsuisset, utī,

quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō  
reī pūblīcae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs  
populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn  
675 neglētūrum.

✱ 36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut,  
quī vīcissent, iīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent,  
imperārent: item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad  
alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre  
680 cōsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, 2  
quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā po-  
pulō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. ✱ Aeduōs sibi, quoniam 3  
bellī fortunam temptāssent et armīs congressī āc supe-  
rātī essent, stīpendiārīōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem 4  
685 iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra  
faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque 5  
hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō  
manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannis  
penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen  
690 populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, 6  
sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēminem sēcum  
sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregērētur: 7  
intellētūrum, quid invictī Germānī exercitātissimī in  
armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte  
695 possent.

*Aeduōrum questibus mōtus Caesar ad Ariovistum contendit,  
Vesontiōnem occupat.*

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,  
et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī 2  
questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trāns-  
portātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē, nē obsidibus

quidem datis, pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trē- 700  
 3 verī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī  
 cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnam trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse  
 4 Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar  
 vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē,  
 sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī 705  
 5 sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque, rē  
 frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, māgnīs  
 itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcēssisset, nūntiātum est eī,  
 Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum 710  
 Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum,  
 2 contendere, trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcēssisse. Id  
 nē accideret, māgnō opere sibi praecavendum Caesar exī-  
 3 stimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī  
 4 erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā 715  
 locī sic mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum  
 daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dubis ut circinō  
 5 circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum  
 spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mille sexcentōrum,  
 quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine 720  
 ita ut rādīcēs eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis  
 6 contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et  
 7 cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs  
 diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō, ibi  
 praesidium collocat.

725

*Māgna in castrīs Rōmānīs trepidātiō, Caesaris ōrātiō, iter ad  
 Ariovistum.*

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae  
 commeātusque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum

vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitū-  
 tudine corporum Germānōs, incredibilī virtūte atque  
 730 exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō  
 sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem  
 oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor  
 omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium  
 mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc primum ortus est a  
 735 tribūnīs militum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe  
 amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnū in rē  
 militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā,  
 quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret,  
 petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nullī  
 740 pudōre adductī, ut timōris sūspiciōnem vitārent, remanē-  
 bant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās  
 tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum  
 querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne perī-  
 culum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs tēstāmenta  
 745 obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam  
 illi, quī māgnū in castrīs ūsum habēbant, milites centu-  
 riōnēsque quīque equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur.  
 Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē  
 hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem  
 750 silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum,  
 aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī  
 posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nullī etiam Caesarī nūnti-  
 ābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iūssisset, nōn fore  
 dictō audientēs milites neque propter timōrem signa  
 755 lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō  
 omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriō-  
 nibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod, aut quam

in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum  
 2 aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidis- 760  
 simē populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse: cūr hunc tam  
 3 temerē quisquam ab officiō discēssūrum iūdicāret? Sibi  
 quidem persuādērī, cōgnitis suis pōstulātis atque aequitāte  
 condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī  
 4 Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque 765  
 āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verē-  
 rentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius dīligentiā  
 5 dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum  
 nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō  
 pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor 770  
 meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī  
 tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc dīsciplīna, quae ā  
 6 nōbis accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse,  
 quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod,  
 quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea 775  
 7 armātōs āc victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem  
 Germānōs, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn  
 solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus plērumque  
 superārīnt, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn  
 8 potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum 780  
 commovēret, hōs, sī quaerent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte  
 bellī defatigātis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs  
 castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem  
 fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō  
 adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. 785  
 9 Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs  
 locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs  
 10 exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmen-  
 tariae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōferrent,

790 facere arroganter, cum aut de officiō imperātōris despē-  
rāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: 11  
frumentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre,  
iamque esse in agrīs frumenta mātūra; de itinere ipsōs  
brevi tempore iudicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs 12  
795 neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī:  
scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn  
fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam defuisse aut aliquō  
facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam: suam inno-  
centiam perpetuā vitā, felicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō  
800 esse perspectam. Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem 13  
collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte de  
quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intelle-  
gere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an  
timor plūs valeret. Quod si praetereā nēmō sequātur, 14  
805 tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, de quā nōn  
dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.  
Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter 15  
virtutem cōfidēbat māximē.

41. Hāc orātiōne habitā, mirum in modum conversae  
810 sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās  
belli gerendī illāta est, princepsque decima legiō per 2  
tribūnōs militum ei grātiās ēgit, quod de sē optimum  
iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum parā-  
tissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum 3  
815 tribūnīs militum et primōrum ordinum centuriōnibus  
ēgerunt, uti Caesarī satis facerent: sē neque umquam  
dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque de summā belli suum  
iudicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse. Eōrum 4  
satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum,  
820 quod ex Gallīs ei māximam fidem habēbat, ut milium

amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum  
 dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est.  
 5 Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātō-  
 ribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia  
 passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

825

*Caesaris cum Ariovistō colloquium Germānōrum impetū  
 dīripitur.*

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad  
 eum mittit: quod antea dē colloquiō pōstulāset, id per  
 sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accēssisset, sēque id sine  
 2 periculō facere posse existimāre. Nōn respuit condi-  
 ciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbi- 830  
 trābātur, cum id, quod antea petentī dēnegāset, ūltrō  
 3 pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis  
 tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cōgnītīs suis  
 pōstulātīs, fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō  
 4 dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī 835  
 ūltrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus pōstulāvit,  
 nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī  
 sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur: uterque cum  
 equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.  
 5 Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī 840  
 volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātū com-  
 mittere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus  
 equīs Gallīs equitibus detrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs  
 legiōnis decimae, cū quam māximē cōnfidēbat, impōnere,  
 ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō 845  
 6 esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam  
 ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: plūs quam pollicitus  
 esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae  
 locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

850 **43.** Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus  
satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs  
Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad collo-  
quium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēve- 2  
xerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs  
855 Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex 3  
equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad collo-  
quium addūcerent, pōstulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar 4  
initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia comme-  
morāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus,  
860 quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs  
contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī  
docēbat; illum cum neque aditum neque causam pōstu- 5  
landī iūstam habēret, beneficiō āc liberālitate suā āc  
senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum. Docēbat etiam, quam 6  
865 veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum  
Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns 7  
quamque honōrifca in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore  
tōtius Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam  
quam nostram amīcitiam appetissent. Populī Rōmānī 8  
870 hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn  
modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre  
auctiōrēs velit esse: quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī  
Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripi quis pati posset? Pōstu- 9  
lāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē  
875 aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īferret; obsidēs red-  
deret; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere  
posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

**44.** Ariovistus ad pōstulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, 2  
dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum  
880 sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs;

Page 1000.

CASABE'S INTERVIEW WITH ARMOUSTUA.



nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedēs habere in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōsuērint.

3 Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs 885 Galliae cīvitatēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse decertāre; sī pāce uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte 890 ad id tempus pependierint. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ornāmentō et praesidiō, nōn detrīmentō esse oportere, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dediticiū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī 895 Rōmānī amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā facere: eius rei tēstimonium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam 900 vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessionēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdi nōn oportēret, sī in 905 nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse iniquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse 910 neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et

cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.  
 Dēbēre sē sūspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem 10  
 exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre.  
 915 Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiō- 11  
 nibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum.  
 Quod sī eum interfēcērit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīn- 12  
 cipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum: id sē  
 ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum  
 920 omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā ēius morte redimere  
 posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et liberā possēssiōnem Gal- 13  
 liae sibi trādīdisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūne-  
 rātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius  
 labōre et perīculō cōfectūrum.

925 45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt,  
 quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset; neque suam neque  
 populī Rōmānī cōnsuetūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs  
 sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse  
 Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse 2  
 930 Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus  
 Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset  
 neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum 3  
 quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstis-  
 simum esse in Galliā imperium: sī iūdicium senātūs  
 935 observārī oportēret, liberā dēbēre esse Galliam, quam  
 bellō victā suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum  
 est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad  
 nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōnicere.  
 940 Caesar loquendī finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque 2  
 imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent.  
 Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū 3

proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat  
 ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in col-  
 loquiō circumventōs. Postea quam in vulgus mīlitum 945  
 elātum est, quā arrogantia in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus  
 omni Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque ut in  
 nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium dīrē-  
 misset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius  
 exercitū iniectum est. 950

*Gallī lēgātī ad Ariovistum missī in vincula cōniciuntur.*

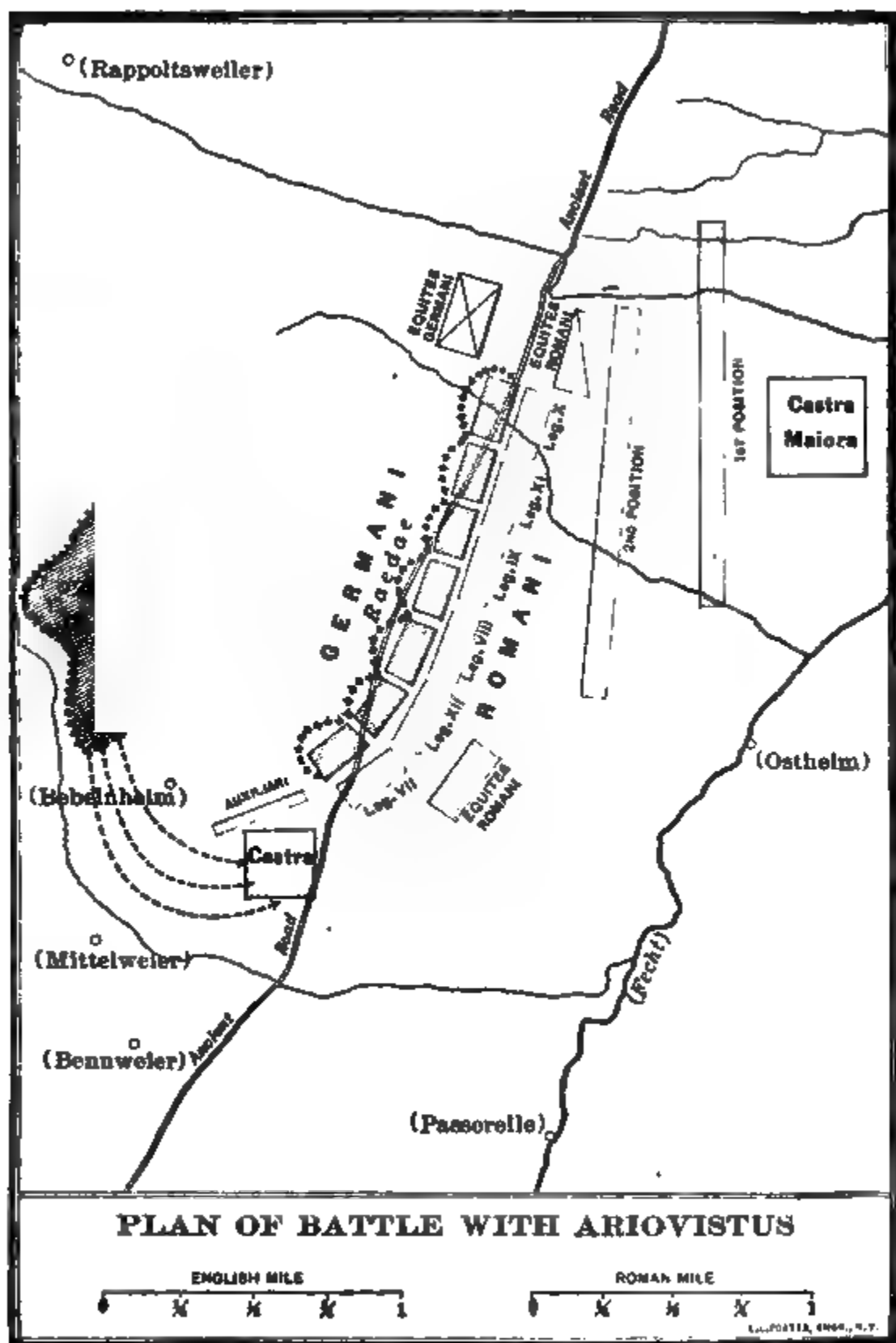
47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit :  
 Velle sē dē iīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque  
 perfectae essent, agere cum eō : utī aut iterum colloquiō  
 diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suis lēgātīs  
 aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa 955  
 nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ēius diēi Germānī  
 retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent.  
 Lēgātum ex suis sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum  
 missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum existimābat.  
 Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. 960  
 Valerī Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte  
 adulēscētem, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte  
 dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae  
 scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuē-  
 tūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa 965  
 nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et unā M. Metium, quī hospitio  
 Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ario-  
 vistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud  
 sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō prae-  
 sente conclāmāvit : quid ad sē venīrent ? an speculandī 970  
 causā ? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās cōniēcīt.

*Equestre proelium.*

48. Eōdem diē castra prēmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex  
 ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēi :  
 praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus  
 975 passuum duōbus ūltrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī  
 frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs sup-  
 portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs con- :  
 tinuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et  
 aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō  
 980 contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omni- :  
 bus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestri proeliō  
 cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Ger-  
 mānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem :  
 numerō peditēs vėlōcissimī āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī  
 985 cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salutis causā dēlēgerant : cum  
 hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant :  
 hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī graviōre vul-  
 nere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumstistēbant ; sī quō erat :  
 longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat  
 990 hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum  
 cursum adaequārent.

*Castra minōra Caesaris Ariovistus oppūgnat, proeliō dēcertāre  
 nōn audet.*

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē  
 diūtius commeātū prohiberētur, ūltrā eum locum, quō in  
 locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iīs,  
 995 castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici instrūctā ad  
 eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs :  
 esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Hīc locus ab hoste :  
 circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō





circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedita cum  
 omni equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiae nostrōs  
 4 terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar,  
 ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam  
 5 opus perficere iūssit. Mūnitis castris, duās ibi legiōnēs  
 reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra  
 māiōra redūxit. 1005

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrīsque  
 cōpiās suās edūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castris prōgres-  
 sus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcīt.  
 2 Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merī-  
 diē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus 1010  
 partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret,  
 3 mīsīt. Acrīter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum  
 est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et illātis  
 4 et acceptis vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captivīs  
 quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn 1015  
 dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs  
 ea cōsuētūdō esset, ut mātres familiae eōrum sortibus  
 et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī  
 5 ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse fās Germānōs  
 superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent. 1020

*Tandem in proelium dēscendere coācti Germānī vincuntur et ad  
 Rhēnum profugiunt. Līberantur lēgātī Gallī.*

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castris,  
 quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit, ālāriōs omnēs in  
 cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod  
 minus multitūdine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium  
 numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse, 1025  
 triplici instrūctā aciē, ūsque ad castra hostium accēssit.

Tum dēnum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdū-  
 xērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllīs,  
 Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs,  
 1030 Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs  
 circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō  
 mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscētēs  
 mīlītēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in  
 servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

1035 52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae-  
 stōrem praefēcit, utī eōs tēstēs suae quisque virtūtis  
 habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē  
 firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit.  
 Et ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs, signō datō, impetum  
 1040 fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repentē celeriterque prōcurrērunt,  
 ut spatium pīla in hostēs cōniciendī nōn darētur.  
 Rēiectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At  
 Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā,  
 impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs  
 1045 nostrī, quī in phalanga insilīrent et scūta manibus  
 revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs  
 ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā  
 dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram  
 aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus  
 1050 adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expeditior erat  
 quam īī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem  
 labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsīt.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs  
 terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad  
 1055 flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque  
 pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōfīsī trānāre  
 contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperē-

3 runt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam dēligātam  
 ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit: reliquōs omnēs cōsecūtī  
 4 equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī 1060  
 uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat,  
 altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā  
 dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit.  
 Duae filiae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.  
 5 C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs 1065  
 catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs  
 6 equitātū persequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari  
 nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit,  
 quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum  
 familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi 1070  
 restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā  
 voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortuna dēminuerat.  
 7 Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dīcēbat,  
 utrum ignī statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus reser-  
 8 vārētur: sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. 1075  
 Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

*Suebī domum revertuntur. In hīberna dēdūcitur exercitus.  
 Caesar in citeriōrem Galliam proficiscitur.*

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad  
 rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs  
 Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt:  
 2 Insecūtī māgnū ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar unā 1080  
 aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō  
 quam tempus annī pōstulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs ex-  
 3 ercitus dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in  
 citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

## COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

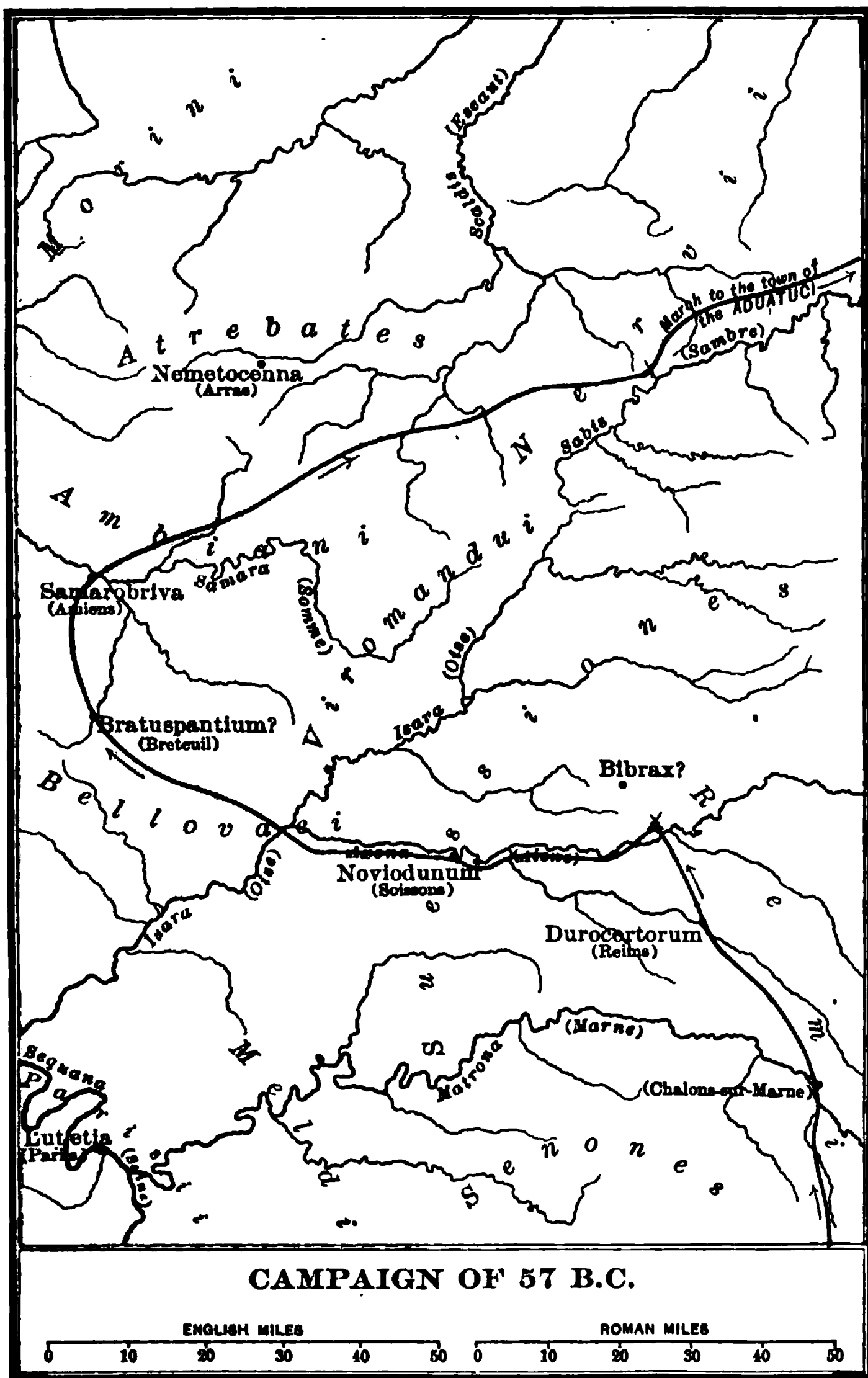
### I. BELLUM BELGICUM.

CC. I-33.

*Coniūrātiō Belgārum praeter Rēmōs, quī sē in fidem Caesaris permittunt.*

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā  
dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur,  
litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās,  
quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā  
5 populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.  
Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur, nē  
omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur;  
deinde, quod ab nōn nullīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim  
quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita  
10 populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in  
Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte  
animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nullīs etiam, quod  
in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs  
hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur,  
15 quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī  
poterant.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legi-  
ōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte,  
in ūlteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum  
20 mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad





3 exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque  
 Gallīs quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs  
 gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem  
 4 faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī,  
 exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitan- 25  
 5 dum nōn existimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē  
 frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque circiter  
 quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne  
 vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad 30  
 eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis,  
 4 mīsērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque  
 in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum  
 reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmā-  
 5 num coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et 35  
 imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīs-  
 4 que rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse,  
 Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs  
 5 coniūnxisse, tantūque esse eōrum omnium furōrem,  
 ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, 40  
 quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum impe-  
 rium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere  
 potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.

#### *Orīgō et cōpiae Belgārum.*

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque  
 in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: 45  
 plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque  
 antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsē-  
 2 disse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque  
 esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā,

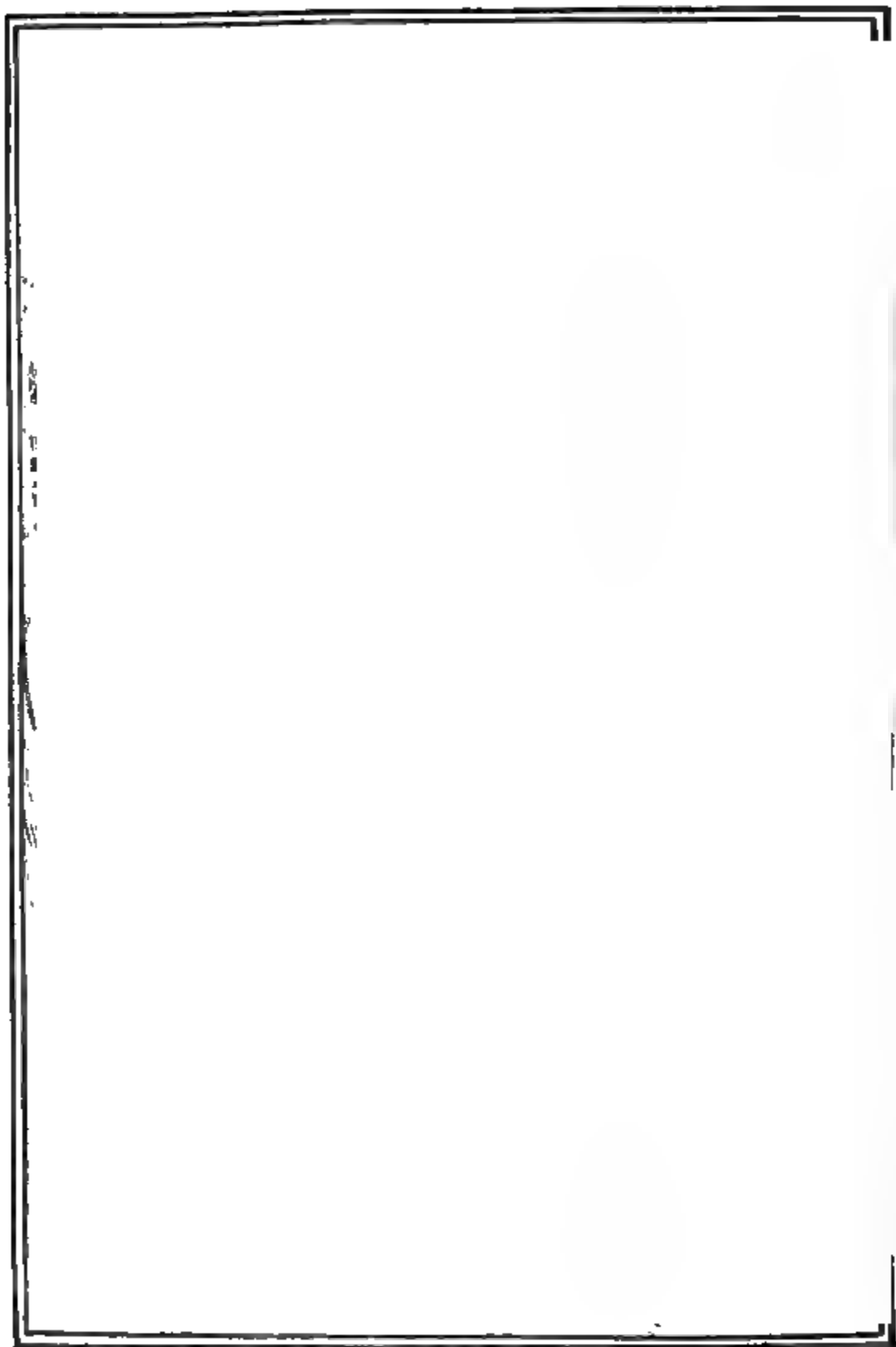
50 Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi prohibue-  
 rint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam s  
 sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī  
 sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta 4  
 Rēmī dicēbant, proptereā quod, propinquitātibus affīni-  
 55 tātibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in  
 commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit,  
 cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et 5  
 auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōn-  
 ficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta  
 60 sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi pōstulāre. Sues- 6  
 siōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque  
 agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam 7  
 memoriā Diviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī  
 cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Bri-  
 65 tanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse rēgem Galbam:  
 ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque summam  
 tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre 8  
 numerō duodecim, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā;  
 totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur  
 70 longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Am- 9  
 biānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii  
 mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs  
 totidem, Aduatucōs xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, 10  
 Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appel-  
 75 lantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

*Castra Caesaris ad Axonam.*

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne  
 prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque  
 liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iūssit. Quae omnia ab hīs



A ROMAN CAMP.



2 diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Aeduum  
 māgnoperē cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei pūblīcae 80  
 commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī,  
 nē cum tantā multitudine ūnō tempore cōflīgendum sit.  
 3 Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum  
 intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs  
 4 datīs mandātīs, eum ā sē dīmīttit. Postquam omnēs 85  
 Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre  
 vidit neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs miserat explō-  
 rātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod  
 est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere  
 5 mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus 90  
 ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum  
 quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab  
 Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum  
 6 portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi  
 praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium 95  
 Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra  
 in altitudinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duo-  
 dēvigintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

*Bibrax, Rēmōrum oppidum ā Belgīs obsessum, ā Caesare  
 obsidiōne liberātur. Discēdentēs Belgae clāde afficiuntur.*

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax  
 aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū 100  
 Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum  
 2 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est  
 haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudine hominum tōtis moeni-  
 bus undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrusque  
 dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, tēstūdine factā portās succē- 105  
 3 dunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam

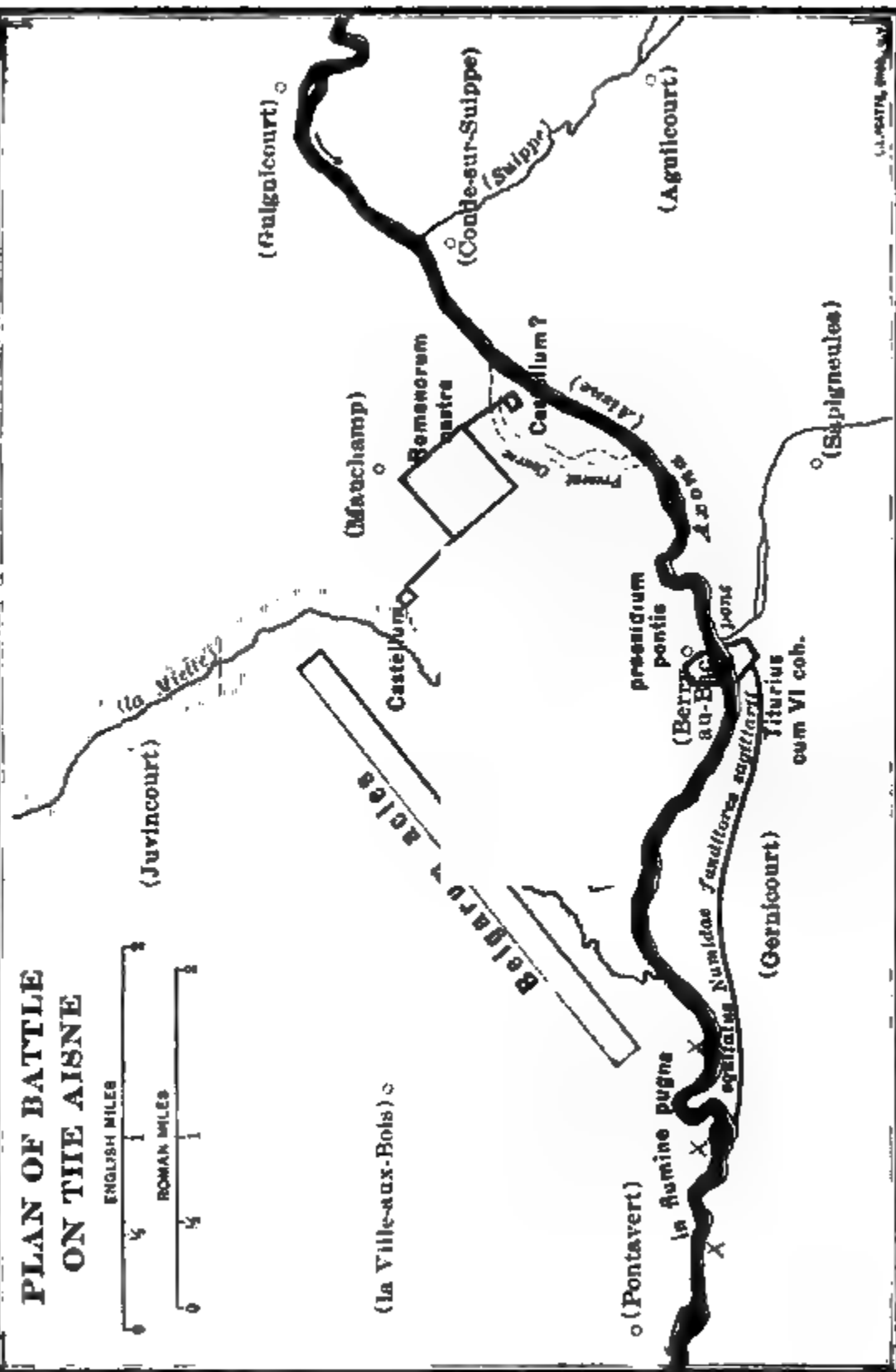
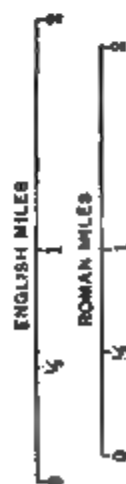
cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī 4  
 nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā  
 110 inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī  
 lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum  
 mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius  
 sustinēre nōn posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar iisdem ducibus ūsus, quī  
 115 nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs  
 et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum 2  
 adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpū-  
 gnandī accēssit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī  
 oppidī discēssit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī 3  
 120 agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiīs-  
 que quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris om-  
 nibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus  
 duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque 4  
 ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in  
 125 lātitudinem patēbant.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et  
 propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre  
 statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis  
 virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur.  
 180 Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs 2  
 ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō,  
 quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex  
 plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat,  
 quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque  
 185 ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem  
 lēniter fāstīgātus paulātīm ad plānitiam redībat, ab 3  
 utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit



# PLAN OF BATTLE ON THE AISNE



circiter passuum eo et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōsti-  
 tuit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrū-  
 xisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab  
 lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc  
 factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in  
 castris relictis, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci pos-  
 sent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit.  
 Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium  
 exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent hostēs expectābant;  
 nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impe-  
 dītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim  
 proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi  
 neutri trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum  
 proeliō nostris, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs  
 prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt,  
 quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs  
 repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt,  
 eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q.  
 Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent;  
 sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī  
 māgnō nobīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, comme-  
 ātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum  
 et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque  
 ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acrīter in eō  
 locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine  
 aggressī māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt: per eōrum  
 corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multi-  
 tudine tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōsque, quī trānsierant,  
 equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē

expugnandō oppidō et de flūmine transeundō spem sē  
 170 fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem  
 prōgredi pūgnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frū-  
 mentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōstituērunt  
 optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum  
 in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad  
 175 eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs  
 quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis  
 rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum  
 reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod  
 Diviciācum atque Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appro-  
 180 pinquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādērī, ut diūtius morā-  
 rentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum stre-  
 pitū ac tumultū castris ēgressī nullō certō ordine neque  
 imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret  
 185 et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis  
 fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per  
 speculātōrēs cōgnitā, insidiās veritus, quod, quā de causā  
 discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque  
 castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explō-  
 190 rātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen  
 morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium  
 Cottam lēgātōs praefecit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum  
 legiōnibus tribus subsequī iūssit. Hī novissimōs adorti  
 et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitudinem  
 195 eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine,  
 ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum  
 nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā  
 periculō vidērētur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō  
 continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus,

omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō 200  
periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfē-  
cērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsum sōlis  
sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum,  
recēpērunt.

*Suessiōnēs in fidem accipiuntur.*

12. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar, prius quam sē hostēs 205  
ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī  
proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere  
2 [cōnfectō] ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex  
itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōri-  
bus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque 210  
altitudinem paucis dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit.  
3 Castris mūnītis, vineās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum  
4 ūsul erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā  
Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte con-  
5 vēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō 215  
turribusque cōstitutis, māgnitudine operum, quae neque  
viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmā-  
nōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mit-  
tunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

*Caesar Bellovacōs, petente Dīviciācō, in fidem recipit, dē Ner-  
viōrum nātūrā mōribusque quaerit.*

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, primis cīvitātis atque 220  
ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiis armisque omnibus ex  
oppidō trāditis, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exer-  
2 citumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia  
in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō  
oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum 225  
quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi

manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in ēius fidem āc potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad  
 230 oppidum accēssisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī muli-  
 resque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discēssum Belgārum dīmissis Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba :  
 235 Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis  
 Aeduae fuisse : impulsōs ā suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsiliū  
 240 prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis-  
 se. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs,  
 ut suā clēmētiā āc mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod  
 sī fēcērit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās  
 245 amplificātūrum ; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit ; et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque homi-  
 250 num multītūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popōscit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō  
 locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervīi attingēbant ;  
 quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic  
 255 reperiēbat : Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus :  
 nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriā perti-  
 nentium īferri, quod iīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs

[eōrum] et remitti virtutem existimarent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriam- 260  
que virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*Nerviōs, multis utrimque clādibus acceptis, Caesar vincit cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs accipitque in dēditiōnem.*

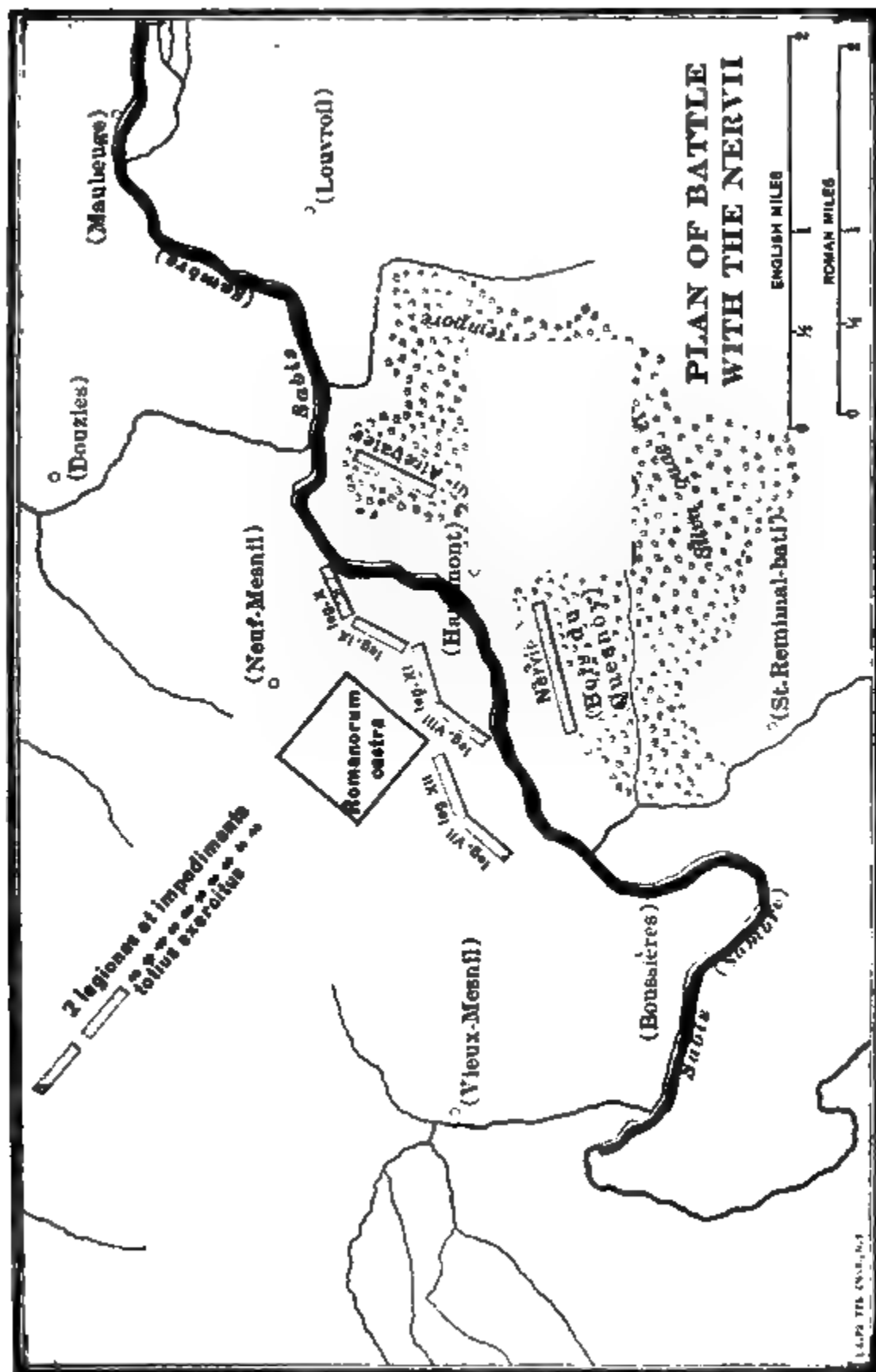
16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīdium iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn  
amplius mīlia passuum x abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs 265  
Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre unā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suis (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortū-  
nam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Aduatucōrum  
cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs, quīque per aetātem 270  
ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum cōniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque  
praemittit, quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex  
dēditiciīs Belgis reliquīsque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem 275  
secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captivīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse 280  
quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium abessent, hanc sub  
sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentis et direptis futurum, ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent.  
Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, 285

quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiis) quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, 290 teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque interiectis effecerant, ut instar muri hae saepes munimentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostrī impedirētur, 295 nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimāverunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castris delēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter declivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab 2 eō flūmine parī acclivitāte collis nascēbātur, adversus 300 huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ā superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eas silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē 3 continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō 305 pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ordōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod hostibus appro- 2 pinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae 3 erant, tōtum āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditoribus sagittariisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium 4 815 commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos 5 reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent,





neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca  
 aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim  
 legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra  
 mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedīmenta nostrī exer- 320  
 citūs ab iīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod  
 tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā  
 silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē  
 cōnfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt  
 impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile 325  
 pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen  
 dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore ad silvās et in  
 flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur.  
 Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra  
 atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt. 330

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum  
 prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī  
 oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī  
 militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcēs-  
 serant, arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, 335  
 sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem tem-  
 poris brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs dif-  
 ficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus  
 militum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī  
 oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere 340  
 quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singu-  
 lisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi  
 mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem  
 et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium  
 expectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur, administrābant. 345

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs  
 militēs, quam [in] partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et

ad legiōnem decimam dēvenit. Militēs nōn longiōre  
ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis  
350 memoriā retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hosti-  
umque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius  
hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliū  
committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem  
item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit.  
355 Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus  
ad dīmīcandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insīgnia accom-  
modanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque  
tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque  
ab opere in partem cāsū dēvenit quaeque prīma sīgna  
360 cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis  
pūgnandī tempus dīmītteret.

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque  
collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei militāris ratiō  
atque ōrdō pōstulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā  
365 in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis, ut  
ante dēmōstrāvimus, interiectis, prōspectus impedīrētur,  
neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque  
parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia  
administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte  
370 fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā  
parte aciē cōstiterant, pilis ēmissis, cursū ac lassitudīne  
exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs  
ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen  
375 compulērunt et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiis māgnam  
partem eōrum impedītā interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire  
flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī  
rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam

3 coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs,  
 undecima et octāva, prōfligātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum 380  
 erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs  
 4 proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā  
 parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et  
 nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs  
 Nervii cōfertissimō āgmine duce Boduognātō, quī 385  
 summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt;  
 5 quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre,  
 pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae  
 peditēs, quī cum iīs unā fuerant, quōs primō hostium 390  
 impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent,  
 adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem  
 2 fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac  
 summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse  
 cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent 395  
 et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs  
 3 fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedi-  
 mentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique  
 4 aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus  
 rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs 400  
 virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā cīvitatē  
 missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium  
 castra [nostra] complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circum-  
 ventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās  
 dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, 405  
 5 dēsperātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmā-  
 nōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum  
 hostēs potītōs cīvitatī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum

410 cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnisque in ūnum locum  
collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs  
ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis  
omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō,  
sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē cen-  
415 turiōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmi-  
pīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravi-  
busque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn  
posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis,  
dēsertō locō, proeliō excēdere āc tēla vitāre, hostēs neque  
420 ā fronte ex Inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab  
utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque  
ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab  
novissimis [ūnī] mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō  
vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcēssit centuriōnibusque  
425 nōminātīm appellātis reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna  
īferre et manipulōs laxāre iūssit, quō facilius gladiis  
ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus āc redin-  
tegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperā-  
tōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet,  
430 paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōn-  
stiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum  
monuit, ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et con-  
versa sīgna in hostēs īferrent. Quō factō, cum aliis  
435 aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste  
circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre  
coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in  
novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō  
nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus  
440 cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potītus

et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsīt.  
 5 Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātōr versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem 445 sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

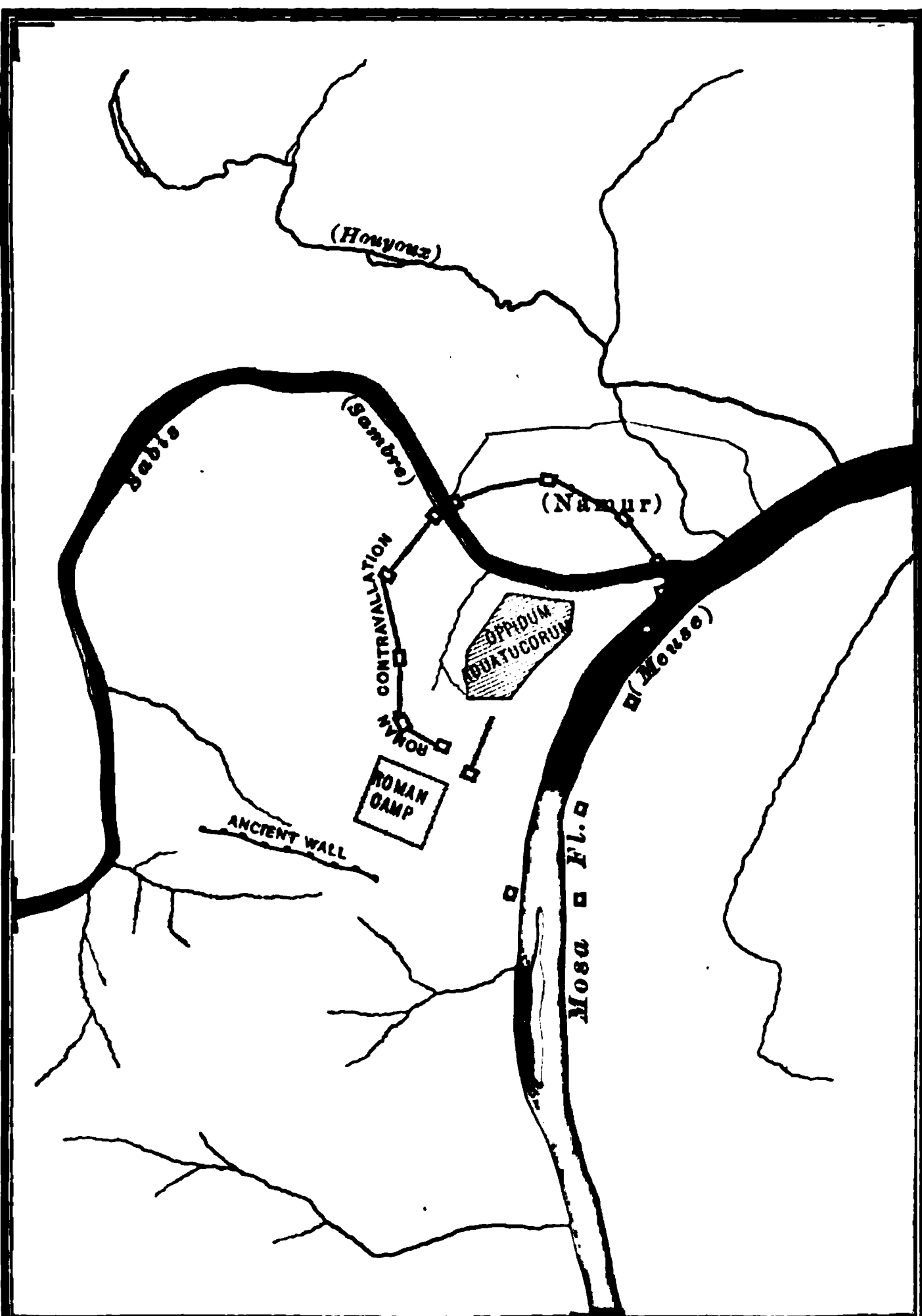
27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs, perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī, etiam inermēs armātīs occur- 450 rerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlerent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum 455 corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumultō, tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, āscendere altissimās rīpās, 460 subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs unā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs con- 465 iectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex 470 hominum mīlibus lx vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre

possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in 3  
 miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligen-  
 tissimē cōservāvit suisque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iūs-  
 475 sit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē  
 suōsque prohibērent.

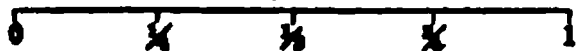
*Item Aduatucī subiguntur.*

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus  
 cōpiīs auxiliō Nervīis venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex  
 itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque 2  
 480 dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā  
 mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū 3  
 partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex  
 parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in latitūdinem nōn amplius  
 pedum ducentōrum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī  
 485 altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum māgnī ponderis saxa  
 et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex 4  
 Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvin-  
 ciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, iīs impedīmentīs,  
 quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen  
 490 Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiam ex suis āc praesidium sex  
 mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum 5  
 multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum  
 Inferrent, aliās illātuīm dēfenderent, cōsēnsū eōrum  
 omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.  
 495 30. Āc primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex  
 oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliīs cum  
 nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum xii in circuitū 3  
 xv mīlium crēbrisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē  
 continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim 3  
 500 procul cōstituī vidērunt, primum irridēre ex mūrō atque

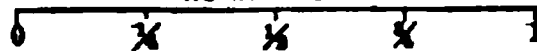


# SIEGE OF ADUATUCA

ENGLISH MILES



ROMAN MILES





increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō  
 1 spatiō Instruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus  
 vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plē-  
 rumque omnibus Gallis prae māgnitūdine corporum  
 suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris 505  
 turrim in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōfiderent.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vidē-  
 runt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad  
 Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī, ad hunc modum locūtī:  
 2 nōn sē existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum 510  
 gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeri-  
 tāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī  
 3 permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere āc dēprecārī: sī forte  
 prō suā clēmētiā āc mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs  
 audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē 515  
 4 armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs  
 āc suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs  
 5 armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum  
 dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī,  
 quam ab hīs per cruciātum interfici, inter quōs dominārī 520  
 cōsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōsuētūdine  
 suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius  
 quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēdi-  
 2 tiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē 525  
 id, quod in Nervīs fēcisset, factūrum finitimisque impe-  
 rātūrum, nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam  
 3 inferrent. Rē renūtiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur,  
 4 facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō  
 in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sic ut 530  
 prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervi

armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

535 33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iūssit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, 2 cōnsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc- tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, 540 partim cum iīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factis aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās pōstulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs āscēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente 545 ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursus est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita 4 ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla 550 iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs [salūtis] cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quatuor, 5 reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius 6 diēi, refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī 555 ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs, quī ēmerant, capitum 7 numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

## II. CRASSI IN AREMORICAS CIVITATES EXPEDITIO.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, 560 Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvi-

tātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

III. RES EXEUNTE ANNO GESTAE.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, 565 quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē 570 revertī iūssit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliā profectus est; ob eāsque rēs ex lītterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī.

## COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

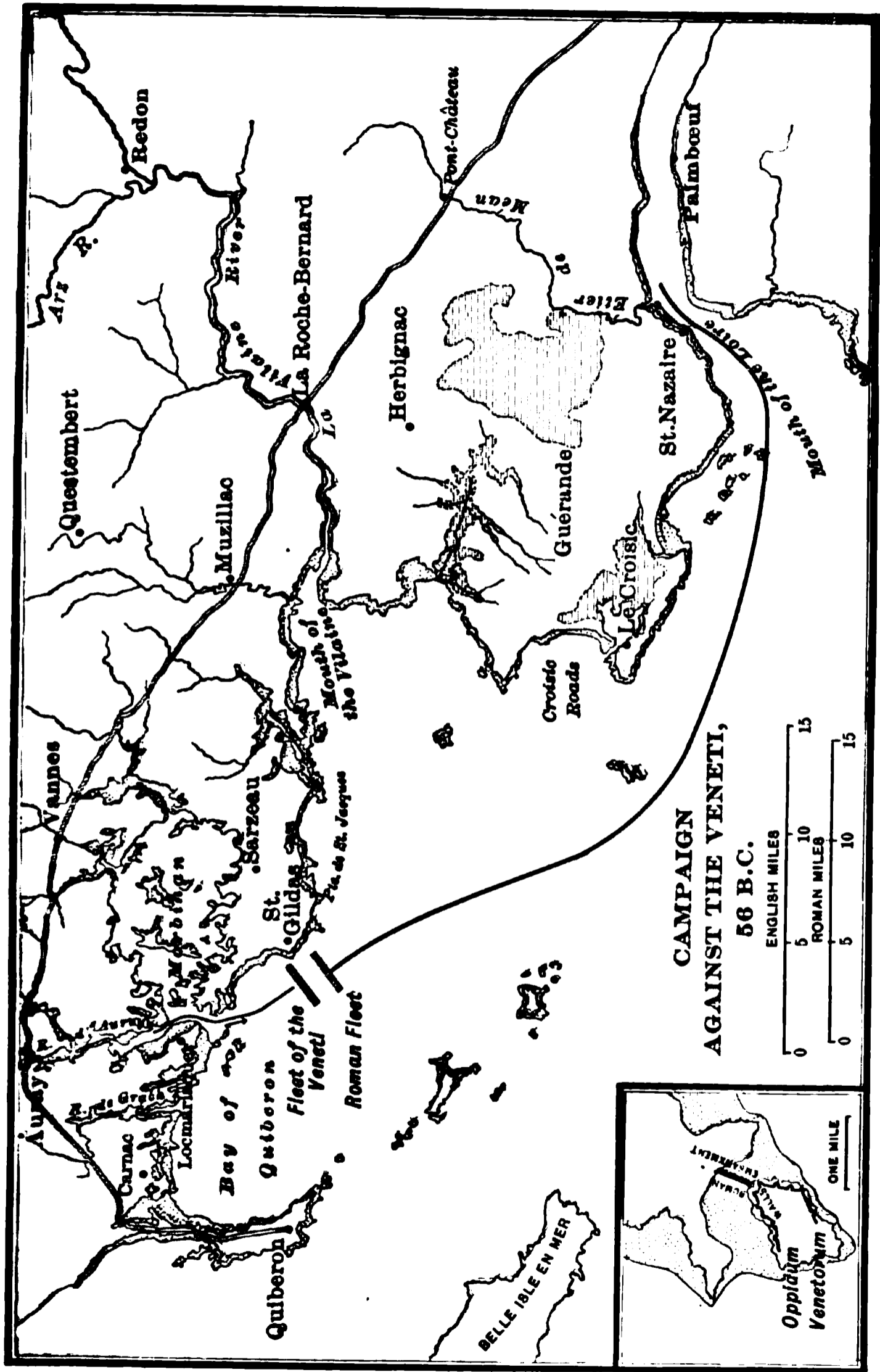
### I. BELLUM CUM GENTIBUS ALPINIS.

CC. 1-6.

*Galba lēgātus Caesaris gentēs quāsdam sub Alpibus sitās  
rebellantēs vincit; postea in prōvinciam redit.*

1. Cum in Ītaliā proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam  
cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs,  
Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum  
et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs  
5 pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō  
māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs  
ire cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus  
esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā  
collocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castel-  
10 lisque compluribus eōrum expūgnātis, missis ad eum  
undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōnsti-  
tuit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum  
reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī  
appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle,  
15 nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimis montibus undique  
continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur,  
alteram partem eius vicī Gallis concēssit, alteram vacuam  
ab hīs relictam cohortibus [ad hiemandum] attribuit.  
Eum locum vāllō fossaque mūnīvit.

20 2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsissent, frūmen-





tumque eō comportārī iūssisset, subito per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī, quam Gallīs concēserat, omnēs noctū discēssisse montēsque, quī impendērent, ā māximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum  
 2 tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subito Gallī bellī 25 renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem neque eam plēnissimam, detrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem 30 locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tela cōnicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessi- 35 ōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūntiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod 40 dēditione factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōsiliō celeriter convocātō, 1 sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī periculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armātōrum com- 45 plēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī sententiae dicēbantur, ut impedimentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem 50 2 contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō

ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experīri et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut rēbus, quās cōstitu-  
55 issent, collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum cōnicere. Nostrī primō integrīs vīri- 2  
bus fortiter propugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta  
60 dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs 3  
dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliū integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī 4  
nihil poterat, āc nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī,  
65 sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī, ubi cōstiterat, relinquendī āc suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur āc nōn solum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs  
70 vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius 2  
Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volu-  
sēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliū māgnī et virtūtis,  
75 ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salutis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experī-  
rentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter militēs 3  
certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium āc tantum modo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre refi-  
80 cerent, post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iūssī sunt, faciunt, āc subitō omnibus portīs

ēruptiōne factā, neque cōgnōscendī, quid fieret, neque  
 2 suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita com-  
 mūtātā fortunā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum 85  
 vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex homi-  
 num mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum  
 ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā,  
 reliquōs perterritōs in fugam cōniciunt ac nē in locīs  
 3 quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus 90  
 hostium cōpiīs fūsis armisque exūtis sē intrā mūnī-  
 4 tiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius  
 fortunam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna  
 cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat,  
 māximē frūmentī commeātūque inopiā permōtus, posterō 95  
 diē, omnibus eius vicī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam  
 5 revertī contendit ac, nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter  
 dēmorante, incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in  
 Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

## II. BELLUM VENETICUM.

CC. 7-16.

*Aremoricae gentēs auctōritāte Venetōrum adductae obsidēs  
repōscunt.*

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar 100  
 pācātā Galliam existimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs  
 Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme  
 in Illyricum profectus esset, quōd eās quoque nātiōnēs  
 adire et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in  
 2 Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus 105  
 adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum  
 3 in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frū-  
 mentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūres in

finitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō  
 110 est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in  
 Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās  
 omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs  
 habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre  
 115 cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs  
 antecēdunt et in māgnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī,  
 paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē,  
 quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit  
 initium retinendī Siliī atque Velāniī, quod per eōs suōs  
 120 sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existi-  
 mābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt  
 Gallōrum subita et repentina cōnsilia, eādem dē causā  
 Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs  
 lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi  
 125 commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortunae  
 exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut  
 in eā libertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, permanēre  
 quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre māllent. Omnī  
 ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā,  
 130 commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit  
 suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

*Caesar classem parat ad eōs subigendōs.*

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus,  
 quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī  
 in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex  
 135 prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī  
 iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum prī-  
 mum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

1 Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs, cōgnitō Caesaris ad-  
 ventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīssissent,  
 intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs 140  
 sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et  
 in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitudine perīculī bellum  
 parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent,  
 prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum  
 4 nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa 145  
 aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter inscientiam  
 5 locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs  
 exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē  
 6 morārī posse cōnfidēbant; āc iam ut omnia contrā  
 opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse; 150  
 Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque  
 eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs,  
 7 insulās nōvisse; āc longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in  
 conclusō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō  
 8 Oceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs, oppida mūni- 155  
 unt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in  
 Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōn-  
 9 stābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sōciōs sibi ad  
 id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs,  
 Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt: auxilia ex 160  
 Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā  
 ostendimus, sed tamen Caesarem multa ad id bellum  
 2 incitābant: iniūriae retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum,  
 rebelliō facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, 165  
 tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs, nē hāc parte neglēctā  
 3 reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque  
 cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre

et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem  
 170 hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servi-  
 tūtis ōdisse, prius quam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōspīrārent, par-  
 tiendum sibi āc lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī  
 proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huīc  
 175 mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō  
 contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī  
 dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur,  
 prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII  
 et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī  
 180 iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur  
 āc tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum  
 lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas  
 Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D.  
 Brūtum adulēscentem clāssī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex  
 185 Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus con-  
 venīre iūsserat, praeficit et, cum prīnum posset, in Vene-  
 tōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

*Oppidōrum nāviumque Venetōrum dēscriptiō.*

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in  
 extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum  
 190 habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod [bis]  
 accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod  
 rūsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflīctārentur. Ita  
 utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; āc sī  
 quandō māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī  
 195 aggere āc mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs,  
 dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium  
 appulsō, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua

dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant :  
ibi sē rursus isdem opportunitatibus loci dēfendēbant.

3 Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod 200  
nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque  
erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs āc  
prope nullīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae  
armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam 205  
nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcēssum aestūs  
2 excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item  
puppēs ad māgnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accom-  
3 modātae, nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim  
et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in 210  
altitudinem trabibus cōufixa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis  
crassitudine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae;  
4 pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter  
inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs Inscientiam, sive eō, quod  
est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī 215  
tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī āc tanta onera  
nāvium rēgī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.  
5 Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssī eius modī congressus erat,  
ut unā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua  
prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra 220  
6 et accommodātiōra. Neque enim hīs nostrae rōstrō  
nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat fīrmitūdō), neque  
propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē  
7 causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat,  
ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et 225  
tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius  
et ab aestū relictāe nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum  
rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

*Venetī nāvālī proeliō dēvictī sē dēdunt, et sub corōnā  
vēnduntur.*

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intel-  
230 lēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam  
captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit  
exspectandam clāssem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum  
ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātis-  
simae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae  
235 ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō,  
quī clāssī praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque,  
quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōstābat, quid  
agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae Insisterent. Rōstrō  
enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem  
240 excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbarīs nāvibus  
superābat, ut neque ex Inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla  
adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna  
erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs prae-  
acūtāe insertae affīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā  
245 mūrālīum falcium. Iīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad  
mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nā-  
vigio rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs  
antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gal-  
licīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōsisteret,  
250 hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.  
Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī  
militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōn-  
spectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut  
nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset: omnēs enim  
255 collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus  
in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae  
 āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trān-  
 2 scendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam  
 barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus 260  
 nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā  
 3 salūtem petere contendērunt. Āc iam conversīs in eam  
 partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia  
 āc tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent.  
 4 Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum māximē 265  
 fuit opportūna: nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expūgnā-  
 vērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū  
 ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque  
 ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae 270  
 2 maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs,  
 omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsiliī  
 aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod  
 3 ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs,  
 reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum 275  
 oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia  
 4 Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindi-  
 candum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus  
 ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī  
 senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit. 280

### III. BELLUM VENELLORUM.

CC. 17-19.

*Sabīnus, lēgātus Caesaris, Venellōs superat.*

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus  
 cum iīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellō-

rum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam  
imperii tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum, quae defēce-  
285 rant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat;  
atque hīs paucis diēbus Aulerci Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque  
senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant,  
portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt:  
māgnaque praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā per-  
290 ditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs  
praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotidiānō  
labōre sēvocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō  
castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum  
mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiīs  
295 pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus  
in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum  
mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīni-  
ōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum  
hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod  
300 cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente,  
quī summam imperiū tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut oppor-  
tūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn existi-  
mābat.

18. Hāc cōfīrmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam  
305 hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs, quōs auxiliī  
causā sēcum habēbat. Huīc māgnīs praemiīs pollicitā-  
tiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid  
fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit,  
timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustīs ipse  
310 Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet neque longius abesse  
quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum  
ēducāt et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur.  
Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem

negōtiū bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī  
 6 oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortāban- 315  
 tur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōn-  
 firmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum dīligerter  
 ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē  
 7 libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Iiīs rēbus  
 adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex 320  
 conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab iīs sit concēssum, arma  
 8 utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concēssā  
 laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultisque col-  
 lēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra  
 pergunt. 325

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō  
 acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Ilūc māgnō cursū con-  
 tendērunt, ut quam minimum spatiū ad sē colligendōs  
 armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātique pervēnē-  
 2 runt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. 330  
 Impeditīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera,  
 3 subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est  
 opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnsientiā āc dēfatīgātiōne,  
 virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārū exercitātiōne,  
 ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent āc 335  
 4 statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs  
 nostrī cōsecūtī māgnū numerum eōrum occīdērunt;  
 reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāse-  
 5 rant, reliquērunt. Sic unō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā  
 Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus, 340  
 6 civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam  
 ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer āc prōptus est  
 animus, sic mollis āc minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs  
 ferendās mēns eōrum est.

## IV. CRASSI IN AQUITANIAM EXPEDITIO.

CC. 20-27.

*Sōtiātēs ā Crassō vincuntur.*

345 20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquī-  
tāniam pervēnisset, quae [pars], ut ante dictum est, et  
regiōnum lātitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertiā  
parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellexeret in iīs locīs  
sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius  
350 Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset,  
atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissīs pro-  
fūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intel-  
legēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitā-  
tūque comparātō, multis praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā  
355 et Carcarsōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitatēs Galliae  
prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātīm ēvocātīs,  
in Sōtiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū  
cōgnitō, Sōtiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō  
plūrimum valēbant, in itinere āgmen nostrum adortī pri-  
360 mum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō  
pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās,  
quās in convalle in īnsidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt.  
Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs  
365 superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquitā-  
niae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine  
imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscutulō duce  
efficere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem cōfectī vul-  
neribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō  
370 interfectō, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppū-  
gnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēs-

que ēgit. Illi aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctis (cūius rei sunt longē perītissimī Aquītāni, proptereā quod multis locis apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus 375 prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iūssī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperiī 380 tenēbat, cum de dēvōtis, quōs illi soldūriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum iis fruantur, quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, si quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant 3 aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum 385 memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, morī recūsāret: cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum 390 tamen, utī eādē dēditionis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

*Crassus aliās nātiōnēs aggreditur.*

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari commōti, quod oppidum et nātūrā loci et manū mūnītum 395 paucis diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quoque versus dīmittere, coniūrāre, 3 obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitatēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquītāniae: inde auxilia ducēsque arces- 400

suntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et  
 māgnā [cum] hominum multitudine bellum gerere cōnan-  
 tur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur, quī unā cum Q. Sertōriō  
 omnēs annōs fuerant summamquē scientiam rei militāris  
 405 habēre existimābantur. Iī cōsuētūdine populī Rōmānī  
 loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs inter-  
 clūdere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās  
 cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et  
 vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidiū relinquere,  
 410 ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeā-  
 tumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī,  
 nōn cunctandum existimāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret.  
 Hāc rē ad cōsiliū dēlātā ubi omnēs idem sentīre  
 intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit. .

415 **24.** Primā lūce, prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs duplicī aciē  
 institūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem cōniectīs, quid hostēs  
 cōsiliū caperent, expectābat. Illi, etsī propter multitu-  
 dinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum  
 sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse  
 420 arbitrābantur, obsessīs viīs commeātū interclūsō sine  
 vulnere victōriā potīrī, et, sī propter inopiam rei frūmen-  
 tariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in  
 āgmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō adorīrī cōgitā-  
 bant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmā-  
 425 nōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā,  
 Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris  
 hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriorēs ad pūgnandum effēcis-  
 sent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur, expectārī diūtius  
 nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra Irētur, cohortātus suōs  
 430 omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

**25.** Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis

coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opīniōnem 435 pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre  
 2 missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitis hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādē esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre. 440

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnis praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri  
 2 velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis iis cohortibus, quae praesidiō castris relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium 445 castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pūgnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quās diximus, mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutis prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt, quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut, quid  
 4 rei gererētur, cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā 450 parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre  
 5 coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem  
 6 petere contendērunt. Quos equitātus apertissimis campis 455 cōsectātus, ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recipit.

*Māxima pars Aquitāniae in dēditionem accipitur.*

27. Hāc auditā pūgnā, māxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ūltrō mīsit; quō in numerō 460

fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ūltimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod 2 hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

V. EXPEDITIO CAESARIS IN MORINOS MENAPIOSQUE.

cc. 28–29.

465 28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī  
470 longē aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae 2 proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum 3  
475 Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre Instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dīpersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt 4 eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs  
480 longius impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam,  
485 quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte 3 māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī

dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs  
cōnsecūtae, utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et conti- 490  
nuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continēri  
3 nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs  
aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in  
Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae  
proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocāvit. 495

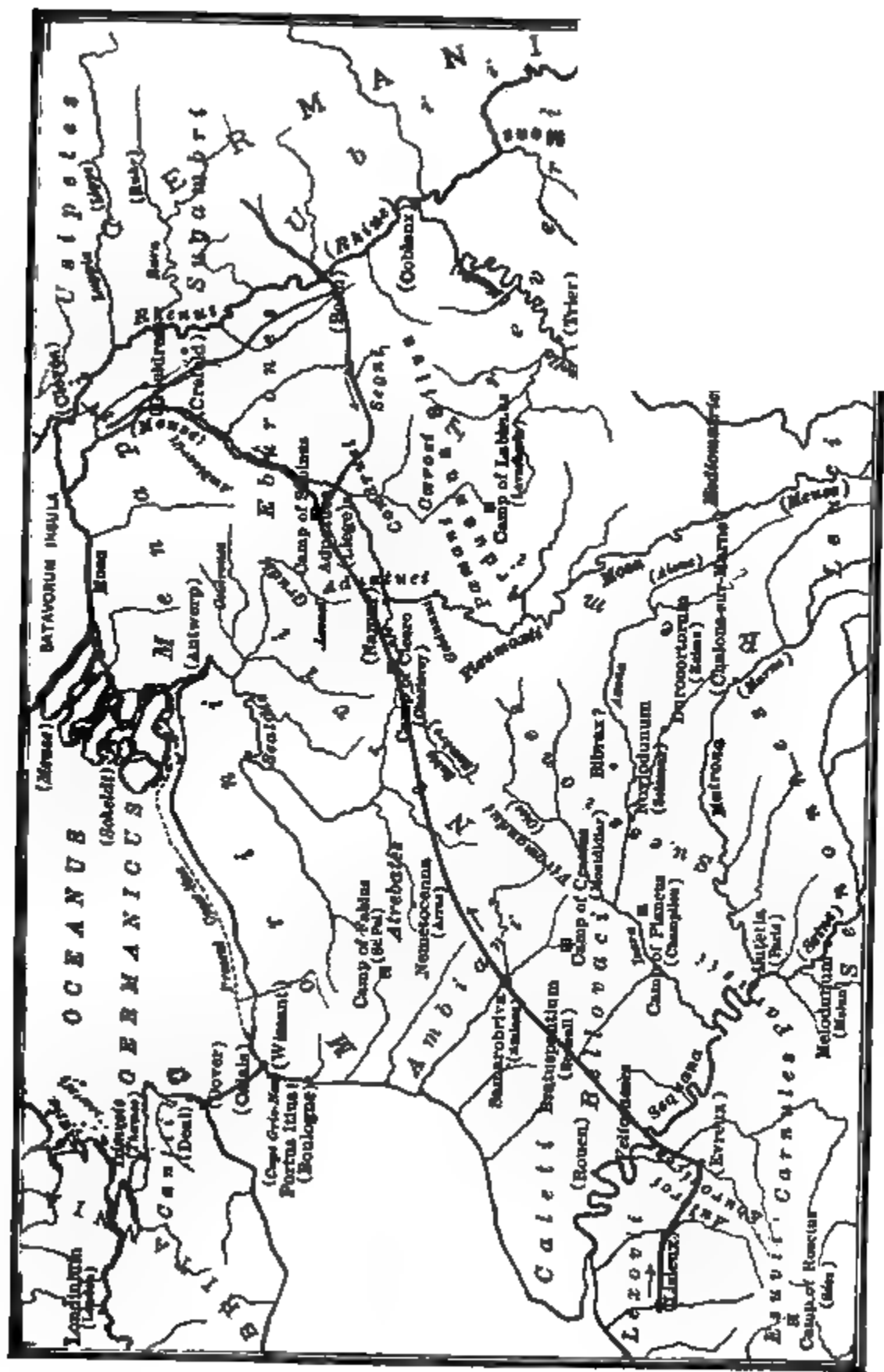
## COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

### I. BELLUM GERMANORUM.

CC. I-15.

*Usipetēs et Tencterī Germānī in Galliam trānseunt, Menapiōs opprimunt.*

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus  
5 influit. Causa trānseundi fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bel-  
licōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia  
10 armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēducunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic  
neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque  
15 longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus;  
quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitāe, quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplinā  
20 assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et





virēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs  
 10 efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut  
 locīs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent  
 quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est cor-  
 poris pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus. 25

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō  
 cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem  
 2 ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, qui-  
 bus māximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant  
 pretiō, [Germānī] importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt 30  
 apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotidiānā  
 3 exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Eque-  
 stribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proe-  
 liantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcē-  
 4 runt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque 35  
 eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur  
 5 quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephip-  
 6 piātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire audent. Vinum  
 omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad  
 labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī 40  
 arbitrantur.

3. Publicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam lātis-  
 simē ā suīs finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī,  
 māgnū numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn  
 2 posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia 45  
 3 passuum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram  
 partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque  
 flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam  
 sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, proptereā  
 quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs 50  
 ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt

mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs 4  
expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis  
finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi  
55 fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs  
suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim susti-  
nuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs  
Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt:  
60 quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rī- 2  
pam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tan-  
tae multitudinis adventū perterritī, ex iīs aedificiīs, quae 3  
trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et cis Rhēnum  
dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illī 4  
65 omnia expertī cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam  
nāvium neque clam trānsire propter cūstōdiās Menapi-  
ōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulā-  
vērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque,  
omnī hōc itinere unā nocte equitātū cōfectō, insciōs 5  
70 inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germā- 6  
nōrum discēssū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū  
trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. Hīs inter- 7  
fectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, prius quam ea pars  
Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret,  
75 flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiīs  
occupātīs, reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs  
aluērunt.

*Caesar Germānīs obviam exercitum dūcit; eōrum lēgātiō.*

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem  
Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs  
80 et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committen-

2 dum existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis,  
 uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quid  
 quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit,  
 quaerant et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumstet,  
 quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognō- 85  
 3 verint, pronuntiare cogant. His rebus atque auditionibus  
 permoti, de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum  
 eos in vestigio paenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus  
 serviant et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta  
 respondeant. 90

6. Quā consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne graviori bello  
 occurreret, maturius quam consuevit, ad exercitum pro-  
 2 ficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat,  
 3 facta cognovit: missas legationes ab non nullis civitatibus  
 ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, 95  
 4 omniaque, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Quā spē  
 adducti Germani latius iam vagabantur et in fines Eburonum  
 et Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientēs, per-  
 5 venerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea, quae  
 cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit eorumque 100  
 animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato,  
 bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

7. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis,  
 iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos  
 2 audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, 105  
 3 legati ab iis venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Ger-  
 manos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre,  
 neque tamen recusare, si lacescantur, quin armis contendant,  
 quod Germanorum consuetudo sit a maioribus  
 tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque 110  
 deprecari. Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, eieptos

domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs  
 esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs  
 tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs con-  
 115 cēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse  
 possint: reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem  
 nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed  
 exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam  
 120 esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse  
 quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre;  
 neque ullōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae prae-  
 sertim multitudinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī  
 velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgātī  
 125 apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē  
 auxilium petant: hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē  
 dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs:  
 intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id  
 130 quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat  
 enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus  
 ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs  
 trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius  
 rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

*Mosae et Rhēnī flūminum dēscriptiō.*

135 10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus  
 Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae  
 appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque  
 longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit.  
 Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt,  
 140 et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum,

Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum  
 4 citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs  
 diffluit partēs, multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs (quā-  
 rum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur,  
 5 ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere 145  
 existimantur) multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

*Victi Germānī trāns Rhēnum sē recipiunt.*

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII  
 mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī  
 revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē  
 2 longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impe- 150  
 trāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī āgmen ante-  
 cēssissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique  
 3 ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī: quōrum  
 sī prīncipēs āc senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset,  
 eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs osten- 155  
 dēbant: ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.  
 4 Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur,  
 ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent,  
 reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum  
 5 quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcēssūrum eō diē dixit; hūc 160  
 posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum  
 6 pōstulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum  
 omnī equitātū antecēsserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē  
 hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, susti-  
 nērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accēssisset. 165

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōspexē-  
 runt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī  
 nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī, quī  
 frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redie-

170 rant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legatī eōrum paulō  
 ante ā Caesare discēsserant atque is diēs indūtilis erat ab  
 hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāverunt;  
 rursus hīs resistantibus, cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsilu- 2  
 erunt, suffossisque equis complūribusque nostris dēiectis  
 175 reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs  
 ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quā in cōn-  
 spectum āgminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex 3  
 equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā,  
 in hīs vir fortissimus Pīsō Aquitānus amplissimō genere 4  
 180 nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat  
 amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī 5  
 interclūsō ā hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō  
 eripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortis-  
 simō restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus accep- 6  
 185 tīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excēsserat,  
 procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit  
 atque interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi legātōs  
 audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab  
 190 iīs, quī per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ūltrō bellum  
 intulissent: expectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augē- 2  
 rentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse  
 iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum iam 3  
 apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnse-  
 195 cūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capiēda nihil spatiū  
 dandum existimābat. Hīs cōstitutis rēbus et cōnsiliō 4  
 cum legātīs et quaestōre communicātō, nē quem diem  
 pūgnae praetermitteret, opportunissima rēs accidit, quod  
 postrīdiē eius diēi māne eādē et simulātiōne et perfi-  
 200 diā ūsī Germānī frequentēs omnibus prīncipibus māiōri-

busque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod contrā, atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī 205 iūssit: ipse ōmnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, āgmen subsequī iūssit.

14. Aciē triplici institūtā et celeriter viii mīlium itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid 210 agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discēssū suōrum, neque cōsiliū habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. 215 Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlēs nostrī pristini diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedita 220 mentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domō excēsserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectis signisque mīlitāribus 225 relictis sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressi 230 periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucis vulnerātis, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus

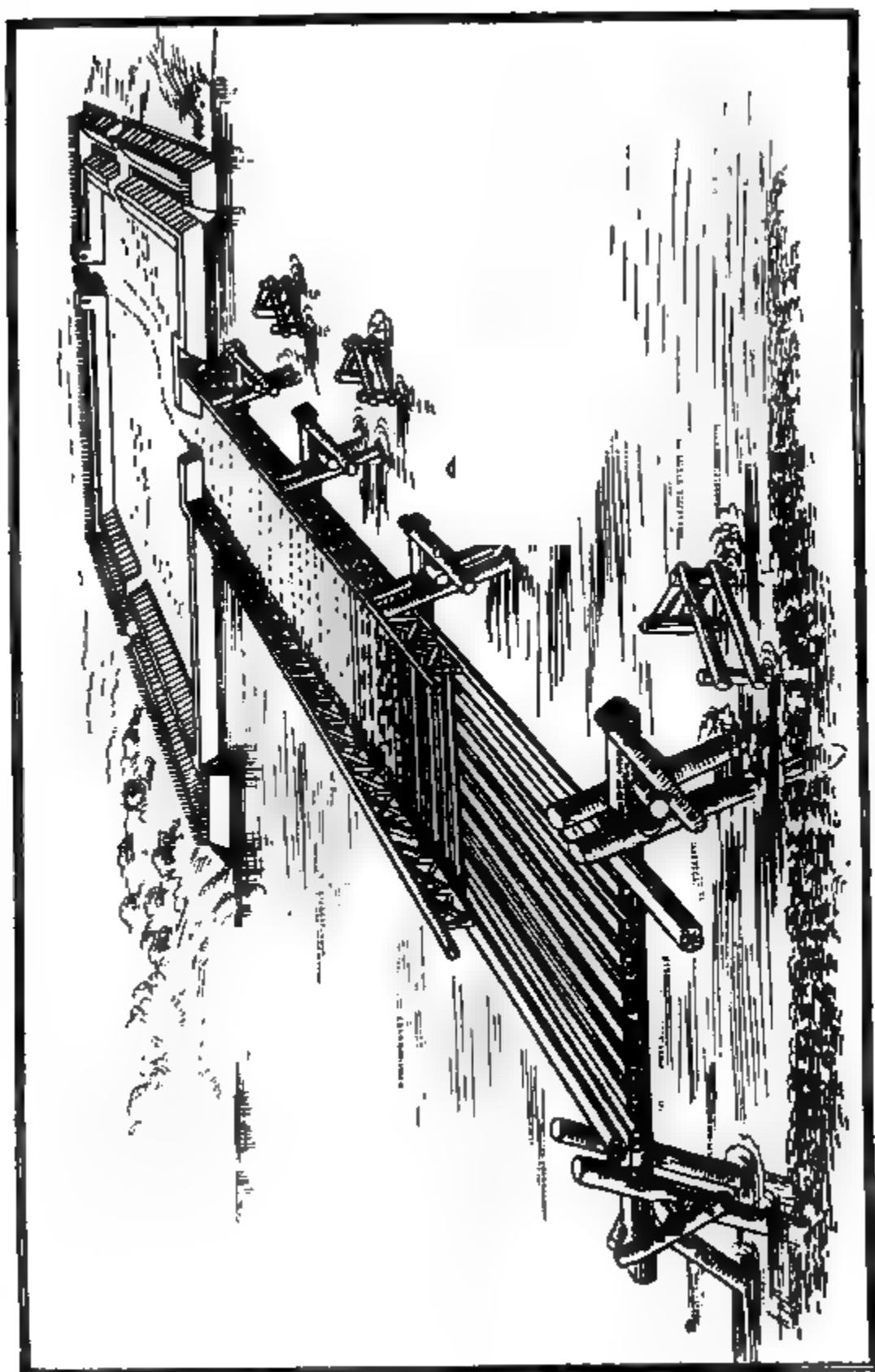
capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, se in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iis, quōs in castris retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem 4  
fēcit. Illi supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum 5  
235 agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concēssit.

## II. CAESARIS IN GERMANIAM TRANSITUS.

CC. 16-19.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar  
statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit  
iustissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli  
240 ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit,  
cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exer-  
citum Rhēnum trānsire. Accēssit etiam, quod illa pars 2  
equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprà comme-  
*mentioned about closed* morāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trāns-  
245 isse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns  
Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum his  
coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī 3  
pōstulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent,  
sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium 4  
250 Rhēnum finīre: sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire  
nōn aequum existimārēt, cūr suī quidquam esse imperiī  
aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum pōstulāret? Ubiū autem, 5  
quī unī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant,  
amīcitiam fēcērant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant,  
255 ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premeren-  
tur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae prohibē- 6  
rētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad  
auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futurum. Tan- 7





THE BRIDGE ACROSS THE RIVER.

tum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs, Ariovistō  
pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ūltimās 260  
Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī  
Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad  
trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum  
trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum 265  
esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī digni-  
tātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faci-  
endī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditātem  
altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut  
aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat. Ratiōnem 270  
pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum  
ab imō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis inter-  
vāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchi-  
nātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcīsque adē-  
gerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed 275  
prōnē ac fāstigātē ut secundum nātūrā flūminis prēcum-  
berent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta in-  
tervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim  
atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utra-  
que insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum 280  
tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fibulīs ab ex-  
trēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-  
riam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea  
rērū nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc  
artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā mātēriā iniectā 285  
contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōsternēbantur;  
ac nihilō setius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis  
oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni  
10 opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item

290 *suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive  
nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae,  
hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī  
nocērent.*

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat compor-  
295 *tārī, omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar, ad  
utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō, in fīnēs  
Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitā-  
tibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīci-  
tiam petentibus liberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē  
300 addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns  
īstituī coeptus est, fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs, quōs  
ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus  
suīs excēsserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in  
sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant.*

305 19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omni-  
bus vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in  
fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus,  
sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab hīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs,  
postēā quam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent,  
310 mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmī-  
sisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque  
omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre  
possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent: hunc esse dēlectum  
medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent: hīc  
315 Rōmānōrum adventum expectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōn-  
stituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus  
cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōn-  
stituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcī-  
sacerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō  
320 *xviii trāns Rhēnum cōnsūptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad*

utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

### III. BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

CC. 20-36.

*Litoribus Britanniae exploratis Caesar classem ad transitum cogit.*

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsi in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, 325 quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus [annī] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia 330 ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsis quicquam praeter ōram marinam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt 4 contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad se undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque 335 quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, prius quam periculum faceret, 340 idōneum esse arbitratus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad 2 se quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britan- 4 niam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus 345 et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat

clāſsem, iubet convenīre. Interim cōſiliō eius cōgnitō 5  
 et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus  
 Insulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur  
 350 obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre.  
 Quibus auditīs, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā 6  
 ſententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs ūnā  
 Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōn- 7  
 ſtituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōſilium probābat et quem  
 355 ſibi fidēlem eſſe arbitrābātur, cūiusque auctōritās in hīs  
 regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huīc imperat, quās 8  
 poſſit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem  
 ſequantur, ſēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Voluſēnus 9  
 perſpectīs regiōnibus, quantum ei facultātis darī potuit  
 360 quī nāvī ēgredi āc ſē barbarīs committere nōn auderet,  
 quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perſpexiſſet  
 renūntiat.

*Morinōs, unde trāiectus in Britanniam brevissimus est, in  
 fidem recipit.*

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum cauſā  
 morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī  
 365 vērunt, quī ſē dē ſuperiōris temporis cōſiliō excūſārent,  
 quod hominēs barbarī et noſtrae cōſuētūdinis imperiī  
 bellum populō Rōmānō fēcīſſent, ſēque ea, quae imperāſſet,  
 factūrōs pollicerentur. Hōc ſibi Caesar ſatis oportūnē 2  
 accidiſſe arbitrātus, quod neque poſt tergum hoſtem relin-  
 370 quere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus  
 facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupā-  
 tiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnū iīs  
 numerum obſidum imperat. Quibus adductīs, eōs in fidem 3  
 recēpit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs [cōntrāc-

tisque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs 375  
 existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat,  
 4 quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdē-  
 bant xviii onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus  
 passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem  
 5 portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reli- 380  
 quum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae  
 lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā  
 6 quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit;  
 Sulpiciū Rūfū lēgātū cum eō praesidiō, quod satis  
 esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iūssit. 385

*Caesar in insulam trāicit.*

23. Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-  
 dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in  
 ūteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē se-  
 1 qui iūssit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrā-  
 tum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus 390  
 Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās  
 2 hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cūius locī haec erat  
 nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur,  
 3 utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc  
 ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, 395  
 dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in  
 4 ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque militum  
 convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fierī  
 vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē  
 ut maritimae rēs pōstulārent, ut quae celerem atque instā- 400  
 bilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs  
 5 rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et  
 aestum unō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sub-

lātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō  
405 prōgressus, apertō āc plānō lītore nāvēs cōstituit.

*Britannōs in fugam vertit. Eōrum dēditio.*

24. At barbarī, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō  
equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs  
ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus  
ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, 2  
410 quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui  
nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impeditīs  
manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul  
et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum  
et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut 3  
415 paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expeditīs,  
nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla cōnicerent et equōs insuēfac-  
tōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius 4  
omnīnō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritātē  
āc studiō, quō in pedestribus utī proeliīs cōsuērunt, utē-  
420 bantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum  
et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitiōrior et mōtus ad ūsum  
expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs  
incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui atque inde  
425 fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpelli āc submovērī  
iūssit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium 2  
figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiōtō genere tormentōrum  
permōtī, barbarī cōstitērunt āc paulum etiam pedem  
rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē 3  
430 propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam  
ferēbat, obtēstātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret,  
'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hosti-





bus prōdere: ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque imperā-  
 4 tōri officiū praestiterō.' Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset,  
 sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. 485  
 5 Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus ad-  
 6 mitteretur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex  
 proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus  
 appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, 440  
 quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque  
 signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibus-  
 cumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere per-  
 2 turbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex  
 litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexe- 445  
 3 rant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs  
 circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla  
 4 cōniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās  
 longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus  
 complērī iūssit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsi- 450  
 5 dia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suīs  
 omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs  
 in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt,  
 quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn  
 potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī 455  
 defuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā  
 recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīserunt;  
 obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs sēsē pollicitī  
 1 sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem 460  
 suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam prae-  
 2 missum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris  
 modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque

in vincula cōniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt et  
 465 in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contu-  
 lērunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivē-  
 runt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ūltrō in continentem  
 lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā  
 intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dīxit obsidēsque  
 470 imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem  
 ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessitam paucīs diēbus sēsē  
 datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs  
 iūssērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvītā-  
 tēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

*Clāsse Rōmānā tempestāte afflīctā Britannī coniūrant.*

475 28. His rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum,  
 quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus  
 suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex  
 superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appro-  
 pinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta  
 480 tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre  
 posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur,  
 aliae ad inferiōrem partem Insulae, quae est propius sōlis  
 occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae  
 tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, neces-  
 485 sariō adversā nocte in altum provectae continentem  
 petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs  
 maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit,  
 nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita unō tempore et longās  
 490 nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrā-  
 verat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat,  
 et onerāriās quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās

afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī  
 aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reli-  
 quae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs 495  
 āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse  
 erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.  
 Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent,  
 et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī,  
 et, quod omnibus cōstābat, hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, 500  
 frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī  
 post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī,  
 cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse  
 intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exi- 505  
 guitāte cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustīora,  
 quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,  
 optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellīōne factā frūmentō  
 commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prō-  
 dūcere, quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem 510  
 postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum  
 cōnfīdebant. Itaque, rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim  
 ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere  
 coepērunt.

*Caesar nāvēs reficit.*

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, 515  
 tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs  
 dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, sūspicābātur.  
 Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et  
 frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōferēbat et quae  
 gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque 520  
 aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs  
 erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum

summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim  
nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset,  
525 effēcit.

*Britannī proeliō pulsī fugiunt.*

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine unā  
frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque  
ullā ad id tempus bellī sūspiciōne interpositā, cum pars  
hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti-  
530 tāret, īī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant,  
Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem, quam cōn-  
suētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō  
iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, sūspicātus, aliquid 2  
novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiō-  
535 nibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs  
duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī  
et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iūssit. Cum paulō longius ā 3  
castrīs prōcēssisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē  
sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla  
540 cōnici animāadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquīs parti- 4  
bus dēmesso frūmentō pars una erat reliqua, sūspicātī  
hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlitue-  
rant : tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs 5  
subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus  
545 perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumde-  
derant.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Primō per  
omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla cōniciunt atque ipsō  
terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque  
550 perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt,  
ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae :  
interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs

collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur,  
 3 expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem  
 equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, āc 555  
 tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in  
 dēclivī āc praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī  
 moderārī āc flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in  
 iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere  
 cōnsuērunt. 560

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris novitāte pūgnae  
 tempore opportūnissimō Cacsar auxilium tulit: namque  
 eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recē-  
 2 pērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committen-  
 dum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō 565  
 continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs  
 3 redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis,  
 4 quī erant in agris reliquī, discēssērunt. Secūtae sunt  
 continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs  
 in castris continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. 570  
 5 Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt  
 paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt  
 et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī  
 liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castris expulissent,  
 6 dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter māgnā multitu- 575  
 dine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt.

35. Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat,  
 fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum  
 effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Com-  
 mius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportā- 580  
 2 verat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō  
 proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre  
 3 nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō.

secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, com-  
 585 plūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deindē omnibus longē lātēque  
 aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

*Obsidibus acceptis Caesar in Galliam redit.*

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē  
 pāce vērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante  
 imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī  
 590 iūssit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctiī infirmīs nāvibus  
 hiemī nāvigationem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse  
 idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem  
 nāvēs solvit: quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem per-  
 vērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs  
 595 reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā dēlātae sunt.

*IV. MORINOS MENAPIOSQUE REBELLANTES CAESAR SUBIGIT.*

*SUPPLICATIO A SENATU DECRETA.*

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs cir-  
 citer trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs  
 Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē  
 praedae adductī primō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō  
 600 circumsteterunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere  
 iūssērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter  
 ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convērunt.  
 Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs  
 auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium  
 605 sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē  
 pūgnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex  
 hīs occīdērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in  
 cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt  
 māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs 610  
legiōnibus, quās ex Britannīā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī  
2 rebelliōnem fēcērant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs  
palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō perfugiō  
superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem La-  
3 biēnī vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī 615  
in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum  
agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod  
Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad  
4 Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum  
hīberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britan- 620  
5 niā obsidēs mīserunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus  
gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā  
senātū dēcrēta est.

## COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS.

### I. CAESARIS ILLYRICUM ITER.

#### C. I.

#### *Pācātiō Pīrūstārum.*

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernīs Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannīs facere cōsu-  
ērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī  
quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās vete-  
5 rēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque  
dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque 2  
paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī utī  
cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās  
commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fi-  
10 erī cōgnōverat, ad onera āc multitudinem iūmentōrum  
trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs  
ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, 3  
quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt 4  
ūsui ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet.  
15 Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs, in Īllyricum 5  
proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs finitimam partem prōvinciae  
incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvītā- 6  
tibus milītēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet.  
Quā rē nūntiātā, Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī 7  
20 doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō,  
sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē

CAMPAIGN OF 54 B.C.

ENGLISH MILES



ROMAN MILES

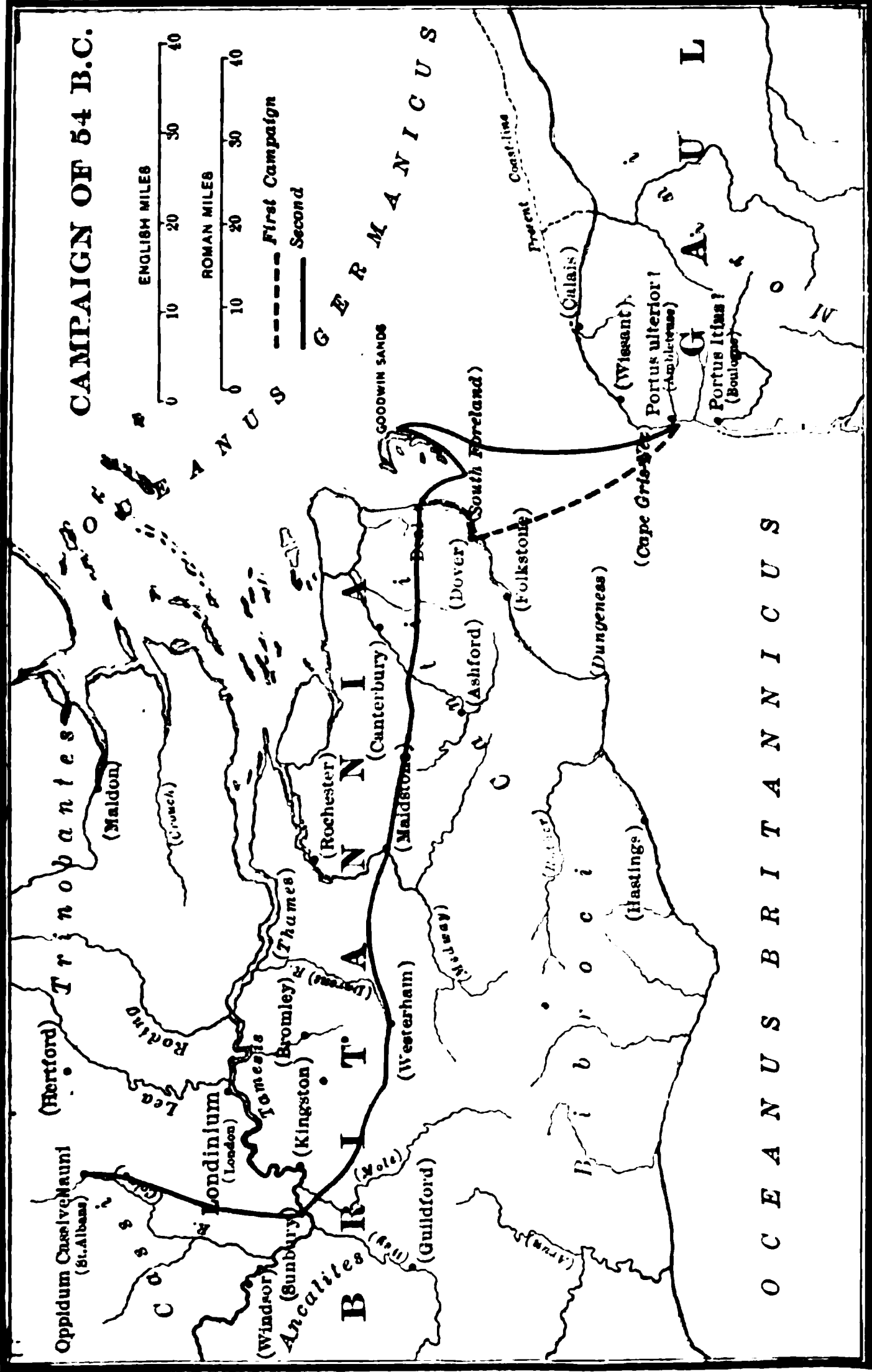


First Campaign

Second

GERMANICUS

OCEANUS BRITANNICUS





iniuriis satis facere. Perceptā oratione eorum, Caesar  
obsidēs imperat eosque ad certam diem adducī iubet; nisi  
ita fecerint, sese bellō civitatem persecuturum demon-  
strat. Iis ad diem adductis ut imperaverat, arbitrōs inter  
civitātēs dat quī litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant.

## II. SECUNDA CAESARIS IN BRITANNIAM EXPEDITIO.

CC. 2-23.

### *Trēverōrum contentiōnēs compōnuntur.*

2. Hīs cōfectis rēbus conventibusque peractis, in cite-  
riorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum profi-  
cisitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis,  
singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium rerum inopiā  
circiter sexcentās eius generis, cuius suprà demonstrā-  
vimus, nāvēs et longās xxviii invēnit instructās neque  
multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucis diēbus dēducī possint.  
3 Collaudātis militibus atque iis, quī negotiō praefuerant,  
quid fierī velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium  
convenire iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britan-  
niam trāiectum esse cōgnoverat, circiter milium passuum  
xxx trānsmissum ā continentī; huic rei quod satis esse  
4 vīsum est militum relinquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expe-  
ditis iv et equitibus dccc in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur,  
quod hī neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperiō parē-  
bant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

3. Haec civitās longē plurimum tōtius Galliae equitātū  
valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut  
2 suprà demonstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitāte duo dē  
principātū inter se contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cinge-  
3 torix; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnum-

que adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque  
omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amicitia populī Rōmānī  
50 dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur  
ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitātum peditātumque cō- 4  
gere iisque, quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant,  
in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingentī māgnitudine  
per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flumine Rhēnō ad initium  
55 Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed postea 5  
quam nōn nullī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitate, et auctoritate  
Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī,  
ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suis privātis rēbus ab eō  
petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitatī cōsulare nōn possent,  
60 veritus nē ab omnibus dēsereretur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem  
mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre 6  
nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitatē in officiō contineret, nē  
omnis nōbilitātis discēssū plēbs propter imprudentiam  
lāberetur: itaque cīvitatē in suā potestate esse, sēque, 7  
65 sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suās  
civitātisque fortunās eius fidēi permissūrum.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea dicerentur,  
quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōsiliō dēterreret, tamen,  
nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōsumere cōgeretur, omnibus  
70 rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātis, Indutiomārum  
ad sē cum ducentis obsidibus venīre iussit. His adductis, 2  
in iis filiō propinquisque eius omnibus, quōs nōminātim  
ēvocāverat, cōsolātus Indutiomārum hortātusque est,  
utī in officiō maneret; nihilō tamen sētius prīncipibus 3  
75 Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī  
conciliāvit; quod cum meritō eius ab sē fierī intellegēbat,  
tum māgnī interesse arbitrābatur eius auctoritatem inter  
suos quam plurimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam in sē

4 voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indu-  
 tiomārus, [suam grātiam inter suōs minuī], et quī iam 80  
 ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc  
 dolōre exārsit.

*Caesar cōpiās ad portum Itium colligit; Dumnorīx infidus  
 ā fugā revocātus, resistēns interficitur.*

5. His rēbus cōstitutis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum  
 2 legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvēs, quae in  
 Meldis factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre 85  
 nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse;  
 reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus  
 3 instrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit  
 numerō mīlia quattuor prīcipēsque ex omnibus cīvitatī-  
 4 bus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, 90  
 relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dē-  
 creverat, quod cum ipse abesset mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

6. Erat tūc cum cēteris Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quō ante  
 ā nobīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primis cōn-  
 stituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum 95  
 imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis  
 2 cōgnōverat. Accēdebat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum  
 Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitatīs dēferri;  
 quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut  
 dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. 100  
 3 Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille om-  
 nibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relin-  
 queretur, partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret,  
 4 partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Postea  
 quam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī 105  
 adēptā, prīcipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs

hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū ter-  
ritāre: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte  
spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōn-  
110 spectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Bri-  
tanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere,  
iūs iūrandum pōscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae  
intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec  
ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

115 7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Ae-  
duae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum,  
quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod 2  
longius ēius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum,  
nē quid sibi ac reī pūblīcae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs 3  
120 circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod chōrus ventus  
nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis  
temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut  
in officiō Dumnorīgem contineret, nihilō tamen sētius  
omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus 4  
125 tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet.  
At omnium impedītis animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus 5  
Aeduōrum ā castrīs insciente Caesare domum discēdere  
coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne 6  
atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, māgnam partem equi-  
130 tātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī 7  
vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc sē  
absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis im-  
perium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē 8  
manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe  
135 clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut  
erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interfi-  
ciunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

*Caesar in Britanniam exercitum trādūcit, fugatque  
Britannōs.*

8. His rēbus gestis Labiēno in cōtinentī cum tribus  
legiōnibus et equitum. mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs  
tuerētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Gal- 140  
liā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et  
2 prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī  
numerō equitum, quem in cōtinentī relinquebat, ad sōlis  
occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lenī Africō prōvectus, mediā  
circiter nocte, ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit, et 145  
longius delātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam  
3 relictam cōspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtātiōnem  
secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet,  
quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat.  
4 Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī 150  
vectōriis gravibusque nāvigiis, nōn intermissō rēmigandī  
5 labōre, longārum nāvium cursum adaequārun. Accēs-  
sum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiāno ferē  
6 tempore neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut postea  
Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō con- 155  
vēnissent, multitudine nāvium perterritae, quae cum  
annōtinīs prīvātisque, quās suī quisque commodī causā  
fēcerat, amplius octingentae unō erant vīsaē tempore, ā  
lītore discēsserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, 160  
ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōn-  
sēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictīs et equitibus ccc,  
quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, de tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs  
contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī  
atque apertō deligātās ad ancorās relinquebat. Eī prae- 165

sidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prō-  
gressus mīlia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōnspi-  
cātus est. Illi equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī  
ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium commit-  
170 tere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidē-  
runt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum,  
quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante prae-  
parāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs intro-  
itūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpugnābant  
175 nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At  
militēs legiōnis septimae tēstūdine factā et aggere ad  
mūnitiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expu-  
lērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs  
longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignō-  
180 rābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi consūptā mūnitiōnī  
castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

*Classis tempestāte afflicta in litore reficitur.*

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne triperitō militēs equitēs-  
que in expeditiōnem mīsīt, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, per-  
sequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum  
185 iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad  
Caesarem vērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte  
māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflētās  
atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque  
sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tem-  
190 pestātis pati possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium  
māgnū esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque  
revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs  
revertitur: eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs [litterīs] cō-

gnōverat, cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL 195  
 nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidē-  
 3 rentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex con-  
 4 tinenti aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam  
 plurimās possit, iis legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs  
 5 instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, 200  
 tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subducī  
 6 et cum castris unā mūnitiōne coniungī. In his rēbus  
 circiter diēs x cōsumit nē nocturnis quidem tempo-  
 7 ribus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus  
 castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, prae- 205  
 sidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, pro-  
 8 ficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum  
 locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī  
 bellique administrandī commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cas-  
 sivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimis civitātibus flūmen 210  
 dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mārī circiter milia  
 9 passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis  
 civitātibus continentia bella intercēsserant; sed nostrō  
 adventū permōti Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque  
 praefecerant. 215

*Britanniae eiusque incolārum dēscriptiō.*

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quōs nātōs  
 in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars  
 2 ab iis, quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgiō  
 trāsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitātum  
 appellantur, quibus orti ex civitātibus eō prevēnērunt) et 220  
 bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt.  
 3 Hominum est infīnita multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia  
 4 ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Utun-

tur [aut aere] aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad  
 225 certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi  
 plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs  
 ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō.  
 Māteria cūiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum  
 atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre  
 230 fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque  
 causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra, quam in Galliā remis-  
 siōribus frīgoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est  
 contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est. ad  
 235 Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur,  
 ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc  
 latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum quīngēta. Alterum  
 vergit ad Hispāniam, atque occidentem sōlem: quā ex  
 parte est Hibernia, īnsula dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur,  
 240 quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmisus atque ex  
 Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula,  
 quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs  
 obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īsulīs nōn nullī  
 scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem.  
 245 Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus nisi cer-  
 tīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī  
 noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert  
 illōrum opīniō, dcc mīlium. Tertium est contrā septen-  
 triōnēs; cūī partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed ēius angulus  
 250 alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium  
 passuum octingentum in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur.  
 Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū viciēs centum mīlium  
 passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī

Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritimā omnis, neque 255  
 2 multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs  
 plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt  
 pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō  
 inficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horri-  
 3 biliōrēs sunt in pūgnā āspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō 260  
 atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum  
 4 superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē  
 commūnēs et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque  
 5 cum liberis; sed quī sunt ex iīs nātī, eōrum habentur  
 liberī, quō primum vīrgō quāeque dēducta est. 265

*Caesar Tamesim trānsit, Britannōs fugat, Cassivellaunum  
 ducem subigit.*

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum  
 equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut  
 nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in  
 2 silvās collēsque compulerint; ~~sed~~ complūribus interfectīs  
 3 cupidius Insecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmīsērunt. At illī 270  
 intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostrīs atque occupātis  
 in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs eiēcērunt,  
 impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs  
 4 collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō  
 cohortibus ā Caesare atque hīs primīs legiōnum duārum, 275  
 cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōn-  
 stitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per  
 mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs  
 5 recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mī-  
 litum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus 280  
 repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae cum sub oculis omnium

ac prō castris dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter  
gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs pos-  
285 sent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse  
ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum  
periculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōn-  
sultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōni-  
bus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsiliērent et pedibus  
290 disparī proeliō contenderent. [Equestris autem proeliī  
ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem  
periculum īferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam  
cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnisque intervāllīs proeliārentur  
statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps  
295 exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatigātīs succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus  
cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē  
nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē  
cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem  
300 equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex  
omnibus partibus ad-pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic utī  
ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter  
in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendī  
fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē  
305 legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque  
eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque  
cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt.  
Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxi-  
lia discēssērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs  
310 nōbiscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim  
in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen unō  
omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest.

2 Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam  
 3 māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Ripa autem erat 315  
 acūtis sudibus praefixisque mūnīta, eiusdemque generis  
 4 sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus  
 cōgnitis ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equi-  
 5 tātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequī iūssit. Sed eā celeritāte  
 atque eō impetū militēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā 320  
 exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum  
 sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae  
 mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, omni  
 dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissis ampliōribus cōpiis, 325  
 milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictis, itinera  
 nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque  
 impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iis regiō-  
 nibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque  
 2 hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus 330  
 noster liberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs  
 effunderet, omnibus viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis  
 ēmittēbat et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum  
 cum his cōfligēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī pro-  
 3 hibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab āgmine 335  
 legiōnum discēdī Caesar pateretur, et tantum [in] agris  
 vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocēretur,  
 quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnārii militēs efficere  
 poterant.

*Trinovantium et complūrium civitatum deditio.*

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regi- 340  
 ōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris  
 fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat

(cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnū obtinuerat interfectus-  
 que erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat), 2  
 345 lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē ei dēdi-  
 tūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium 3  
 ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem  
 mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar 4  
 imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercitui  
 850 Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter  
 fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniū-  
 riā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī,  
 Cassī legātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs 2  
 355 cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī  
 abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus  
 hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum au- 3  
 tem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque  
 fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā  
 360 convenīre cōsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; 4  
 locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum;  
 tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit.  
 Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum 5  
 nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī eiēcērunt.  
 865 Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multique in fugā 6  
 sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad  
 Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus,  
 quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix,  
 870 Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque  
 hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia  
 dē imprōvisō adorianur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad 2  
 castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum

interfectis, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge suōs incolūmēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, 375  
 tot dētrimentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, māximē etiam  
 permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitatū, lēgātōs per Atrebātem  
 4 Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum  
 cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs  
 Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset atque id 380  
 facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et quid  
 in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia  
 5 penderet cōstituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivel-  
 launō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

*Caesaris in Galliam reditus.*

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, 385  
 2 nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivōrum  
 māgnū numerum habēbat, et nōn nūllae tempestāte  
 dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum re-  
 3 portāre instituit. Āc sic accidit utī ex tantō nāvium  
 numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre 390  
 annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae militēs portāret, dēsiderā-  
 4 rētur; at ex iis, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remit-  
 terentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositis militibus, et  
 quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX,  
 perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēice- 395  
 5 rentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā expec-  
 tāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne excluderētur, quod  
 aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius militēs collo-  
 6 cāvit āc, summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā  
 cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque 400  
 incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

## III. BELLUM AMBIORIGIS.

CC. 24-52.

*Legiōnēs Rōmānae in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuuntur.*

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro-  
brivae peractō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā  
propter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coactus est aliter  
405 ac superiōribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocāre  
legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus  
unam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alte-  
ram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō;  
quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōfīniō Trēverō-  
410 rum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacīs collocāvit; hīs  
M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium  
lēgātōs praefecit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns  
Padum cōscripserat, et cohortēs quīnque in Eburōnēs,  
quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī  
415 sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, misit. Hīs  
mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium  
Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distri-  
būtis legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē  
medērī posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen om-  
420 nium legiōnum hiberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō  
in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam  
dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse  
intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hiberna  
cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

*Tasgetius Caesaris amicus ab inimicis interficitur.*

425 25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius,  
cūius māiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnū obtinuerant. Huic

Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimicī, palam multis ex cīvitāte auctōribus, interfēcē- 480 runt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē 485 mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātīs quaestōribusque], quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse mūnītum.

*Eburōnēs, ducibus Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō, castra Sabīnī et Cottae oppūgnant.*

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab 440 Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī, cum ad finēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressis lignātōribus 445 magnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vērērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque āscendissent atque unā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissis equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre 450 sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērārent.

*Colloquiō habitō Ambiorix Rōmānōs ut discēdant monet.  
Lēgātī inter sē dissentiunt.*

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrii, et Q. Iūnius ex  
455 Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimū eī cōfiterī dēbere, quod ēius operā stipendiō liberātus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere  
460 cōsuēsset, quodque eī et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatuci obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdictiō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis; suaque esse ēius modī im-  
465 peria, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum, ut suis cōpiis populum  
470 Rōmānum superārī posse cōfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidio venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī libertāte cōnsi-  
475 lium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satis fēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio ut suae ac militum salutī cōsulat. Māgnam manū Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc affore bīduō.  
480 Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne, prius quam finitimī sen-

tiant, ēductōs ex hibernīs milītēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter  
 10 quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud sē  
 pollicērī et iūre iurandō cōfirmāre tūtum sē iter per  
 11 suōs finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōn- 485  
 sulere, quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritis  
 grātiā referre. Hāc orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audierant, ad lēgātōs  
 dēferunt. Illī repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea  
 dicēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant, māximē- 490  
 que hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem  
 atque humilem Eburōnū suā sponte populō Rōmānō  
 2 bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōn-  
 silium rem dēferunt, māgnaque inter eos existit contrō-  
 3 versia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī militum 495  
 et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum  
 neque ex hibernīs iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum existimā-  
 4 bant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse  
 mūnītis hibernīs docēbant; rem esse tēstimōniō, quod  
 primum hostium impetum multis ūltrō vulneribus illā- 500  
 5 tīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī;  
 intereā et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra  
 6 subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius, quam  
 auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum 505  
 māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūctis Germānīs convēnissent,  
 aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hibernīs esset  
 2 acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem  
 arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnutēs  
 interficiundī Tasgeti cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque 510  
 Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad

castra ventūrōs; sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spec-  
 tāre; subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī  
 Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdere  
 515 Galliam tot contumēliīs acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī im-  
 perium redāctam, superiōre glōriā rei mīlitāris extinctā.  
 Postrēmō quis hōc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Am-  
 biorīgem ad ēius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sen-  
 tentiam in utramque partem esse tūtā: sī nihil esset  
 520 dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perven-  
 tūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōsentīret, ūnam  
 esse in celeritāte positā salutē. Cottae quidem atque  
 eōrum, quī dissentīrent, cōnsilium quem habēre exitum?  
 in quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsi-  
 525 diōne famēs esset timenda.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā,  
 cum ā Cottā primīsque ordinibus ācriter resisterētur,  
 ‘Vincite,’ inquit, ‘sī ita vultis,’ Sabīnus, et id clārīōre  
 vōce, ut māgna pars mīlitum exaudīret; ‘neque is sum,’  
 530 inquit, ‘quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear:  
 hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem  
 repōscent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proxi-  
 mis hībernīs coniūctī communem cum reliquīs bellī  
 cāsum sustineant; nōn, rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs,  
 535 aut ferrō aut fame intereant.’

*Rōmānī ē castrīs ēgrediuntur; in itinere ab Eburōnibus  
 circumventī omnēs caeduntur.*

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque  
 et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum  
 perīculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu  
 2 proficīcantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant āc probent;

3 contrā in dissēsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs 540  
 disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat  
 Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prō-  
 4 nūntiātur primā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua  
 pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid  
 sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum 545  
 5 relinquere cōgerētur. [Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec  
 sine periculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs  
 6 periculum augeātur.] Primā lūce sic ex castrīs profi-  
 ciscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab  
 homine amīcissimō [Ambiorīge] cōnsilium datum, longis- 550  
 simō āgmine māximisque impedīmentis.

32. At hostēs, postea quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīs-  
 que dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis insidiis  
 bipertitō in silvis opportunō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus  
 passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum expectā- 555  
 2 bant, et cum sē māior pars āgminis in māgnam convallem  
 dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendē-  
 runt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre āscēnsū  
 atque iniquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coe-  
 pērunt. 560

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset,  
 trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec  
 tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidē-  
 rentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōsuēvit, quī in  
 2 ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī 565  
 cōgitāssset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam  
 causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē com-  
 mūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandisque mīli-  
 tibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis officia praestābat.  
 3 Cum propter longitudinem āgminis nōn facile per sē om- 570

nia obire et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset, prōvidere possent, iūssērunt prōnūtiārī, ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī 4 in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen in-  
 575 commodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit 5 et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs 6 ab signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima  
 580 habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam dūcēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūtiārī iūssērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī,  
 585 quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. [Erant et virtūte et numerō 2 pūgnandī parēs.] Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā fortunā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte  
 590 māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā 3 Ambiorīx prōnūtiārī iubet, ut procul tēla cōnicians neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant, [levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitā- 4 tiōne nihil hīs nocērī posse,] rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientēs  
 595 insequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excēsserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vėlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam 5 partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla re-  
 600 cipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant prōgressī, 5 revertī coeperant, et ab iīs, quī cēsserant, et ab iīs, quī

4 proximī steterant, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum  
 tenere vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur, neque ab  
 tantā multitudine cōniecta tēla cōfertī vītāre poterant.  
 5 Tamen tot incommodis cōfliktātī, multis vulneribus 605  
 acceptis resistēbant et māgnā parte diēi cōsūptā, cum  
 ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod  
 6 ipsis esset indīgnum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō,  
 quī superiōre annō primum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et  
 māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; 610  
 7 Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum  
 8 circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus  
 omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs  
 fundā vulnerātur.

36. His rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul 615  
 Ambiorīgē suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem  
 suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi  
 2 militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: Sī velit  
 sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitudine impetrārī  
 posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil 620  
 nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.  
 3 Ille cum Cottā sauciō communicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut  
 excēdant et cum Ambiorīge unā colloquantur: spērāre  
 4 sē ab eō dē suā ac mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse.  
 Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō 625  
 persevērat.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentia tribūnōs mīlitum circum  
 sē habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē sequī  
 iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgē accēssisset, iūssus  
 arma abicere imperātum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, 630  
 2 imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt  
 longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermō,

paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre 3  
 victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque  
 635 in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns 4  
 interficitur cum māximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in 3  
 castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petro-  
 sidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitudine hostium pre-  
 merētur aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castris  
 640 fortissimē pūgnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem 6  
 oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspē-  
 rātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī 7  
 incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in  
 hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestis certiōrem  
 645 faciunt.

*Hiberna Cicerōnis ab Eburōnibus, adiūctis Aduatucis et  
 Nervīs, oppūgnantur.*

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum  
 equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, pro-  
 ficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditā-  
 tumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucisque 2  
 650 concitātis, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque,  
 nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs  
 prō iis, quās accēperint, iniūriis occāsiōnem dīmittant:  
 interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs 3  
 interisse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtiī, subitō oppressam 4  
 655 legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam  
 rem profitētur adiutōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nervīs  
 persuādet.

39. Itaque cōfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs,  
 Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs  
 660 sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās manūs possunt,

cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant,  
 2 nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrii morte perlātā. Huīc  
 quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nullī milītēs,  
 qui lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discēssissent,  
 3 repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circum- 665  
 ventis māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatucī atque  
 hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre  
 incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum  
 4 cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem  
 spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adepti 670  
 victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne  
 litterae māgnis prōpositis praemiis, si pertulissent;  
 2 obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex  
 materiā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs 675  
 admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritāte; quae  
 3 deesse operi vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō  
 diē multō māiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppūgnant,  
 fossam complent. Ā nostris eādē ratiōne quā prīdiē,  
 4) resistitur. Hōc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nulla 680  
 5) pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn  
 6 aegris, nōn vulnerātis facultās quiētis datur. Quae-  
 cumque ad proximū diēi oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū  
 comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrā-  
 lium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, 685  
 7 pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō,  
 cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem  
 sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ūltrō militum  
 concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41. Tum ducēs prīcipēsque Nerviorum, qui aliquem 690  
 sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne

habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, 2  
eadem, quae Ambiorīx cum Titūrīō ēgerat, commemo-  
rant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum 3  
695 trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppūgnārī.  
Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant 4  
fidēī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam 5  
ab iīs praesidiī spērent, quī suis rēbus diffīdant; sēsē  
tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum  
700 animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsant atque hanc inve-  
terāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē inco- 6  
lumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs  
velint, sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo 7  
respondet: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī acci-  
705 pere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discē-  
dere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem 8  
mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā, quae petierint,  
impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervīī vāllō pedum x et fossā  
710 pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum 2  
cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū  
nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur, sed nullā ferrāmen- 3  
tōrum cōpiā, quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs  
caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhau-  
715 rīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multi- 4  
tūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium 5  
passuum xv in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reli-  
quīs diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vāllī, falcēs tēstūdi-  
nēsque, quās idem captīvī docuerant, parāre āc facere  
720 coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō  
ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta

iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae,  
 2 iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt  
 et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distu- 725  
 3 lērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre, sic utī partā iam  
 atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs tēstūdinēsque agere et scā-  
 4 lis vāllum āscendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs  
 atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā  
 torrērentur māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur 730  
 suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōn-  
 flagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo [dēmigrandī causā] dē  
 vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem  
 quisquam; āc tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnā-  
 5 rent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen 735  
 hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus numerus ho-  
 stium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō  
 vāllō cōnstipāverant recēssumque primīs ūltimī nōn da-  
 6 bant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō  
 turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centu- 740  
 riōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recēssērunt suōsque omnēs  
 remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī introīre vellent,  
 vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō.  
 7 Tum ex omni parte lapidibus cōniectis dēturbātī, turris-  
 que succēnsa est. 745

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs,  
 quī iam primīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent; T. Pullō et  
 2 L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habē-  
 bant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō  
 3 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum 750  
 ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,'  
 inquit, 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis  
 expectās? hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiis iudicābit.'

Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs quaeque  
 755 pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, irrumpit. Nē  
 Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium  
 veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō  
 relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum  
 ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et  
 760 exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī  
 tēla cōniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem.  
 Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfi-  
 gitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāginam et gladium ēducere  
 cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs  
 765 circumstant. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labō-  
 rantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis  
 multitūdō convertit [; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitran-  
 tur]. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō  
 interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat,  
 770 in locum dēiectus īferiōrem concidit. Huīc rūsus  
 circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs  
 complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā  
 mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et  
 certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus  
 775 auxiliō salutīque esset, neque diūdicārī posset uter utrī  
 virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

*Obsidiō adventū Caesaris solvitur; hostēs prōfligantur.*

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppū-  
 gnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā  
 vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat,  
 780 tantō crēbriōrēs lītterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittē-  
 bantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrōrum  
 mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus 2

Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā  
 obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem  
 3 praestiterat. Hīc servō spē libertātis māgnisque per- 785  
 4 suādet praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās  
 ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine  
 5 ullā sūspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō  
 dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter undecimā diēi 790  
 statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius  
 2 hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā  
 nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit  
 3 cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum  
 mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi 795  
 4 iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rei pūblicae  
 commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorū  
 5 veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat  
 longius, nōn putat expectandam; equitēs circiter qua-  
 dringentōs ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit. 800

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī  
 adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgre-  
 2 ditur. Crassum Samarēbrivae praeficit legiōnemque eī  
 attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civi-  
 tātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō 805  
 3 tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius,  
 ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere  
 4 cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede  
 cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum  
 cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernīs fugae similem 810  
 profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn  
 posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferri scīret,  
 5 litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem

ex hibernis ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus  
 815 perscribit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās  
 Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suis castris  
 cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōsiliō eius probātō, etsī ōpīniōne trium  
 legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen unum com-  
 820 mūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritātē pōnēbat. Venit 2  
 māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs  
 cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in  
 periculō rēs sit. Tum cuīdam ex equitibus Gallis māgnīs 3  
 praemiis persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.  
 825 Hanc Graecis cōnscriptam litteris mittit, nē interceptā 4  
 epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī 5  
 adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad  
 āmentum dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat.  
 In litteris scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter 6  
 830 affore; hortātur ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus 7  
 periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit.  
 Haec cāsū ad turrīm adhaesit neque ā nostris bīduō ani- 8  
 māversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōspicitur; dēmta  
 ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū 9  
 835 mīlitum recitat māmāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum 10  
 fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem  
 dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

49. Galli rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relin-  
 quunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Haec  
 840 erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte 2  
 Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōstrāvimus,  
 repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet  
 iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris hostēs 3  
 ab sē discēssisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem cōnver-

4 tisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātis 845  
 suos facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmīcandum animō cōn-  
 5 fīrmat. Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter  
 milia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum  
 6 multitudinem hostiū cōspiciātur. Erat māgnī periculi  
 rēs tantulis cōpiis iniquō locō dīmīcāre; tum, quoniam 850  
 obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō  
 7 remittendū dē celeritāte existimābat: cōsīdit et, quam  
 aequissimō potest locō castra cōmmūnit atque haec, etsi  
 erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium septem, prae-  
 sertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustis viarum, 855  
 8 quam māximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in sum-  
 mam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculā-  
 tōribus in omnēs partēs dīmīssis explōrat, quō cōmmo-  
 dissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis 860  
 2 utriūque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs  
 3 cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant expectābant; Caesar,  
 si forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere  
 4 posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet;  
 si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre 865  
 cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Primā lūce  
 hostiū equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum  
 5 nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs  
 cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus  
 partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūniri portāsque obstrui 870  
 atque in his administrandis rēbus quam māximē con-  
 cursari et cum simulātiōne agi timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitāti cōpiās trā-  
 dūcunt aciemque iniquō locō cōstituunt; nostris vērō  
 2 etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tela intrā 875

mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt praecōnibusque circummissis prōnūtiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac  
880 sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut obstrūctis in speciem portis singulis ōrdinibus caespitem, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam  
885 dat, sic utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnūque ex iīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

52. Longius persequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum  
890 locum relinqui vidēbat], omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institūtās turrēs, tēstudinēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perī-  
895 culō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae; Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem tēstimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captivīs cōgnōscit.  
900 Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus  
905 diūtina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.

## IV. MOTUS SENONUM ET TREVERORUM.

CC. 53-58.

*Caede Eburōnum audītā, Indutiomārus cōpiās redūcit. Caesar in Galliā hiemāre parat.*

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī cele-  
ritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab  
hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX, eōque  
post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam  
noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre 910  
significātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō  
fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indutiomārus, quī  
posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat, noctū  
profugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar  
Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum 915  
tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hībernīs  
hiemāre cōstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstite-  
rant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit.  
Nam illō incommodō dē Sabinī morte perlātō omnēs ferē  
Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōsultābant; nūntiōs legātiō- 920  
nēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant et, quid reliquī cōnsi-  
liī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret, explōrābant  
nocturnaue in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque  
ullum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris  
intercēssit quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum 925  
nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī  
tertiaedecimae praefēcerat, certior factus est, māgnās  
[Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae  
appellantur oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque  
longius mīlibus passuum octō ab hībernīs suis āfuisse, 930

sed nūntiō allātō dē victōriā Caesaris discēssisse adeō ut fugae similis discēssus vidērētur.

54. At Caesar, prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātis, aliōs territandō, cum sē scīre quae fierent, dēnūnti-  
 935 āret, aliōs cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstituerat, cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cūiusque māiōrēs rē-  
 940 gnum obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō cōsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset āc profūgisset, usque ad finēs īnsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt et, missis ad Caesarem satis faciendī causā lēgātis, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iūssisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Āc tantum apud  
 945 hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs bellī īferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Aeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere āc perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recen-  
 950 tibus Gallicī bellī officiis, nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn sūspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mirandumne sit, cum complūribus aliis dē causis, tum māximē, quod, quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē cīus opīniōnis dēperdidisse ut populī Rōmānī imperia  
 955 perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

*Trēverī duce Indutiomārō Labiēnī castra oppūgnant.*

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum tempus intermīsērunt, quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicerentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō

2 minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli 960  
 civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit ut Rhenum  
 transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et  
 Tencterorum transitu; non esse amplius fortunam temp-  
 3 taturus. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihil minus  
 copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules 965  
 damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere  
 4 coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctori-  
 tatem comparaverat ut undique ad eum legationes con-  
 currerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque  
 peterent. 970

56. Ubi intellexit ultro ad se venire, altera ex parte  
 Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari,  
 altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare,  
 neque sibi voluntariorum copias de fore, si ex finibus suis  
 2 progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc 975  
 more Gallorum est initium belli, quo lege communi  
 omnes puberes armati convenire coguntur; qui ex iis  
 novissimus venit in conspectu multitudinis omnibus  
 3 cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetori-  
 gem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem 980  
 supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo  
 4 non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His  
 rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat arcessitum se a  
 Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae  
 5 civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque 985  
 agros populaturum ac, prius quam id faciat, castra  
 Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit praecipit.

57. Labienus, cum et loci naturam et manu munitissimis  
 castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil  
 timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimittit- 990

teret cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorige atque eius pro-  
 pinquīs ōrātiōne Indutiomārī cōgnitā, quam in conciliō  
 habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finitimās cīvitātēs equitēs-  
 que undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit.  
 995 Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indutiomārus  
 sub castrīs eius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum  
 cōgnōsceret, aliās colloquendī aut territandī causā:  
 equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum cōniciēbant.  
 Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitiōnem continēbat timōrisque  
 1000 opīniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

*Indutiomārō caesō, Galliā in quiētem redūcitur.*

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomārus ad  
 castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium  
 finitimārum cīvitātum quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā  
 diligentiā omnēs suōs cūstōdiīs intrā castra continuit ut  
 1005 nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferri  
 posset. Interim ex cōsuētūdine cotīdiānā Indutiomārus  
 ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēi cōnsūmit;  
 equitēs tēla cōniciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā verbō-  
 rum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō  
 1010 respōnsō, ubi vīsum est sub vesperum dīpersī āc dissi-  
 pātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem  
 equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdīcit, perterritīs  
 hostibus atque in fugam cōniectīs (quod fore, sic ut  
 accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indutiomārum, neu  
 1015 quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum vīderit,  
 quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere  
 nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit iīs, quī occīderint, praemia;  
 submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat homi-  
 nis cōnsīlium fortūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in

ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomārus interficitur 1020  
caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equitēs quōs  
7 possunt cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. Hāc rē cōgnitā  
omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quae convēnerant,  
cōpiae discēdunt; paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar  
quiētiōrem Galliam. 1025

## COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

### I. GALLIAE MOTUS.

CC. 1-8.

*Cōpiīs auctīs Caesar Nervīōs, Senonēs, Carnutēs, Menapiōs subigit.*

1. Multis dē causīs Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns per M. Silānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum, T. Sextium lēgātōs dīlēctum <sup>1</sup> habēre instituit; simul ab Cn. 2 Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit, <sup>2</sup> quoniam ipse ad urbem cum 5 imperiō rei pūblīcae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā Galliā cōnsul sacrāmētō <sup>3</sup> rogāssēt ad sīgna convenīre et ad sē proficīscī iubēret; māgnī <sup>4</sup> interesse etiam in reliquum 3 tempus ad <sup>5</sup> opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī Itāliae facultātēs ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī 10 acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī, <sup>6</sup> sed etiam māiōribus augērī <sup>7</sup> cōpiīs posset. Quod cum Pompēius et 4 rei pūblīcae et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōfectō per suōs dīlēctū tribus ante exāctam <sup>8</sup> hiemem et cōstitutīs et adductīs legiōnibus duplicātōque eārum cohortium 15 numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō āmīserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit quid populi Rōmānī dīsciplīna atque opēs possent.

2. Interfectō Indutiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius propinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī finitīmōs Ger-

<sup>1</sup> 'levy.'      <sup>2</sup> sc. *ut*, with iuberet.      <sup>3</sup> *sacramento* rogare: 'enlist.'

<sup>4</sup> *magni interesse*: 'be of great importance.'      <sup>5</sup> 'for (influencing).'

<sup>6</sup> 'repair.'      <sup>7</sup> sc. *exercitum*.      <sup>8</sup> 'finish.'

mānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. 20  
 2 Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ūteriōrēs temp-  
 tant. Inventīs nōn nullīs cīvitatibus iūre iūrاندō inter sē  
 cōnfīrmant obsidibusque dē<sup>1</sup> pecūniā cavent<sup>2</sup>; Ambiorīgem  
 3 sibi societāte<sup>3</sup> et foedere<sup>4</sup> adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cō-  
 gnitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, 25  
 Aduatucōs, Menapiōs, adiūctīs Cīsrhēnānīs omnibus Ger-  
 mānīs, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad<sup>5</sup> imperātum nōn venīre  
 et cum Carnutibus finitimīsque cīvitatibus cōnsilia com-  
 mūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbrīs legātiōnibus sol-  
 licitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit. 30

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōfectā, proximīs quattuor  
 coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvisō in finēs Nerviōrum con-  
 2 tendit et, prius quam illī aut convenīre aut profugere pos-  
 sent, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque  
 eā praedā militibus concēssā vāstātisque agrīs, in dēdi- 35  
 3 tiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō cele-  
 4 riter cōfectō negōtiō rūsus in hiberna legiōnēs redūxit.  
 Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre,<sup>6</sup> ut instituerat, indictō, cum  
 reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent,  
 initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia 40  
 postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parīsiōrum  
 5 trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs<sup>7</sup> erant hī Senonibus cīvitatēque  
 patrum memoriā coniūnxerant, sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse  
 6 existimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū<sup>8</sup> prōnūntiātā eō-  
 dem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur māgnīs- 45  
 que itineribus eō pervenit.

4. Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō,<sup>9</sup> quī prīnceps ēius  
 cōnsiliī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenīre.

<sup>1</sup> 'for.'      <sup>2</sup> 'give security.'      <sup>3</sup> 'alliance.'      <sup>4</sup> 'league.'      <sup>5</sup> 'ad im-  
 peratum: 'at his command.'      <sup>6</sup> 'spring.'      <sup>7</sup> 'neighboring.'      <sup>8</sup> 'plat-  
 form.'      <sup>9</sup> nom.

Cōnantibus, prius quam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs  
 50 nūntiātur. Necessariō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dē-  
 precandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduōs,  
 quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Cae-  
 55 sar petentibus Aeduīs dat veniam<sup>1</sup> excūsātiōnemque acci-  
 pit, quod aestīvum<sup>2</sup> tempus Instantis bellī,<sup>3</sup> nōn quae-  
 stiōnis<sup>3</sup> esse arbitrābātur. Obsidibus imperātis centum  
 hōs Aeduīs cūstōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs  
 obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum  
 erant in clientelā<sup>4</sup>; eadem ferunt rēspōnsa. Peragit cōn-  
 silium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

60 5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus<sup>5</sup> et mente et animō  
 in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis Insistit. Cavarīnum  
 cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis  
 aut ex hūius Irācundiā<sup>6</sup> aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō<sup>7</sup>  
 cīvitātis<sup>8</sup> mōtus<sup>9</sup> exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōstitutis, quod  
 65 prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse con-  
 tentūrum, reliqua eius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat.  
 Erant Menapiī propinquī Eburōnum finibus, perpetuīs  
 palūdibus silvīsque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce  
 ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse  
 70 hospitium Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse  
 Germānīs in amicitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illī<sup>10</sup>  
 dētrahenda auxilia exīstimābat quam ipsum bellō laces-  
 seret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet  
 aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congredi<sup>11</sup> cōgerētur. Ilōc initō  
 75 cōnsiliō tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in  
 Trēverōs mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficīscī iubet;  
 ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis quīnque in Menapiōs profi-

<sup>1</sup> 'pardon.'      <sup>2</sup> '(of) summer.'      <sup>3</sup> pred. gen.      <sup>4</sup> 'protection.'  
<sup>5</sup> totus—animo: 'heart and soul.'      <sup>6</sup> 'passion.'      <sup>7</sup> 'hatred.'      <sup>8</sup> sub-  
 jective.      <sup>9</sup> noun.      <sup>10</sup> dat. of separation.      <sup>11</sup> 'join.'

7 cīscitur. Illī nullā coāctā manū, locī praesidiō frētī, in  
silvās palūdēsque cōfugiunt suaque eōdem cōferunt.

6. Caesar, partītīs cōpiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. 80  
Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus, adit trīper-  
titō,<sup>1</sup> aedificia vicōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque  
2 hominum numerō potitur. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapiī  
3 lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsi-  
dibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōfīrmat, 85  
sī aut Ambiorīgem aut eius lēgātōs finibus suis recē-  
4 pissent. His cōfīrmātīs rēbus Commium Atrebātem  
cum equitātū cūstōdis locō in Menapiīs relinquit; ipse  
in Trēverōs proficīscitur.

*Labiēnus Trēverōs vincit.*

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnīs 90  
coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum unā  
2 legiōne quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat adoriri parā-  
bant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum  
3 duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positis  
castrīs ā<sup>2</sup> mīlibus passuum quīndecim auxilia Germā- 95  
4 nōrum expectāre cōstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō  
cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte<sup>3</sup> eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandi  
facultātem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedīmentīs  
relictō, cum vīginti quīnque cohortibus māgnōque equitātū  
contrā hostem proficīscitur, et mīlle passuum intermissō 100  
5 spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque  
hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs. Hōc  
neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsi-  
6 tūrōs existimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs.  
Loquitur cōsultō palam, quoniam Germānī appropinquāre 105

<sup>1</sup> from *trēs, pars*.

<sup>2</sup> 'away.'

<sup>3</sup> 'rashness.'

dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in<sup>1</sup> dubium  
 nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē primā lūce castra  
 mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex  
 māgnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nūllōs Gallicīs  
 110 rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte, tribūnīs  
 militum prīmisque ōrdinibus convocātīs, quid suī sit  
 cōnsiliū prōpōnit et, quō facilius hostibus timōris det  
 sūspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī  
 Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō castra mōvērī iubet. Hīs rēbus  
 115 fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per  
 explorātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrō-  
 rum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

8. Vix āgmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcēs-  
 serat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam  
 120 ex manibus dīmitterent; longum<sup>2</sup> esse perterritīs Rōmānīs  
 Germānōrum auxilium expectāre; neque suam patī dīgni-  
 tātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum praesertim  
 fugientem atque impedītā adorīrī nōn audeant flūmen  
 trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant.  
 125 Quae fore sūspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen  
 ēliceret, eādē ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē<sup>3</sup> prōgre-  
 diēbātur. Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentīs atque  
 in tumultō quōdam collocātīs, ‘Habētis,’ inquit, ‘mīlitēs,  
 quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impedītō atque inīquō  
 130 locō tenētis; praestāte eandem nobīs ducibus virtūtem  
 quam saepe numerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum  
 adesse et haec cōram cernere<sup>4</sup> exīstimāte.’ Simul sīgna  
 ad hostem convertī aciemque dīrigī<sup>5</sup> iubet et paucīs tur-  
 mīs<sup>6</sup> praesidiō ad impedīmenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs

<sup>1</sup> in dubium devocare: ‘endanger.’      <sup>2</sup> ‘too long.’      <sup>3</sup> ‘calmly.’  
<sup>4</sup> ‘see.’      <sup>5</sup> ‘draw up.’      <sup>6</sup> ‘squadron.’

6 ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla 135  
 in hostēs immittunt. Illī, ubi praeter spem quōs fugere  
 crēdebant infestīs<sup>1</sup> signīs ad sē ire vīdērunt, impetum  
 nostrōrum ferre nōn potuērunt, ac primō concursū in  
 7 fugam coniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiē-  
 nus equitātū cōsectātus, māgnō numerō interfectō, com- 140  
 plūribus captīs, paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit.  
 Nam Germānī quī auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trēve-  
 8 rōrum fugā sēsē domum contulērunt. Cum hīs pro-  
 pinquī Indutiomārī, quī defectionis auctōrēs fuerant,  
 9 comitatī<sup>2</sup> eōs ex cīvitāte excēssērunt. Cingetorīgī, quem 145  
 ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōstrāvimus, prīnci-  
 pātus atque imperium est trāditum.

ALTER CAESARIS IN GERMANIAM EXPEDITIO.

cc. 9-28.

*Caesar, satisfactiōne Ubiōrum acceptā, contrā Suēbōs pro-  
 ficisci cōstituit. Suēbī in ūltimōs finēs suōs sē recipiunt.*

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit,  
 2 duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit; quārum ūna  
 erat quod [Germānī] auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant; 150  
 3 altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōn-  
 stitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exerci-  
 4 tum trādūxerat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque  
 institūtā ratiōne, māgnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus  
 5 opus efficitur. Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō 155  
 relictō, nē quis ab. hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās  
 6 cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs  
 dederant atque in dēditionem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī  
 causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxi-

<sup>1</sup> 'hostile.'      <sup>2</sup> 'accompany.'

160 lia ex suā civitate in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem  
laesam<sup>1</sup>: petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat,<sup>2</sup> nē commūnī  
odiō Germānōrum<sup>3</sup> innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās  
pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur.  
Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa<sup>4</sup>  
165 esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditūs viāsque in  
Suēbōs perquirit.<sup>4</sup>

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suē-  
bōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque iīs nātiōni-  
bus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia  
170 peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitis rēbus rem<sup>2</sup>  
frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit;  
Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs  
in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs  
hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pū-  
175 gnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs<sup>3</sup>  
explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs geran-  
tur cōgnōscant. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus<sup>4</sup>  
intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteā quam cer-  
tiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum  
180 omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, peni-  
tus<sup>5</sup> ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi in-<sup>5</sup>  
finitā māgnitudine, quae appellētur Bacēnis; hanc  
longē intrōrsus pertinēre et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam  
Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum  
185 iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae ini-  
tium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum expectāre cōnsti-  
tuisse.

<sup>1</sup> 'break.'<sup>2</sup> 'spare.'<sup>3</sup> objective.<sup>4</sup> simple verb, *quaerō*.<sup>5</sup> 'clear.'

*Mōrēs Gallōrum.*

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est,<sup>1</sup> nōn aliē-  
 num<sup>2</sup> esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et  
 2 quō<sup>3</sup> differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In 190  
 Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitatibus atque in omnibus  
 pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus  
 3 factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī<sup>4</sup>  
 summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre existimantur,  
 quōrum<sup>5</sup> ad arbitrium<sup>6</sup> iūdiciūque summa omnium 195  
 4 rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius rei causā  
 antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā  
 potentiōrem auxiliī egēret<sup>7</sup>; suōs enim quisque opprimī  
 et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam  
 5 inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in 200  
 summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitatēs dīvisae  
 sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis  
 2 prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē  
 minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in 205  
 Aeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae,<sup>8</sup> Germānōs  
 atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs  
 3 iactūrīs<sup>9</sup> pollicitātiōnibusque<sup>10</sup> perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō  
 complūribus factis secundis<sup>11</sup> atque omnī nōbilitāte Ae-  
 duōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecēsserant ut mā- 210  
 gnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsi-  
 4 dēsque ab hīs prīncipum filiōs acciperent et pūblicē iūrāre  
 cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliū initūrōs, et

<sup>1</sup> 'we have come.'    <sup>2</sup> 'out of place.'    <sup>3</sup> 'how.'    <sup>4</sup> 'this clause is  
 parenthetical, explaining principes.    <sup>5</sup> characteristic.    <sup>6</sup> 'discre-  
 tion.'    <sup>7</sup> 'lack' (with gen.).    <sup>8</sup> 'dependency.'    <sup>9</sup> 'concession.'  
<sup>10</sup> 'promise.'    <sup>11</sup> 'successful.'

partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent  
 215 Galliaeque tōtīus principātum obtinērent. Quā necessi-  
 tāte adductus Dīviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad  
 senātum profectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris  
 factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs,  
 veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem compa-  
 220 rātīs, quod iī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant  
 meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē utī vidē-  
 bant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplifi-  
 cātā,<sup>1</sup> Sēquanī principātum dīmiserant. In eōrum locum  
 Rēmī succēsserant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem  
 225 grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās  
 nullō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in  
 clientēlam dicābant.<sup>2</sup> Hōs illī<sup>3</sup> diligenter tuēbantur<sup>4</sup>; s  
 ita et novam et repentē collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant.  
 Eō [tamen] statū rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur  
 230 Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt  
 numerō<sup>5</sup> atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs<sup>6</sup>  
 paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē,  
 nullī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere<sup>7</sup> aliēnō  
 235 aut māgnitudine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum pre-  
 muntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in  
 hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs<sup>8</sup> in servōs. [Sed  
 de hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum  
 equitum. Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica  
 240 ac prīvāta prōcūrant,<sup>9</sup> religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs  
 māgnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concur-

<sup>1</sup> 'increase.'      <sup>2</sup> 'devote.'      <sup>3</sup> i.e. *Remi*.      <sup>4</sup> 'protect.'      <sup>5</sup> 'ac-  
 count.'      <sup>6</sup> 5th decl.      <sup>7</sup> *aes alienum*: 'debt.'      <sup>8</sup> 'master.'  
<sup>9</sup> i.e. 'attend to.'

5 rit, mājnōque hī<sup>1</sup> sunt apud eōs<sup>2</sup> honōre. Nam ferē dē  
 omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt; et,  
 sī quod est admissum<sup>3</sup> facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērē-  
 ditāte,<sup>4</sup> dē finibus contrōversia est, Idem dēcernunt; 245  
 6 praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut  
 populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt.  
 7 Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est inter-  
 dictum, hī numerō impiōrum āc scelerātōrum<sup>5</sup> habentur,  
 hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugi- 250  
 unt, nē quid ex contāgiōne<sup>6</sup> incommodī accipiant, neque  
 iīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūni-  
 8 cātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī  
 9 summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut  
 sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dīgnitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt 255  
 plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam  
 10 armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Iī certō annī tempore  
 in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media  
 habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs  
 undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque 260  
 11 dēcrētīs iūdicīisque parent. Dīsciplīna<sup>7</sup> in Britannīā  
 reperta<sup>8</sup> atque inde in Galliam trānslāta existimātur,  
 12 et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plē-  
 rumque illō<sup>9</sup> dīscendī causā proficīscuntur.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta 265  
 ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt [, militiae<sup>10</sup> vacātiōnem omni-  
 2 umque rērum habent immūnitātem]. Tantīs excitātī  
 praemiīs et suā sponte multī in dīsciplīnam cōveniunt  
 3 et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Māgnū ibi

<sup>1</sup> i.e. *druides*.   <sup>2</sup> i.e. *Gallōs*.   <sup>3</sup> 'commit.'   <sup>4</sup> 'inheritance.'   <sup>5</sup> 'criminal.'  
<sup>6</sup> 'association.'   <sup>7</sup> 'system.'   <sup>8</sup> as pass., 'originate.'   <sup>9</sup> adv.  
<sup>10</sup> 'war'; locative.

270 numerum versuum ēdiscere<sup>1</sup> dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn  
 nūllī vicēnōs<sup>2</sup> in dīsciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse  
 existimant ea lītterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus,  
 pūblicīs prīvātisque ratiōnibus, Graecīs lītterīs ūtantur.  
 Id mihi duābus dē causīs instituisse videntur; quod neque  
 275 in vulgus dīsciplīnam<sup>3</sup> efferri velint neque eōs quī dīscunt  
 lītterīs cōfīsōs minus memoriae studēre, quod ferē plē-  
 risque accidit ut praesidiō lītterārum dīligentiam in per-  
 dīscendō<sup>4</sup> ac memoriā remittant. In prīmīs hōc volunt  
 persuādere, nōn interīre animās,<sup>5</sup> sed ab aliīs post mortem  
 280 trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem exci-  
 tāri putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē  
 sīderibus<sup>6</sup> atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi<sup>7</sup> ac terrārum  
 māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum  
 vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

285 15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus<sup>8</sup>  
 atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris  
 adventum quotannis accidere sōlēbat,<sup>9</sup> utī aut ipsī iniūriās  
 inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versan-  
 tur,<sup>10</sup> atque eōrum ut quisque est genere<sup>11</sup> cōpiisque amplis-  
 290 simus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs<sup>12</sup> clientēsque habet.  
 Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum<sup>13</sup> dēdita religiō-  
 nibus,<sup>14</sup> atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus  
 morbis,<sup>15</sup> quīque in proeliīs periculīsque versantur, aut prō  
 295 victimīs hominēs immolant<sup>16</sup> aut sē immolātūrōs vovent<sup>17</sup>  
 administrisque<sup>18</sup> ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtantur, quod,

<sup>1</sup> 'learn by heart.'    <sup>2</sup> 'twenty' (each); distributive.    <sup>3</sup> 'doctrine.'  
<sup>4</sup> cf. ē-discō, above.    <sup>5</sup> 'soul.'    <sup>6</sup> 'star.'    <sup>7</sup> 'universe.'    <sup>8</sup> 'need.'  
<sup>9</sup> 'be accustomed.'    <sup>10</sup> 'engage.'    <sup>11</sup> 'family'; specification.    <sup>12</sup> 're-  
 tainer.'    <sup>13</sup> 'very greatly.'    <sup>14</sup> 'superstition.'    <sup>15</sup> 'disease.'    <sup>16</sup> 'sac-  
 rifice.'    <sup>17</sup> 'vow.'    <sup>18</sup> 'agent.'

prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse  
 deōrum immortalium nūmen<sup>1</sup> plācārī<sup>2</sup> arbitrantur, pū-  
 blicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii  
 immānī māgnitūdine simulācra<sup>3</sup> habent, quōrum con- 800  
 texta<sup>4</sup> vīminibus membra vīvīs<sup>5</sup> hominibus complent;  
 quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur homi-  
 nēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō<sup>6</sup> aut latrōciniō<sup>7</sup> aut  
 aliquā noxiā<sup>8</sup> sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortalī-  
 bus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, 305  
 etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt: hūius sunt  
 plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium  
 ferunt,<sup>9</sup> hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad  
 quaestūs<sup>10</sup> pecūniae mercātūrāsque<sup>11</sup> habēre vim māximam 310  
 arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem  
 et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs  
 habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Miner-  
 vam operum<sup>12</sup> atque artificiōrum<sup>13</sup> initia trādere, Iovem  
 imperium caelestium<sup>14</sup> tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huīc, 315  
 cum prōeliō dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēpe-  
 rint, plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia  
 capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt.  
 Multīs in cīvitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs  
 locīs cōsecrātīs cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit 320  
 ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta<sup>15</sup> apud<sup>16</sup> sē occul-  
 tāre<sup>17</sup> aut posita<sup>15</sup> tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī rei  
 supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

<sup>1</sup> (divine) 'power.'<sup>2</sup> 'appease.'<sup>3</sup> 'image.'<sup>4</sup> 'weave.'<sup>5</sup> 'living.'<sup>6</sup> 'theft.'<sup>7</sup> 'robbery.'<sup>8</sup> 'crime.'<sup>9</sup> 'call.'<sup>10</sup> 'acquisition.'<sup>11</sup> 'trade.'<sup>12</sup> 'trades.'<sup>13</sup> 'arts.'<sup>14</sup> (celestials)

'gods.'

<sup>15</sup> i.e. *ea quae bellō cēperint*.<sup>16</sup> *apud se*: 'in his house.'<sup>17</sup> 'hide.'

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte<sup>1</sup> patre prōgnātōs<sup>2</sup> praedi-  
 325 cant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam<sup>3</sup>  
 spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium  
 finiunt<sup>4</sup>; diēs nātālēs<sup>4</sup> et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic  
 observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītāe<sup>5</sup>  
 Institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs,  
 330 nisi cum adolēvērunt<sup>6</sup> ut mūnus<sup>6</sup> militiae sustinēre  
 possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur filiumque pue-  
 rīlī aetāte in pūblicō in<sup>7</sup> cōnspectū patris assistere turpe<sup>8</sup>  
 dūcunt.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis<sup>9</sup> nōmine  
 335 accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum  
 dōtibus communicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnc-<sup>10</sup>  
 tim<sup>10</sup> ratiō<sup>11</sup> habētur fructūsque<sup>12</sup> servantur; uter<sup>13</sup> eōrum  
 vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus  
 superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sic utī<sup>14</sup>  
 340 in liberōs vītāe necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater  
 familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcēssit,<sup>14</sup> eius propinquī  
 conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in sūspiciōnem venit, dē  
 uxōribus in servīlem<sup>15</sup> modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī  
 compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciātās<sup>16</sup>  
 345 interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica  
 et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī<sup>17</sup> fuisse arbi-  
 trantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā  
 hanc memoriā servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dilēctōs<sup>18</sup> esse  
 cōnstābat, iūstis<sup>19</sup> fūnebribus<sup>20</sup> cōfectis unā cremābantur.

<sup>1</sup> *Dis* or *Pluto*, god of the lower world.    <sup>2</sup> *prō* + (*g*)*nāscor*.    <sup>3</sup> 'limit.'  
 'it.'    <sup>4</sup> 'of birth,' adj.    <sup>5</sup> 'grow up.'    <sup>6</sup> 'service.'    <sup>7</sup> *in conspectu*  
*assistere*: 'appear' (with).    <sup>8</sup> 'agrees with' *filium assistere*.    <sup>9</sup> 'dowry.'  
<sup>10</sup> 'jointly.'    <sup>11</sup> 'account.'    <sup>12</sup> 'income.'    <sup>13</sup> 'whichever.'    <sup>14</sup> *sc. vītā*.  
<sup>15</sup> '(the same as) of slaves.'    <sup>16</sup> 'torture.'    <sup>17</sup> 'to the heart'; here,  
 'dear.'    <sup>18</sup> 'love.'    <sup>19</sup> 'regular.'    <sup>20</sup> neut. plu. of adj. = *funeribus*.

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam ad- 350  
ministrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,<sup>1</sup> sī quis  
quid dē rē publicā ā finitimīs rumōre ac fāmā accēperit,<sup>2</sup>  
utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commū-  
nicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs<sup>3</sup> atque imperitōs  
falsis rumōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs 355  
rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae  
vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iudicāvērunt multi-  
tūdini prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per concilium loquī  
nōn concēditur.

*Mōrēs Germānōrum.*

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. 360  
Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint  
neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs  
dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur,  
Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem  
accēpērunt.<sup>2</sup> Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs 365  
reī militāris cōsistit; ā parvīs<sup>4</sup> labōrī āc dūritiae<sup>5</sup>  
student. Quī diūtissimē impuberēs<sup>6</sup> permānsērunt māxi-  
mam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī<sup>7</sup> statūrā, alī  
virēs nervōsque confirmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō  
vīcēsimum<sup>8</sup> fēminae nōtitiam<sup>9</sup> habuisse in turpissimīs 370  
habent rēbus; cūius reī nūlla est occultātiō,<sup>10</sup> quod et  
prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur<sup>11</sup> et pellibus aut  
parvīs rēnōnum<sup>12</sup> tegimentis<sup>13</sup> ūtuntur, māgnā corporis  
parte nūdā.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum 375

<sup>1</sup> 'ordain.'    <sup>2</sup> 'hear of.'    <sup>3</sup> 'reckless.'    <sup>4</sup> 'boyhood.'    <sup>5</sup> 'hard-  
ship.'    <sup>6</sup> 'chaste.'    <sup>7</sup> 'strengthen.'    <sup>8</sup> 'twentieth.'    <sup>9</sup> 'knowl-  
edge.'    <sup>10</sup> 'concealment.'    <sup>11</sup> 'bathe.'    <sup>12</sup> 'reindeer skins.'    <sup>13</sup> 'cov-  
ering.'

vīctūs<sup>1</sup> in lacte, cāseō,<sup>2</sup> carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam<sup>2</sup> agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs<sup>3</sup>; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque<sup>4</sup> hominum, quīque unā coiērunt,<sup>5</sup> quantum et  
 380 quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō<sup>6</sup> trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās: nē<sup>7</sup> assiduā<sup>7</sup> cōsuētūdine captī<sup>8</sup> studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent<sup>9</sup>; nē lātōs finēs parāre<sup>10</sup> studeant potentiōrēs, atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant;  
 385 nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs<sup>11</sup> vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte<sup>12</sup> plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

390 23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc propriū<sup>13</sup> virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore<sup>3</sup> tūtiorēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert,  
 395 magistrātūs quī ei bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est communis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs<sup>14</sup> dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.  
 400 Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cūiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidia<sup>15</sup> minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore,

<sup>1</sup> 'food.'    <sup>2</sup> 'cheese.'    <sup>3</sup> 'private.'    <sup>4</sup> 'clan.'    <sup>5</sup> *con, eō.*    <sup>6</sup> *adv.*  
<sup>7</sup> 'continued.'    <sup>8</sup> 'charm.'    <sup>9</sup> 'exchange (for).'    <sup>10</sup> 'acquire.'  
<sup>11</sup> 'heat.'    <sup>12</sup> 'contentment.'    <sup>13</sup> 'evidence' (pred.).    <sup>14</sup> *ius dicunt:*  
 'act as judges.'    <sup>15</sup> 'idleness.'

quī sequī velint profiteantur,<sup>1</sup> cōsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant<sup>2</sup> suumque auxilium polli- 405  
centur atque ā multitudīne collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum āc prōditōrum<sup>3</sup> numerō dūcuntur omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur.<sup>4</sup>  
Hospitem<sup>5</sup> violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent, sāctōsque<sup>6</sup> habent, 410  
hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque communicātur.

24. Āc fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinē agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca 415  
circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī<sup>7</sup> et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse vidē, quam illī Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summāque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis 420  
opiniōnem. Nunc quod in eādē inopiā, egestāte,<sup>8</sup> patientiā,<sup>9</sup> quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis utuntur; Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa<sup>10</sup> ad cōpiam atque ūsus largitur<sup>11</sup>; paulātim assuēfactī superārī 425  
multisque victī proeliis nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

*Hercynia silva et ferārum quae in eā nāscuntur, quaedam genera dēscribuntur.*

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitudō novem diērum iter<sup>12</sup> expeditō<sup>13</sup> patet; nōn

<sup>1</sup> imper. in ind. dis.; translate, 'for those . . . to signify it.'  
<sup>2</sup> 'approve.'    <sup>3</sup> 'traitor.'    <sup>4</sup> 'withdraw.'    <sup>5</sup> 'guest.'    <sup>6</sup> 'sacred.'  
<sup>7</sup> nom. *Eratosthenēs*.    <sup>8</sup> 'need.'    <sup>9</sup> 'suffering.'    <sup>10</sup> acc.    <sup>11</sup> 'afford.'  
<sup>12</sup> cognate acc.    <sup>13</sup> (one) 'unencumbered.'

430 enim aliter finiri<sup>1</sup> potest, neque mensuras itinerum novē-  
runt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauracō-  
rum finibus rectaque<sup>2</sup> fluminis Dānuii<sup>3</sup> regione perti-  
net ad fines Dācorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sini-  
strorsus<sup>4</sup> diversis<sup>5</sup> a flumine regionibus multarumque  
435 gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque  
quisquam est huius<sup>6</sup> Germaniae qui se [aut audisse] aut  
adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum diorum iter sexā-  
gintā processerit, aut quō ex locō oriatur accēperit; mul-  
taque in eā genera ferarum<sup>7</sup> nasci constat quae reliquis  
440 in locis visa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant  
a ceteris et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs<sup>8</sup> cervi<sup>9</sup> figurā cuius a mediā fronte<sup>10</sup> inter  
aurēs<sup>11</sup> unum cornū existit excelsius<sup>12</sup> magisque dērectum<sup>13</sup>  
his quae nobis nota sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sic ut  
445 palmae ramique<sup>14</sup> latē diffunduntur.<sup>15</sup> Eadem est feminae  
marisque<sup>16</sup> natura, eadem forma magnitudōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs.<sup>17</sup> Harum est  
cōnsimilis capris<sup>18</sup> figura et varietas<sup>19</sup> pellium; sed magni-  
tudine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque<sup>20</sup> sunt cornibus et  
450 crūra<sup>21</sup> sine nodis<sup>22</sup> articulisque<sup>23</sup> habent; neque quiētis  
causā prōcumbunt<sup>24</sup> neque, si quō afflictāe casū conci-  
derunt, erigere sese ac sublevare possunt. His sunt  
arbores pro cubilibus<sup>25</sup>; ad eas se applicant atque ita  
paulum modo reclinatae quiētem capiunt. Quarum ex<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 'measure.'      <sup>2</sup> *recta regione*: 'parallel' (to).      <sup>3</sup> 'Danube.'  
<sup>4</sup> 'to the left.'      <sup>5</sup> 'remote.'      <sup>6</sup> 'this part of.'      <sup>7</sup> 'wild animal.'  
<sup>8</sup> 'ox.'      <sup>9</sup> 'stag.'      <sup>10</sup> 'forehead.'      <sup>11</sup> 'ear.'      <sup>12</sup> 'elevated.'  
<sup>13</sup> 'straight.'      <sup>14</sup> hendiadys; 'palm branches.'      <sup>15</sup> 'spread out.'  
<sup>16</sup> 'male.'      <sup>17</sup> 'elk.'      <sup>18</sup> 'goat.'      <sup>19</sup> 'different colors.'      <sup>20</sup> 'broken';  
*mutilae sunt cornibus*: 'have broken horns.'      <sup>21</sup> 'leg.'      <sup>22</sup> 'enlarge-  
ment.'      <sup>23</sup> 'joint.'      <sup>24</sup> 'lie down.'      <sup>25</sup> 'resting-place.'

vēstigiis<sup>1</sup> cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus<sup>2</sup> quō sē 455  
 recipere cōsuērint, omnēs<sup>3</sup> eō locō aut ab rādīcibus  
 subruunt<sup>4</sup> aut accīdunt<sup>5</sup> arborēs, tantum ut summa<sup>6</sup>  
 5 speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōn-  
 suētūdine reclīnāvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affli-  
 gunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt. 460

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī urī<sup>7</sup> appellantur.  
 Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō infrā elephantōs, speciē et  
 2 colōre et figurā taurī.<sup>8</sup> Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna  
 velōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspexērunt  
 3 parcunt. Hōs studiōsē<sup>9</sup> foveīs<sup>10</sup> captōs interficiunt; hōc 465  
 sē labōre dūrant<sup>11</sup> adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnāti-  
 ōnis exercent, et quī plurimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātis  
 in pūblicum cornibus quae sint tēstimōniō, māgnam  
 4 ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere<sup>12</sup> ad hominēs et mānsuē-  
 5 fieri<sup>13</sup> nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō 470  
 cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum  
 6 cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita ab labrīs<sup>14</sup>  
 argentō<sup>15</sup> circumclūdunt<sup>16</sup> atque in amplissimīs epulīs<sup>17</sup>  
 prō pōculis<sup>18</sup> ūtuntur.

### III. BELLUM CONTRA AMBIORIGEM ET EBURONES.

CC. 29-44.

*Caesar, ex Germāniā reversus, in Eburōnum finēs exercitum  
 dūcit, et omnēs Gallōs ad illōs dīripiendōs ēvocat.*

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit 475  
 Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus,

<sup>1</sup> 'rack.'    <sup>2</sup> 'hunter.'    <sup>3</sup> with arbores.    <sup>4</sup> 'dig under.'    <sup>5</sup> 'cut  
 into.'    <sup>6</sup> 'exact.'    <sup>7</sup> 'urochs.'    <sup>8</sup> 'bull.'    <sup>9</sup> 'cautiously.'    <sup>10</sup> 'pit.'  
<sup>11</sup> 'harden.'    <sup>12</sup> cf. cōnsuēscō.    <sup>13</sup> 'tame.'    <sup>14</sup> 'edge.'    <sup>15</sup> 'silver.'  
<sup>16</sup> 'line.'    <sup>17</sup> 'banquet.'    <sup>18</sup> 'drinking cup.'

quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Ger-  
māni agrī cultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi lon-  
gius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret :  
480 atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem  
ūltimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longi-  
tūdinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit, atque in extrēmō :  
ponte turrim tabulātōrum<sup>1</sup> quattuor cōstituit praesi-  
diumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendī causā pōnit  
485 māgnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus fīrmat. Eī locō  
praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praeficit.  
Ipse, cum mātūrēscere<sup>2</sup> frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum :  
Ambiorīgis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est  
tōtius Galliae māxima atque ab rīpīs Rhēnī fīnibusque  
490 Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet milibusque amplius quīn-  
gentis in longitudinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum  
omni equitātū praemittit, sī<sup>3</sup> quid celeritāte itineris  
atque oportūnitāte temporis prōficere possit; monet ut :  
ignēs in castrīs fierī prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs  
495 procul sīgnificātiō fiat; sēsē cōfestim subsequī dīcit.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter con-  
trāque omnium opīniōnem cōfectō itinere multōs in  
agrīs inopīnantēs dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō<sup>4</sup> ad ipsum  
Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus  
500 esse dīcēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in :  
rē militārī potest fortūna. Nam ut māgnō accidit<sup>5</sup> cāsū  
ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret,  
priusque<sup>6</sup> ēius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur quam  
fāma āc nūntius afferrētur, sic māgnae fuit fortūnae,  
505 omni<sup>7</sup> militārī Instrūmentō quod circum sē habēbat

<sup>1</sup> 'story.'    <sup>2</sup> 'ripen.'    <sup>3</sup> 'to see if.'    <sup>4</sup> 'information.'    <sup>5</sup> perfect.  
<sup>6</sup> translate prius with quam, below.    <sup>7</sup> omni erepto; concessive.

ēreptō, raedis<sup>1</sup> equisque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effugere  
 3 mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō circumdatō  
 silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vitandī aestūs  
 causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propin-  
 quitātēs, comitēs<sup>2</sup> familiārēsque eius angustō in locō 510  
 4 paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. His  
 pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suis intulit; fugi-  
 entem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum perīculum  
 et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

31. Ambiorix cōpiās suās iūdicione<sup>3</sup> nōn condūxerit, 515  
 quod proeliō dimicandum nōn existimāret, an tempore  
 exclusus et repentinō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum  
 2 reliquum exercitum subsequi crēderet, dubium est; sed  
 certē dimissis per agrōs nūntiis sibi quemque cōnsulere  
 iūssit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in con- 520  
 3 tinentēs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Oceanō fuērunt,  
 hī insulis sēsē occultāvērunt, quās aestūs<sup>4</sup> efficere cōn-  
 4 suērunt; multī ex suis finibus ēgressi sē suaque omnia  
 aliēnissimis<sup>5</sup> crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiaē partis  
 5 Eburōnum, quī unā cum Ambiorige cōnsilium inierat, 525  
 aetāte iam cōfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre  
 nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētēstātus<sup>6</sup> Ambiorigem,  
 quī eius cōnsiliī auctor fuisset, taxō,<sup>7</sup> cūius māgna in  
 Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

32. Sēgnī Condrūsique ex gente et numerō Germānō- 530  
 rum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad  
 Caesarem misērunt orātum nē sē in hostium numerō  
 dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā

<sup>1</sup> 'wagon.'    <sup>2</sup> 'companion.'    <sup>3</sup> -ne: 'whether'; iudicio: 'deliberately'; explained by quod—existimaret.    <sup>4</sup> 'tide.'    <sup>5</sup> 'utter stranger.'  
<sup>6</sup> 'curse,'    <sup>7</sup> '(the fruit or leaves of) the yew-tree.'

Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō  
 535 cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgī auxilia mīsisse. Caesar ex-  
 plōrātā rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs 2  
 ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit;  
 sī ita fēcissent, finēs eōrum sē violātūrum<sup>1</sup> negāvit. Tum 3  
 cōpiis in trēs partēs distribūtis impedīmenta omnium  
 540 legiōnum Aduatucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. 4  
 Hōc ferē est in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titūrius  
 atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc 5  
 cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris  
 annī mūnitiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut mīlitum labōrem  
 545 sublevāret. Praesidiō impedīmentis legiōnem quartam  
 decimam reliquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus quās proximē  
 cōnscriptās ex Italiā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrisque 6  
 Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs eī  
 attribuit.

550 33. Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus  
 ad<sup>2</sup> Ōceanum versus in eās partēs quae Menapiōs attin-  
 gunt proficīsci iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum 2  
 numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Aduatucis adiacet dē-  
 populandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flūmen 3  
 555 Scaldim, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae  
 partēs ire cōstituit, quō cum paucis equitibus profectum  
 Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum 4  
 sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat, quam ad diem eī legiōnī quae  
 in praesidiō relinquēbātur frūmentum dēbērī<sup>3</sup> sciēbat.  
 560 Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī rei pūblīcae com- 5  
 modō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut, rūsus  
 communicātō cōsiliō explōrātisque hostium ratiōnibus,  
 aliud initium bellī capere possint.

<sup>1</sup> 'invade.'<sup>2</sup> ad versus: 'toward.'<sup>3</sup> 'owe.'

34. Erat, ut suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla,  
 nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium, quod sē armīs dēfenderet, 565  
 2 sed in omnēs partēs dīspersa multītūdō. Ubi cuique aut  
 vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedīta spem  
 3 praesidiī aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. Haec  
 loca vicīnitātibus<sup>1</sup> erant nōta, māgnamque rēs dīligentiam  
 requirēbat, nōn in summā<sup>2</sup> exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim 570  
 poterat ūniversīs<sup>3</sup> ā perterritīs ac dīspersīs perīculum  
 accidere), sed in singulis mīlitibus cōservandīs; quae  
 tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat.  
 4 Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et  
 silvae incertīs occultisque itineribus cōfertōs adīre pro- 575  
 5 hibēbant. Sī negōtium cōfici stirpemque<sup>4</sup> hominum  
 scelerātōrum interfici vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs  
 6 dīdūcendīque erant mīlitēs; sī continēre ad sīgna mani-  
 pulōs vellet, ut Institūta ratiō et cōnsuetūdō exercitūs  
 Rōmānī pōstulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs, 580  
 neque ex<sup>5</sup> occultō insidiandī et dīspersōs circumveniendī  
 7 singulis deerat audācia. Ut<sup>6</sup> in eius modī difficultātibus,  
 quantum<sup>7</sup> dīligentiā prōvidērī poterat prōvidēbātur; ut  
 potius<sup>8</sup> in nocendō<sup>9</sup> aliquid praetermitteretur, etsī omnium  
 animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō mīlitum 585  
 8 dētrīmentō nocērētur.<sup>9</sup> Dīmittit ad finitimās cīvitatēs  
 nūntiōs Caesar; omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīripiendōs  
 Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiō-  
 nārius mīles perīclitētur<sup>10</sup>; simul ut māgnā multītūdine  
 circumfūsā prō tālī<sup>11</sup> facinore stirps ac nōmen cīvitatīs 590  
 tollātur.<sup>12</sup> Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

<sup>1</sup> '(people of the) neighborhood.'    <sup>2</sup> 'whole.'    <sup>3</sup> dat.; sc. *nostris*.

<sup>4</sup> 'stock.'    <sup>5</sup> *ex*—*insidiandi*: 'attack from ambush.'    <sup>6</sup> (as) 'being.'

<sup>7</sup> 'as far as.'    <sup>8</sup> with *quam*, below.    <sup>9</sup> sc. *hostibus*.    <sup>10</sup> 'endanger.'

<sup>11</sup> 'such.'    <sup>12</sup> 'destroy.'

*Sugambri eius rei famam moti Rhenum transeunt, sed mutato consilio Ciceronis castra adoriuntur.*

35. Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerébantur, diēsque appetēbat<sup>1</sup> septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti cōstituerat. Hic<sup>2</sup> 2  
595 quantum in bellō fortuna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis ac perterritis hostibus, ut 3  
dēmōstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo<sup>3</sup> causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhenum ad Germānōs 4  
600 pervenit fāma diripī Eburōnēs atque ūltrō<sup>4</sup> omnēs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambri, 5  
quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencerōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhenum 6  
nāvibus ratibusque trīgintā<sup>5</sup> mīlibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare  
605 relictum: primōs Eburōnum finēs adeunt; mūltōs ex fugā dīpersōs excipiunt,<sup>6</sup> māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā 7  
longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō latrōciniūisque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar,  
610 ex captīvīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discēssisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus 8  
ex captīvīs: ‘Quid vōs,’ inquit, ‘hanc miseram ac tenuem<sup>7</sup> sectāminī<sup>8</sup> praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunātissimōs? Tribus hōrīs Aduatucam venīre potestis; hūc  
615 omnēs suās fortunās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; prae- 9  
sidiū tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī<sup>9</sup> possit, neque quisquam ēgredi extrā mūnitiōnēs audeat.’ Hāc oblātā 10  
spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam in occultō re-

<sup>1</sup> ‘be at hand.’    <sup>2</sup> adv.; ‘here.’    <sup>3</sup> ‘even.’    <sup>4</sup> ‘further.’    <sup>5</sup> ‘thirty.’  
<sup>6</sup> ‘come upon.’    <sup>7</sup> ‘precarious.’    <sup>8</sup> ‘run after.’    <sup>9</sup> ‘man.’

linquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usque eodem duce  
cuius haec indicio cognoverant. 620

36. Cicerō, qui omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesa-  
ris summā diligentiam milites in castris continuisset ac  
ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi  
passus esset, septimo die diffidens<sup>1</sup> de numero dierum  
Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius prōgressum 625  
audiebat neque ulla de reditu eius fama affereretur;  
2 simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam<sup>2</sup>  
paene obsessionem<sup>3</sup> appellabant, si quidem ex castris  
egredi non liceret, nullum eius modi casum expectans,  
quō,<sup>4</sup> novem oppositis<sup>5</sup> legionibus maximoque equitatu, 630  
dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus, in milibus passuum  
tribus offendi<sup>6</sup> posset, quinque cohortes frumentatum  
in proximās segetes<sup>7</sup> mittit, quas inter et castra unus  
3 omnino collis intererat. Complures erant in castris ex  
legionibus aegri<sup>8</sup> relictī; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum 635  
convaluerant,<sup>9</sup> circiter trecenti, sub vexillo una mittun-  
tur; magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis  
iumentorum, quae in castris subsederat,<sup>10</sup> facta potestate  
sequitur.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites inter- 640  
veniunt<sup>11</sup> protinusque<sup>12</sup> eodem illo quo venerant cursu ab  
2 decumanā portā in castra irrumpere conantur; nec prius  
sunt visi, obiectis ab eā parte silvis, quam castris appro-  
pinquarent, usque<sup>13</sup> eo ut qui sub vallō tenderent<sup>14</sup>  
3 mercatores recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Ino- 645

<sup>1</sup> 'doubt.'      <sup>2</sup> 'patient waiting.'      <sup>3</sup> 'siege.'      <sup>4</sup> 'abl. of means =  
ut eo.'      <sup>5</sup> 'being in the field.'      <sup>6</sup> offendi posset: 'harm could be  
done.'      <sup>7</sup> 'corn fields.'      <sup>8</sup> 'ill.'      <sup>9</sup> 'get well.'      <sup>10</sup> 'remain behind.'  
<sup>11</sup> 'appear.'      <sup>12</sup> 'immediately.'      <sup>13</sup> usque eo: '(and were) so near,  
even.'      <sup>14</sup> 'pitch (a tent).'

pīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, āc vix primum  
 impetum cohors in statīōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur<sup>1</sup> 4  
 hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperire  
 possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs 5  
 650 locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur<sup>2</sup> 6  
 castrīs atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit;  
 neque quō sīgna ferantur neque quam in partem quisque  
 conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat, 7  
 alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs  
 655 vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās<sup>3</sup> sibi ex locō religiōnēs 8  
 fingunt Cottaēque et Titūriī calamitātem, quī in eōdem  
 occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre 9  
 omnibus perterritīs cōfīrmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex  
 captivō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Per- 10  
 660 rumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam  
 fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus,  
 quī primum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius men-  
 tiōnem superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, āc diem iam quīn-  
 665 tum cibō caruerat.<sup>4</sup> Hīc diffīsus<sup>5</sup> suae atque omnium 2  
 salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre<sup>6</sup>  
 hostēs atque in summō rem esse discrīmine<sup>7</sup>; capit arma  
 ā proximīs atque in portā cōnsistit. Cōsequuntur hunc 3  
 centuriōnēs ēius cohortis quae in statīōne erat; paulisper  
 670 ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit<sup>8</sup> animus Sextium 4  
 gravibus acceptīs vulneribus; aegrē per<sup>9</sup> manūs trāditus  
 servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōfīrmant 5

<sup>1</sup> 'swarm around'; middle voice.    <sup>2</sup> 'be in confusion'; impers.  
<sup>3</sup> novas—fingunt: 'invent new superstitions from the locality.'    <sup>4</sup> 'be  
 without.'    <sup>5</sup> 'distrust.'    <sup>6</sup> 'be close at hand.'    <sup>7</sup> 'danger.'  
<sup>8</sup> relinquit animus: 'faint.'    <sup>9</sup> per manus: 'from hand to hand.'

tantum ut in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere audeant speciem-  
que dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

*Adventū Caesaris dēspērātā castrōrum expūgnātiōne domum  
revertuntur.*

39. Interim cōflectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs nostrī clā- 675  
mōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs; quantō rēs sit in  
2 perīculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnitiō est quae  
perterritōs recipiat; modo cōscriptī atque ūsūs mīlitāris  
imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra con-  
3 vertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur expectant. Nēmō est 680  
4 tam fortis quā reī novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna  
procul cōspicātī oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt: redisse prīmō  
legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discēssisse ex captīvīs  
cōgnōverant; postea dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus parti-  
bus impetum faciunt. 685

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hinc  
celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque cōiciunt; eō  
2 magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Aliī cuneō<sup>1</sup> factō ut  
celeriter perrumpant cēnsent,<sup>2</sup> quoniam tam propinqua  
sint castra, et sī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at 690  
3 reliquōs servārī posse [cōfīdunt]; aliī ut in iugō cōnsi-  
4 stant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs  
nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs  
docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō,  
equite Rōmānō, quī iīs erat praepositus, per mediōs ho- 695  
5 stēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra  
6 perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem  
impetū mīlitum virtūte servantur. At iī quī in iugō

<sup>1</sup> 'wedge'; this abl. abs. belongs in sense within the *ut* clause, which  
is obj. of cēnsent.      <sup>2</sup> 'determine.'

cōstitērant, nullō etiam nunc ūsū reī mīlītārīs perceptō,  
 700 neque in eō quod probāverant cōsiliō permanēre, ut sē  
 locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam<sup>1</sup> quam prōfuisse<sup>2</sup>  
 aliīs vim celeritātemque viderant, imitārī potuērunt; sed  
 sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmīsērunt.  
 Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nullī ex inferiōribus ōrdinibus  
 705 reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōres erant  
 ōrdinēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam<sup>3</sup> reī mīli-  
 tāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concidē-  
 runt. Mīlitum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus,<sup>4</sup>  
 praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit; pars ā bar-  
 710 barīs circumventa periit.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnātiōne castrōrum, quod  
 nostrōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā  
 praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē  
 recēpērunt. Āc tantus fuit etiam post discēssum hostium  
 715 terror ut eā nocte cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equi-  
 tātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum  
 incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sic omnium animōs timor  
 occupāverat ut paene aliēnātā<sup>4</sup> mente, dēlētīs omni-  
 bus cōpiīs, equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent, neque  
 720 incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse  
 cōntenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.<sup>5</sup>

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum  
 quod cohortēs ex statīōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae  
 questus—nē minimum quidem cāsui locum relinqui dē-  
 725 buisse—multum<sup>5</sup> fortūnam in repentinō hostium adventū  
 potuisse iūdicāvit; multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab

<sup>1</sup> agreeing w. vim celeritatemque, which is attracted into the rel. clause.    <sup>2</sup> 'be of advantage.'    <sup>3</sup> 'gain.'    <sup>4</sup> alienata mente: 'having lost their reason.'    <sup>5</sup> adv. acc. with potuisse.

3 ipsō vāllō portisque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quā-  
rum omnium rērum māximē admīrandum vidēbātur,  
quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut  
Ambiorīgis finēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum 730  
dēlātī optātissimum<sup>1</sup> Ambiorīgī beneficium obtulerant.

*Caesar Eburōnum finēs vāstat; tum conciliō habitō et sup-  
pliciō dē Accōne sūmptō in Italiam proficiscitur.*

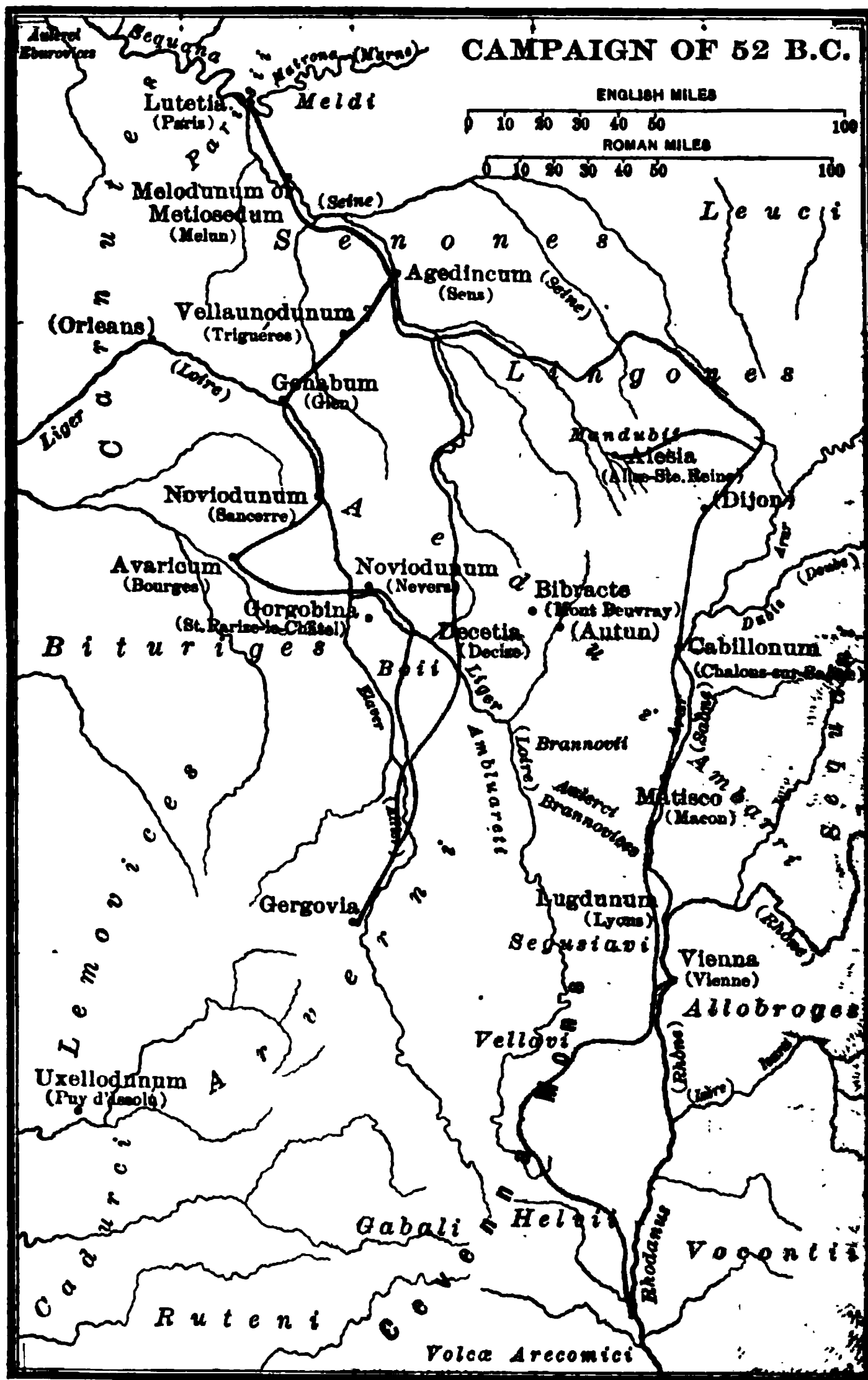
43. Caesar rūrsus ad vēxandōs hostēs profectus, māgnō  
coāctō numerō ex finitimīs cīvitatibus [equitum] in omnēs  
2 partēs dīmittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia aedificia quae  
quisque cōspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus 735  
3 locīs agēbātur; frūmenta nōn solum ā tantā multitudīne  
iūmentōrum atque hominum cōsūmēbantur, sed etiam  
'annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, sī quī  
etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō  
4 exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc 740  
saepē in eum locum<sup>2</sup> ventum est, tantō in omnēs partēs  
dīmissō equitātū, ut [nōn] modo<sup>3</sup> vīsum ab sē<sup>4</sup> Ambiorīgem  
in fugā circumspicerent<sup>5</sup> captīvī nec<sup>6</sup> plānē etiam abisse<sup>7</sup>  
5 ex cōspectū contenderent,<sup>8</sup> ut, spē cōsequendī illātā  
atque infīnitō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare 745  
grātiā initūrōs<sup>9</sup> putārent, paene nātūram studiō vin-  
cerent,<sup>10</sup> semperque paulum<sup>11</sup> ad summam fēlicitātem  
6 dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebrīs<sup>12</sup> aut saltibus<sup>13</sup> sē  
ēriperet; et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partēque  
peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam quattuor, 750  
quibus sōlīs vītā suā committere audēbat.

<sup>1</sup> 'welcome.'    <sup>2</sup> 'point.'    <sup>3</sup> 'just.'    <sup>4</sup> with visum.    <sup>5</sup> trans. :  
'look around for.'    <sup>6</sup> negative with plane.    <sup>7</sup> sc. eum.    <sup>8</sup> 'declare.'  
<sup>9</sup> 'gain.'    <sup>10</sup> 'outdo.'    <sup>11</sup> paulum ad defuisse videretur: 'he (Caesar)  
seemed barely to miss.'    <sup>12</sup> 'hiding-place.'    <sup>13</sup> 'woods.'

44. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar  
 duārum cohortium damnō<sup>1</sup> Dūrocortōrum<sup>2</sup> Rēmōrum  
 dedūcit; conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē  
 755 coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habēre  
 instituit; et dē Accōne, quī princeps eius cōsiliī fuerat,  
 graviōre sententiā prōnūtiātā, mōre māiōrum<sup>3</sup> suppli-  
 cium sūmpsit. Nōn nullī iūdicium veritī profūgērunt. :  
 Quibus cum aquā<sup>4</sup> atque ignī interdixisset, duās legiōnēs  
 760 ad finēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in  
 Senonum finibus Agēdinci<sup>5</sup> in hibernīs collocāvit; frūmen-  
 tōque exercituī prōvisō, ut instituerat, in Ītaliā ad con-  
 ventūs agendōs profectus est.

<sup>1</sup> 'loss.'    <sup>2</sup> acc.    <sup>3</sup> sc. *nostrōrum*.    <sup>4</sup> aqua—interdixisset : for-  
 mula for banishment.    <sup>5</sup> locative.





## COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

### BELLUM VERCINGETORIGIS.

CC. 1-90.

*Caesar cum urbānō mōtū in Ītaliā retinērī dīcerētur, nova dē bellō cōnsilia ineunt Gallī. Prīmī Carnutēs, deinde Arvernī, auctōre Vercingetorige bellum suscipiunt.*

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Ītaliā ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P. Clodiī caede, dē senātūque cōsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs<sup>1</sup> Ītaliae coniūrārent,<sup>2</sup> dīlēctum tōtā prō-  
2 vinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam<sup>3</sup> celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt<sup>4</sup> rumōribus Gallī, quod rēs pōscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō<sup>4</sup> mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum  
3 venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberior atque 10  
4 audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus āc remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae  
5 fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus āc praemiīs dēpō- 15  
scunt quī<sup>5</sup> bellī initium faciant et suī capitis periculō  
6 Galliam in libertātem vindicent.<sup>6</sup> In primīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, prius quam eōrum clandestīna<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> (younger) 'of military age.'      <sup>2</sup> 'take the military oath.'      <sup>3</sup> 'invent (other stories) in addition.'      <sup>4</sup> 'i.e. at Rome.'      <sup>5</sup> sc. eōs; purpose clause.      <sup>6</sup> 'restore.'      <sup>7</sup> 'secret.'

cōnsilia efferantur,<sup>1</sup> ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur.

20 Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente  
imperātōre ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque imperātor sine  
praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō in  
aciē praestāre interfici, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam  
libertātemque, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

25 2. Hīs rēbus agitātis profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum  
perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre prīncipēsque<sup>2</sup>  
ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et, quoniam in  
praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs  
efferātur,<sup>1</sup> at iūre iūrandō ac fidē sancīātur petunt, collā-  
30 tis militāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerī-  
mōnia continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēseran-  
tur. Tum collaudātis Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab  
omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitūtō, ā con-  
ciliō discēditur.

35 3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconne-  
todumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō  
datō concurrunt cīvēsque<sup>3</sup> Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī<sup>4</sup> causā  
ibi cōstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equi-  
tem Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris prae-  
40 erat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad  
omnēs Galliae civitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae  
māior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre<sup>5</sup> per agrōs  
regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et  
proximis trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī  
45 oriente sōle gesta essent ante primam cōfectam vigiliam  
in finibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mī-  
lium passuum circiter centum et sexāgintā.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī filius, Ar-

<sup>1</sup> 'spread abroad.'    <sup>2</sup> 'first.'    <sup>3</sup> 'citizen.'    <sup>4</sup> 'do business.'    <sup>5</sup> 'shout.'

vernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūius pater prīnci-  
 pātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam quod 50  
 rēgnum appetēbat ā cīvitatē erat interfectus, convocātis  
 2 suīs clientibus facile incendit.<sup>1</sup> Cōgnitō ēius cōnsiliō ad  
 arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō<sup>2</sup>  
 suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortū-  
 nam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; 55  
 3 nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dīlēctum egen-  
 tium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit  
 4 ex cīvitatē ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut  
 communis libertātis causā arma capiant, māgnisque coāc-  
 tīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiec- 60  
 5 tus, expellit ex cīvitatē. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit  
 quoque<sup>3</sup> versus lēgātiōnēs; obtēstātur<sup>4</sup> ut in fidē maneant.  
 6 Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turo-  
 nōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs quī  
 7 Ūceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum 65  
 dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs  
 cīvitatibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum mīlitum  
 ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque  
 8 cīvitas domī, quodque<sup>5</sup> ante tempus efficiat, cōstituit; in  
 9 primīs equitātūi studet. Summae dīligentiae summam 70  
 imperiī sevērītātem addit; māgnitūdine suppliciī dubi-  
 10 tantēs cōgit. Nam māiōre commissō dēlictō<sup>6</sup> Ignī atque  
 omnibus tormentis necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsec-  
 tis<sup>7</sup> aut singulis effossis<sup>8</sup> oculis domum remittit, ut sint re-  
 liquīs documentō<sup>9</sup> et māgnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs. 75

5. His suppliciis celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium

<sup>1</sup> 'excite.'      <sup>2</sup> 'uncle.'      <sup>3</sup> quoque versus: (turned each way) 'in every direction.'  
<sup>4</sup> 'adjure.'      <sup>5</sup> i.e. quod-que, quod w. tempus.  
<sup>6</sup> 'offence.'      <sup>7</sup> 'cut off.'      <sup>8</sup> 'put out.'      <sup>9</sup> 'example.'

Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpi-  
 ārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur.  
 Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, 2  
 80 lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium  
 cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī dē<sup>1</sup> cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, 3  
 quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs  
 peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad 4  
 flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Aeduīs dīvi-  
 85 dit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausī do-  
 mum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Bitu-  
 rīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliū fuisse 5  
 cōgnōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsī,  
 alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam 6  
 90 lēgātīs prōnūntiārint, an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod<sup>2</sup>  
 nihil nōbīs cōstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnen-  
 dum. Biturīgēs eōrum discēssū statim sē cum Arvernīs 7  
 coniungunt.

*Caesar ex Italiā reversus Arvernōs opprimit, Gergobinae, Bōiō-  
 rum urbī ā Vercingetorige oppūgnātae, auxiliō proficīscitur.*

6. Hīs rēbus in Italiā Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille  
 95 urbānās rēs virtūte Cn.<sup>3</sup> Pompēī commodiōrem in statum  
 pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus  
 est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte afficiēbātur, quā 2  
 ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam sī legiōnēs 3  
 in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō  
 100 dīmīcātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, 4  
 nē iīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salū-  
 tem rēctē<sup>4</sup> committī vidēbat.

<sup>1</sup> de consilio: 'by the advice.'  
 not at all clear to us.      <sup>3</sup> Gnaeus.

<sup>2</sup> quod—constat: 'because it is  
 (rightly) 'safely.'

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam  
 : civitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitobrogēs  
 et Gabalōs ab utrīque obsidēs accipit et māgnā coāctā 105  
 manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus<sup>1</sup> irruptiōnem facere  
 : contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs ante-  
 : vertendum<sup>2</sup> existimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīsceretur. Eō  
 cum vēnisset, timentēs cōfirmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prō-  
 vinciālibus, Volcis Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Nar- 110  
 : bōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit; par-  
 tem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque<sup>3</sup> quod ex  
 Italiā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī finēs Arvernōrum con-  
 tingunt, convenīre iubet.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātis, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, 115  
 quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in Hel-  
 : viōs proficīscitur. Etsi mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab  
 Helviīs discludit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive<sup>4</sup>  
 iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā<sup>5</sup> nive in altitudinem pe-  
 dum sex atque ita viīs patefactis, summō militum labōre 120  
 : ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressis inopi-  
 nantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnītōs existimā-  
 bant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tem-  
 pore annī sēmitae<sup>6</sup> patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam  
 lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus 125  
 : terrōrem inferant. Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad  
 Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnēs Ar-  
 verni circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suis<sup>7</sup> fortūnis  
 cōsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur; praesertim  
 : cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille 130

<sup>1</sup> 'toward'; obj. is *Narbonem*.      <sup>2</sup> 'take precedence'; subj. is *ut—*  
*proficisceretur*.      <sup>3</sup> 'reënforcement.'      <sup>4</sup> 'snow.'      <sup>5</sup> 'remove.'  
<sup>6</sup> 'path.'      <sup>7</sup> i.e. *Arvernorum*.

precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

9. At Caesar bīdium in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec <sup>1</sup> de <sup>2</sup> Vercingetorīge ūsū <sup>3</sup> ventūra opīniōne <sup>4</sup> praecēperat, 135 per <sup>5</sup> causam supplēmentī equitātusque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc <sup>6</sup> monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum <sup>7</sup> sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam <sup>8</sup> 140 māximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem <sup>9</sup> equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant ut, sī quid etiam de suā salūte ab Aeduīs inīretur cōnsiliū, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, <sup>10</sup> 145 ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in unum locum cōgit, quam de eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum 150 oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Aeduīsque attribuerat, oppūgnāre instituit.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Aeduōrum expūgnātīs 155 cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs <sup>11</sup> in eō <sup>12</sup> praesidium positum vidēret <sup>13</sup>; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab <sup>14</sup> rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus <sup>15</sup> labōrāret.

<sup>1</sup> 'these movements.'    <sup>2</sup> 'on the part of.'    <sup>3</sup> *usu ventura*: 'come to pass.'    <sup>4</sup> *opiniōne praeeperat*: 'conjecture.'    <sup>5</sup> *per causam*: 'for the ostensible reason.'    <sup>6</sup> *daturum operam*: 'take pains.'  
<sup>7</sup> 'rested.'    <sup>8</sup> *dat.*    <sup>9</sup> i.e. Caesar.    <sup>10</sup> *sc. Gallia.*    <sup>11</sup> 'in the matter of.'    <sup>12</sup> 'transportation.'

2 Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī,<sup>1</sup>  
 quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum volun-  
 3 tātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō 160  
 commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant  
 hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum  
 4 māgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus  
 atque impedimentīs tōtius exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs pro-  
 ficiscitur.

165

*In itinere Vellaunodūnum, Cēnabum, Noviodūnum capit, ad  
 Avaricum proficiscitur.*

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodū-  
 num vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō  
 expeditiōre rē frūmentāriā ūteretur, oppūgnāre instituit  
 2 eoque bīduō circumvāllāvit<sup>2</sup>; tertiō diē missis ex oppidō  
 lēgātīs dē dēditione arma cōferri, iūmenta prōdūci, sex- 170  
 3 centōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōficeret C. Trebōnium  
 lēgātum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter cōficeret.  
 4 Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur; quī tum primum allātō  
 nūntiō dē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam  
 rem ductum irī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī 175  
 5 causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō per-  
 venit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēi tempore exclusus  
 in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem  
 6 ūsuī sint mīlitibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum  
 pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex 180  
 oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre<sup>3</sup>  
 7 iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō antē mediam noctem silentiō  
 8 ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Quā rē per  
 explorātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse

<sup>1</sup> simple verb, *patior*.<sup>2</sup> 'invest.'<sup>3</sup> 'lie under arms.'

185 iusserat, portis incēnsis, intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur,  
perpaucis ex hostium numerō dēsiderātis<sup>1</sup> quīn cūcti  
caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multītū-  
dinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incen-  
dit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerim trādūcit  
190 atque in Biturīgum finēs pervenit.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit,  
oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam<sup>2</sup> Caesarī proficiscitur.  
Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum op-  
pūgnāre Instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum  
195 vēnissent ōrātum ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vītae cōnsule-  
ret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat  
cōnsecūtus, arma cōnferri, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs dari  
iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua admini-  
strārentur, centuriōnibus et paucis mīlitibus intrōmissis  
200 quī arma iūmentaque conquīrerent, equitātus hostium  
procul vīsus est, quī āgmen Vercingetorīgis antecēsserat.  
Quem simul atque oppidānī cōspexērunt atque in spem  
auxiliī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās  
claudere, mūrū complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in op-  
205 pidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iīs  
inīrī cōnsiliī intellēxissent, gladiis dēstrictis portās occu-  
pāvērunt suōsque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt.

13. Caesar ex castris equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proelium-  
que equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suis Germānōs  
210 equitēs circiter quadringentōs submittit, quōs ab initiō  
sēcum habēre Instituerat. Eōrum impetum Gāllī susti-  
nēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmis-  
sis sē ad āgmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōfligātis rūsus:

<sup>1</sup> 'miss.'  
'to meet.'

<sup>2</sup> sc. *viam*, cognate acc.; lit. 'an opposite way'; trans.



VERCINGTONIX, WITH THE GALLO CHINPTAIN.

oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā<sup>1</sup> plē-  
bem concitātā existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt 215  
sēsēque eī dēdiderunt. Quibus rēbus cōfectīs Caesar ad  
oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnītissimum-  
que in finibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne,  
profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitatē Biturīgum  
sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōfidēbat. 220

*Biturīgum oppida praeter Avaricum ā Gallīs incenduntur.*

14. Vercingetorīx tot continuīs incommodīs Vellauno-  
dūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium con-  
2 vocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum  
atque<sup>2</sup> antea gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huic<sup>3</sup> rei stu-  
dendum ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibean- 225  
3 tur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundant et quod  
annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secārī<sup>4</sup> nōn posse;  
4 necessariō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiīs petere<sup>5</sup>; hōs om-  
5 nēs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā salūtis  
causā rei<sup>6</sup> familiāris commoda neglegenda; vicōs atque 230  
aedificia incendiī oportēre hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] quōque ver-  
6 sus, quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum  
ipsis rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in finibus  
7 bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur: Rōmānōs aut  
inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō longius ab 235  
8 castrīs prōcēssūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant  
an impedīmentīs exuant, quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn  
9 possit. Praetereā, oppida incendiī oportēre quae nōn mū-  
nitiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint periculō tūta, nē suis

<sup>1</sup> 'activity.'      <sup>2</sup> 'than.'      <sup>3</sup> huic—studendum: 'it was desirable.'  
<sup>4</sup> 'cut.'      <sup>5</sup> sc. frūmentum, obj.      <sup>6</sup> rei—commoda: 'personal interests.'

240 sint ad dētrectandam <sup>1</sup> mīlitiam receptācula <sup>2</sup> neu Rōmānīs  
 prōposita <sup>3</sup> ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam.<sup>4</sup>  
 Haec sī gravia aut acerba <sup>5</sup> videantur, multō illa gravius <sup>10</sup>  
 aestimārī dēbēre, liberōs, cōniugēs <sup>6</sup> in servitūtem abs-  
 trahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victīs.  
 245 15. Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā unō diē  
 amplius vigintī urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc idem <sup>2</sup>  
 fit in reliquīs cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia  
 cōspiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolōre omnēs ferē-  
 bant, tamen hōc sibi sōlāciū <sup>7</sup> prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope  
 250 explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōnfidē-  
 bant. Dēliberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, in-  
 cendī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad  
 pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherrimam <sup>8</sup> prope tōtius Galliae  
 urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suis  
 255 manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēn-  
 sūrōs dīcunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et  
 palūde circumdatā, unum habeat et perangustum aditum.  
 Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingeto-  
 rīge, post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā  
 260 vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

*Caesar, Avaricum aliquamdiū dēfēnsū, tandem expūgnat,  
 incolāsque omnēs ferē trucidat.*

16. Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarem itineribus subse-  
 quitur et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnī-  
 tum ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum sēdecim. Ibi per  
 certōs explōrātōrēs in singula <sup>9</sup> diēi tempora <sup>10</sup> quae ad  
 265 Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscēbat et, quid fierī vellet im-

<sup>1</sup> 'escape.'      <sup>2</sup> 'refuge.'      <sup>3</sup> 'present.'      <sup>4</sup> 'get.'      <sup>5</sup> 'bitter.'  
<sup>6</sup> (spouse) 'wife.'      <sup>7</sup> 'comfort.'      <sup>8</sup> 'beautiful.'      <sup>9</sup> 'every.'      <sup>10</sup> 'hour.'

<sup>3</sup> perābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat dīpersōsque, cum longius necessariō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō afficiēbat; etsī, quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporibus dīversīsque itineribus irētur. 270

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vīneās agere, turrēs duās cōstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī  
<sup>2</sup> nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Ae- 275  
 duōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī,<sup>1</sup> quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn māgnīs facultātibus, quōd cīvitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōsumpsērunt. Summā difficultāte  
<sup>3</sup> rei frūmentāriae affectō exercitū, tenuitāte<sup>2</sup> Bōiōrum, 280  
 indīligentiā Aeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum, usque eō ut complūrēs diēs frūmentō milītēs caruerint et pecore ex longinquiōribus vicīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, nūlla tamen vōx est ab iīs audīta populī Rōmānī  
<sup>4</sup> māiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs indīgna. Quīn etiam 285  
 Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et, sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppūgnātiōnem  
<sup>5</sup> dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: sīc sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōmi-  
<sup>6</sup> niam<sup>3</sup> acciperent, numquam<sup>4</sup> infectā<sup>5</sup> rē discēderent; hōc 290  
 sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppūgnātiōnem  
<sup>7</sup> reliquissent: praestāre omnēs perferre acerbitatēs<sup>6</sup> quam nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum  
<sup>8</sup> interīssent parentārent.<sup>7</sup> Haec eadem centuriōnibus tri-

<sup>1</sup> i.e. Aedui.<sup>2</sup> 'poverty.'<sup>3</sup> 'dishonor.'<sup>4</sup> (nowhere) 'never.'<sup>5</sup> 'unfinished.'<sup>6</sup> cf. *acerba*, ch. 14, § 10.<sup>7</sup> 'avenge.'

295 bñisq̄ue mīlitum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, ex captīvīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorīgem cōsumptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitātū  
300 expeditisq̄ue quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōsuēssent, insidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illi celeriter per explorātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō  
305 carrōs impedimenta q̄ue sua in artiōrēs<sup>1</sup> silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnēs in locō ēditō atque apertō instrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōferri, arma expeditī iussit.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclīvis. Hunc ex  
310 omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta cingēbat nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā. Hōc sē colle, interruptīs pontibus, Gallī fiduciā<sup>2</sup> locī continēbant generatimq̄ue<sup>3</sup> distribūtī [in cīvitatēs] omnia vada [āc saltūs<sup>4</sup>] eius palūdis obtinēbant sic<sup>5</sup> animō parātī ut, sī eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs<sup>6</sup> premerent ex locō superiōre; ut, quī propinquitātem locī  
315 vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte<sup>7</sup> ad dīmicandum existimāret; quī inīquitātem<sup>8</sup> condiciōnis<sup>9</sup> perspiceret, inānī<sup>10</sup> simulātiōne<sup>11</sup> sēsē<sup>12</sup> ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indignantēs  
320 mīlitēs Caesar, quod cōspectum suum<sup>13</sup> hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proeliī expō-

<sup>1</sup> 'dense.' <sup>2</sup> 'confidence' (in). <sup>3</sup> 'by tribes.' <sup>4</sup> 'defile.' <sup>5</sup> sic—ut: 'determined to.' <sup>6</sup> 'struggle' (as in mud). <sup>7</sup> 'combat.' <sup>8</sup> 'advantage.' <sup>9</sup> 'situation.' <sup>10</sup> 'vain.' <sup>11</sup> 'pretence' (of bravery). <sup>12</sup> obj. of ostentare, of which sc. Gallōs as subj. <sup>13</sup> for obj. gen., referring to milites.

scentēs ēdocet quantō dētrīmentō<sup>1</sup> et quot<sup>2</sup> virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre<sup>3</sup> victōriam ; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā<sup>4</sup> laude periculum recūsant, summae sē inīquitātis<sup>5</sup> condemnārī dēbēre, nisi 325 eōrum vītā laude suā habeat cārīorem. Sic milites cōsōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre instituit.

20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, prōditiōnis<sup>6</sup> insimulātus,<sup>7</sup> quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod 330 cum omnī equitātū discēssisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās reliquisset, quod eius discēssū Rōmānī tantā oportunitate<sup>8</sup> et celeritate vēnissent ; nōn haec omnia fortuitō<sup>9</sup> aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse ; rēgnū illum<sup>10</sup> Galliae malle Caesaris concēssū quam ipsōrum habēre 335 beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit : Quod castra mōvisset, factum<sup>11</sup> inopiā pābulī etiam ipsīs hortantibus ; quod propius Rōmānōs accēssisset, persuāsum loci oportunitate, quī sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet ; 340 equitum vērō operam<sup>12</sup> neque in locō palūstri dēsīderārī 340 debuisse et illic<sup>13</sup> fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperiī sē cōsultō<sup>14</sup> nūllī discēdentem trādīdisse, nē is multitudinis studiō ad dīmīcandum impellerētur, cui rei propter animī mollitiem<sup>15</sup> studēre omnēs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū inter- 345 vēnerint, fortunae<sup>16</sup> ; sī alicūius indiciō vocātī,<sup>17</sup> huic<sup>18</sup> habendam grātiā, quod et paucitatem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere potuerint, quī

<sup>1</sup> 'loss,' abl. of price.    <sup>2</sup> 'how many.'    <sup>3</sup> 'be obtained.'    <sup>4</sup> i.e. Caesaris.    <sup>5</sup> 'injustice.'    <sup>6</sup> 'treason.'    <sup>7</sup> 'charged.'    <sup>8</sup> 'seasonableness.'  
<sup>9</sup> cf. *forte*.    <sup>10</sup> i.e. Vercingetorix.    <sup>11</sup> sc. *esse*.    <sup>12</sup> 'services.'    <sup>13</sup> 'there.'  
<sup>14</sup> 'purposely.'    <sup>15</sup> 'weakness.'    <sup>16</sup> sc. *grātiā habendam esse*.    <sup>17</sup> sc. *Rōmānī intervēnerint*.    <sup>18</sup> antecedent alicuius.

dīmicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Im-  
 350 perium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsīderāre,  
 quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque  
 omnibus Gallīs explōrāta : quīn etiam ipsīs<sup>1</sup> remittere, sī  
 sibi<sup>2</sup> magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē<sup>2</sup> salūtem accipere  
 videantur.<sup>3</sup> ‘Haec ut intellegātis,’ inquit, ‘ā mē sin-  
 355 cērē<sup>4</sup> prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs milītēs.’ Prōducit  
 servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat  
 et famē vinculisque excruciāverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī  
 quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, milītēs sē esse legiōnāriōs  
 dīcunt ; famē atque inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exīsse,  
 360 sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent ; si-  
 milī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam virēs sufficere  
 cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse : itaque statuisse  
 imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidī prōfēcisset,  
 trīduō exercitum dēducere. ‘Haec,’ inquit, ‘ā mē’ [Vercin-  
 365 getorīx], ‘beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis ;  
 cūius operā sine vestrō<sup>5</sup> sanguine<sup>6</sup> tantum exercitum  
 victōrem famē cōnsūmptum vidētis ; quem turpiter sē ex  
 hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suis finibus recipiat,  
 ā mē prōvīsum est.’

370 21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs con-  
 crepat,<sup>7</sup> quod facere in<sup>8</sup> eō cōnsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem  
 approbant : summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem nec dē  
 eius fide dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum admini-  
 strārī posse. Statuunt ut decem mīlia hominum dēlēcta  
 375 ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs  
 Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēsent ;

<sup>1</sup> sc. sē imperium.    <sup>2</sup> i.e. Vercingetorix.    <sup>3</sup> ‘think.’    <sup>4</sup> ‘in good faith.’  
<sup>5</sup> Poss. pto., 2d pers. plu.    <sup>6</sup> ‘blood.’    <sup>7</sup> ‘rattle.’    <sup>8</sup> ‘in the case of.’

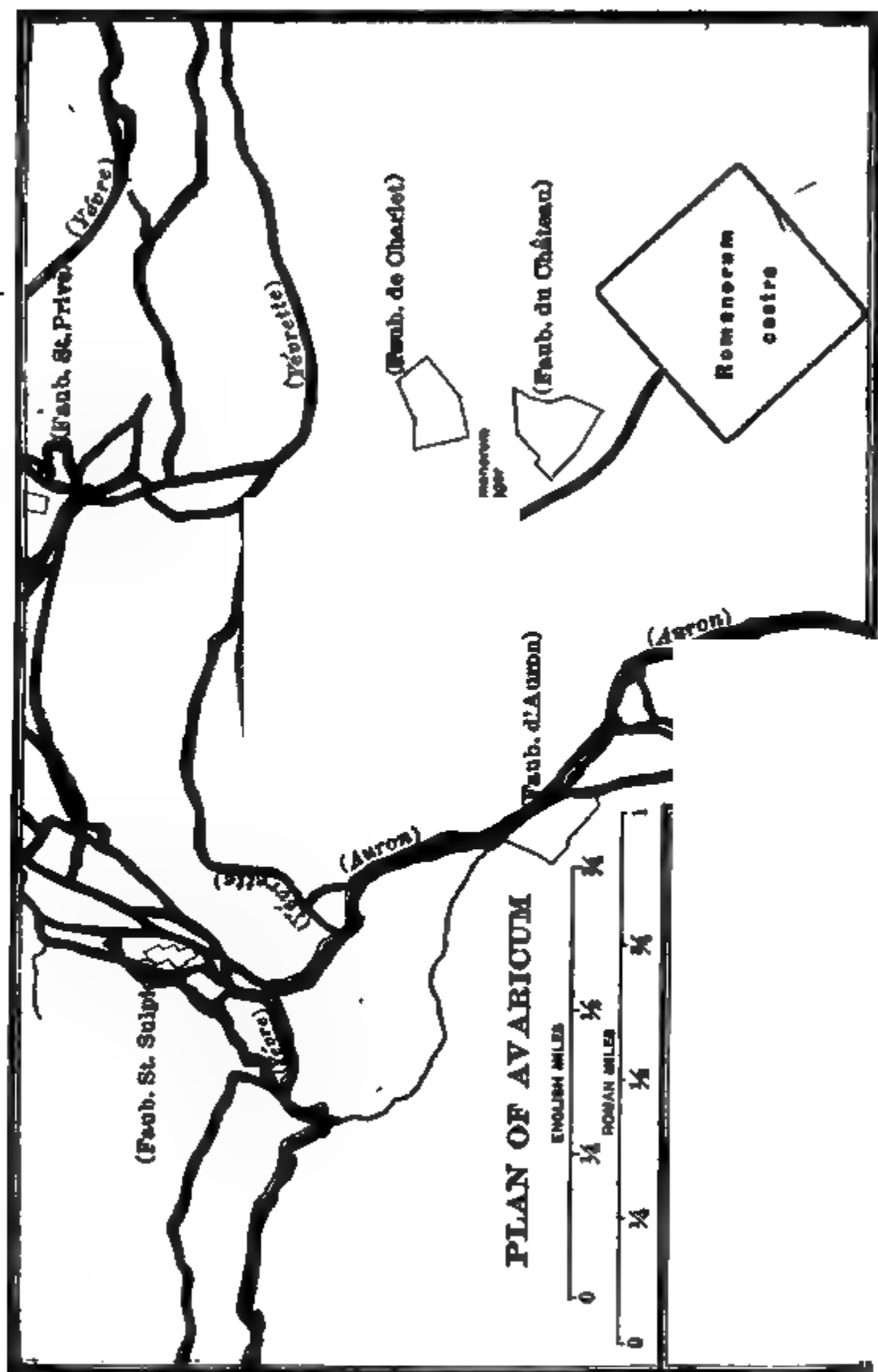
# PLAN OF AVARICUM

ENGLISH MILES

0  $\frac{1}{4}$   $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{3}{4}$  1

ROMAN MILES

0  $\frac{1}{4}$   $\frac{1}{2}$   $\frac{3}{4}$  1





quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōstāre intellegēbant.

22. Singulārī mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūius-  
que modī Gallōrum occurrēbant,<sup>1</sup> ut est summae genus 380  
sollertiae<sup>2</sup> atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā  
2 quōque trāduntur<sup>3</sup> aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs<sup>4</sup> falcēs  
āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant,<sup>5</sup> tormentīs intrōrsus  
redūcēbant; et aggerem cuniculīs<sup>6</sup> subtrahēbant,<sup>7</sup> eō  
scientius,<sup>8</sup> quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae<sup>9</sup> atque 385  
omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum<sup>10</sup> est.  
3 Tōtum autem mūrū ex omnī parte turribus contabulā-  
4 verant<sup>11</sup> atque hās coriīs<sup>12</sup> intēxerant.<sup>13</sup> Tum crēbrīs diurnīs  
nocturnisque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī ignem inferēbant  
aut mīlītēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur et nostrārum 390  
turrium altitudinem, quantum hās cotīdiānus<sup>14</sup> agger ex-  
5 presserat,<sup>15</sup> commissīs<sup>16</sup> suārum turrium mālīs<sup>17</sup> adaequā-  
bant et apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā materiā et  
pice<sup>18</sup> fervefactā<sup>19</sup> et māximī ponderis saxīs morābantur  
moenibusque appropinquāre prohibēbant. 395

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā sunt.  
Trabēs dērēctae,<sup>20</sup> perpetuae<sup>21</sup> in longitudinem, paribus  
intervāllīs dīstantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō collo-  
2 cantur. Hae revinciuntur<sup>22</sup> intrōrsus et multō aggere<sup>23</sup>  
vestiuntur; ea autem quae dīximus intervālla grandibus 400  
3 in fronte saxīs efferciuntur.<sup>24</sup> Hīs collocātīs et coāgmen-

<sup>1</sup> 'oppose.'    <sup>2</sup> 'ingenuity.'    <sup>3</sup> 'impart.'    <sup>4</sup> 'noose.'    <sup>5</sup> 'draw tight.'  
<sup>6</sup> 'mine.'    <sup>7</sup> 'take away material from.'    <sup>8</sup> (knowingly) 'skilfully.'  
<sup>9</sup> 'iron mine.'    <sup>10</sup> 'familiar.'    <sup>11</sup> 'cover.'    <sup>12</sup> 'hide.'    <sup>13</sup> 'cover.'  
<sup>14</sup> 'daily (addition to the).'    <sup>15</sup> 'increase.'    <sup>16</sup> 'splice.'    <sup>17</sup> 'post.'  
<sup>18</sup> 'pitch.'    <sup>19</sup> 'hot.'    <sup>20</sup> 'perpendicular' (to the front of the wall).  
<sup>21</sup> perpetuae in longitudinem: 'along the entire length.'    <sup>22</sup> 'mortise.'  
<sup>23</sup> 'rubble'; earth and stone.    <sup>24</sup> 'completely fill.'

tātis<sup>1</sup> alius insuper<sup>2</sup> ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae<sup>3</sup> singulis saxīs inter-  
 405 iectis artē<sup>4</sup> contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus con-  
 textitur dum iūsta<sup>5</sup> mūrī altitudō expleātur.<sup>6</sup> Hōc cum in  
 speciem varietātemque opus dēfōrme nōn est alternis tra-  
 bibus ac saxīs, quae rēctis līneis<sup>7</sup> suōs ōrdinēs servant,  
 tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet  
 410 opportunitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete mā-  
 teria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs<sup>8</sup> trabibus pedum quadrāgē-  
 num<sup>9</sup> plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque  
 distrahī potest.

24. Hīs tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātiōne militēs, cum  
 415 tōtō tempore frīgore et assiduīs imbribus tardārentur,  
 tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diē-  
 bus vīginti quīnque aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs et  
 trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā extrūxērunt. Cum is  
 mūrū hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus  
 420 cōnsuētūdine excubāret<sup>10</sup> militēsque hortārētur nē quod  
 omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante ter-  
 tiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmare<sup>11</sup> aggerem, quem  
 cunīculō hostēs succenderant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō  
 mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere  
 425 turrium ēruptiō fiēbat: aliī facēs<sup>12</sup> atque āridam mātē-  
 riam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus<sup>13</sup> iaciēbant; picem reli-  
 quāsque rēs quibus īgnis excitārī potest fundēbant; ut,  
 quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium,  
 vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris

<sup>1</sup> 'cement.'    <sup>2</sup> 'above.'    <sup>3</sup> sc. *trabēs*.    <sup>4</sup> 'closely.'    <sup>5</sup> 'intended.'  
<sup>6</sup> 'reach.'    <sup>7</sup> 'line.'    <sup>8</sup> 'repeated.'    <sup>9</sup> 'forty each.'    <sup>10</sup> 'watch.'  
<sup>11</sup> 'smoke.'    <sup>12</sup> 'torch.'    <sup>13</sup> 'from a distance.'

duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant plūrēsque 430  
partītis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut  
aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrēs redūcerent agge-  
remque interscinderent,<sup>1</sup> omnis vērō ex castrīs multitudō  
ad restinguendum<sup>2</sup> concurreret.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōsūptā iam reliquā parte 435  
noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae red-  
integrārētur, eō magis quod deūstōs<sup>3</sup> pluteōs<sup>4</sup> turrium  
vidēbant nec facile adīre<sup>5</sup> apertōs ad auxiliandum anim-  
advertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēde-  
rent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestigiō<sup>6</sup> temporis 440  
positam arbitrārentur; accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs quod  
dīgnum<sup>7</sup> memoriā vīsum<sup>8</sup> praetereundum nōn exīstimā-  
vimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per. manūs  
sēbī<sup>9</sup> ac picis trāditās glēbās<sup>10</sup> in īgnem ē<sup>11</sup> regiōne turris  
prōiciēbat; scorpiōne<sup>12</sup> ab latere dextrō trāiectus exani- 445  
mātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem  
trāsgressus eōdem illō mūnere<sup>13</sup> fungēbātur<sup>14</sup>; eādem  
ratiōne īctū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō succēssit tertius  
et tertiō quārtus; nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus  
vacuus relictus locus quam, restinctō aggere atque omnī 450  
parte submōtīs hostibus, fīnis est pūgnandī factus.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla succēsserat,  
posterō diē cōsiliū cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hor-  
tante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī  
nōn māgnā iactūrā<sup>15</sup> suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; 455  
proptereā quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingeto-  
rīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rō-

<sup>1</sup> 'cut into.'    <sup>2</sup> 'extinguish (the flames).'    <sup>3</sup> *dē, ūrō.*    <sup>4</sup> 'screen.'  
<sup>5</sup> sc. *nostrōs* as subj.    <sup>6</sup> 'moment.'    <sup>7</sup> 'worthy.'    <sup>8</sup> 'seeming.'    <sup>9</sup> 'suet.'  
<sup>10</sup> 'ball.'    <sup>11</sup> e—*turris*: 'opposite a tower.'    <sup>12</sup> '(a dart from a) scor-  
pion.'    <sup>13</sup> 'service.'    <sup>14</sup> 'perform'; w. abl.    <sup>15</sup> 'loss.'

mānōs ad Insequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc facere  
 noctū apparābant, cum mātres familiae repentē in publi-  
 460 cum prōcurrerunt flentēsq̄e prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum  
 omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnēs liberōs  
 hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fu-  
 gam nātūrae et vīrium infirmitās impediret. Ubi eōs in  
 sententiā perstāre<sup>1</sup> vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō  
 465 periculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit,<sup>2</sup> conclāmāre et  
 significāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coopērunt. Quō timōre per-  
 territī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupā-  
 rentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turri dērēctisq̄e<sup>3</sup> ope-  
 470 ribus quae facere instituerat, māgnō coortō imbrī, nōn  
 inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbi-  
 trātus, quod paulō incautius cūstōdiās in mūrō dispositās  
 vidēbat, suōs quoque languidiū in opere versārī iūssit  
 et quid fierī vellet ostendit. Legiōnibusq̄e [intrā vineās]<sup>2</sup>  
 475 in occultō expeditis, cohortātus ut aliquandō<sup>4</sup> prō tantis  
 labōribus fructum victōriae perciperent, iis quī primī mū-  
 rum āscendissent praemia prōposuit militibusq̄e signum  
 dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mū-  
 rumq̄e celeriter complēvērunt.

480 28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusq̄e dēiectī,  
 in forō<sup>5</sup> ac locis patentiōribus cuneātim<sup>6</sup> cōstitērunt, hōc  
 animō ut, sī quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē Instrūctā  
 depūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum<sup>7</sup> locum sēsē dē-  
 mittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vidērunt,  
 485 veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armīs ul-  
 timās oppidī partēs continentī<sup>8</sup> impetū petivērunt, pars-

<sup>1</sup> 'persist.'    <sup>2</sup> 'show.'    <sup>3</sup> 'arrange.'    <sup>4</sup> 'at length.'    <sup>5</sup> 'market  
 place.'    <sup>6</sup> 'in close formation.'    <sup>7</sup> 'level.'    <sup>8</sup> **continenti impetu**: 'without  
 halting.'

3 que ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā  
 militibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est inter-  
 4 fecta. Nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sic et  
 Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis<sup>1</sup> incitātī nōn aetāte cōn- 490  
 5 fectīs, nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt. Dē-  
 nique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium quadrā-  
 gintā, vix octingentī, quī primō clāmōre audītō sē ex  
 oppidō eiēcērant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervē-  
 6 nērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā 495  
 excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et  
 misericordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, [ut] procul in viā dis-  
 positīs familiāribus suis prīncipibusque civitātum, dispa-  
 randōs<sup>2</sup> dēducendōsque ad suōs<sup>3</sup> cūrāvit, quae cuique  
 civitātī pars<sup>4</sup> castrōrum ab initiō obvenerat. 500

*Bellum ā Vercingetorīge continuātur. Caesar discēdere  
 cōgitur ut dissēsiōnem Aeduōrum sēdet.*

29. Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōsōlātus cohor-  
 tātusque est: nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent nēve  
 2 perturbārentur incommodō; nōn virtūte neque in aciē  
 vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō<sup>5</sup> quōdam et scientiā oppū-  
 3 gnātiōnis, cūius rei fuerint ipsī imperītī; errāre, sī quī in 505  
 4 bellō omnēs secundōs rērum prōventūs<sup>6</sup> expectent; sibi  
 numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cūius rei tēstēs  
 ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentiā Biturīgum et  
 nimiā<sup>7</sup> obsequentiā<sup>8</sup> reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum  
 5 acciperētur; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodīs 510

<sup>1</sup> 'siege.'      <sup>2</sup> 'separate'; sc. *esse*, and *eōs* as subj., referring to *quos*.

<sup>3</sup> explained in the following clause.

<sup>4</sup> attracted into subordinate

clause; *quae pars castrorum* = *eam partem castrorum* (explaining *suos*)

*quae*.

<sup>5</sup> 'cunning.'

<sup>6</sup> 'result.'

<sup>7</sup> 'excessive.'

<sup>8</sup> 'willingness

to yield.'

sānātūrum.<sup>1</sup> Nam, quae ab reliquīs Gallīs cīvitātēs dis-  
sentīrent, hās suā dīligentiā adiūnctūrum atque ūnum  
cōnsilium tōtīus Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsensuī nē  
orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope  
515 iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iīs com-  
mūnis salūtis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre Institue-  
rent, quō facilius repentīnōs hostium impetūs sustinēre  
possent.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta<sup>2</sup> Gallīs, et māximē  
520 quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerať tantō acceptō incommodō,  
neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōnspectum multītū-  
dinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre<sup>3</sup>  
exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Ava-  
ricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum<sup>4</sup>  
525 imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sīc  
hūius ex contrāriō dīgnitās incommodō acceptō in diēs  
augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius affīrmātiōne<sup>5</sup>  
dē reliquīs adiungendis cīvitātibus; prīmumque eō tem-  
pore Gallī castra mūnīre Instituērunt, et sīc erant animō  
530 cōnsternātī hominēs īnsuētī labōris, ut omnia quae impe-  
rārentur sibi patiēda exīstimārent.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx  
animō labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātēs adiungeret, atque  
eārum prīncipēs dōnīs<sup>6</sup> pollicitātiōnibusque alliciēbat.  
535 Huīc rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut<sup>7</sup>  
ōrātiōne subdolā<sup>8</sup> aut amīcitiā facillimē capere<sup>9</sup> posset.  
Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestien-  
dōsque cūrat; simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrāren-  
tur, imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem,  
540 et quam ante diem, in castra addūcī velit; sagittāriōsque

<sup>1</sup> (cure) 'make up for.'    <sup>2</sup> 'displeasing.'    <sup>3</sup> 'gift.'    <sup>4</sup> 'crafty.'    <sup>5</sup> 'win.'

omnēs, quōrum erat permāgnus in Galliā numerus, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod  
 5 Avaricī dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus Ollo-  
 vicōnis filius, rēx Nitobrogum, cūius pater ab senātū  
 nostrō amicus erat appellātus, cum māgnō numerō equi- 545  
 tum suōrum et quōs ex Aquitāniā condūxerat<sup>1</sup> ad eum  
 pervēnit.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus sum-  
 mamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nac-  
 2 tus exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope 550  
 hieme cōfectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum  
 bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōstituisset,  
 sive<sup>2</sup> eum ex palūdibus silvisque ēlicere sive obsidiōne  
 premere posset, lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Aeduōrum veni-  
 3 unt ōrātum ut māximē necessariō tempore cīvitātī sub- 555  
 veniat: summō esse in periculō rem, quod, cum singulī  
 magistrātūs antiquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem  
 annum obtinēre cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et  
 4 sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum dīcat. Ilōrum esse  
 alterum Convictolitavem, flōrentem<sup>3</sup> et illūstrem adulē- 560  
 scentem, alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum  
 atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae  
 cōgnātiōnis,<sup>4</sup> cūius frāter Valetīācus proximō annō eun-  
 5 dem magistrātum gesserit. Cīvitātem esse omnem in  
 armīs, dīvisum senātum, dīvisum populum, suās<sup>5</sup> cūiusque 565  
 eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia,  
 fore utī pars cum parte cīvitātis cōflīgat. Id nē accidat  
 positum in ēius dīligentiā atque auctōritāte.

<sup>1</sup> 'hire.'      <sup>2</sup> '(to see) whether.'      <sup>3</sup> 'influential.'      <sup>4</sup> 'number of  
 kinsmen.'      <sup>5</sup> **suas**—**clientelas** : lit. 'of each of them his own clientage' ;  
 i.e. 'each had his own organized partisans.'

33. Caesar, etsi a bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrīmen-  
 570 tōsum<sup>1</sup> esse existimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns quanta ex  
 dissēsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōsuēssent, nē tanta et  
 tam coniuncta populō Rōmānō cīvītās, quam ipse semper  
 aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāsset,<sup>2</sup> ad vim atque arma  
 dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sibi cōfideret  
 575 auxilia a Vercingetorīge arcesseret, huic rei praeverten-  
 dum<sup>3</sup> existimāvit; et, quod lēgibus Aeduōrum iīs quī<sup>4</sup>  
 summum magistrātum obtinērent excēdere ex finibus nōn  
 liceret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse  
 vidērētur, ipse in Aeduōs proficīscī statuit senātumque  
 580 omnem et quōs<sup>4</sup> inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam  
 ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis cīvītās eō convēnisset docē-  
 rēturque,<sup>5</sup> paucis clam convocātis, aliō<sup>6</sup> locō, aliō<sup>6</sup> tem-  
 pore atque oportuerit, frātrem<sup>7</sup> a frātre<sup>8</sup> renūtiātum,<sup>9</sup>  
 cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vivō utrōque nōn solum  
 585 magistrātūs creārī vetārent,<sup>10</sup> sed etiam in senātū esse  
 prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit; Convic-  
 tolitavem, quī per sacerdōtēs<sup>11</sup> mōre cīvītātis intermissis  
 magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iūssit.

*Caesar Labiēnum cum quattuor legiōnibus in Senonēs et  
 Parisiōs mittit; ipse sex ad Gergoviam oppidum dūcit.*

34. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō, cohortātus Aeduōs ut  
 590 contrōversiārum ac dissēsiōnis obliviscerentur atque  
 omnibus omissis [his] rēbus huic bellō servīrent,<sup>12</sup> eaque  
 quae meruissent praemia ab sē dēvictā Galliā expec-  
 tārent equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sibi

<sup>1</sup> 'disadvantageous.'      <sup>2</sup> 'honor.'      <sup>3</sup> 'attend first.'      <sup>4</sup> obj. of  
 inter; sc. eōs as antecedent.      <sup>5</sup> subj. is fratrem—renuntiatum (esse).  
<sup>6</sup> alio—atque: 'other than.'      <sup>7</sup> i.e. Cotus.      <sup>8</sup> i.e. Valetiacus.      <sup>9</sup> 'de-  
 clare elected.'      <sup>10</sup> 'forbid.'      <sup>11</sup> 'priests,' i.e. the Druids.      <sup>12</sup> 'attend.'





celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae  
 causā dispōneret, exercitum in duās partēs dīvisit: quat- 595  
 2 tuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parisiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās  
 dedit; sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam  
 secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illi  
 3 attribuit, partem sibi relīquit. Quā rē cōgnitā Vercin-  
 getorīx omnibus interruptis eius flūminis pontibus ab 600  
 alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

35. Cum uterque utrimque exisset exercitus, in cōn-  
 spectū ferēque ē<sup>1</sup> regiōne Caesaris castra pōnēbat. Dis-  
 positīs explōrātōribus, nēcubi<sup>2</sup> effectō ponte Rōmānī  
 cōpiās trādūcerent, erat in māgnīs Caesarī difficultātibus 605  
 rēs nē māiōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur,  
 quod nōn ferē ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsīrī solet.  
 2 Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestrī locō castrīs positīs, ē<sup>1</sup>  
 regiōne ūnīus<sup>3</sup> eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorīx re-  
 scindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus 610  
 3 in occultō restitit<sup>4</sup>; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedī-  
 mentīs, ut cōnsuērat, mīsīt, distrāctīs quibusdam cohorti-  
 4 bus, ut numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētur. Hīs quam  
 longissimē possent prōgredi iūssīs, cum iam ex diēi tem-  
 pore coniectūram<sup>5</sup> caperet in castra perventum,<sup>6</sup> īsdem 615  
 sublicīs,<sup>7</sup> quārum pars inferior integra remanēbat, pon-  
 tem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque  
 trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlectō reliquās cōpiās  
 revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam  
 voluntātem dīmicare cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus ante- 620  
 cēssit.

<sup>1</sup> e regione: 'opposite.'      <sup>2</sup> 'in order that nowhere.'      <sup>3</sup> with e  
 regione; (to) 'one.'      <sup>4</sup> 'remain behind.'      <sup>5</sup> coniecturam capere:  
 'conjecture, judge.'      <sup>6</sup> sc. esse ab iis; impersonal.      <sup>7</sup> 'pile.'

36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs<sup>1</sup> Gergoviam pervēnit, equestrique eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnēs aditus difficilēs habēbat, de oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit; de obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit quam rem frumentāriam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castrīs prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātīm singulārum civitātum cōpiās collocāverat, atque omnibus eius iugī collibus occupātis quā dispici poterat, horribilem<sup>2</sup> speciem praebēbat; prīncipēsque eārum civitātum, quōs sibi ad cōsiliū capiendum dēlēgerat, primā luce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid communicandum, seu quid administrandum vidērētur; neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn equestri proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum periclitārētur. Erat ē regiōnē oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus<sup>3</sup>; quem sī tenerent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulātiōne liberā prohibītūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn infirmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, prius quam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum<sup>4</sup> pedum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent.

<sup>1</sup> 'day's march.'    <sup>2</sup> 'formidable.'    <sup>3</sup> 'with abrupt slope.'    <sup>4</sup> 'each (part) of twelve'; gen. plu.

*Novae apud Aeduos turbae; deficiunt auxilia Caesaris missa, quibus obviam proficiscitur Caesar. Aegre interim castra contra Gallios defenduntur.*

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Aeduus, cui magistratum adiudicatum<sup>1</sup> a Caesare demōn- 650 strāvimus, sollicitatus<sup>2</sup> ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscētibz colloquitur, quōrum erat princeps Litavicus atque eius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī 2 adulēscēntēs. Cum hīs praemium communicat hortatur- 3 que ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Ūnam 655 esse Aeduōrum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victōriam distineat; eius auctoritatē reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum cōsistendī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore. 4 Esse nōn nullō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sic tamen 5 ut iustissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs com- 660 mūnī libertatī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Aeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem,<sup>3</sup> quam 6 Rōmānī ad Aeduos veniant? Celeriter adulēscētibz et 7 orātiōne magistrātus et praemiō dēductis, cum sē vel principēs eius cōsiliī fore profiterentur, ratiō perficiendī 665 quaerēbātur, quod civitatem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōfīdēbant. Placuit ut Litavicus decem illis milibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur praeficerētur, atque ea<sup>4</sup> dūcenda cūrāret frātrēsque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat 670 cōstituunt.

38. Litavicus acceptō exercitū, cum milia passuum circiter trigintā a Gergoviā abesset, convocātis subitō militibus lacrimāns,<sup>5</sup> ‘Quō proficiscimur,’ inquit ‘militēs?

<sup>1</sup> ‘award.’<sup>2</sup> sollicitatus pecunia : ‘bribe.’<sup>3</sup> ‘(as) arbitrator.’<sup>4</sup> sc. milia.<sup>5</sup> ‘weep.’

675 Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; prīncipēs  
 cīvitātis, Eporēdorix et Viridomārus, īnsimulātī prōdi-  
 tiōnis, ab Rōmānīs indictā<sup>1</sup> causā interfectī sunt. Haec  
 ab hīs cōgnōscite, quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego  
 frātribus atque omnibus meis propinquīs interfectīs, dolōre  
 680 prohibeor quae gesta sunt prōnūntiāre.' Prōducuntur iī  
 quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem quae  
 Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat multitudinī expōnunt: omnēs  
 equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūtī cum Arver-  
 nīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitudinem mīlitum occul-  
 685 tāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgissee. Conclāmant Aeduī  
 et Litavicum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat. 'Quasi<sup>2</sup> vērō,'  
 inquit ille, 'cōnsiliū sit rēs, ac nōn necesse sit nōbīs Ger-  
 goviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere.  
 An dubitāmus quīn nefāriō<sup>3</sup> facinore admissō Rōmānī  
 690 iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in  
 nōbīs animī est, persequāmur<sup>4</sup> eōrum mortem quī indīgnis-  
 simē interiērunt, atque hōs lātrōnēs interficiāmus.' Osten-  
 dit cīvēs Rōmānōs, quī ēius praesidiī fiduciā unā<sup>5</sup> erant;  
 continuō māgnū numerum frūmentī commeātūsque dīri-  
 695 pit, ipsōs crudēliter excruciātōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā  
 cīvitāte Aeduōrum dīmittit, eōdem mendāciō<sup>6</sup> dē caede  
 equitum et prīncipum permovet; hortātur ut similī ratiōne  
 atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās persequantur.

39. Eporēdorix Aedus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns  
 700 et summae domī potentiae, et unā Viridomārus, parī  
 aetāte et grātiā, sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Dīvi-  
 ciācō sibi trāditum ex humili locō ad summam dignitātem  
 perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātīm

<sup>1</sup> adj. 'unsaid'; w. *causa*: 'without a trial.'    <sup>2</sup> 'as if.'    <sup>3</sup> 'abomi-  
 nable.'    <sup>4</sup> 'avenge.'    <sup>5</sup> 'with him.'    <sup>6</sup> 'lie.'

2 ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō,  
 et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō Convicto- 705  
 3 litave alter pro Cotō summīs opibus pūgnāverant. Ex hīs  
 Eporedorix cōgnitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte  
 rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ōrat nē patiātur cīvitatē prā-  
 vīs<sup>1</sup> adulēscentium cōnsiliis ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī  
 dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum 710  
 mīlia cum hostibus coniūxerint, quōrum salūtem neque  
 propinquī negligere neque cīvitas levī mōmentō<sup>2</sup> aesti-  
 māre posset.

40. Māgnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar,  
 quod semper Aeduōrum cīvitatī praecipuē indulserat, 715  
 nullā interpositā dubitātiōne<sup>3</sup> legiōnēs expeditās quattuor  
 2 equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit; nec fuit spatium  
 tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in  
 3 celeritāte vidēbātur; C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus  
 duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī cum 720  
 comprehendī iūssisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs pro-  
 4 fūgisse. Adhortātus milites nē necessariō tempore iti-  
 neris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgres-  
 sus mīlia passuum quīnque et vīgintī, āgmen Aeduōrum  
 cōnspicātur; immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque 725  
 impedit interdīcitque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant.  
 5 Eporedorigem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs exī-  
 stimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre iubet.  
 6 Hīs cōgnitis et Litaviccī fraude perspectā, Aeduī manūs  
 tendere, et dēditiōnem sīgnificāre, et prōiectis armīs mor- 730  
 7 tem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suīs clientibus,  
 quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortunā  
 dēserere patrōnōs,<sup>4</sup> Gergoviam profugit.

<sup>1</sup> 'vicious.'<sup>2</sup> 'consequence.'<sup>3</sup> 'hesitation.'<sup>4</sup> 'leader.'

41. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitātem Aeduōrum missīs quī  
 735 suō beneficiō cōservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs [noctis] exercituī ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere :  
 equitēs ā Fabiō missī, quantō rēs in periculō fuerit expōnunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta dēmōnstrant, cum  
 740 crēbrō<sup>1</sup> integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque assiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter māgnitudinem castrōrum perpetuō esset isdem<sup>2</sup> in vāllō permanendum. Mul- :  
 titūdine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs vulnerātos; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tor-  
 745. menta. Fabium discēssū eōrum duābus relictīs portīs :  
 obstruere cēterās pluteōsque<sup>3</sup> vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum apparāre. Hīs rēbus :  
 cōgnitīs Caesar summō studiō mīlitum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

*Dēficiunt Aeduī.*

750 42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aeduī prīmīs nūntiīs ab Litaviccō acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs :  
 irācundia<sup>4</sup> et temeritās,<sup>5</sup> quae māximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem auditiōnem habeant prō rē  
 755 compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedēs :  
 faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōcli- :  
 nātam<sup>6</sup> Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat.<sup>7</sup> M. Ari- :  
 stium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnēs facientem fidē

<sup>1</sup> adv. of *crēber*.    <sup>2</sup> w. quibus.    <sup>3</sup> 'screen.'    <sup>4</sup> 'passion.'    <sup>5</sup> 'rashness.'

<sup>6</sup> '(already) started (in that direction).'    <sup>7</sup> 'shame,' impers.; translate, 'they may be ashamed.'

datā ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēducunt; idem facere cōgunt 760  
 6 eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstitērant. Hōs continuō<sup>1</sup>  
 in itinere adortī omnibus impedimentīs exuunt; repū-  
 gnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque inter-  
 fectīs māiōrem multitudinem ad arma concitant.

43. Interim nūntiō allātō omnēs eōrum milītēs in po- 765  
 testāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil  
 pūblicō factum cōsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bo-  
 2 nīs dīreptīs dēcernunt; Litaviccī frātrumque bona pūbli-  
 cant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī suī grātiā<sup>2</sup> mittunt.  
 3 Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contā- 770  
 minātī<sup>3</sup> facinore et captī compendiō<sup>4</sup> ex dīreptīs bonīs,  
 quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exter-  
 ritī cōsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt cīvitatēsque  
 4 reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar  
 intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē<sup>5</sup> potest lēgātōs ap- 775  
 pellat: nihil sē propter Inscientiam levitātemque vulgī  
 gravius dē cīvitate iūdicāre neque dē suā in Aeduōs  
 5 benevolentia dēminuere. Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum  
 exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitatibus circumsisterētur,  
 cōsilia inībat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet 780  
 āc rūsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē prōfectiō nāta  
 ā timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

*Rōmānōrum ad Gergoviam clādēs.*

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene ge-  
 rendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspi-  
 ciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus 785  
 tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus

<sup>1</sup> 'immediately.'    <sup>2</sup> like **causa**.    <sup>3</sup> 'implicated' (in).    <sup>4</sup> 'profit.'  
<sup>5</sup> 'mildly.'

vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Admiratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluēbat.<sup>1</sup> Constabat inter omnes, quod<sup>2</sup> iam  
 790 ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum<sup>3</sup> esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timere nec iam aliter sentire, unō colle ab Rōmānis occupātō, si alterum amississent, quin paene circumvallatī atque omnī exitū et pabulatiōne interclusi  
 795 viderentur; ad hunc muniendum locum omnes a Vercingetorige evocātōs.

45. Hāc rē cognitā Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas eo de mediā nocte; imperat ut paulo tumultuosius  
 800 omnibus locis pervagentur. Primā luce magnum numerum impedimentōrum<sup>4</sup> ex castris mulorumque prōdūci deque his stramenta<sup>5</sup> detrahi muliōnesque<sup>6</sup> cum cassidibus,<sup>7</sup> equitum specie ac simulatiōne, collibus circumvehi iubet. His paucos addit equites qui lātius ostentatiōnis  
 805 causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eādem omnes iubet petere regiōnes. Haec procul ex oppidō videbantur, ut erat a Gergoviā despectus in castra, neque tantō spatiō, certū quid esset, explorārī poterat. Legiōnem decimam eodem luce mittit et paulum prōgressam inferiōre cōstituit locō  
 810 silvisque occultat. Augētur Gallis suspiciō atque omnes illō ad munitiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōspicātus tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis militāribus raros milites, ne ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex maiōribus castris in minōra trā-  
 815 dūcit, legātisque quos singulis legiōnibus praefecerat quid

<sup>1</sup> 'stream' (into camp).<sup>2</sup> sc. *id.*<sup>3</sup> 'summit.'<sup>4</sup> 'beast of

burden.'

<sup>5</sup> 'pack-saddle.'<sup>6</sup> 'mule-driver.'<sup>7</sup> 'helmet.'

fieri velit, ostendit: in primis monet ut contineant milites  
ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progredian-  
tur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi proponit; hoc  
9 una celeritate posse vitari; occasionis esse rem, non proe-  
10 lii. His rebus expositis signum dat et ab dextra parte 820  
aliò ascensum eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

46. Murus oppidi a planitie atque initio ascensus recta<sup>1</sup>  
regione,<sup>2</sup> si nullus amfractus<sup>3</sup> intercederet, mille et ducen-  
2 tos passus aberat; quicquid huc circuitus ad molliendum<sup>4</sup>  
3 clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. A medio 825  
ferē colle in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferēbat, ex  
grandibus saxis sex pedum murum qui nostrorum impe-  
tum tardaret praeduxerant Galli atque, inferiore omni  
spatio vacuo relictò, superiorem partem collis usque ad  
4 murum oppidi densissimis castris<sup>5</sup> complēverant. Milites 830  
datò signò celeriter ad munitiōnem perveniunt eamque  
5 transgressi trinīs<sup>6</sup> castris<sup>5</sup> potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in  
castris capiendis celeritas ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobro-  
gum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridiē conquiē-  
verat,<sup>7</sup> superiore parte corporis nudā, vulneratò equò, vix 835  
se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

47. Consecutus id quod animò proposuerat Caesar re-  
ceptui<sup>8</sup> cani<sup>9</sup> iussit, legionisque decimae, quācum erat,  
2 continuò signa cōstitērunt. At reliquarum legionum  
milites non auditò sonò tubae, quod satis magna vallēs 840  
intercedēbat, tamen a tribūnis militum lēgātisque, ut erat  
a Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed elatī spē celeris

<sup>1</sup> 'straight.'    <sup>2</sup> 'line.'    <sup>3</sup> 'bend.'    <sup>4</sup> molliendum clivum: (lit.  
'softening the slope'), 'lessening the steepness.'    <sup>5</sup> plu. in significa-  
tion.    <sup>6</sup> distributive of *trēs*; used to show that *castris* is plu. in sig-  
nification.    <sup>7</sup> 'rest.'    <sup>8</sup> 'retreat.'    <sup>9</sup> 'sound'; impers. pass. infin.

victōriæ et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secun-  
 dīs proeliīs nihil adeō arduum sibi existimābant quod  
 845 nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent; neque finem prius sequendī  
 fecerunt quam mūrō oppidī portisque appropinquārent.  
 Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī  
 longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem  
 intrā portās esse existimārent, sē ex oppidō eiēcērunt.  
 850 Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem<sup>1</sup> argentumque iactābant<sup>2</sup>  
 et pectore<sup>2</sup> nudō prōminentēs<sup>3</sup> passis manibus obtestā-  
 bantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent; neu,<sup>4</sup> sic ut Avaricī<sup>5</sup>  
 fecissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque Infantibus absti-  
 nērent. Nōn nullae dē mūro per manūs dēmissae sēsē<sup>6</sup>  
 855 militibus tradēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae,  
 quem inter suōs eō diē dixisse cōstābat excitārī sē Ava-  
 ricēnsibus praemiīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quis-  
 quam mūrum āscenderet, trēs suōs<sup>6</sup> nactus manipulārēs  
 atque ab iīs sublevātus mūrum āscendit. Hōs ipse rūsus  
 860 singulōs exceptāns<sup>7</sup> in mūrum extulit.

48. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā  
 dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā convēnerant, primō  
 exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crebrīs nūntiīs incitātī op-  
 pidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus māgnō  
 865 cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque primus vēne-  
 rat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium nume-  
 rum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitudō convēnis-  
 set, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō  
 manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum  
 870 capillum ostentāre liberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coe-  
 pērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa con-<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 'robes.'    <sup>2</sup> 'breast.'    <sup>3</sup> 'lean over.'    <sup>4</sup> 'and not.'    <sup>5</sup> locative.  
<sup>6</sup> suos manipulares: 'of his own manipule.'    <sup>7</sup> 'help.'

tentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pūgnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pūgnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns<sup>1</sup> suis ad T. Sextium lēgātum, 875 quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsīt ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub infimō colle ab  
2 dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret; ut, sī nostrōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quō minus liberē hostēs insequerentur  
3 terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus 880 ubi cōstiterat, ēventum pūgnae expectābat.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōfīderent, subitō sunt Aeduī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō  
2 āscēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitū- 885 dine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, āc, tametsī dextrīs umerīs<sup>2</sup> exsertīs<sup>3</sup> animadvertēbantur,<sup>4</sup> quod insigne<sup>5</sup> pāctum<sup>6</sup> esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā militēs ab hostibus factum existimābant.  
3 Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque unā mūrū 890 āscenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petronius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus āc sibi dēspērāns, multis iam vulneribus acceptīs, manipularibus suis quī illum secūtī erant, ‘Quoniam,’ inquit, ‘mē 895 unā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitāe prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in  
4 perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite.’ Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī 900

<sup>1</sup> ‘fear in advance.’<sup>2</sup> ‘shoulder.’<sup>3</sup> (thrust out) ‘bare.’<sup>4</sup> ‘identify.’<sup>5</sup> ‘signal.’<sup>6</sup> part. of *pangō*, ‘agree.’

suīs, ‘Frūstrā,’ inquit, ‘meae vitae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte dum est facultās vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.’ Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit ac suīs salutī fuit.

905 51. Nostrī cum undique premerentur, sex et quadrā-  
gintā centuriōnibus āmissīs dēiectī sunt locō. Sed in-  
tolerantius<sup>1</sup> Gallōs īnsequentēs legiō decima tardāvit,  
quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc  
rūrsus tertiae decimae legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt,  
910 quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō  
cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi primum plāni-  
tiem attigērunt, īfestīs contrā hostem sīgnīs cōnsti-  
tērunt. Vercingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā  
mūnitiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē milītēs sunt paulō minus  
915 septingenti dēsiderātī.

*Cōntiōne habitā et cōnfirmātis milītibus, Caesar contrā  
Aeduōs exercitum dūcit.*

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritātem  
cupiditātemque milītum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdi-  
cāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidē-  
rētur, neque sīgnō recipiendī datō cōstitissent neque ā  
920 tribūnīs milītum lēgātisque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit  
quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsis-  
set, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hosti-  
bus explōrātam victōriam dīmīsisset, nē parvum modo  
dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī ac-  
925 cideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitūdinem admī-  
rārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnitiōnēs, nōn altitūdō  
montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere

<sup>1</sup> ‘too recklessly.’

licentiam<sup>1</sup> arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē  
quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre  
4 existimārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam<sup>2</sup> et con- 930  
tinentiam<sup>3</sup> quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitudinem  
dēsiderāre.

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmum [ōrātiōne]  
cōnfirmātis mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permo-  
vērentur, neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī 935  
hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae  
ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō  
2 locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in  
aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestri proeliō  
3 atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc 940  
idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem  
minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōnfirmandōs factum  
4 existimāns in Aeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem  
īnsecūtīs hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit;  
pontem refēcit exercitumque trādūxit. 945

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorīge Aeduīs appel-  
lātus discit cum omnī equitātū Litavicum ad sollicitan-  
dōs Aeduōs profectum; opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad  
2 cōnfirmandam civitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam  
Aeduōrum perspectam habēbat atque hōrum discēssū 950  
mātūrārī defectionem civitātis existimābat, tamen eōs  
retinendōs nōn cēnsuit nē aut īferre iniūriam vidērētur  
3 aut daret timōris aliquam sūspiciōnem. Discēdentibus  
iīs breviter sua in Aeduōs merita exposuit; quōs<sup>4</sup> et quam  
4 humilēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs<sup>5</sup> agrīs, 955  
omnibus ēreptīs sociīs, impositō stipendiō, obsidibus

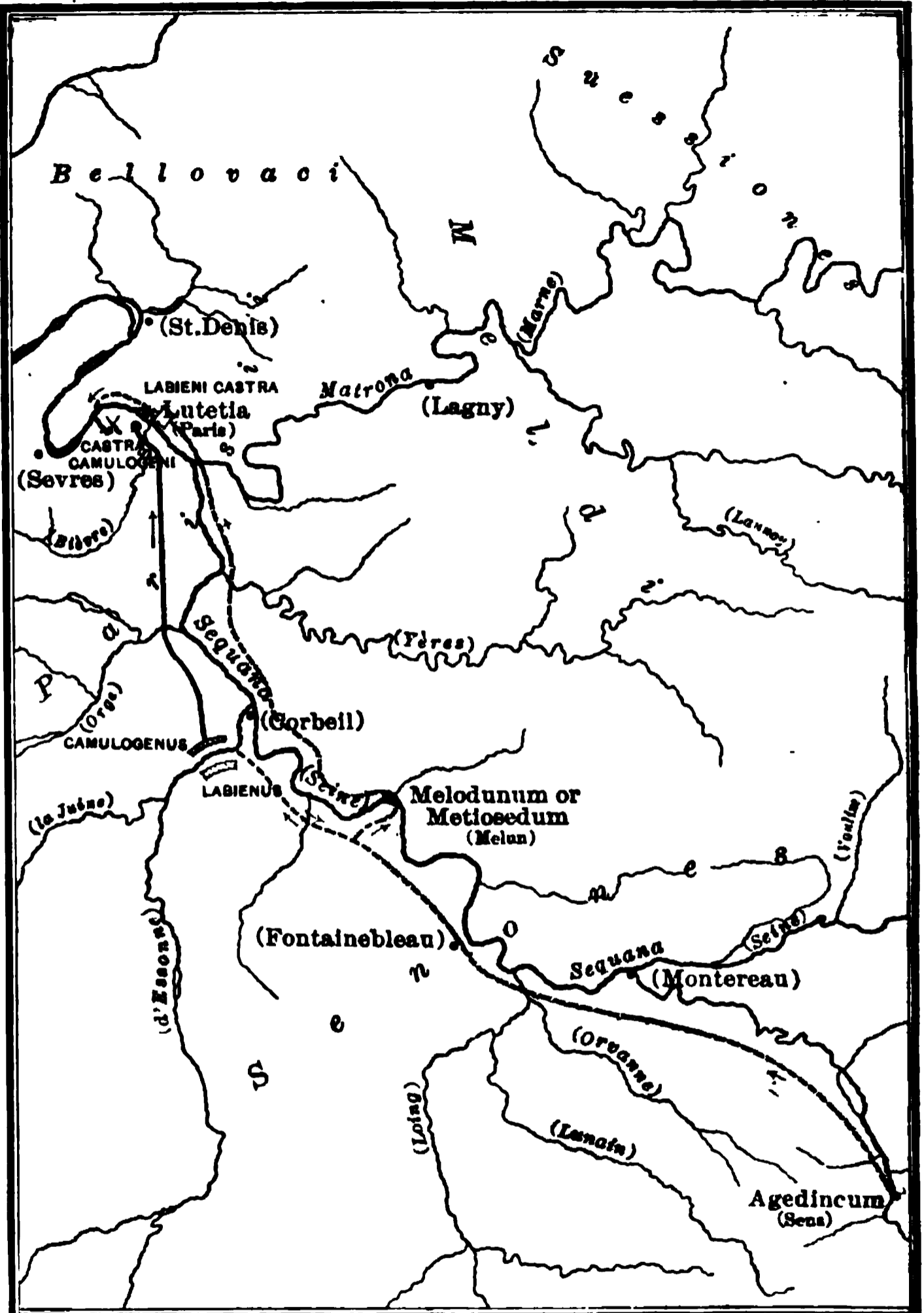
<sup>1</sup> 'insubordination.'    <sup>2</sup> 'subordination.'    <sup>3</sup> 'self-restraint.'    <sup>4</sup> 'quos  
humiles: 'in what condition and how humble.'    <sup>5</sup> 'deprive.'

summā cum contumēliā extortis,<sup>1</sup> et quam in fortūnam  
 quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn solum in prī-  
 stinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitātem  
 960 et grātiā antecēssisse vidērentur. His datīs mandātīs  
 eōs ab sē dīmīsīt.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Aeduōrum ad rīpās  
 Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs  
 obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniā pūblicā, suōrum  
 965 atque exercitūs impedimentōrum māgnam partem con-  
 tulerat; hūc māgnū numerum equōrum hūius bellī  
 causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā coēemptum mīserat. Eō  
 cum Eporēdorix Viridomārusque vēnissent et de statū  
 cīvitātis cōgnōvissent, Litavicum Bibracte<sup>2</sup> ab Aeduīs  
 970 receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs māximae auctōri-  
 tātis, Convictolitavem magistratū māgnamque partem  
 senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorīgē  
 de pāce et amīcitiā conciliandā pūblicē missōs, nōn praeter-  
 mittendum tantum commodum existimāvērunt. Itaque  
 975 interfectīs Noviodūnī cūstōdibus quīque eō negōtiandī  
 causā convēnerant, pecūniā atque equōs inter sē partītī  
 sunt; obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdū-  
 cendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse  
 iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt;  
 980 frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, reli-  
 quum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex finī-  
 timīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia cūstōdiāsque  
 ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs  
 iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frū-  
 985 mentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere [aut adductōs inopiā ex  
 prōvinciā expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs

<sup>1</sup> 'force from (them).'      <sup>2</sup> abl.





**EXPEDITION OF LABIENUS**



adiuvābat quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, ut 990 prius quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmīcāret. 2 Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut [nōn] nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciundum exīstimābat, cum infāmia atque indignitās rei et oppositus mōns Cebenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat, tum 995 māximē quod abiūctō<sup>1</sup> Labiēnō atque iīs legiōnibus 3 quās unā miserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum māgnīs diurnīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōfectīs, contrā 4 omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit vadōque per equitēs inventō prō rei necessitāte opportunō, ut bracchia modo 1000 atque umerī ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū, quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus primō āspectū perturbātīs incolumem 5 exercitum trādūxit frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus replētō<sup>2</sup> hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs 1005 facere instituit.

*Rēs ā Labiēnō prōsperē in Parīsiīs gestae.*

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō quod nuper ex Italiā vēnerat relictō Agēdincī, ut esset impedīmentīs praesidiō, cum quattuor 2 legiōnibus Lutetiam profisciscitur. Id est oppidum Parī- 1010 siōrum positum in Insulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cuius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex finitimīs civitātibus cōpiae convēnerunt. Summa imperiī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōfectus aetāte tamen propter

<sup>1</sup> 'detach.'

<sup>2</sup> 'supply amply.'

1015 singulārem scientiam rei militāris ad eum est honōrem  
 ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palū-  
 dem, quae influeret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem  
 locum māgnopere impediret, hic cōsēdit nostrōsque  
 trāsitū prohibere instituit.

1020 58. Labiēnus primō vineās agere, crātibus atque aggere  
 palūdem explere atque iter mūnīre<sup>1</sup> cōnābātur. Post-  
 quam id difficilius fieri<sup>2</sup> animadvertit, silentiō ē castris  
 tertiā vigiliā ēgressus eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Meti-  
 osēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in insulā  
 1025 Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante de Lutetiā diximus.  
 Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīnquāgintā celeriterque  
 coniūctis atque eō militibus impositis et rei novitāte  
 perterritis oppidānis, quōrum magna pars erat ad bel-  
 lum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur. Refectō  
 1030 ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exer-  
 citum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere  
 coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab iis quī Metiosēdō profū-  
 gerant, Lutetiam incendi pontēsque eius oppidī rescindi  
 iubent; ipsī profecti ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē regiōne  
 1035 Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōsīdunt.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergovia discēssisse audiēbātur, iam  
 de Aeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rumōrēs  
 afferēbantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclūsum itinere et  
 Ligeri<sup>3</sup> Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam  
 1040 contendisse cōfīrmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne  
 Aeduōrum cōgnitā, quī iam ante erant per sē infidēlēs,<sup>4</sup>  
 manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt.  
 Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud  
 sibi capiendum cōsiliū atque antea sēnserat intellegē-

<sup>1</sup> 'construct.'<sup>2</sup> 'be accomplished.'<sup>3</sup> abl.<sup>4</sup> 'wavering.'

bat, neque iam ut aliquid acquireret proeliōque hostēs 1045  
 lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redū-  
 ceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae  
 civitās in Galliā māximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis,  
 Instābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque instrūctō  
 exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedi- 1050  
 mentīs interclūsās māximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs  
 subitō difficultātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxiliū  
 petendum vidēbat.

60. Itaque sub vesperum cōsiliō convocātō cohortātus  
 ut ea quae imperāsset dīligerter industriēque administrā- 1055  
 rent, nāvēs quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus  
 Rōmānīs attribuit et primā cōfectā vigiliā quattuor  
 mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi ibique  
 sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortēs quās minimē  
 firmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat castrīs praesidiō 1060  
 relinquit; quīnque eiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā  
 nocte cum omnibus impedimentīs adversō flūmine māgnō  
 tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquirit etiam līntrēs; hās  
 māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mit-  
 tit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōni- 1065  
 bus eum locum petit quō nāvēs appellī iūsserat.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut  
 omni flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopīnantēs, quod  
 māgna subitō erat coorta tempestās, ā nostrīs opprimun-  
 2 tur; exercitus equitatusque, equitibus Rōmānīs admini- 1070  
 strantibus quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat, celeriter trānsmit-  
 3 titur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur  
 in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōsuētūdinem tumultu-  
 āri<sup>1</sup> et māgnum īre āgmen adversō flūmine sonitumque

<sup>1</sup> 'be in confusion' ; impers.

1075 rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī et paulō infrā mīlītēs  
 nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus audītīs, quod exī-  
 stimābant tribus locīs trānsīre legiōnēs, [atque omnēs  
 perturbātōs dēfectiōne Aeduōrum fugam parāre,] suās  
 quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam prae-  
 1080 sidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō et parvā manū Metio-  
 sēdum versus<sup>1</sup> missā quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum  
 nāvēs prōcēssissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum  
 dūxērunt.

62. Primā luce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et  
 1085 hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus mīlītēs cohortātus  
 ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum proeliō-  
 rum retinērent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cūius  
 ductū saepe numerō hostēs superāssent, praesentem adesse  
 existimārent, dat sīgnum proeliī. Primō concursū ab dex-  
 1090 trō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōstitērat, hostēs pelluntur  
 atque in fugam cōiciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duode-  
 cima legiō tenēbat, cum primī ordinēs hostium trānsfixī  
 pīlis concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec  
 dabat sūspiciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium  
 1095 Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At in-  
 certō etiam nunc exitū victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tri-  
 būnīs esset nūntiātum, quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur,  
 post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt<sup>2</sup> sīgnaque in-  
 tulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cēssit,  
 1100 sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fortū-  
 nam tulit Camulogenus. At iī quī in praesidiō contrā  
 castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum au-  
 dissent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque  
 nostrōrum mīlitum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuē-

<sup>1</sup> 'toward.'<sup>2</sup> 'unmask.'

9 runt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixti, quos non silvae 1105  
 10 montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. Hoc  
 negotio confecto Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi  
 impedimenta totius exercitus relictæ erant; inde cum om-  
 nibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

*Dēficiunt omnēs ferē Gallī; summum ducem cōstituunt  
 Vercingetorīgē; vincuntur ā Caesare equestri proeliō.*

63. Dēfectione Aeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. Lē- 1110  
 2 gationēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grā-  
 tiā, auctoritatē, pecuniā valent, ad sollicitandās civitatēs  
 3 utuntur; nacti obsidēs quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat,  
 4 hōrum supplicio dubitantes territant. Petunt ā Vercin-  
 getorige Aeduū ut ad se veniat rationēsque bellī gerendī 1115  
 5 communicet. Rē impetratā contendunt ut ipsīs summa  
 imperiī tradatur; et rē in contrōversiam deductā, totius  
 Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. Conveniunt undique  
 6 frequentēs. Multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur; ad  
 7 unum omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperatōrem. Ab 1120  
 hoc concilio Remi, Lingonēs, Trēverī affuerunt: illi, quod  
 amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod abe-  
 rant longius et ā Germānis premēbantur, quæ fuit causa  
 quā rē toto abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent.  
 8 Magnō dolore Aeduū ferunt se deiectos principatū; que 1125  
 runt fortunæ commutatiōnem et Caesaris in se indul-  
 gentiam requirunt<sup>1</sup>; neque tamen susceptō bellō suum  
 9 cōsilium ab reliquis separare audēt. Inviti summae  
 spei<sup>2</sup> adulescentēs, Eporēdorix et Viridomārus, Vercinge-  
 torigī parant. 1130

64. Ille imperat reliquis civitatibus obsidēs; dēnique

<sup>1</sup> 'recall.'

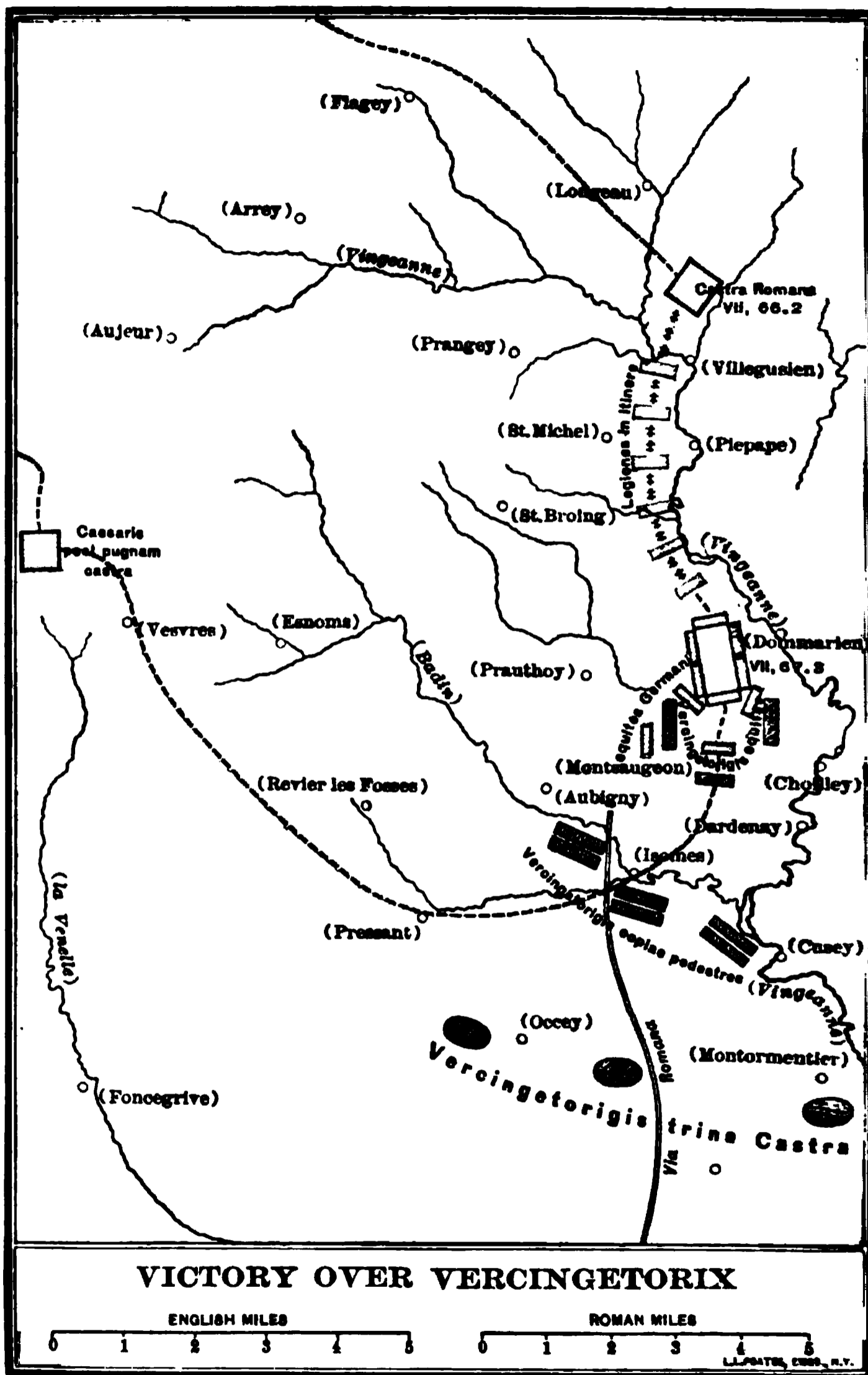
<sup>2</sup> 'ambition.'

eī rei cōstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, quīdecim  
 mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet: peditātū, quem  
 ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam  
 1135 temptātūrum aut aciē dīmīcātūrum; sed quoniam abundet  
 equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiō-  
 nibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo<sup>1</sup> animō sua  
 ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant; quā rei  
 familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium libertātemque sē  
 1140 cōsequī videant. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus Aeduīs Segusiā-  
 vīsque, quī sunt finitimī prōvinciae, decem mīlia peditum  
 imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frā-  
 trem Eporēdorīgis bellumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet.  
 Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum  
 1145 in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārum  
 Arecomicōrum depopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clan-  
 destīnis nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quō-  
 rum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat.  
 Hōrum principibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium  
 1150 tōtius prōvinciae pollicētūr.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohor-  
 tium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab  
 L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantūr. Helvi  
 suā sponte cum finitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur et  
 1155 C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī filiō, principe cīvitātis,  
 complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā oppida mūrōsque  
 compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispo-  
 sitis praesidiīs māgnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs finēs  
 tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse in-  
 1160 tellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nullā rē ex  
 prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in

<sup>1</sup> 'only.'





Germāniam mittit ad eās civitatēs quās superiōribus annis  
pācāverat; equitēsque ab his arcēssit et levis armātūrae  
5 peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum ad-  
ventū, quod minus idōneis equis utēbantur, ā tribūnis 1165  
militum reliquisque equitibus Rōmānis atque ēvocātis<sup>1</sup>  
equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Ar-  
vernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveni-  
2 unt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēqua- 1170  
nōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō  
facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia  
passuum decem ab Rōmānis trīnis castris Vercingetorix  
3 cōnsēdit, convocātisque ad consilium praefectis equitum  
vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: fugere in prōvin- 1175  
4 ciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem  
obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquū temporis  
pācem atque ōtium parum<sup>2</sup> prōfici<sup>3</sup>; māiōribus enim  
coāctis cōpiis reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs;  
proinde in āgmine impeditōs adorianatur; sī peditēs suis 1180  
auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn  
5 posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relictis impe-  
dimentis suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rerum<sup>4</sup> nēces-  
6 sariārum et dignitāte spoliātum irī. Nam de equiti-  
bus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā 1185  
āgmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem debēre dubitāre. Id  
quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castris  
7 habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant  
equitēs, sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre, nē  
tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad 1190

<sup>1</sup> 'veteran' (who had been personally 'called out').      <sup>2</sup> 'too little.'

<sup>3</sup> 'gain advantage'; impers.      <sup>4</sup> *res necessariae*: 'necessities.'

uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per āgmen hostium perequitārit.<sup>1</sup>

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs  
 1195 ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō āgmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque : equitātum tripertitō dīvisum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit āgmen; : impedimenta inter legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte :  
 1200 nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa inferri Caesar aciemque converti iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad insequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxiliī cōfīrmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere sum- :  
 1205 ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē : animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veriti, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī : Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur : Cotus, praefectus  
 1210 equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitave proximīs comitiīs<sup>2</sup> habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

*Vercingetorīx Alesiam sē cōnfert, omnem Galliam ad bellum ēvocat.*

1215 68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeri-

<sup>1</sup> 'ride' (through).

<sup>2</sup> 'election'; no sing.

terque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi iussit.  
 2 Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duabus  
 legionibus praesidio relictis, secutus hostes quantum diei 1220  
 tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimum ag-  
 mine interfectis, altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Per-  
 3 specto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua  
 maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsae, adhorta-  
 tus ad laborem milites Alesiam circumvallare instituit. 1225

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summo admodum  
 edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse vi-  
 2 deretur; cuius collis radices duo duabus ex partibus  
 3 flumina subluébant.<sup>1</sup> Ante oppidum planities circiter  
 4 milia passuum tria in longitudinem patebat; reliquis ex 1230  
 omnibus partibus collis, mediocri interiecto spatio, pari  
 5 altitudinis<sup>2</sup> fastigio<sup>3</sup> oppidum cingebant. Sub muro,  
 quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectabat, hunc om-  
 nem locum copiae Gallorum complerant fossamque et  
 maceriam<sup>4</sup> in altitudinem sex pedum praeduxerant. 1235  
 6 Eius munitiois quae ab Romanis instituébatur circuitus  
 7 undecim milia passuum tenebat. Castra opportunis locis  
 erant posita octona castellaque tres et viginti facta; qui-  
 bus in castellis interdiu stationes ponebantur, ne qua su-  
 bito eruptio fieret; haec eadem noctu excubitoribus<sup>5</sup> ac 1240  
 firmis praesidiis tenebantur.

70. Opere instituto fit equestre proelium in ea planitie  
 quam intermissam<sup>6</sup> collibus tria milia passuum in longi-  
 tudinem patere supra demonstravimus. Summa vi ab  
 2 utrisque contenditur. Laborentibus nostris Caesar Ger- 1245  
 manos submittit legionesque pro castris constituit, ne qua

<sup>1</sup> 'wash.'<sup>2</sup> w. pari.<sup>3</sup> 'summit.'<sup>4</sup> 'wall.'<sup>5</sup> 'sentinel.'<sup>6</sup> 'interrupt.'

subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legi-  
 ōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam  
 conlectī sē ipsī multitudīne impediunt atque angustioribus  
 1250 portīs relictīs coartantur.<sup>1</sup> Germānī ācrius usque ad mū-  
 nitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs; nōn nullī relictīs  
 equīs fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur.  
 Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prō-  
 movērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant  
 1255 Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōfestim exīstimantēs  
 ad arma conclāmant; nōn nullī perterritī in oppidum  
 irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra  
 nudentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs,  
 Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

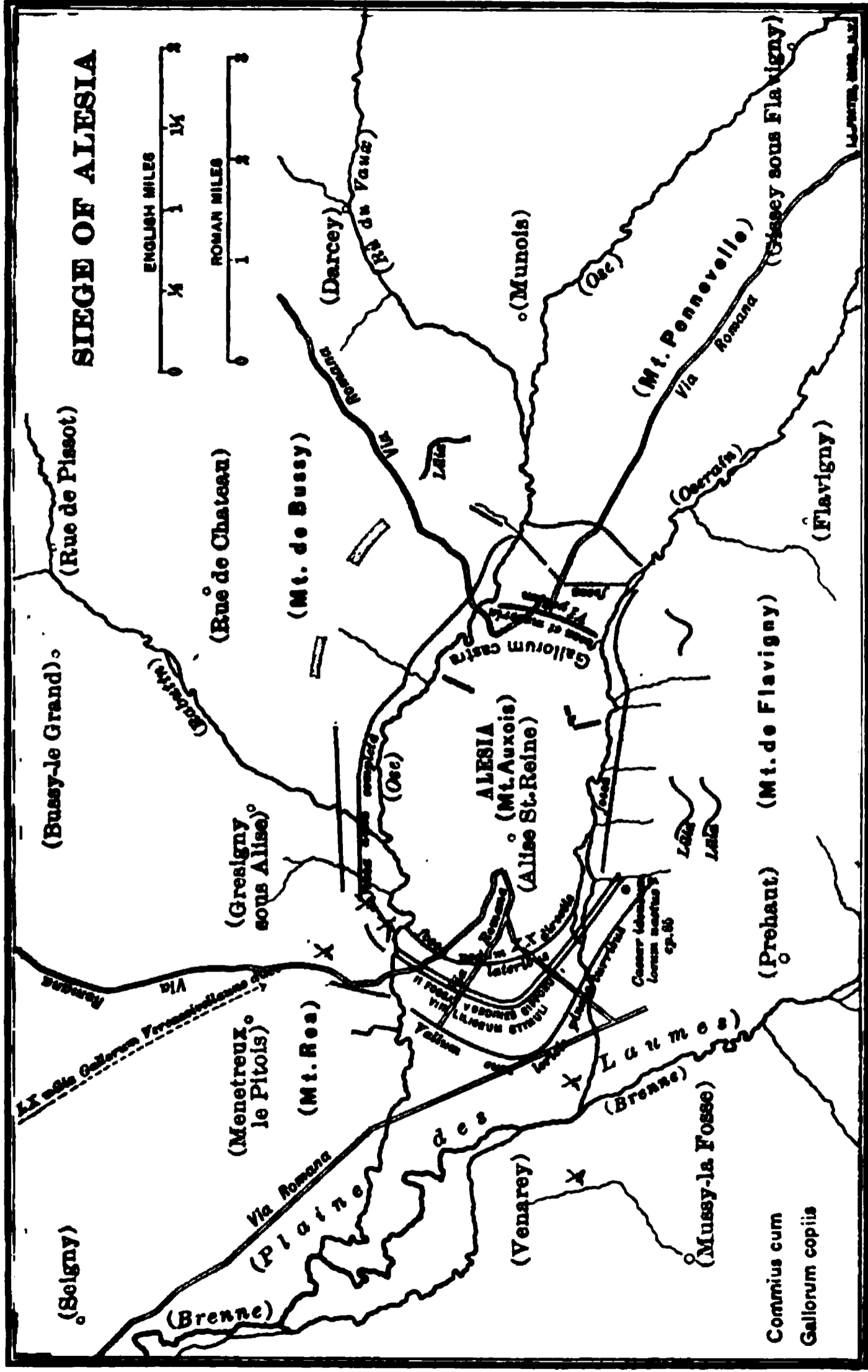
1260 71. Vercingetorīx, prius quam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs  
 perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātum  
 noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suām quisque  
 eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma  
 ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prō-  
 1265 pōnit obtēstāturque ut suae<sup>2</sup> salutis ratiōnem habeant,  
 neu sē<sup>3</sup> optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum hostibus  
 in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint,  
 mīlia hominum dēlecta octōgintā unā sēcum interitūra  
 dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē dierum  
 1270 trīgintā habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tōlerārī posse  
 parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus  
 intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit.  
 Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam iīs  
 quī nōn paruerint cōstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat  
 1275 cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsā, virītim<sup>3</sup> distribuit; frūmen-

<sup>1</sup> 'crowd together.'  
 'individually.'

<sup>2</sup> i.e. Vercingetorix.

<sup>3</sup> (man by man)

# SIEGE OF ALESIA





tum parcē<sup>1</sup> et paulātim mētīrī instituit. Cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae expectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

*Caesar oppidum variis mūnitiōnibus cingit.*

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar 1280 haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit. Fossam pedum viginti dērēctis lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum<sup>2</sup> tantundem<sup>3</sup> patēret quantum summa labra<sup>4</sup> distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs quadringentōs reduxit; [id] hōc cōsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessariō 1285 spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā<sup>5</sup> militum cingeretur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō hostium advolāret,<sup>6</sup> aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs<sup>7</sup> cōicere possent. Hoc intermissō spatiō duās fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās, eādem altitū- 1290 dine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus<sup>8</sup> ac dēmissis<sup>9</sup> locis aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum duodecim pedum extrūxit. Huic lōricam<sup>10</sup> pinnāsque<sup>11</sup> adiēcit, grandibus cervīs<sup>12</sup> eminentibus<sup>13</sup> ad<sup>14</sup> commissūrās<sup>15</sup> pluteōrum atque aggeris, 1295 quī āscēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs octōgintā inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī<sup>16</sup> et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtis nostris cōpiis, quae longius ā castris prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn 1300

<sup>1</sup> 'sparingly.'    <sup>2</sup> 'bottom.'    <sup>3</sup> 'as much.'    <sup>4</sup> 'edge.'    <sup>5</sup> 'cordon.'  
<sup>6</sup> 'charge' (upon).    <sup>7</sup> 'detail.'    <sup>8</sup> 'level.'    <sup>9</sup> 'low.'    <sup>10</sup> 'parapet.'  
<sup>11</sup> 'battlement.'    <sup>12</sup> 'chevaux-de-frise.'    <sup>13</sup> 'project.'    <sup>14</sup> 'at.'  
<sup>15</sup> 'junction.'    <sup>16</sup> 'cut timber.'

numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quā rē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit,<sup>2</sup> quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnitiōnēs dēfendī possent. 1305 Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscīsīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs<sup>1</sup> āc praeacūtīs cacūminibus<sup>2</sup> perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc<sup>3</sup> illī stipitēs<sup>4</sup> dēmissī et ab infimō revinctī, nē revelli possent, ab<sup>5</sup> rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs coniūctī 1310 inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs<sup>6</sup> induēbant.<sup>7</sup> Hōs cippōs<sup>8</sup> appellābant.<sup>5</sup> Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in<sup>9</sup> quīncūncem dispositīs scrobēs<sup>10</sup> in altitudinem trium pedum fodiēbantur<sup>11</sup> paulatim angustiore ad infimum fāstigiō. Hūc teretēs<sup>12</sup> 1315 stipitēs feminis<sup>13</sup> crassitudine<sup>14</sup> ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēbantur ita, ut nōn amplius digitīs<sup>15</sup> quatuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfīrmandī et stabilīendī<sup>16</sup> causā singulī<sup>17</sup> ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur<sup>18</sup>; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās 1320 vīminibus āc virgultīs integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī<sup>19</sup> ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris<sup>20</sup> līlium<sup>21</sup> appellābant. Ante haec tāleae<sup>22</sup> pedem longae ferreīs hamīs<sup>23</sup> infixīs<sup>24</sup> tōtae in

<sup>1</sup> 'trim.'      <sup>2</sup> 'top.'      <sup>3</sup> 'in these trenches.'      <sup>4</sup> 'tree trunks.'  
<sup>5</sup> 'with.'      <sup>6</sup> nom. *vallus*, 'stake.'      <sup>7</sup> 'impale.'      <sup>8</sup> 'boundary-post':  
used ironically.      <sup>9</sup> in quīncūncem: (like a five-spot on cards or dice)  
'unevenly,' i.e. the alternate rows having the holes opposite each  
other, the intervening ones having theirs opposite the middle of the  
space between two holes in the other.      <sup>10</sup> 'pit.'      <sup>11</sup> 'dig.'      <sup>12</sup> 'round  
and smooth.'      <sup>13</sup> 'thigh.'      <sup>14</sup> 'thickness.'      <sup>15</sup> 'finger's breadth.'  
<sup>16</sup> 'secure.'      <sup>17</sup> singuli pedes: 'a foot of each stake.'      <sup>18</sup> 'pack  
down.'      <sup>19</sup> 'eight' (distrib.).      <sup>20</sup> 'flower.'      <sup>21</sup> 'lily'; cf. cippos  
above.      <sup>22</sup> 'bar.'      <sup>23</sup> 'hook.'      <sup>24</sup> 'set in.'

terram infodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserēbantur,<sup>1</sup> quos stimulōs<sup>2</sup> nōminā- 1325 bant.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectis regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō loci nātūrā, quattuordecim mīlia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, dīversās<sup>3</sup> ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē 1330 māgnā quidem multitūdine [sī ita accidat eius discēssū], mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum trīgintā pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

*Gallī māximis cōpiis coāctis ad Alesiam proficiscuntur.*

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō 1335 prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frū- 1340 mentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, [Blannōviīs,] mīlia trīgintā quīnque; parem numerum Arvernīs adiūctis Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōn- 1345 suērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs decem; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parisiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; 1350 quattuor Veliocassīs; [Lexoviīs et] Aulercīs Eburovīci-

<sup>1</sup> 'scatter.'

<sup>2</sup> 'spur.'

<sup>3</sup> 'opposite.'

bus tria; Rauricis et Bōiis bīna; decem ūniversis cīvi-  
tātibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuē-  
tūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō  
1355 Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī,  
Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn  
contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō<sup>1</sup> cum Rō-  
mānis bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cūiusquam impe-  
riō obtemperātūrōs<sup>2</sup>; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō eius  
1360 hospitio duo mīlia mīsērunt.

76. Hūius operā Commiī, ut antea dēmōnstrāvimus,  
fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus<sup>3</sup> in Britan-  
niā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem eius immūnem<sup>4</sup>  
esse iūsserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī<sup>5</sup> Morinōs  
1365 attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō<sup>6</sup>  
fuit libertātis<sup>6</sup> vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis<sup>6</sup> re-  
cuperandae ut neque beneficiis neque amīcitiae memoriā  
movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum  
incumberent.<sup>7</sup> Coāctis equitum mīlibus octō et peditum  
1370 circiter ducentis et quīnquāgintā, haec in Aeduōrum  
fīnibus recēnsēbantur,<sup>8</sup> numerusque inībātur,<sup>9</sup> praefectī  
cōstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Epo-  
rēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsōbrīnō<sup>10</sup>  
Vercingetorīgis, summa imperiī trāditur. Hīs<sup>11</sup> dēlectī ex  
1375 cīvitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum admini-  
strārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēnī ad Alesiam  
proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī āspec-  
tum modo tantae multitudinis sustinērī posse arbitrārē-  
tur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne

<sup>1</sup> 'discretion.'    <sup>2</sup> 'obey.'    <sup>3</sup> 'find.'    <sup>4</sup> 'exempt (from tribute).'  
<sup>5</sup> i.e. *Commiō*.    <sup>6</sup> sc. *causā*.    <sup>7</sup> 'bend one's energies.'    <sup>8</sup> 'muster.'  
<sup>9</sup> 'record.'    <sup>10</sup> 'cousin.'    <sup>11</sup> w. *attribuuntur*.

pūgnārētur, foris<sup>1</sup> tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque 1380  
cernerentur.

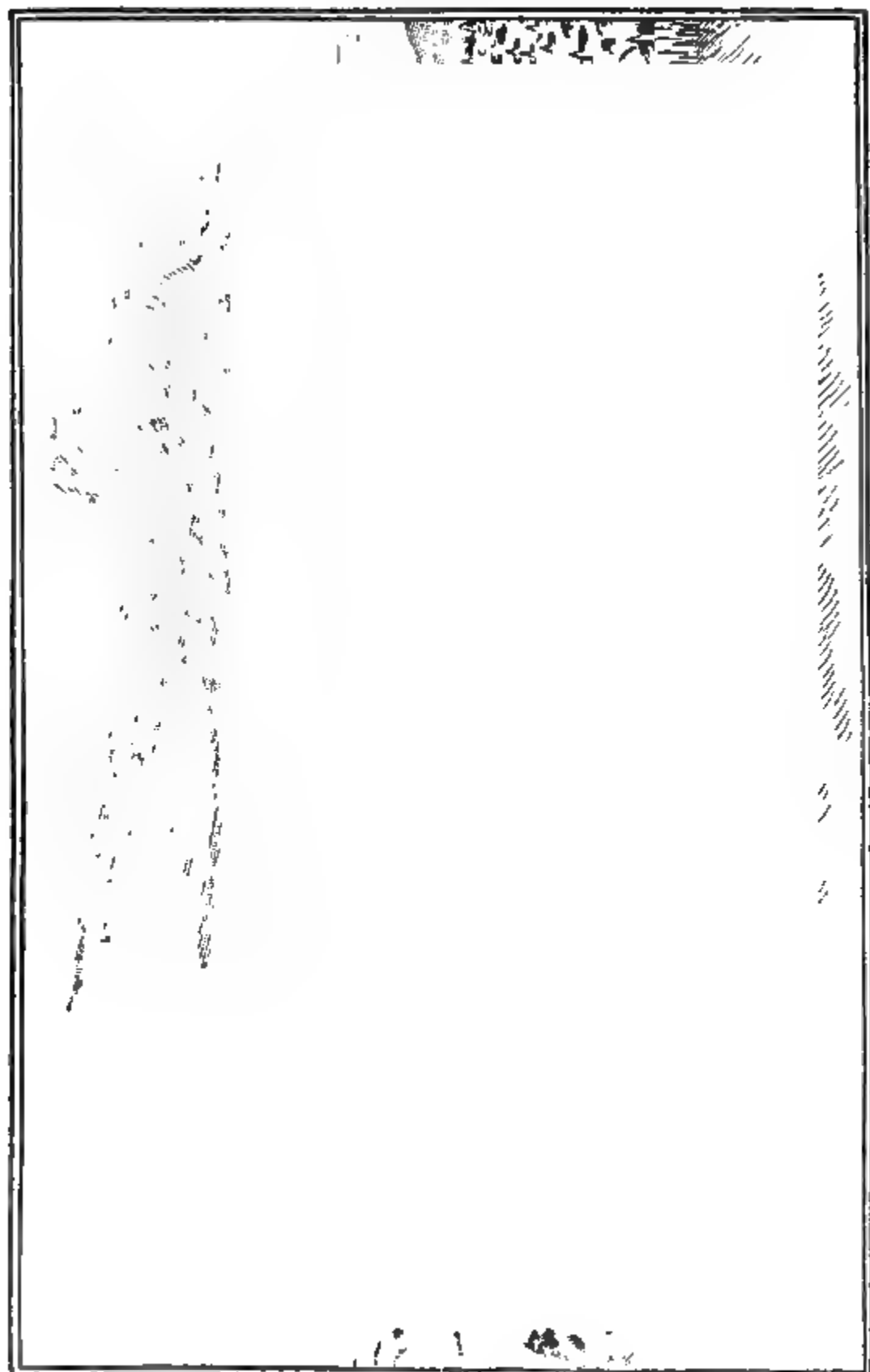
*Ii quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, conciliō coāctō, dē condiciōne  
suā dēliberant.*

77. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā  
auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsumptō omnī frūmentō,  
īnciī quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū  
2 suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sen- 1385  
tentiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs sup-  
peterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō  
Critognātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem et nefāriam<sup>2</sup>  
3 crudēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et  
māgnae habitus auctōritātis: ‘Nihil,’ inquit, ‘dē eōrum 1390  
sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēdi-  
tīōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō  
4 neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi<sup>3</sup>  
rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō  
omnium vestrum cōsensū prīstinae residēre<sup>4</sup> virtūtis 1395  
5 memoria vidētur. Animī est ista<sup>5</sup> mollitia,<sup>6</sup> nōn virtūs,  
paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī  
offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter  
6 ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum  
apud mē dīgnitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam<sup>7</sup> vītae 1400  
7 nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō  
omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium  
8 concitāvimus. Quid<sup>8</sup> hominum mīlibus octōgintā ūnō locō  
interfectīs, propinquīs cōsanguineisque nostrīs animī

<sup>1</sup> ‘outside’ (of the Roman works). <sup>2</sup> ‘abominable.’ <sup>3</sup> **mihi res est**:  
‘I am concerned.’ <sup>4</sup> ‘remain.’ <sup>5</sup> ‘that.’ <sup>6</sup> ‘weakness.’ <sup>7</sup> ‘except.’  
<sup>8</sup> w. **animi**: ‘what feelings.’

1405 fore existimātis, si paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō  
 decertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspo-  
 liāre<sup>1</sup> quī vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglēxē-  
 runt, nec stultitiā<sup>2</sup> ac temeritatē vestrā aut animī im-  
 becillitatē<sup>3</sup> omnem Galliam prōsternere<sup>4</sup> et perpetuae  
 1410 servitutī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vērunt, dē<sup>5</sup>  
 eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō?<sup>6</sup> Rō-  
 mānōs in illis ūteriōribus mūnitiōnibūs animine<sup>7</sup> causā  
 cotidiē exercērī putātis? Si illōrum<sup>8</sup> nūntiis cōfirmārī<sup>9</sup>  
 nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaepitō,<sup>10</sup> hīs ūtiminī tēstibus  
 1415 appropinquāre<sup>11</sup> eōrum adventum; cūius rei timōre exter-  
 ritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō mei<sup>12</sup>  
 cōsiliū est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nequāquam<sup>13</sup>  
 parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in  
 oppida compulsī ac similit inopiā subāctī,<sup>14</sup> eōrum cor-  
 1420 poridus quī aetate ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam  
 tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādiderunt. Cūius rei<sup>15</sup>  
 si exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā In-  
 stitui et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum<sup>16</sup> iudicārem. Nam  
 quid illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī<sup>17</sup>  
 1425 māgnāque illātā calamitatē finibus quidem nostris ali-  
 quandō excēssērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra,  
 lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nobis reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō<sup>18</sup>  
 quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā<sup>19</sup> adductī,  
 quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum  
 1430 in agrīs civitatibusque cōsidere atque hīs aeternam  
 iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā con-

<sup>1</sup> 'deprive.'    <sup>2</sup> 'folly.'    <sup>3</sup> 'feebleness.'    <sup>4</sup> 'destroy.'    <sup>5</sup> '(there-  
 fore) 'then.'    <sup>6</sup> **animi causa**: 'for their health.'    <sup>7</sup> i.e. the other  
 Gauls.    <sup>8</sup> 'cut off.'    <sup>9</sup> ind. dis.: 'is at hand.'    <sup>10</sup> 'by no means':  
 w. **pari**.    <sup>11</sup> 'constrain.'    <sup>12</sup> 'a glorious act'; agreeing w. **institui**  
 and **prodi**, and used as pred. appos.    <sup>13</sup> 'envy.'



THE FORTIFICATIONS BEFORE ALESIA.



16 diciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs  
nātiōnibus geruntur Ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Gal-  
liam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commū-  
tātis, secūribus <sup>1</sup> subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.' 1435

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine<sup>2</sup>  
aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia  
prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dē-  
2 scendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat  
atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis 1440  
3 subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō re-  
cēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur.  
4 Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accēssissent, flentēs  
omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs  
5 cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō cūstōdiis 1445  
recipi prohibēbat.

*Gallī bis repulsi ā septentriōnibus castra Caesaris adoriri  
cōstituunt.*

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa  
imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam  
perveniant et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille  
2 passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē 1450  
equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiam, quam  
in longitudinem mīlia passuum tria patēre dēmōstrā-  
vimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō  
3 abductās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex op-  
pidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxi- 1455  
liis vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad  
4 laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiīs ante oppi-  
dum cōsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt

<sup>1</sup> the lictor's 'axes,' as symbolizing subjection; dat.      <sup>2</sup> 'ill health.'

atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs  
1460 cāsūs comparant.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnī-  
tiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum  
teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium  
committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum :  
1465 undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs  
intentī pūgnae prōventum<sup>1</sup> expectābant. Gallī inter :  
equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae  
interiēcēbant, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et  
nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs com-  
1470 plūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum :  
suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōfiderent et nostrōs  
multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī  
mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium con-  
venerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant.  
1475 Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē :  
aut turpiter factum celārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis  
cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.  
Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā :  
pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōfertis turmīs in  
1480 hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in :  
fugam cōniectis sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt.  
Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs ūsque ad castra :  
insecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī :  
quī Alesiā prōcēsserant, maestī<sup>2</sup> prope victōriā dēspērātā  
1485 sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō<sup>3</sup> māgnō  
crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum<sup>4</sup> numerō effectō, mediā  
nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs

<sup>1</sup> 'outcome.'    <sup>2</sup> 'sad.'    <sup>3</sup> sc. *temporis*.    <sup>4</sup> 'hook for tearing down walls.'

2 accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne quī  
 in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere pos- 1490  
 sent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē  
 vāllō prōturbāre reliquaue quae ad oppūgnātiōnem per-  
 3 tinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre  
 exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex  
 4 oppidō ēducit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique 1495  
 erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs<sup>1</sup>  
 librilibus sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant ac glan-  
 5 dibus<sup>2</sup> Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs<sup>3</sup> adēemptō  
 multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormen-  
 6 tīs tēla cōniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius 1500  
 lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant,  
 quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex  
 ūlteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs mul-  
 titūdine telōrum prōficiēbant; postea quam propius suc- 1505  
 cēssērunt, aut sē stimulis inopināntēs induēbant aut in  
 scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turri-  
 2 bus trāiectī pilīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique  
 vulneribus acceptīs, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx  
 appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus 1510  
 castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt.  
 3 At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ērup-  
 tiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent;  
 4 diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs dis-  
 cēssisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquā- 1515  
 rent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant,

<sup>1</sup> fundis librilibus: 'stones weighing a pound each' (thrown from slings).    <sup>2</sup> 'leaden slugs.'    <sup>3</sup> 'darkness.'

cōsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum  
 castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā sep-  
 1520 tentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitudinem circuitūs  
 opere circumplectī<sup>1</sup> nōn potuerant nostrī; necessariōque  
 paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec  
 C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum  
 duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs  
 1525 regiōnibus ducēs hostium sexāgintā mīlia ex omnī nu-  
 merō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae māximam virtūtis  
 opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pāctō<sup>2</sup> agī placeat,  
 occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfiniunt  
 cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellau-  
 1530 num Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum  
 Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs primā vigiliā  
 ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem  
 sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere  
 iūssit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea  
 1535 castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque  
 tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et  
 reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

*Vercingetorix ex oppidō auxiliō Gallīs ēgreditur māgnā caede  
 fugantur Gallī. Alesiā expūgnātā Vercingetorix capitur.*

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex  
 oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs,<sup>3</sup> mūsculōs,<sup>4</sup> falcēs  
 1540 reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert.  
 Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temp-  
 tantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est hūc concurritur.  
 Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distinētur nec  
 facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs no-

<sup>1</sup> 'surround.'<sup>2</sup> 'manner.'<sup>3</sup> 'long pole.'<sup>4</sup> 'shed.'

strōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus existit, 1545  
 quod suum perīculum <sup>1</sup> in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre;  
 5 omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius homi-  
 num mentēs perturbant.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in parte  
 gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. 1550  
 2 Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus,  
 3 quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint  
 mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem  
 4 obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē  
 ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellau- 1555  
 num missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum <sup>2</sup> locī ad dēclī-  
 5 vitātem fāstīgium māgnū habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla  
 cōiciunt, aliī tēstūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem  
 6 integrī succēdunt. Agger <sup>3</sup> ab ūniversīs in mūnitiōnem  
 cōniectus et āscēsum dat Gallīs et eā quae in terrā oc- 1560  
 cultāverant Rōmānī contegit <sup>4</sup>; nec iam arma nostrīs nec  
 vīrēs suppetunt.

86. His rēbus cōgnitīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohorti-  
 2 bus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī susti-  
 nēre nōn possit dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id 1565  
 3 nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur  
 nē labōrī succumbant <sup>5</sup>; omnium superiōrum dīmiciātiō-  
 4 num <sup>6</sup> frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere.  
 Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgni-  
 tudinem mūnitiōnum loca praerupta [ex] āscēnsū temp- 1570  
 5 tant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitudine  
 tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, aggere et

<sup>1</sup> Eng. idiom, 'safety.'    <sup>2</sup> iniquum—momentum: 'the unfavorable downward slope gives great advantage' (to the enemy).    <sup>3</sup> i.e. earth, stones, etc.    <sup>4</sup> 'cover.'    <sup>5</sup> 'give way under.'    <sup>6</sup> 'struggle.'

crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōricam rescindunt.

1575 87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō<sup>2</sup> ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hostibus, eō quō<sup>3</sup> Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō<sup>4</sup> 1580 imō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae<sup>5</sup> vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs undecim cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fōrs ob- 1585 tulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs<sup>1</sup> cōgnitō, [quō insīgnī in proeliīs utī cōnsuērat,] turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iūsserat, ut dē locīs superi- 1590 ōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit<sup>2</sup> rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissīs pilīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repentē post<sup>3</sup> tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. 1595 Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit<sup>4</sup> māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dūx et prīnceps Lemovīcum occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna militāria septuāgintā quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē inco- 1600 lumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem<sup>5</sup> et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs

<sup>1</sup> 'dress,' i.e. his purple or scarlet military cloak.

6 Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiis āc tōtius  
 diēi labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiaē  
 7 dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus no- 1605  
 vissimum āgmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur  
 atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id  
 bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed com-  
 2 mūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit for- 1610  
 tūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu  
 morte suā Rōmānīs satis facere seu vīvum trādere velint.  
 3 Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma  
 4 trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castrīs  
 cōnsīdit<sup>1</sup>; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorīx dēditur; 1615  
 5 arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī  
 per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs  
 tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

*Aeduī et Arvernī in dēditiōnem accipiuntur. Caesar legiōnēs  
 in hīberna mittit. Rōmae supplicātiō redditur.*

90. Hīs rēbus cōfectis in Aeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitā-  
 2 tem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret 1620  
 sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum  
 3 obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum cir-  
 4 citer vīgintī mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labi-  
 ēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs  
 proficīscī iubet; huīc M. Sempronium Rutilum attribuit. 1625  
 5 C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōni-  
 bus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bel-  
 6 lovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum  
 in Ambivarētōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium

<sup>1</sup> 'take position.'

1630 Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q.  
Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Mati- 7  
scōne in Aeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā col-  
locat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. Hīs [rēbus ex  
Caesaris litterīs] cōgnitis Rōmae diērum vīginti suppli- 8  
1635 cātiō redditur.

NOTES

The references are to the section numbers in the Appendix.

BOOK I.

58 B.C.

TITLE.

Various headings for this work are found in the manuscripts; the whole is sometimes called *Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, "Commentaries on the Gallic War," with the additional heading *Liber Primus*, etc., for each book. *Commentarius Primus* amounts to the same thing. The subject of a Roman book was usually expressed by *de* with the ablative; in English the nominative case is usually employed. Thus, *Cicero de Senectute* becomes in English "Cicero's Old Age."

I. DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

CHAPTER I.

This outline of the geography of the country was necessary to enable Caesar's readers at Rome to understand the situation, because Gaul had been entirely unknown to them until Caesar went there.

1. *Gallia*: for the sense in which the word is used here as compared with l. 19, see vocabulary. *omnis*: predicate use, as a whole. *est* *divisa*: the force of each part of the compound tense form is retained, the perfect participle showing that the division was made in the past, and the *est* that it still exists. Translate by the present. *quarum*: §§ 47 and 136. The structure of the sentence is:

	Object.	Verb.	Subject.
quarum	unam (partem)	incolunt	Belgae
	aliam ( " )	( " )	Aquitani
	tertiam ( " )	( " )	(ei) qui—appellantur

2. *Belgae*: the Belgians were closely related to the Germans. *aliam*: another, a second, used instead of *alteram*, the second, because the

CIT

C

(1) No  
(2) No pe  
(3) No pe  
(4) The f  
book  
a bod  
prop

three parts are not enumerated in order; contrast l. 33. **Aquitani:** their descendants are the modern Basques in southwestern France, who are still very different from the people surrounding them, being short and thickset, dark-complexioned, and speaking an entirely different language. (ei) qui: § 129. ipsorum: § 132. lingua: § 82.

3. **Celtae:** sc. **appellantur;** for the case, see § 17. The Celts were to the Romans the typical Gauls; they were probably of mixed descent, but mainly of the division of the Aryan race known to us as Celtic, probably akin to the Irish. **nostra:** i.e. (sed) **nostrā** (linguā).

4. **inter se:** see vocabulary under **inter.** **Aquitanis:** § 65.

5. **flumen:** §§ 1 and 2. **dividit:** § 142. A portion of the boundary is omitted.

6. **horum:** §§ 47 and 52. **propterea quod:** see vocabulary and §§ 170 and 215, 1, b.

7. **cultu, humanitate:** *civilization, refinement;* the former refers to customs of life, the latter to the mental and moral condition of the people. **provinciae:** the sense shows this to be genitive singular; for the district thus named, see vocabulary and map.

8. **minime, etc.:** construe **saepe** with **commeant**, **minime** with both **commeant** and **important**; *least of all do traders (often resort) make frequent journeys back and forth to them and bring in, etc.* **mercatores:** nom. *Traders* and peddlers from Massilia (Marseilles) and northern Italy brought wine (their most attractive commodity) and other luxuries on pack mules or even on their own backs.

9. **ad effeminandos animos;** §§ 271 and 272. **animos:** *character.*

10. **proximique sunt:** i.e. **et Belgae fortissimi sunt propterea quod proximi sunt.** **Germanis:** § 33. **quibuscum:** § 90, note.

11. **qua de causa:** § 136. This refers to the reason just given for the bravery of the Belgians.

12. **quoque:** i.e. as well as the Belgians. **virtute:** § 82. **quod contendunt:** §§ 170 and 215, 1, b. This explains **qua de causa** more particularly.

13. **proeliis:** such border warfare as half-civilized people carry on. For the case, see § 72. **cum prohibent:** § 182. **suis:** § 125. This sentence shows that it is often necessary to translate pronouns by the nouns to which they refer; Latin has so many more pronouns than English that it can make clear distinctions with pronouns where we can not.

14. **finibus:** § 65. **eos:** §§ 121 and 129. **ipsi:** § 130. **finibus:** § 91. **eorum:** §§ 121 and 125.

15. *Eorum*: of all these, i.e. of the Gauls in general. *quam—est*:  
 § 257. *Gallos*: i.e. the Gauls in the narrower sense (= *Celtas*).  
 16. *initium capit*: see vocabulary under *capio*. *ab: at*; § 98.  
 17. *ab*: see vocabulary.  
 18. *vergit*: i.e. looking at the country from the Roman province.  
 All the directions are from the same standpoint, e.g. *extremis*, l. 19,  
*spectant*, l. 20, *spectat*, l. 23.  
 21. *in—solem*: i.e. northeast.  
 23. *ad: off* or *near*. *inter—septentriones*: i.e. in what direc-  
 tion?

## II. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS.

### CHAPTERS 2-29.

The Helvetians after three years of preparation were now on the move with all their possessions, bound for the western part of Gaul. Caesar hastened from Rome to Geneva and prepared to stop the Helvetian horde from entering the province. He had one legion and some hastily gathered recruits. He constructed fortifications between the Lake of Geneva and the Jura Mountain. By this means the march of the Helvetians was stopped, and they took the only other route available through the Jura by way of the Pas de l'Écluse, about 18 miles below Geneva.\*

Caesar now returned to Cisalpine Gaul for more troops.

With five legions he hastened to Ocelum, the frontier town of Cisalpine Gaul, and thence by way of Mount Genèvre across the Alps. In seven days he made his way into the country of the Vocontii, thence into that of the Allobroges, and thence into the land of the Sequanians, which lay between the rivers Rhone and Saône (Arar). The precise route is uncertain, and is not essential. The Helvetians had already passed through the country of the Sequanians, and were in the land of the Aeduans. They now attempted to cross the Arar not far from the site of the modern city of Lyons. A part of the Helvetian forces, the Tigurini, had not yet crossed, and they were cut to pieces by Caesar. He now built a bridge and crossed the Arar in order to follow up the Helvetians. The route of the latter is uncertain, but Caesar says they moved about five miles ahead of his vanguard for a fort-

\* The above and subsequent summaries are based mainly upon the conclusions of Mr. T. Rice Holmes, as stated in his lately published work, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, 1899.

night, and remarks that they had moved away from the Arar. From his various statements, it seems that the general direction of the march was northwest. When Caesar had reached a point 18 miles from Bibracte (Mont Beuvray), he turned towards that place. In this neighborhood was fought the battle which settled the case of the Helvetians for all time. Just where this battle occurred is not certainly known, but it was less than 18 miles from Bibracte, and probably to the south of that town.

After the battle the survivors of the Helvetians fled into the territory of the Lingones, northeast of Bibracte. Caesar remained three days on the battlefield, and then started in pursuit. He had previously notified the Lingones that they should give no assistance to the fugitives, who, reduced to the utmost extremity, finally surrendered at discretion.

*Movement of the Helvetians, stirred up by Orgetorix ; his secret plans and death.*

## CHAPTER 2.

Caesar's first operations in Gaul were directed towards preventing the Helvetians from leaving their territory and attempting a conquest of the other Gallic states. He gives the history of this movement, though its beginning was three years before he came to Gaul to prevent its execution.

Helvetia embraced in a general way the country now included within the limits of Switzerland, although it was somewhat smaller. The population, as stated by Caesar in Chapter 29, was 368,000.

26. *Orgetorix*: note the position, as the emphatic word of the sentence. is: § 122. *consulibus*: §§ 87 and 88; that is, the year 61 B.C. As the term of office of the consuls was one year, the Romans designated the year of any event by naming the consuls of that year. Educated Romans might be supposed to know the list of consuls as a matter of necessary general information, but undoubtedly this knowledge was often no more accurate than our knowledge of the presidents of the United States. *regni*: § 40.

27. *nobilitatis*: the political system of Helvetia was a confederacy of leaders, each of whom had a large body of retainers; thus it somewhat resembled the feudal system of later times; but the kings had nearly all been deposed, and these rough, strong, turbulent "nobles," or chiefs, held the power among themselves. *nobilitas, civitas, etc.*: such

words, originally abstract or collective in meaning, like English *nobility*, *state*, may often be better translated by concrete nouns like *nobles*, *citizens*. That the thought is plural in Latin is shown by *exirent*, following. *civitati*: § 23.

28. *ut exirent*: §§ 25 and 208. *de*: notice the use of *de* with *ex* in composition. *copiis*: *possessions*.

29. *esse*: §§ 227 and 236. *cum*: §§ 172, 228 and 239. *omnibus*: § 27.

30. *Galliae*: § 40. *imperio*: § 73. *potiri*: this is the subject accusative of *esse*, and *perfacile* agrees with it. *id*: §§ 12 and 25. *hoc*: § 84. *eis*: §§ 23 and 25.

31. *loci natura*: *by natural boundaries*. *continentur*: *are shut in*.

32. *parte*: see vocabulary. *flumine*: § 71. *Rheno*: §§ 1 and 2. *latissimo atque altissimo*: § 117. Caesar adds these adjectives after their noun, like a short parenthesis, for the benefit of his Roman readers, who knew little or nothing about the Rhine.

33. *parte*: see *parte*, l. 32.

34. *altissimo*: see note on l. 32. *tertia*: *sc. ex parte*.

36. *rebus*: § 84. *fiebat*: § 148. *ut vagarentur*: § 213. *et . . . et*: *both . . . and*.

37. *finitimis*: § 27.

38. *qua ex parte*: (from this side, i.e. of the matter), *for this reason*. *homines*: (*being*) *men*. *bellandi*: §§ 58 and 267. *cupidi*: agrees with *homines*. *afficiebantur*: § 148.

39. *pro*: *in proportion to*. *multitudo hominum*: (number of human beings), *population*. *gloria—fortitudinis*: (glory of war and bravery), *reputation for bravery in war*; §§ 280 and 40. *se habere*: (*that*) *they had*; §§ 228, 235 and 238. *angustos*: (*too*) *narrow*.

41. *milia*: § 14. *passuum*: § 47. The distance indicated by *mille passus* was about 4854 English feet; but it may be considered roughly as a mile and so translated. Helvetia then, according to these figures, was not far from the size of New York State, whose population in 1900 was over 7,000,000.

### CHAPTER 3.

43. *rebus*: the word *res* does not mean *thing* in the sense of *any thing*, but always refers to some definite thing or circumstance previously mentioned. Here it refers to all the *considerations* mentioned in Chapter 2 which tended to cause the Helvetians to leave their country.

44. *proficiscendum*: § 267. *pertinerent*: § 229.

45. *quam*: see vocabulary, and § 117. *carrorum*: § 48. These were two-wheeled, drawn mostly by oxen. See the rear wagons in the following illustration.

#### BAGGAGE WAGONS.

48. *ad eas res conficiendas*: §§ 271 and 272.

49. *sibi*: § 28 *duxerunt*: see vocabulary. *in*: see vocabulary. *in annum tertium* means directly after the end of the two years' preparation; we might say, *at the beginning of the third year*.

50. *lege*: i.e. by a popular vote, by which the Gauls and Helvetians made their laws. *confirmant*: *establish, determine*; § 147.

51. *sibi*: § 27.

52. *Castico*: § 23. *filio, Sequano*: § 1.

53. *cuius—appellatus erat*: in order to get at the meaning of a complicated Latin sentence, the most important words to be considered are the connectives. Observe these words carefully and thus determine the dependence of clauses upon one another. Here the clause, *cuius—appellatus erat*, is parenthetical; in working out the sentence, omit it until the rest has been thoroughly grasped. Then go back and translate this clause; then read the entire sentence. *regnum*: *chief power*, not that of a king (see note on l. 27), but the authority of the most powerful chief in the state; compare *principatum*, below. *annos*: § 14.

54. *amicus*: § 17; the Romans sometimes gave this distinction to barbarian chiefs whose aid they wished to gain.

55. *ut occuparet*: with *persuadet*; §§ 25, 152 and 208. *quod*: relative.

56. *itemque, etc.*: the structure of this sentence is exactly like that of the preceding.

57. tempore: § 89.

58. plebi: § 33.

59. perfacile esse: cf. l. 30. factu: § 276. filiam dat: this was a common method of securing friendly relations, like intermarriage among the royal families of Europe to-day.

60. perficere: for construction, see portiri, l. 30. civitatis: § 40.

61. obtenturus esset: §§ 153, 228 and 277. esse quin: § 214.

62. Galliae: §§ 47 and 52. plurimum: see vocabulary and § 12. se conciliaturum: § 237. Note the very common omission of esse. copiis: § 71.

63. illis: § 19. regna: plural, because the Latin thinks of a regnum for each man; English uses the singular.

65. regno occupato: (the royal power having been seized), *after seizing the power in their respective states*; this modifies posse.

66. Galliae: § 73, note. sese: subject acc. of posse; there is no fut. infin. of possum, and posse here refers to the future; *they hope (hoped) that they will (would) be able*, etc.

#### CHAPTER 4.

67. res: here, *conspiracy*. moribus: § 86.

69. damnatum, etc.: poenam is subject acc. of sequi, and poenam sequi taken together is the subject of the impers. verb oportebat; for translation, see § 257. damnatum agrees with eum (Orgetorigem) understood, which is the object of sequi. damnatum literally means *having been condemned*, but is best translated freely, *if condemned*; § 264, 3. ut igni cremaretur explains poenam; § 213.

70. die—causae: (the day of the pleading of the case having been appointed), *on the day appointed for trying the case*. die, § 36. causae, § 40. ad iudicium: *at the place of trial*.

71. familiam: his clansmen and retinue of followers. ad: *to the number of*.

72. clientes: 'supporters,' a general term for those who followed his lead. obaeratos: men who had got into debt to him, who, according to the Gallic customs, had bound themselves over to his service (Book VI., Chapter 13).

73. eodem: adverb; so most demonstrative pronouns have a corresponding adverb, e.g. eo, illo. per eos: *through (the help of) these*. ne diceret: § 209.

74. Cum conaretur: *while the state was trying*; § 182.

75. *armis*: with *exsequi*; § 71. *multitudinem*—*cogerent*: the same as when we have the militia called out to enforce the law and preserve order.

77. *ut*: see vocabulary.

78. *quin*: § 214. *ipse*: § 133.

*The Helvetians first attempt to march through the province, but afterward, being prevented from doing this by Caesar's fortifications, they start through the country of the Sequanians.*

## CHAPTER 5.

79. *nihilo*: see vocabulary and § 81. Although the scheme of Orgetorix had been shown to be one of personal ambition, its brilliancy had fascinated the Helvetians.

80. *ut*—*exeat*: explains *id quod (facere) constituerat*; (*namely*), *to go out*; § 208. *e*: compare with *de*, l. 28. *ubi arbitrati sunt*: § 176.

81. *se*—*esse*: § 228, etc.

82. *numero*: § 82. *ad*: *about*.

84. *quod*: sc. *id*, (that which), *what*; so often, when antecedent is omitted. *secum*: § 90, note. *portaturi erant*: § 277. *domum*: § 95; it modifies *reditionis*, a verbal noun. This construction is contrary to the usage of the best Latin style; we should expect *redeundi*. *reditionis*: § 40. *spe*: § 87. *paratiores*: see vocabulary. *ad*—*subeunda*: §§ 271 and 272.

86. *mensium*: §§ 44 and 45. *molita cibaria*: as this must have been the chief article of food, an immense amount had to be carried in order to feed 368,000 persons; no wonder they had decided to obtain *iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum* (l. 45). The length of the caravan has been variously estimated at from thirty to seventy miles. *sibi*: § 32.

87. *domo*: § 97. *Rauracis*: § 23.

88. *uti, . . . usi . . . oppidis suis . . . exustis, . . . proficiscantur*: (that they, having used . . . , their towns . . . having been burned, should set out), *to adopt . . . , burn their towns . . . , and set out . . .* *una*: adverb.

89. *Boios receptos—asciscunt*: (they associate to themselves the Boii, having been received to themselves as allies), *they allow the Boii to join their movement and make them their allies*; but the Latin order may be retained thus: *and the Boii, who, etc. . . . , they allow to join their movement and make their allies.*

## CHAPTER 6.

93. *erant*: *there were*. *duo itinera*: one on each side the Rhone.  
*quibus*: § 135. *itineribus*: when an antecedent is repeated after a relative adjective, omit it in translation. Here the repetition seems to be for the sake of emphasis only.

94. *possent*: § 168. *unum*: sc. *iter*.

95. *vix—ducerentur*: *where carts could barely be drawn one at a time*.

97. *ut possent*: §§ 165 and 167. *alterum*: sc. *iter*.

98. *multo*: § 81.

100. *non nullis*: *some*. *locis*: § 92. *vado transitur*: (is crossed by a ford), *is fordable*. The choice of routes here described was either to move down the right bank of the Rhone through the country of the Sequanians, who were friendly, or to pass through the province of the Allobroges and thence into the Roman territory. About nineteen miles below Geneva by the former route they must pass through the narrow defile described in the text; the passage of this by so large a force was well-nigh impossible. *pacati erant*: they had been annexed to the Roman province some time before, had rebelled and again been subdued ("pacified," the Romans called it) in 61 B.C.

101. *proximum*: (*the one*) *nearest*. Note the order; Geneva is the key to the situation, hence its place at the end of the sentence. See l. 26.

102. *finibus*: § 33.

103. *Helvetios*: compare this with *finibus Helvetiorum* above. So the name of any tribe may be used for its territory; the repetition of *fines* is thus avoided. *sese*, etc.: § 228, etc.

104. *animo*: § 80. *in*: *toward*. *viderentur*: § 229.

105. *ut—paterentur*: this is the object of both *persuasuros* and *coacturos*; § 208.

107. *qua die*: see *quibus itineribus*, l. 93 and § 163.

108. *convenient*: § 162. *is dies*: compare gender with l. 107, and see vocabulary. *a.d.* etc.: § 108.

109. *consulibus*: see l. 26. Year 58 B.C.

## CHAPTER 7.

110. *cum esset*: § 182. *eos—conari*: in apposition with *id*; *conari* is progressive, (in direct discourse *conantur*, *they are trying*), *that they were trying*.

111. *urbe*: *the city*, i.e. Rome. Though appointed governor of Gaul at the close of his consulship two or three months before, Caesar had not yet gone to his province; on the other hand, he was not in Rome but in its vicinity, under the law that forbade any one holding military authority to be inside the gates.

112. *quam—itineribus*: (by the greatest marches that he is able to make), *with all possible speed*; § 71. We learn from Plutarch that he travelled 90 miles a day.

113. *ad Genavam*: § 95. *provinciae*: § 27. *quam—nume-*  
*rum*: see l. 112.

115. *una legio*: this was the famous *tenth legion* of the Roman "standing army"; *una* here has the force of *only one*.

116. *de*: *of*. *certiores facti sunt*: § 17.

117. *legatos*: § 2, note. *nobilissimos*: § 111.

119. *qui dicerent*: § 162. *sibi esse in animo*: see § 30.

120. *facere*: subject of *esse*.

121. *haberent*: §§ 229, 239 and 170. *rogare*: coördinate with *esse*; *that they asked*. *ut liceat*: see vocabulary under *licet*. *voluntate*: § 86.

122. *memoria*: see vocabulary and § 92.

123. *occisum*: 107 B.C. Supply *esse* and so with *pulsum*, *missum* and *concedendum*.

124. *concedendum*: § 277; sc. *sibi* (§ 31); for translation, see § 215, 1, *a*.

125. *neque existimabat*: *neither did he think (that men, etc.)*. *animo*: § 80. *data facultate*: § 264, 3.

126. *faciundi*: old form for *faciendi*; § 267.

128. *dum convenirent*: § 180.

129. *diem*: see vocabulary. *quid*: § 139. *vellent*: § 242, 1.

130. *reverterentur*: § 245.

## CHAPTER 8.

131. *legione*: § 71.

134. *milia*: § 14. *milia—novem* is best translated after *murum fossamque*,—(*both*) *nineteen miles long*. This wall and ditch formed a rampart on the south side of the Rhone. A great part of the distance was occupied by steep cliffs, and it was necessary to construct the artificial defences only where the natural failed. The undertaking was not so formidable as might appear from a mere statement of height and distance.

135. *pedum*: § 45.

136. *disponit, communit*: the omission of the conjunction (*asyndeton*) indicates the haste of the action.

137. *quo—posset*: § 160. *si conarentur*: § 242, 5.

139. *negat*: see vocabulary. *more*: § 86.

141. *facere*: see vocabulary.

142. *spe*: figurative use of the abl. of separation; § 65. *deiecti*: see vocabulary. *navibus—factis*: (boats having been joined and many rafts having been made), (*some*) *by bridges of boats and numerous rafts that they had made*; ablative absolute.

143. *alii*: § 4.

145. *conati si—possent, repulsi, destiterunt*: (having tried . . ., if they were able, having been repulsed, desisted), *tried (to see) if they could, etc.; (but) being repulsed, they gave up.* *si possent*: § 243, note. *munitione*: see vocabulary.

146. *concursu*: (running together), *charges.* *telis*: *weapons (showered upon them).* *conatu*: § 65.

## CHAPTER 9.

147. *Relinquebatur*: (was left), *there remained.* *una*: *only.*

148. *angustias*: see ll. 94–97. *cum*: § 172.

150. *eo*: i.e. *Dumnorix*; § 88. *a Sequanis*: § 67.

151. *gratia*: § 84.

153. *Orgetorigis—duxerat*: see l. 59. *cupiditate regni adductus*: almost the same phrase used to describe *Orgetorix*, l. 26. They were evidently “kindred spirits.”

154. *novis*: see vocabulary. *rebus*: § 23. *quam*: see vocabulary and § 117.

155. *habere obstrictas*: a case of the so-called “maintenance of the result,”—(*to bind and*) *keep bound.*

156. *ut—patiantur*: obj. of *impetravit*.

157. *obsides*: object of *dent*. When an agreement was made by a tribe, certain members were often put into the hands of the other party to the agreement, as a pledge of good faith. This was the only form of security known among barbarous tribes; the idea was, that the friends of these hostages would use their influence to have the tribe keep the agreement. Now national honor takes the place of such security. *inter*: see vocabulary.

158. *Sequani*: sc. as predicate *obsides dent*, (give hostages), *promise*; so after *Helvetii*. *ne—prohibeant, ut transeant*: § 208.

## CHAPTER 10.

160. *Helvetiis—animo*: see l. 119. *per agrum, etc.*: trace this intended route on the map; it was not the most direct way, but probably the easiest on account of the topography of the country.

162. *non longe, etc.*: note on map the position of the Santones and Tolosates; the distance between them was about a hundred miles. This then does not appear to be sufficient excuse for Caesar's interference. But the Helvetian migration would undoubtedly have been the starting point for another general movement of the German tribes such as had occurred when Rome was sacked, 390 B.C., and such as had been narrowly averted by Marius fifty years before, when he crushed the Cimbri and Teutones. On this ground Caesar was justified in interfering. *quae civitas*: § 135.

163. *si fieret, futurum (esse)*: § 242, 5.

164. *magno—provinciae*: (with great danger of the province), *very dangerous to the province*; §§ 76 and 40. *ut haberet*: this clause is the subject of *futurum (esse)*; the subject of *haberet* is *provincia*. Translate, *that it should have, or, to have*.

165. *locis—frumentariis*: § 92; translate exactly in the Latin order (except *-que*, of course).

166. *finitimos*: (*as*) *neighbors*; § 2, note. *munitioni, Labienum*: § 27; see also vocabulary, *Labienus*.

## LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

168. *Italiam*: Caesar speaks of Italy here as including Cisalpine Gaul (i.e. Gaul south of the Alps). As a matter of fact, however, all Italy north of the Rubicon was embraced in Caesar's province of Gaul. *magnis itineribus*: *forced marches*, usually 25 or 30 miles, but perhaps longer here, because he probably took only a small force with him as a body guard, and went through a friendly country. *duas legiones*: the eleventh and twelfth.

169. *tres*: the seventh, eighth and ninth. *hiemabant*: § 148.

171. *quinque legionibus*: as one legion was already near Geneva, Caesar's army now consisted of six legions, or about 22,000 men, together with the troops, probably cavalry, ordered from the province, as told in Chapter 6. The number of the latter is uncertain.

172. *locis*, etc.: these Alpine tribes, hearing of Caesar's approach, seized elevated positions along the road and tried to prevent him from passing; either because they thought he intended to annex their territory to the province, or because they sympathized with the Helvetians and thought they could help them by delaying Caesar or perhaps forcing him to turn back.

173. *itinere*: see vocabulary under *prohibeo*.

174. *his pulsus*: § 87. *compluribus proeliis*: § 72. This "interlocked" order seems very peculiar to us here, where the terminations which usually make Latin agreements clear are of no assistance and the sense alone shows the agreement.

175. *extremum*: sc. *oppidum*; *extremum* means *last*, in the sense of *most western*, the farthest from Rome. After leaving this town, Caesar passed over the Alps by the pass of Mount Genève, through the territory of two tribes of the western province, and moved on in pursuit of the Helvetians, who had gone something less than a hundred miles on their way. *ulterioris provinciae*: § 46; (*a tribe*) of the further province.

176. *die septimo*: i.e. *in six days*; § 104. When the Romans measured intervals of time, they included the day on which they started. The French do the same; they would call Wednesday the third day after Monday. In English the usage varies.

177. *Allobrogibus*: contrast with *fines Allobrogum* above, and see note on l. 103.

### *Complaints of the Gauls about the depredations of the Helvetians.*

#### CHAPTER 11.

179. *angustias*: see l. 95 and l. 148.

181. *Aedui*: the Aeduans, it appears, had previously been recognized as allies of Rome, having been styled by the senate "brothers and kinsmen"; see ll. 670-675, 864-869. *populabantur*: contrast with the previous tense used and see § 148.

183. *rogatum*: §§ 274 and 275. *ita se*, etc.: (*saying that*) they had so well, etc., §§ 227 and 228, etc. *omni tempore*. (every time), on every occasion. *de*: of.

185. *vastari, abduci*: complementary infinitives with *non debuerint*. In cases where words are expressed with one phrase and understood with others, English usually expresses them with the first, Latin with the last.

188. *depopulatis*: § 362. *non facile*: (not easily), i.e. *with difficulty*. This is *litotes*, the use of a negative for a strong affirmative, or an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. *ab—prohibere*: (they were keeping the force of the enemy from their towns), *they were defending their towns from the attacks of the enemy*. Note that in l. 158 *prohibere* has no *ab*; §§ 65 and 66.

191. *sibi*: § 30. *agri*: § 47.

192. *reliqui*: § 49. *expectandum sibi (esse)*: §§ 31 and 278.

194. *pervenirent*: *should arrive*, or, less carefully in ordinary English, *arrived*; § 180. Caesar now finds a more immediate reason for attacking the Helvetians than the one mentioned in Chapter 10.

### *The slaughter of the Tigurini.*

#### CHAPTER 12.

195. *flumen est Arar*: *there is a river (called) the Arar* (now the Saône).

196. *incredibili lenitate ita ut*: (of incredible smoothness, so that), *so very slowly that*; §§ 80 and 165.

197. *fluat*: § 243. *id*: emphatic, *this*; keep the same order in translating.

198. *ratibus, lintribus*: abl. of means, not abl. absolute; *iunctis* is used merely as an adjective modifying *lintribus*, (boats joined), *bridges of boats*. These were all rude affairs, which they either found there, intended for light weights, or built hastily on the spot.

199. *tres partes*: *three fourths*, the regular way of expressing such a fraction.

200. *flumen*: § 11.

201. *reliquam, de*: see vocabulary. *vigilia*: the night was divided into four equal *watches*. Hence the length of a watch would vary with the season, but the third would always begin at midnight. Since the time was now midsummer, the first watch would end at about 2 A.M.

205. *in*: see vocabulary under *abdo*; also § 94.

208. *domo*: § 96. *memoria*: § 89.

211. *quae pars, ea*: (which part, this), *that part which, this*; *pars*, the antecedent, is attracted into the subordinate clause, and the relative is used adjectively; § 135.

212. *princeps*: *was the first to*, etc.; § 115.

213. *re*: *affair*. *privatas*: notice how very *personal* it turns out to be!

214. *quod*, etc.: order, *quod Tigurini eodem proelio quo (interfecerant) Cassium, interfecerant L. Pisonem legatum, avum eius (i.e. Caesaris) soceri*. Piso's daughter Calpurnia was Caesar's fourth wife.

*The Helvetians treat with Caesar through ambassadors.*

### CHAPTER 13.

218. *faciendum*: see §§ 269 and 270.

220. *cum*, etc.: the construction is: *cum intellegerent, illum . . . fecisse id, that he had done . . . that*, which is explained by *quod—confecerant*, and *ut flumen transirent, (namely), cross the river*.

223. *bello Cassiano*: see l. 122. This was 107 B.C., so Divico must have been a man of great age. From the standpoint of the Helvetians he was just the man to head the embassy.

224. *egit*: see vocabulary.

Here begins the first long speech in the indirect discourse. The direct discourse is given below. See first that you understand about direct and indirect discourse in English, as explained in §§ 217–226. Study the words that are changed and get the reasons for each change from §§ 227–246; these sections should all be read over, and then the special references looked up.

*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet (§§ 228 and 242, 5), in eam partem ibunt (§§ 228 and 237) atque ibi erunt (like ibunt) Helvetii (§§ 222 and 237), ubi eos tu (§§ 222, 232 and 233) constitueris (fut. perf. indic., see §§ 239, 200, 203 and 153) atque esse volueris (like constitueris): sin bello persequi perseverabis (like faciet), reminiscere (§§ 228 and 245) et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus es (§§ 228, 239 and 215, 3), cum ei qui flumen transierant (§§ 239 and 153), possent (§ 182), noli (§ 347, note) ob eam rem aut tuae (§ 222) magnopere virtuti tribuere (§ 347, note) aut nos (§ 222) despiciere (like tribuere): nos (§ 322) ita a patribus maioribusque nostris (like nos) didicimus (§237), ut magis virtute contendamus (§§ 239 and 208) quam dolo aut insidiis nitamur (like contendamus). Qua re noli committere (like noli tribuere) ut hic locus ubi constitimus (like constitueris, except for tense) ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat (like contendamus) aut memoriam prodat (like capiat).*

224. si faceret, ituros, futuros (esse): § 242, 5.

225. partem: sc. Galliae. futuros: (be), remain.

226. ubi—voluisset: explains eam partem (Galliae) and ibi. ubi, being relative, is correlative to a form of is as well as to ibi. constituisset: (should have decided), *should decide*; so voluisset. English rarely uses the future perfect or its representatives.

227. perseveraret: § 242, 5. reminisceretur: §§ 226 and 245.

228. incommodi, virtutis: § 59. This refers to the defeat of Cassius; see l. 123.

229. quod: § 215, 3.

231. ne tribueret: § 245.

232. patribus: § 67.

233. magis: see vocabulary and translate after contenderent. virtute: § 71. contenderent, niterentur: § 156. dolo: § 72.

234. ne committeret: like ne tribueret, l. 231.

236. memoriam proderet: i.e. to future generations.

#### CHAPTER 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given without references. The student may now find for himself the reasons for the changes.

Hoc mihi minus dubitationis datur quod eas res quas vos, legati Helvetii, commemorastis, memoria teneo atque hoc gravius fero quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est quod neque commissum a se intellegebat quare timeret neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod me invito iter per provinciam per vim temptastis, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriam deponere possum? Quod vestra victoria tam insolenter gloriamini, quodque tam diu vos impune tulisse iniurias admiramini eodem pertinet. Consueverunt enim di immortales quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci volunt, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea, quae pollicemini, facturos intellegam et si Aeduis de iniuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfacietis, ego vobiscum pacem faciam.

237. eo: on this account, for this reason; § 84. minus: § 111. dubitationis: § 49.

239. **eo—minus**: sc. **se** as subject: (he bore them the more heavily by this, by which the less), *he was the more displeased, the less, etc.* **merito populi Romani**: (by the merit of the Roman people), *deservedly to the Roman people*. The mention by the Helvetian ambassadors of the defeat of Cassius made him grow more and more angry, the more he thought how little the Romans had deserved such a defeat. He could not allow himself to hesitate in the present matter, because this old disaster demanded revenge, and he considered that he was the man and here was the opportunity to inflict it.

240. **qui si**, etc.: he goes on to explain how this defeat had happened, how treacherously they had attacked Cassius. **qui, sibi, conscius, fuisset, deceptum, se, intellegeret, timeret, putaret**, all refer to **populus Romanus**, and so, though singular in Latin, they are all translated plural: e.g. **qui si**, *if they*. **sibi**: (to themselves); omit.

241. **fuisse**: *it would have been*. This would be **fuit** in direct discourse; § 192, note. **eo quod**: ll. 237, 238.

242. **commissum (esse)**: impersonal; (*that*) (*anything*) *had been done*. **qua re timeret**: (on account of which thing they should fear), *to make them afraid (of being attacked)*; § 163.

243. **timendum (sibi esse)**: (that it ought to be feared by them), *that they ought to fear*. Caesar says that the army of Cassius was taken off its guard because they thought the Helvetians had no reason for attacking them, and they didn't think it necessary to keep guard and be ready for battle unless they expected an attack. "A poor excuse is better than none." **quod**: see vocabulary. **vellet**: the subject here changes to Caesar. **num**: see vocabulary. **posse**: § 246.

244. **contumeliae**: § 59.

245. **iniuriarum**: objective genitive with **memoriam**. **quod**: § 215, 2, a. **eo**: **se** would have been more natural, as referring to Caesar, but **eo** leaves no ambiguity.

246. **Allobrogas**: for ending, see vocabulary.

247. **quod—gloriarentur, quod—admirarentur**: the use of **quod** is the same as in l. 245; the two clauses are subjects accusative of **pertinere**. These were just two more facts pointing to the vengeance that was coming.

250. **Consuesse**, etc.: Caesar implies that he is the instrument of the gods sent to punish the Helvetians for their sins. He says that punishment comes harder on men if it is delayed, because they have concluded

that it is not coming at all. From what we know of Caesar's character, it is hard to believe that this reference to a divine government of the fortunes of men was sincere. quo—doleant: § 160; do not translate this clause until after the rest. ex: as a result of.

251. quos, etc.: translate his immediately after concedere, then quos—velint, then the accusatives, finally quo—doleant.

253. cum sint: §§ 197 and 199. si dentur: § 242, 5. Divico had at first (l. 223–225) spoken of coming to terms, but had gone on from that to making threats as to what would happen if Caesar did not meet him halfway. Caesar first replies to his threats, and then offers terms which the Helvetians could not help thinking insulting, though he really could not afford to offer anything less. It was an encounter between a free, unconquered people and a man who would not yield an inch, both looking for the sovereignty of Gaul. The Gauls would despise whichever gave way: one or the other must be destroyed.

254. facturos (esse): sc. eos (Helvetios) as subject accusative.

255. Aeduis: sc. satis faciant; § 23.

257. a maioribus: compare the similar phrase in ll. 232, 233.

259. consuerint: = consueverint.

*Caesar's cavalry routed by the Helvetians. March of each army.*

## CHAPTER 15.

261. loco: this was just across the Saône. See Chapter 12.

264. coactum habebat: § 266. qui videant: § 162; plural, because the antecedent, equitatum, is collective. partes: see vocabulary.

265. faciant: § 243. qui: § 136. cupidius: too eagerly; § 116.

266. loco: § 92.

267. de nostris: § 53.

268. equitibus: note the use of persons as means; see § 71 and compare militibus, l. 231.

269. non numquam et: (and) sometimes even, modifying lacescere.

270. agmine: § 92. proelio: § 72.

271. satis: see vocabulary.

272. rapinis: § 65.

273. dies: § 14. prohibere: subject accusative of (esse), satis being a predicate adjective.

274. ita uti interesset: §§ 165 and 166.

275. amplius: § 111. milibus: § 69.

*Caesar's conference with the Aeduan leaders Liscus and Diviciacus as to the condition of their state and the treachery of Dumnorix.*

## CHAPTER 16.

277. Caesar flagitare: § 258. Aeduos frumentum: § 15. quod: relative.

278. essent: § 229.

280. frumenta: see vocabulary, and contrast with frumentum and pabulum. matura: it was now probably well along in June.

283. frumento: § 73. flumine: § 72. navibus: § 71.

284. a quibus = et ab eis: § 201. diem ex die: see vocabulary ducere: § 258, and see vocabulary.

285. dicere: historical infin., like ducere above; the other infinitives are ind. dis., with subj. acc. frumentum and conjunction omitted, as we might say hastily, "Said 't was being collected, brought to one spot, was right near." This historical infinitive generally occurs in groups, and flagitare, l. 277, is only an apparent exception, because what intervenes is parenthetical. diutius: too long; § 116.

287. metiri: a legionary soldier had four bushels of corn a month, a cavalryman twelve bushels of corn and forty-two bushels of barley. oporteret: § 228. convocatis principibus, accusat: (the chiefs having been called together, he blames them), *he calls together the chiefs and blames them.* After this long, loose sentence has been mastered as a whole, it should be broken into three parts. Translate convocatis by a main verb, as suggested above. Then make another sentence of in his—potestatem: *among these (were)*, etc. Then the remainder—*these chiefs he blames*, etc.

288. copiam: number. in: among. Diviciaco, Lisco: § 4.

289. magistratui praeerat: *held the office*; § 27.

290. annuus: § 114.

291. in suos: *over his (countrymen).*

292. possit: sc. frumentum as subject.

293. tempore, hostibus: § 88; (the time so critical, the enemy so near), *at so critical a time, with the enemy so near.*

294. ex: in. cum suscepit: § 172. quod sit destitutus: *that, as he said, he was deserted (by them)*; §§ 170 and 215, 2, a.

## CHAPTER 17.

297. quod: see l. 84.

298. esse: the indirect discourse is in apposition with (id) quod tacuerat; *that there were some*, etc.

299. *plurimum valeat*: see vocabulary under *valeo*, and § 13. *plus possint*: *were more powerful*; § 13. 'This state of affairs exists as much to-day as it did then. Almost any community can show a politician or a man of great wealth who by his influence can nullify a law.

301. *ne conferant*: § 209.

302. *praestare*: for impersonal *praestat* (see vocabulary) in direct discourse ; (*saying that*) *it was better*. *si possint*; § 242, 1.

304. *debere*: sc. *multitudinem* as subject; *and that they ought not*. *quin sint*: §§ 214 and 277. *si superaverint*: § 242, 5.

305. *una*: adverb. *Aeduis*: § 29.

306. *sint erepturi*: § 277. *quaeque*: = *et quae*; see l. 84.

308. *quin etiam*: see vocabulary. *quod*: § 215, 3. *coactus*: see vocabulary.

309. *id fecerit*: i.e. had made the statement ; the antecedent of *id* is the thought of clause *quod—enuntiavit*; for the mood of *fecerit*, see § 243.

310. *potuerit*: § 228.

## CHAPTER 18.

314. *ex solo quaerit*: sc. *eo*, *he asks from him alone about* ; § 8.

316. *vera*: agrees with *ea* understood, from *eadem*, whose antecedent is *ea*, l. 314. *ipsum*: *the very one*.

317. *summa audacia*: (*a man*) *of the greatest boldness*; § 80; so *magna gratia*.

318. *rerum novarum*: see vocabulary under *novus*, and § 58.

319. *pretio*: § 75.

320. *redempta habere*: § 266. It was a common practice in those days for a government to get its revenue by selling the right to collect taxes to the highest bidder. Then, armed with the authority of the state, this man collected all the money he could and pocketed the difference between what he got and what he had bid. This process is known as *farmling the revenues*. Tax collectors are never very popular, and since under this system they usually resorted to every means of extorting money, they were always the most hated and dreaded class of people. Such were the publicans mentioned in the Bible. *illo licente*: (*he bidding*), *when he bid*. *contra*: *against (him)*. It was not safe to oppose Dumnorix.

321. *his rebus*: *by these means*. *auxisse*: *augeo* is transitive ; so *familiam* is object, and *se*, understood, the subject.

323. *suo sumptu*: § 72.

324. domi: § 93. apud civitates: § 101.

325. huius potentiae: *of (increasing) this power.* causa: see vocabulary and § 84.

326. in: *among*; order, homini in Biturigibus nobilissimo ac potentissimo illic.

328. nuptum: § 275; together with collocasse, here it has the same force as collocasse alone, l. 327.

329. Helvetiis: § 23.

332. gratiae: § 36.

333. si quid accidat: §§ 139 and 242, 5; we use exactly the same indefinite expression; it means here, *if any disaster should occur.* spem: see vocabulary.

334. imperio: *under the government*; § 89.

336. quod proelium: (in regard to what battle), *in regard to the (adversum equestre) battle which.* ante: adverb. diebus: §§ 81. 107.

339. equitatui: § 27. auxilio Caesari: § 32.

## CHAPTER 19.

343. accederent: see vocabulary and § 172. quod traduxisset: § 215, 2, b.

344. dandos: § 270.

345. et: connecting a possessive pronoun and a genitive (i.e. possessive) case. So this is only an apparent, not a real, exception to the rule that coördinate conjunctions connect like constructions.

346. ipsis: refers to suo et civitatis, Caesar and the Aeduans.

347. qua re—iuberet: § 243.

349. rebus: § 23. quod—cognoverat: § 115, 2, b.

350. Diviciaci—studium: §§ 39, 41. fratris: § 1. ne offenderet: § 211.

352. eius supplicio: (by the punishment of him), *by punishing Dumnorix*; § 40.

353. animum: *feelings.* itaque, etc.: this incident shows Caesar's statecraft. As a deliberate policy, he never offended any one unnecessarily, though never hesitating to do so when there was no other way. Here the situation was critical. If the Aeduans were alienated, he would be forced out of the country for lack of a base of supplies. So he made his interests coincide with those of the better class of Aeduans, and held them loyal to him for six years.

354. conaretur: § 181.

357. cui: *in whom*; §§ 23, 24.      omnium rerum: *in all matters*.

358. ipso: i.e. Diviciacus.      quae dicta sint: § 243.

360. apud se: *before him* (Caesar).

361. ut ipse statuatur: (that he himself may take measures), *that he* (Caesar) *be allowed to take measures*; § 208.      sine—animi: (without hurting his feelings), *but in such manner as not to hurt his feelings*; § 40.

362. causa cognita: (the case having been ascertained), *after investigating the case*.

## CHAPTER 20.

363. multis cum lacrimis: modifies obsecrare.      complexus: § 261.

364. in: *against*.      ne—statueret: see vocabulary and § 139.

365. illa: *those (charges)*, referring to the matters mentioned in ll. 358–360.      scire se: § 227; (*saying that*) *he knew (that)*, etc.      eo: *that fact*.      plus doloris capere: (took more of grief), *was more grieved*; §§ 47, 49 and 111. Note carefully the use of pronouns in this passage, and in translation use names of persons referred to whenever the meaning of the translation would be obscure without them.

366. cum ipse plurimum (posset et) ille minimum posset, per se crevisset: *when he* (Diviciacus) *was very powerful and Dumnorix had very little power, the latter had increased (his power) at his expense*.

368. opibus: *power*.

370. fraterno: = fratris, objective genitive.      suam: this refers to Diviciacus, and is understood with gratiam.      uteretur: coördinate with crevisset; this might have been considered a main clause, and the infinitive used.

371. si accidisset: see § 242, 5 or 6.      a: *at the hands of*. existimatione vulgi: (the thought of the common people), *public opinion*.

373. apud: *with*.      neminem existimaturum (esse) non factum (esse): *no one would think that it had not happened, i.e. every one would think that it had happened*.

374. futurum (esse): *it would (be) happen*.

377. faciat: § 212.      tanti: § 62.

378. rei publicae: § 40.

379. condonet: §§ 165 and 166. The dative accompanying this verb is the indirect object, due to the original meaning *present*; when not a person, use *at* in translating; otherwise, as below, *for the sake of*.

380. quae: interrogative, and so below.

381. quae queratur; § 8.

*Caesar's plan is foiled by the mistake of Publius Considius.*

## CHAPTER 21.

386. *hostes consedissee*: indirect discourse after *certior factus*.

387. *milia*: § 99.

388. *qui*: antecedent omitted because indefinite,—(*men*) *who*; the indefiniteness is kept by translating by the infinitive, *he sent to ascertain*; §§ 162 and 164. *facilem*: agrees with (*ascensum*), subject of *esse*.

390. *legatum pro praetore*: a lieutenant acting temporarily as commander. This was a special designation for Labienus, as second in command.

391. *iis ducibus qui*: (*as*) *guides, those who*.

393. *consili*: § 46.

394. *quo*: *by which*; §§ 71 and 72.

395. *rei*: § 58.

## CHAPTER 22.

398. *luce*: § 104. *summus*: § 113.

399. *ipse*: (*and when*) *he himself*.

400. *passibus*: § 103. *neque . . . aut . . . aut*: *and neither . . . nor*.

404. *Gallicis*: i.e. Helvetian. Caesar concluded from this information that Labienus had been repulsed in his attempt to seize the hill, that perhaps his force had been overwhelmed, and that he himself with diminished forces might be attacked at once.

406. *erat ei praeceptum*: (it had been commanded him), *he had been commanded*; § 27. The subject is *ne—committeret*, a substantive clause of purpose (§ 208), while it is modified by *ut—fieret*, an adverbial clause of purpose (§157).

407. *nisi visae essent*: § 242, 5.

409. *expectabat, abstinebat*: translate accurately; § 148.

410. *multo die*: see vocabulary and § 113. *et . . . et . . . et*: omit the first in translation; the English *both* implies only two statements. Notice the effect of leisurely progress here as compared with the hurried report of Considius above.

412. *quod*: see l. 84. *vidisset*: § 168. *pro viso*: (for seen), *as a fact*.

413. *quo—intervallo*: (at the interval at which he had become accustomed), *at the usual interval*. Caesar now resumes the pursuit, looking for another opportunity to attack the Helvetians.

*The slaughter of the Helvetians, their flight and return to their own country.*

CHAPTER 23.

416. diei: § 56. omnino: (in all), *only*.

417. cum: *before*. oporteret: § 182

419. milibus: § 103. rei: § 23.

420. prospiciendum (sibi esse): (that it ought to be looked out for by him), *that he ought to look out for*; §§ 31 and 278. His conference with Liscus and Diviciacus had not yet had the effect of securing grain.

421. Bibracte: § 94.

422. Aemilii: i.e. who belonged to the troop of Aemilius; hence the genitive (§ 37).

423. seu quod existimarent—sive eo: *either because they thought* (§171) —*or on this account*, explained by quod—confident. timore perterritos: (having been terrified by fear), *because they* (the Romans) *were afraid of them*.

424. eo magis—commisissent: this is a parenthesis, explaining that the Helvetii thought that the Romans were afraid of them (timore perterritos), not only on general principles, but especially on account of their curious movements the day before; translate, *and still more for this reason, because, etc.*; § 170. superioribus locis occupatis: ablative absolute, *although they had seized, etc.*; § 264, 4.

427. commutato, converso: translate as finite verbs,—*changed their plan, reversed their direction, and, etc.* The Helvetians would have done better to go about their business; they could then have got a long distance ahead; but they could not resist the opportunity of turning on the man who had caused them so much trouble and the loss of one-fourth of their number.

CHAPTER 24.

429. id animum advertit: § 11.

430. qui sustineret: §§ 162 and 163.

431. medio: see vocabulary and § 113.

432. triplicem aciem: see introduction. legionum: § 36.

433. [ita uti supra]: these words do not make sense and probably got into the manuscript by mistake; omit in translating.

435. ac: *and (in this way)*.

436. eum: sc. locum.

439. acie: § 78. reiecto . . . facta: *having driven back . . . (and)*

*having formed* ; the cavalry were generally used in such cases to check the advance of the enemy until the legions were ready for battle.

440. *sub*: see vocabulary.

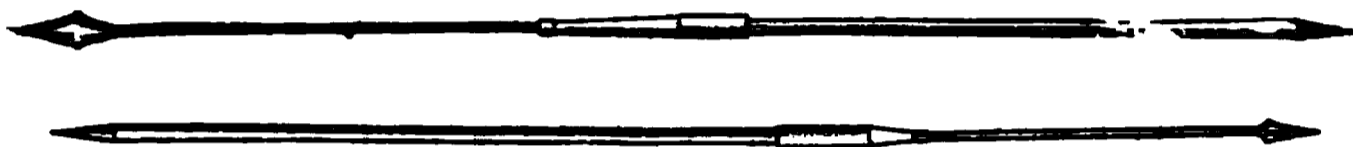
### CHAPTER 25.

442. *suo*: sc. *equo remoto*.      *omnium*: i.e. of all his staff officers.

443. *aequato periculo*: (the danger having been made equal), *by making the danger equal*.

444. *cohortatus*: a Roman army always expected a few words of encouragement before going into battle.      *e loco*: limits *missis*.

445. *pilis missis*: § 264. The position of advantage in the ancient style of fighting was of course the higher ground.



PILA.

447. *ad pugnam*: *in fighting*.      *impedimento*: § 32.

448. *quod*: § 215, 2, *a*.      *scutis transfixis et colligatis*: ablative absolute ; translate as coördinate with *poterant*,—*their shields would be pierced and pinned together, and, cum ferrum*, etc.

449. *se inflexisset*: (had bent itself), *bent*. The tip of the Roman spear was of hardened iron, but the shank was of soft iron, and the weight of the long wooden shaft caused the shank to bend.

451. *ut*: translate before *multi*.      *iactato*: as the shields overlapped one another and the Roman javelins had pierced several, there was no freedom of motion for the soldiers holding the shields, but they were pulled about by every movement of the phalanx.

454. *spatio*: § 81.      *eo*: adverb.      *capto, succedentibus*: notice the change of tense and voice;—*when they had gained the mountain and our men were coming up*.

456. *milibus*: § 71.

457. *praesidio*: § 32; see *impedimento*, l. 447, and vocabulary.      *latere aperto*: this means the right flank, because the shield was carried on the left arm. Hence the right was the post of honor in battle.

458. *circumvenire*: sc. *coeperunt* from l. 460; in military language, they tried to turn the right flank of the Romans.

460. *conversa*, etc.: see vocabulary. The first and second lines kept



GLADIUS.

the same front, while the third wheeled and faced the oncoming Boii and Tulingi.

461. *victis ac submotis*: see §§ 23 and 111; (*those who had once been*) *conquered and driven back*, i.e. the Helvetians.

462. *venientes*: (*those who were*) *coming*, i.e. the Boii and Tulingi.

## CHAPTER 26.

463. *pugnatum est*: § 144, 2.

465. *alteri . . . alteri*: i.e. the Helvetians—the Boii and Tulingi; see vocabulary.

467. *proelio*: § 92. *cum pugnatum sit*: §§ 199 and 144, 2.

469. *pro vallo*: *as a barricade*.

470. *in*: *upon*. *venientes*: (*coming*), *as they came up*.

471. *coniciebant*: notice the change of tense, and see § 148. Perhaps the most common error in translating arises from a lack of care in observing these things. The Latin is very exact in its use of tenses,—much more so than English.

473. *impedimentis castrisque*: § 73.

474. *e filiis*: § 53. *captus est*: not the usual form of agreement; § 110.

476. *nocte*: it is impossible to draw a distinct line between the three expressions of time, see §§ 104, 105 and 106; this seems like duration of time, but the Latin might regard it as answering the question, *When?* This is regularly the case when *totus* is employed.

477. *partem*: § 106; contrast with *nocte* above.

479. *occisorum*: (*of the having-been-slain*), *of the dead*. *triduum morati*: this statement, together with the reasons assigned for the delay, shows that the Romans were pretty severely handled in the battle.

481. *alia*: see vocabulary. *ne iuvarent*: § 208; *not to help*. *qui si iuvisent*: §§ 227 and 242, 5; (*saying that*) *if they did help them*.

482. *loco quo Helvetios (haberet) habiturum*: (*he would hold them in the place in which he held the Helvetians*), *he would treat them like the Helvetians*.

## CHAPTER 27.

485. *rerum*: § 40.

486. *qui cum*: *when they*.

488. *iussisset*: supply Caesar as subject.

489. *essent*: § 203.

491. perfugissent: § 168.

492. conquiruntur: § 178.

494. perterriti: agrees with milia in number and case, but takes its gender from hominum, which is here the real but not the grammatical gender of milia. ne—afficerentur: in apposition with timore, which takes the construction of a verb of fearing; § 211.

496. occultari: i.e. from Caesar.

497. prima: § 113. existimarent: § 171.

## CHAPTER 28.

499. quod: *this*. quorum: antecedent *his*.

500. his: § 27. uti—reducerent: §§ 25 and 208. sibi: (with reference to him), *in his sight*; § 28.

501. reductos habuit: (he held them, having been brought back), *when they were brought back, he considered them*. in numero hostium: see vocabulary under numerus; this is a grim way of implying that they were all put to death; they had broken the terms of surrender, and Caesar wished to make an example immediately of men who did not keep their word with him.

504. suos: by emphasis here referring to Helvetios, etc., instead of to Caesar; § 123.

505. quo tolerarent: § 168.

506. Allobrogibus: § 23. ut facerent: §§ 25 and 208; *to furnish*.

509. ne: § 159.

512. provinciae: § 33. Boios: object of collocarent. petentibus Aeduis: (the Aeduans seeking), *at the request of the Aeduans*.

513. virtute: § 84.

516. atque—erant: = atque erat condicio in qua ipsi erant, *as was the condition in which*, etc. Adjectives of similarity are followed often by atque for quam.

## CHAPTER 29.

517. litteris Graecis: not in the Greek *language*, but merely using the Greek characters and numeral signs; perhaps they had become acquainted with them through traders from Marseilles, originally a Greek colony. The Greek system of numerals was easier to handle than the Roman.

518. relatae: sc. sunt.

519. qui: interrogative adjective, *what*.

520. exisset: § 243. possent: § 168.

522. *capitum*: omit; we use the expression, "so many head," of cattle, but we do not apply it to human beings.

The figures in this last chapter tell the story of the campaign so plainly that no comment is required.

### III. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.

#### CHAPTERS 30-54.

The assembled Gallic chieftains congratulated Caesar on his victory, and besought him to assist them against the inroads of Ariovistus, a German prince who had settled with his followers on this side of the Rhine. Caesar assented, and after fruitless negotiations took the field. Hearing that Ariovistus was advancing towards Vesontio (Besançon), a Sequanian town about 110 miles from his camp, in the country of the Lingones, Caesar hastened forward by forced marches and occupied this town.

He remained a few days in the neighborhood and then started out to find Ariovistus. He tells us that he reached his final camping-ground on the seventh day.

Where was Ariovistus? Apparently he had annexed to his German dominions the northern part (third) of the Sequanian territory, the modern Alsace. The distance from Vesontio to Caesar's camping-ground is in doubt. He says, *B. G. I. 41*, that the circuitous route he took, in order to have open country, was more than fifty miles. It is thought by many that this means that the distance by the route he took was greater by fifty miles than the distance by the most direct route. It is likely that the distance was 100 miles at least.

Here was fought Caesar's great battle with Ariovistus, and the German invasion of Gaul was checked and the career of Ariovistus practically ended. This battle was fought in September, and immediately afterwards the Roman army went into winter quarters.

*Having called a general council of Gaul, the chiefs of the various states confer with Caesar secretly. Complaints about Ariovistus, a German king.*

#### CHAPTER 30.

528. *confecto*: about the first of July. *Galliae*: i.e. Celtic Gaul. The other two divisions (see Chapter 1) had not yet fully realized Caesar's arrival.

529. *gratulum*: § 275.

530. *intellegere sese . . . tamen eam rem accidisse*: (*saying that*) *they understood that*, (*tametsi—repetisset*), *this (thing) campaign nevertheless (had happened) had been.* *tametsi—repetisset*: § 198; direct discourse, *tametsi—repetisti, tamen ea res accidit*, *although you have sought satisfaction, nevertheless this thing has happened*; since the tenses are *present* perfect, this is a concessive sentence of the *present* time. *Helvetiorum, populi Romani*: § 42.

531. *his*: if this is translated before its antecedent, *Helvetiorum*, the noun should be used here and the pronoun afterward.

533. *eo consilio*: (this being their design), *with this design.* *florētissimis rebus*: (things being most flourishing), *though enjoying a season of great prosperity*; § 87.

534. *uti*: introduces a clause with four predicates, which explains *eo consilio*; *quem—iudicassent* is parenthetical and explains *locum*; § 203.

536. *domicilio*: § 32. *magna copia*: (the great supply), *the many localities that lay open to their choice.*

539. *concilium*: they wished to forestall objection to a convention on the part of Caesar by obtaining his consent beforehand, although technically he had nothing to do with the matter.

540. *sese habere*: see l. 530, *intellegere sese.* *liceret*: see vocabulary.

541. *ex*: *in accordance with.*

543. *ne quis enuntiaret*: (that not any one, etc.), *that no one should disclose (its proceedings)*; this is the object of *sanxerunt*; §§ 139, 209. *nisi (ei) quibus mandatum esset (enuntiarent)*: (unless those to whom it was ordered should disclose), *except those who were directed to do so*; §§ 23 and 242, 5.

### CHAPTER 31.

545. *eo concilio dimisso*: the briefest possible way of saying that the assembly met and decided upon a plan of action, to be disclosed in the present chapter. *idem*: = *iidem*.

548. *Caesari*: § 28.

549. *non minus quam*: (not less . . . than), *as much . . . as.* *se laborare*: (*saying that*) *they strove and labored for.* *id*: § 8; it is explained by *ne—enuntiarentur*, and contrasted with *uti—impetrarent*.

550. *dixissent*: this would be the future perfect in direct discourse; (should have said), *were going to say.*

553. *Galliae totius*: i.e. eastern Gaul.

554. *alterius*: see vocabulary and § 40.

556. *contenderent*: translate by pluperfect. Latin emphasizes the

continuance, English the beginning, of the act.  
*came about*; the subject is the following clause.

**factum esse**: *it*

558. **postea quam**: see vocabulary.

561. **milium**: § 35.

562. **clientes**: *dependent states*.

563. **accepisse**: sc. eos (i.e. Aeduos eorumque socios), as subject of **accepisse** and **amisisse**, modified by **pulsos**; (*that*) *they, having been routed, had suffered*, etc. **omnem**: the triple repetition of the word adds to the pathos of the complaint.

565. **fractos**: agreeing with (eos), antecedent of **qui**, and subject of **coactos esse**; (*that*), *crushed . . . , they who*, etc.—**potuissent**, *had been forced*, etc.

567. **obsides**: (*as*) *hostages*.

569. **sese**, etc.: this indirect discourse is in apposition with **iure iurando**,—*that they would neither*, etc.

570. **quo minus essent**: § 210.

571. **unum**: *the only one*.

573. **potuerit**: §§ 168 and 152, note.

574. **Romam**: § 94.

575. **postulatum**: § 275.

576. **peius**: subject of **accidisse**; see vocabulary.

581. **iuberet**: notice the change of tense; direct discourse, **iubet**, *he is ordering*; indirect discourse, *he was ordering*. **mensibus**: § 107.

582. **eum**: i.e. Ariovistus.

583. **futurum esse**: *it would happen*. **quibus**: = **et iis**, *and for them*; § 201. **locus ac sedes**: see vocabulary under **sedes**; and § 280. **pararentur**: *was being provided*. **paucis annis**: §§ 89 and 105. **omnes**: i.e. the natives.

585. **neque enim**: *for neither*, introducing a strong point of confirmation. **conferendum**: § 270.

586. **Gallicum**: sc. **agrum**. **hanc—suam**: i.e. Gallorum.

587. **illa**: *that (of the Germans)*. **comparandum**: means nearly the same as **conferendum** and may be omitted in translation.

588. **ut**: in direct discourse **vicerit** would be indicative; hence **ut** means *as* or *when*; § 176. For tense of **vicerit** and other perfects, see § 152, note.

590. **nobilissimi cuiusque**: § 140.

591. **exempla cruciatusque**: § 280. **edere**: *inflict publicly*.

592. **hominem esse**, etc.: observe this characterization of Ariovistus and see if it is borne out by subsequent proceedings.

593. **imperia**: (commands), *rule* or *authority*.

594. nisi—sit: § 242, 1. quid: § 139. auxilii: with quid;  
 §§ 47 and 49. Gallis: § 31.  
 596. ut emigrent: in apposition with idem; *namely, emigrate*; § 213.  
 599. dubitare: sc. se; *that he did not doubt*. Quin: § 214.  
 de: see vocabulary under sumo.  
 602. ne—traducatur: § 209.  
 603. Rhenum: §§ 10 and 11.

## CHAPTER 32.

607. unos: see vocabulary.  
 609. quae—esset: with miratus; § 243.  
 610. respondere: § 258.  
 611. taciti: with an historical infinitive a predicate adjective is  
 in the nominative like the subject; § 258.  
 613. hoc: *for this reason*, explained by quod—horrent.  
 614. reliquorum: sc. fortunam; *that of the rest*.  
 616. crudelitatem: § 8. velut si adesset: § 196.  
 617. reliquis: indirect object; *to the rest*.  
 618. Sequanis: dat. of agent; *by the Sequanians*.

*A conference, asked by Caesar, is refused by the king. Ambassadors are  
 sent by Caesar. The reply of Ariovistus.*

## CHAPTER 33.

622. curae: see vocabulary and § 32. futuram: § 227.  
 623. se habere: (*saying that*) *he had*. et: *both*. beneficio,  
 auctoritate: Caesar thought that Ariovistus might be influenced by the  
 service Caesar had rendered him in getting for him the title "friend  
 of the Roman people,"—a formal *recognition* of him, as Cuba was *recog-*  
*nized* by this country when fighting for independence; or if this did not  
 weigh with Ariovistus, then perhaps the prestige which the Helvetian  
 campaign had given Caesar would be just as effective in a different  
 way.  
 624. Ariovistum facturum (esse): in apposition with spem.  
 625. secundum: see vocabulary. multae res: *many (other)*  
*considerations*.  
 626. qua re putaret: (*why he should think*), *to think*; § 208.  
 sibi: § 31.  
 627. Aeduos teneri: object of videbat.

631. *quod*: relative, the antecedent being the indirect discourse, *Aeduos teneri* and *obsides esse*; translate, (*a condition of affairs*) which in : *in the case of, under.* *populi*: (*as that*) of, etc.

632. *sibi*: § 33.

633. *Germanos consuescere*: these words and *multitudinem venire* taken together are the subject accusative of (*esse*) *periculosum*, which is indirect discourse governed by *videbat*; *he saw that it was dangerous that the Germans, etc.*

634. *populo*: § 33.

635. *sibi*: § 23.

636. *quin exirent*: § 214. *cum—occupavissent* should be translated before *quin*.

637. *ut fecissent*: indirect discourse, *ut fecerunt*; what then is the meaning of *ut* here? see l. 77, or vocabulary. See note on l. 768.

639. *cum divideret*: § 172.

640. *Rhodanus*: i.e. nothing but the Rhone; which we have been told (l. 100) was fordable. *rebus*: § 27. *occurrentum*: sc. *sibi esse*; see vocabulary.

642. *ferendus*: § 270.

#### CHAPTER 34.

644. *ei*: § 21. *ut mitteret, qui postularent, uti deligeret*: distinguish the use of these three clauses; §§ 208, 162; condense each to infinitive in translating.

646. *utriusque*: § 58; see vocabulary under *medius*. *colloquio*: § 32. *velle sese*: see l. 623, note to *se habere*.

647. *summis utriusque rebus*: (the most important matters of each), *matters of the greatest importance to each.*

648. *si—esset*: (that if there were any need to himself from Caesar), *that if he needed anything of Caesar*; § 30; for form of condition in protasis, see § 242, 2; for *venturum fuisse* in apodosis, see § 242, 4. *ipsi*, and *se* in ll. 649, 650, refer to Ariovistus. Why Ariovistus sent such a message is a matter of conjecture. In all probability it was merely for effect, intended to increase his prestige among his own people. He must have known, as his subsequent message shows, that the occasion was a serious one.

649. *si—velit*: (if he wished him at all), *if Caesar wanted anything of him*; § 242, 1. *quid*: § 13.

654. *mirum*: predicate adjective agreeing with clause *quid—esset*, subject accusative of *videri*.

655. *quid Caesari negotii esset*: (what of business there was to Caesar), *what business Caesar had*; §§ 30, 49, 245. For the variations in sequence in this speech, see § 152.

## CHAPTER 35.

657. *quoniam . . . affectus*, (*cum—appellatus esset*), *hanc . . . gratiam referret*, (*ut—putaret*), *haec esse*: (*that*) *since . . . having been treated* (explained by the *cum* clause), *he returned this (sort of) thanks* (explained by the *ut* clause), **THESE WERE THE THINGS.** *tanto suo beneficio*: (with his so great kindness), *with such kindness on his part (and that of, etc.)*.

658. *consulatu suo*: 59 B.C., one year before.

659. *cum appellatus esset*: § 172.

661. *invitatus*: (having been invited), *when asked to do so.* **de—cognoscendum**: *that he ought to talk or learn about their common interests.*

663. *quam*: § 139.

666. *permitteret ut illis liceret*: (allow that it might be permitted to them), *allow the Sequanians.* **illi**: i.e. the Sequanians. **eius**: i.e. Ariovistus.

667. *iniuria*: see vocabulary.

669. *sibi populoque Romano cum eo*: (to himself and the Roman people with him), *between him (on the one side) and himself and the Roman people (on the other).*

670. *impetraret*: subject, Caesar. **sese**: translate here.

672. *provinciam*: (*as a*) *province.*

673. *quod*: § 215, 4. **commodo**: § 79.

674. **se**: a repetition of **sese**, l. 670, for emphasis; to be repeated in English for the same reason; *he, since, etc., HE would not, etc.*

## CHAPTER 36.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given for comparison :

*Ius est belli ut qui vicerunt eis quos vicerunt quem ad modum velint imperent ; item populus Romanus victis non ad alterius praescriptum . . . imperare consuevit. Si ego populo Romano non praescribo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me . . . in meo iure impediri. Aedui mihi, quoniam belli fortunam temptaverunt et . . . superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit qui suo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat. Aeduis (ego) obsides non reddam, neque his . . . bellum inferam, si in eo manebunt quod con-*

venit stipendiumque . . . pendent ; si id non fecerint, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani aberit. Quod mihi Caesar denuntiat se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congregiatur ; intellet quid invicti Germani . . . qui inter annos xvi tectum non subierunt (subierint) virtute possint.

677. qui: sc. ei as antecedent. iis: § 23. vellent: § 243.

678. ad: *at, according to.*

679. alterius: *another's* ; the genitive of *alius* is not in common use, so *alterius* takes its place.

680. si praescriberet, oportere: § 242, 1.

681. suo, uteretur: plural in translation, because referring to *populus Romanus*. Suo below refers to *Ariovistus*.

685. facere: in the direct discourse, *facit* is progressive, *is doing*; hence, in indirect discourse, *was doing*. se: i.e. *Ariovistus*.

qui: *because he*; § 173. sibi: § 28. deteriora: § 16.

686. non: very emphatic. neque, etc.: *but on the other hand he would not.*

687. si—manerent: § 242, 5; see also vocabulary.

688. convenisset: vocabulary; so with *fraternum*, *afuturum* below.

689. iis: § 28.

690. populi Romani: this modifies *fraternum* as if it were *fratrum*, to which it is equivalent. sibi: § 23.

691. se: refers to *Caesar*. *neminem contendisse*: in such a sentence both English and Latin may omit what is logically the main clause; *in regard to the fact that Caesar had threatened him*, (he would say) *that no one*, etc. se cum: refers to *Ariovistus*.

692. sua: antecedent *neminem*; translate, *without being annihilated*. congregeretur: §§ 245 and 226.

694. qui, etc.: this he states as evidence of their vigor.

695. possent: *could (effect)*.

*Alarmed by the complaints of the Aeduans, Caesar hastens against Ariovistus and occupies Vesontio.*

## CHAPTER 37.

697. Aedui: sc. *veniebant*.

698. questum: § 275. quod, etc.: §§ 170, 229.

700. datis: *by giving*; § 264, 7. Treveri: sc. *veniebant questum*.

704. *vehementer commotus*: the only use of this expression in Caesar. It marks a very serious condition of affairs, in Caesar's opinion, for he was very seldom *seriously alarmed*. ne: § 159.

706. *resisti posset*: sc. iis; (it could be resisted them), *they could be resisted*; §§ 23 and 26.

707. *quam*—*potuit*: see *quam potest*, l. 112.

## CHAPTER 38.

709. *tridui*: §§ 44 and 45. *viam*: § 12, note.

711. *Vesontionem*: Caesar's description fits very nearly the site of the modern French town of Besançon (see map), and excavations have brought to light many remains of an ancient town.

713. *magnopere praecavendum*: (it ought to be guarded in advance earnestly), *that he ought to take great precaution*.

714. *usui*: see vocabulary and § 32.

717. *ut (flumen) circumductum*: (as a river drawn around), *as though its course had been described*.

719. *pedum*: §§ 45 and 70. The distance given in the manuscripts is 600 feet, but since the distance now is found to be nearly 1,600 feet, it is thought that the M of the Roman MDC may have disappeared in process of manuscript transmission.

720. *altitudine*: § 80. *radices*: accusative. *ripae*: nominative.

722. *hunc (montem)*: § 11. *circumdatus*: (having been put around), *surrounding*.

*Panic in the Roman camp; Caesar's speech, and march against Ariovistus.*

## CHAPTER 39.

727. *percontatione*, etc.: the soldiers naturally inquired about this unknown foe from those traders who always follow and mingle with an army.

728. *qui*—*praedicabant*: this with the following parenthesis would best be omitted until the rest of the sentence is understood. *magnitudine*: § 80; so *virtute* and *exercitatione*, all predicate with *esse*.

731. *cum his congressos*: (having met with them), *when they encountered them in battle*. This, then, is a statement of the Gauls, not of the traders.

732. *timor*, etc.: i.e. the army was thrown into a panic. The description that follows, while very brief, shows exactly the way in which

a body of men becomes demoralized. You can see the spread of the panic in each successive sentence, until it culminates in the report (really a threat) that not a man will stir from Vesontio except to retreat.

733. *non* : modifies *mediocriter* ; another example of litotes ; see l. 188.

735. *tribunis, etc.* : see introduction.

736. *amicitiae causa* : (for the sake of friendship), *out of friendship* ; these men were politicians, who had attached themselves to Caesar for the patronage he had to bestow ; they were after what they could get for themselves, were ready to desert when danger threatened, and Caesar is either ironical or politic in using this expression.

737. *alius* : see vocabulary. *quorum* : §§ 47 and 136.

738. *diceret* : § 229 ; singular, agreeing with *alius*, but may be translated plural. *voluntate* : *with his consent* ; § 86.

744. *castris* : § 92.

745. *horum vocibus ac timore* ; *from their expressions of fear* ; § 280.

747. *centuriones, etc.* : these officers had risen from the ranks, in contrast to those mentioned in l. 735.

748. *qui ex his* : *those of these who* ; § 53.

751. *ut posset* : § 211.

754. *dicto* : see vocabulary under *audio* and § 33.

## CHAPTER 40.

756. *convocatis, adhibitis* ; *calling, admitting*.

757. *omnium ordinum* : as a rule only centurions of the first rank were admitted to such assemblies, but in this case Caesar wanted to get at a man in every maniple, so that his words could reach the whole army more quickly ; not so much for the purpose of argument as to inspire every officer in the army with confidence instead of fear, through his own wonderful personality and magnetism.

758. *vehementer eos incusavit* : *he lectured them severely, or he reproached them bitterly*. In the same way that the successive steps in the spread of the panic are shown in Chapter 39, note the course of Caesar's speech to quiet it. It is wonderfully shrewd.

758-760. Censure for breach of discipline. Obedience was the first duty of a Roman soldier. They had no business to ask or even to think where they were going or why.

759. *ducerentur* : § 245. *sibi quaerendum (esse)* : (it ought to be asked by them), *they ought to ask*. *putarent* : § 229.

**760-765.** But (since they had made these things their business) he wanted to tell them that Ariovistus was not going to fight at all; he would find there was no reason for it; so there was no need for them to be afraid of those Germans.

**760.** *Ariovistum appetisse*: all the rest of the speech is in indirect discourse; the introductory conjunction *that* of English indirect discourse may be omitted. *se consule*: § 88.

**761.** *hunc*: § 128.

**762.** *iudicaret*: direct discourse, *iudicet*; § 155. *sibi—persuaderi*: (it was persuaded him indeed), *HE, indeed, was persuaded (that)*; § 26.

**764.** *eum*: *Ariovistus*.

**765-780.** But just supposing (merely for the sake of argument), that Ariovistus was fool enough to fight, what in the world were they afraid of? The Cimbri and Teutones, a generation before, and more lately the Gladiators, many of whom were Germans, trained to Roman methods of fighting, had gone down before Roman armies; and two weeks ago they themselves had annihilated the Helvetii, who had fought on equal terms with these very Germans.

**765.** *quod*: see vocabulary.

**766.** *intulisset*: *did declare war*; § 242, 5. *quid—vererentur*: see synopsis above; § 228.

**767.** *sua*: *their own*. *ipsius*: *his*; § 132. By this he puts the soldiers in the position of going back on themselves as well as on him.

**768.** *desperarent*: § 155. *factum*: supply *esse*. *hostis*: § 40. *periculum*: see vocabulary. Rome (all but the capitol) had once been taken and sacked by the Gauls, in 390 B.C. After that time, the words *Gaul* and *German* struck terror to the Romans. A similar threatened invasion by the Cimbri and Teutones had been checked in northern Italy (102 and 101 B.C.) by Marius, to the intense relief of Rome. *memoria*: § 105.

**771.** *meritus*: sc. *esse*, forming complementary infinitive with *videbatur*. *videbatur*: §§ 182 and 240. *factum*: supply *eius hostis periculum* from l. 768. *servili*: *quos* follows as if we had *servorum*, to which *servili* is equivalent.

**772.** *aliquid*: *somewhat*; § 13.

**773.** *ex quo*: *from this (experience)*.

**774.** *quantum—constantia*: (how much of good firmness had in itself), *how much advantage there was in firmness*.

**775.** *quos, hos*: (*those*) *whom, these*; the antecedent is postponed in Latin, and repeated in English, for emphasis.

777. quibuscum saepe numero Helvetii congressi plerumque superarint: (with whom the Helvetii having met had generally defeated), *whom the Helvetii had very often encountered . . . and generally defeated.*

779. exercitui: § 33.

780-788. It was true that Ariovistus had defeated the Gauls at Magetobriga; but it was by a threadbare stratagem, which he would scarcely try to repeat against the Romans.

780. quos: *any*, i.e. of these men who were so scared. *proelium*: see synopsis above, and l. 589.

781. hos: antecedent quos, l. 780. *posse*: the structure of the rest of the sentence, in indirect discourse after *reperire*, is as follows: *Ariovistum, cum tenuisset . . . (Gallos) desperantes et dispersos adortum, vicisse*: (*that*) *Ariovistus, after he had, etc., having attacked the Gauls when they were despairing and were dispersed, had conquered them.*

782. defatigatis Gallis: ablative absolute, *when the Gauls, etc.*

783. castris ac paludibus: § 92. *sui*: § 43.

784. de: *of*.

786. cui rationi, hac (ratione): *by this stratagem for which.* Compare *si quos . . . hos*, above.

787. locus: *opportunity.* *ipsum*: Ariovistus.

788. capi: see vocabulary.

788-794. The supply of grain would be all right; three tribes were furnishing it. As for the road, they would soon have a chance to judge for themselves.

788. rei: *concerning, etc.*; § 40.

790. facere arroganter: *were assuming a good deal.* *cum videntur*: *in seeming*; § 172.

791. praescribere: i. e. *to him.* *curae*: § 32.

793. de itinere: see synopsis above. This is a good example of Caesar's "nerve." He knew nothing at all about the country into which they were going, and he could rely on no one except Diviciacus to tell him anything. But so thoroughly had he shamed and at the same time encouraged the officers that, when he came to the one point on which he could not give them assurances, he felt that he could just pass over it, though a few minutes before it had been one chief reason for the panic.

794-800. It was said that the army would mutiny if ordered to advance. He did not believe it, for an army never mutinied except for one of two reasons, neither of which applied in his case.

794. quod non fore dicantur: *in regard to the fact that* (they were said not to be about to be) *it was said that they would not be*; Latin uses the

*personal* construction where English prefers the *impersonal*. dicto:  
see l. 754.

795. nihil: § 13.

796. scire, quibuscumque . . . aut fortunam (eis) defuisse: *he knew that, to whomsoever . . . either fortune had failed them.* male: see vocabulary.

797. vita: § 105.

798. innocentiam: Caesar has said that an army loses confidence in a general because he has been proven either *inefficient* (male re gesta) or *dishonest* (aliquo—convictam). He now speaks first of his *honesty*, then of his *success*. This shift in the order is rhetorical.

800-806. So he would put them to the test at once and find out immediately whether they were a set of cowards or not. The tenth legion, he knew, would go with him and the rest might do as they chose.

800. quod: *what*.

801. collaturus fuisset: (he had been going to put off), *he had intended to put off*; § 277.

803. utrum—an: double or alternative question; in direct discourse utrum is not translated.

804. quod: cf. l. 765.

806. sibi eam futuram: (it would be to him), *he would make it*; § 30.

807. legioni: § 23. Though the Latin style requires the verb at the end of the clause, the position here lays particular stress on *praecipue* and *maxime*.

## CHAPTER 41.

811. princeps: § 115.

813. iudicium: see vocabulary. fecisset: § 170.

814. paratissimam: see vocabulary.

816. egerunt: *arranged*. satis facerent: see vocabulary under satis, and § 208. se: (*saying that*) *they*, etc. nec umquam = numquam.

817. de summa: *as to the conduct*. suum: predicate after esse.

818. imperatoris: § 46; in the same construction as suum, one being a possessive adjective, the other a possessive case.

820. ei: *in him*; §§ 23 and 24.

821. circuitu amplius: (*though*) *by a circuit of more than*, etc.; § 70. locis: § 92. The idea is that Caesar thought best to march through an open country even if he had to take a roundabout way to do it.

822. duceret: § 157; limits exquisito.

*Caesar's conference with Ariovistus is broken off by an attack of the Germans.*

## CHAPTER 42.

827. *quod*: (*saying that*) *what*. *postulasset*: the subject is Caesar. *per se*: *as far as he was concerned*.

828. *quoniam accessisset*: §§ 170 and 228. *se*: supply another *se* as subject of *posse*.

831. *petenti*: *sc. sibi*, (*to him asking*), *when he asked it*.

832. *magnam—veniebat*: see vocabulary under *venio*, and note the tense. *pro—beneficiis*: see note on l. 657; translate after the *that* suggested in the next note.

834. *fore uti desisteret*: (*that it would be that he would desist*) *that he would give up*; *fore* is in indirect discourse, in apposition with *spem*. *uti—desisteret* is the subject accusative of *fore*; § 213, 2. *colloquio*: § 32.

837. *vereri*: see note on *se*, l. 816.

838. *ne*: § 211, 3. *uterque veniret*: § 155, 1.

839. *non esse venturum*: supply introductory verb again as for *vereri*.

843. *equitibus*: § 29. *detractis*: ablative absolute with *equis*; translate coördinate with *imponere*, *to take—and place*. *eo*: adv. (*thither*), *on them*, i.e. in his *equis*.

845. *quid*: § 13. *facto*: § 74.

846. *non irridicule*: another example of litotes; see note on l. 188.

847. *ex militibus*: § 53.

848. *facere*: progressive, *was doing*; direct discourse, *facit*, *is doing*. *pollicitum*: (*having promised*), *while he had promised merely that*, etc.

849. *ad equum rescribere*: this is Caesar's famous pun (hence *irridicule* above); and like almost every play upon words it is untranslatable. The point is that these three words were the regular formula for enrolling a man among the knights (*equites*) at Rome, while the soldier considered that the phrase also described pretty well what Caesar was doing with the legion. Translate, *he was actually knighting them*.

## CHAPTER 43.

850. *terrenus*: (*of earth*), perhaps *smooth*.

851. *spatium*: § 99. *castris*: here plural in sense.

862. *cum haberet*: § 199. *postulandi*: *sc. aditum*.

864. *quam*: *how*.  
 865. *cum*: *and*.  
 866. *quotiens*: adv., (how often); translate as adjective, *how frequent*.  
 867. *ut*: *how*.  
 869. *prius quam appetissent*: § 181.  
 871. *sui nihil*: (nothing of their own), *none of their prestige*. *gratia*:  
 § 82.  
 872. *auctiores*: *more (and more) increased*.  
 873. *iis*: § 29. *posset*: §§ 228, 243 and 244. *postulavit*  
*eadem*: (demanded the same things), *made the same demands*; § 12.  
 877. *quos*: § 139.

## CHAPTER 44.

- 878–879. *pauca respondit, multa praedicavit*; cf. *postulavit eadem*,  
 ll. 873, 874; § 12.  
 881. *spe praemiisque*: hendiadys = *spe praemiorum*; § 280.  
 882. *ipsis*: i.e. *Gallis*.  
 884. *capere*: *exacted*. *quod*: antecedent, *stipendium*.  
 889. *si velint*: § 242, 1.  
 892. *ornamento, etc.*: § 32.  
 893. *petisse*: sc. *eam* (i.e. *amicitiam populi Romani*), as object.  
*si remittatur*: § 242, 5.  
 896. *appetierit*: § 228. *quod*: § 215, 3.  
 897. *traducat*: progressive; cf. l. 848; so *facere*, in the next line.  
*sui muniendi causa*: §§ 55 and 272.  
 899. *quod*: § 215, 2, *b*.  
 900. *defenderit*: sc. *bellum*, and see vocabulary.  
 903. *quid—vellet*: see vocabulary under *volo*, and § 28. *sibi*  
 refers to Caesar, *suas* to Ariovistus.  
 904. *veniret*: §§ 243 and 244. *hanc Galliam*: i.e. Celtic Gaul,  
 contrasted with Transalpine Gaul; the latter was limited, as Ariovistus  
 considered, to the small territory near the Mediterranean coast and  
 bounded by the Rhone; this was all that had really been subdued  
 to Rome before Caesar came.  
 905. *ut oporteret*: (as it ought not to be yielded to him, i.e. by the  
 Roman people), *as we ought not to yield to him*; *ut* would have the indic-  
 ative in direct discourse.  
 909. *rerum*: § 58. *ut non sciret*: (that he did not know), *as not*  
*to know*; §§ 165 and 166.  
 913. *debere*: see vocabulary. *simulata Caesarem amicitia*:

(that) *Caesar under the pretence of friendship, had, etc.* When an ablative absolute has a word inserted which does not belong to it, this word is almost always one which denotes the real agent of the participle; so here the friendship was feigned by Caesar.

914. *sui opprimendi causa*: see l. 897.

915. *nisi decedat*: § 245, 5.

916. *pro*: *as*.

917. *eum*: i.e. Caesar. *interfecerit*: § 245, 5. The statement here given was probably true, but Caesar had as little fear of his enemies at Rome as of Ariovistus, and he publishes this threat to show it.

918. *se id compertum habere*: (he had this found out), *he had found this out*; § 266.

921. *discessisset*: same construction as *interfecerit* above; these two verbs show how little the law of sequence is regarded in a long speech. Other examples may easily be found.

922. *praemio*: § 75.

923. *eius*: *on his (Caesar's) part*; § 39.

#### CHAPTER 45.

926. *qua re posset*: § 243. The clause is in apposition with *sententiam*.

927. *uti desereret*: (that he desert), *him to desert*. *optime meritos*: *well-deserving*.

929. *Ariovisti*: § 46.

930. *quibus*: § 23. With *redegisset* we ought strictly to have *quos*, and with *imposuisset* we would have *quibus* again, but with different construction; English uses the objective in each case.

932. *quod*: *therefore*. *si oporteret*: § 245, 1. *antiquissimum—tempus*: (each most ancient time), *priority of arrival in Gaul*.

935. *si oporteret*: § 242, 1. *liberam*: i.e. from such encroachments as that of Ariovistus. Caesar does not allow for a moment that he is taking away the freedom of Gaul, but poses as the champion of an invaded country.

936. *victam*: (*though*) *conquered*. *suis*: *its own*, referring to Galliam. *voluisset*: § 228; the subject is *is* (i.e. the senate), *it*.

The argument beginning with l. 929 is as follows: Rome had established a claim to Gaul before Ariovistus, though she had not made it a province; so Ariovistus had no claim on the ground of previous possession. Furthermore, if he still paid any regard to the Roman senate, he was in the wrong, for the senate had taken the ground that Gaul

was to remain free. Caesar's coming was no encroachment, that of Ariovistus was.

## CHAPTER 46.

937. propius tumultum: § 33, note.

940. suis: § 23.

941. quod: § 139.

942. legionis: § 40.

943. committendum ut dici posset: (that it ought to be permitted that it could be said), *that he should give the enemy a chance to say*; the subject of committendum is ut dici posset, and the subject of dici posset is the following infinitive clause.

944. pulsus hostibus: *when they were routed*.

946. usus: see vocabulary.

947. Gallia: § 65. Romanis: § 27. interdixisset: § 243.

948. ut: *how*.

949. multo: § 81.

950. exercitui: § 27.

*Two Gauls, sent to Ariovistus as ambassadors, are thrown into chains.*

## CHAPTER 47.

951. biduo: § 81.

952. coeptae essent: see vocabulary.

953. uti—constitueret: object of velle; § 208.

954. minus: *less*, i.e. than the other proposition; translate, *not*.  
ex legatis: § 53.

955. Caesari visa non est: *there did not seem to Caesar (to be)*.

956. diei: § 56.

957. quin conicerent: *from hurling*; § 214.

958. legatus ex suis: as we say, "a lieutenant of his"; *one of his legati*.

959. missurum (esse) cum: (would send with), *could not send without*.

960. visum est: subject, mittere, l. 866.

961. virtute: § 80.

962. civitate: §§ 20 and 21.

963. et: *both*.

964. qua multa utebatur: (which he used much), *which he spoke freely*; multa agrees with qua.

965. in eo: (in the case of him), *in his case*.

Germanis: § 30.

970. *quid venirent*: *why did they come* ; §§ 243 and 244.

971. *conantes*: *sc. eos*: (trying), *when they tried*.

*A cavalry battle.*

#### CHAPTER 48.

972. *promovit*: Caesar had been marching northeast toward Ariovistus. The latter now moves forward, i.e. south. *milibus*: § 81.

973. *diei*: § 56.

974. *traduxit*: he probably took his line of march some distance up the slope of neighboring hills, so that, if Caesar tried to attack him, as he undoubtedly would have done had he tried to pass in the plain, the Romans would have to fight uphill. Thus he really outgeneraled Caesar.

976. *supportaretur*: § 203; the tense indicates continued action; use past progressive to translate.

980. *ei*: § 30. *non deesset* = *esset*; litotes again.

981. *diebus*: § 104; contrast with *dies*, l. 977.

984. *numero*: § 82.

985. *singuli singulos*: *each selecting a man*. *cum*: *in company with*.

986. *versabantur*: § 148; so with the following imperfects.

987. *hi*: i.e. *pedites*. *quid erat durius*: (there was anything harder), *the engagement was unusually sharp*. *quid, qui*: § 139. *concurrent*: *ran to their aid*.

988. *quo*: see vocabulary.

989. *longius*: *further (than usual)*, and so *celerius*. *prodeundum*: § 278.

990. *exercitatione*: *as a result of their practice*; § 84. The method of fighting here described was afterwards adopted by Caesar.

*Ariovistus attacks Caesar's smaller camp, but does not dare to fight a pitched battle.*

#### CHAPTER 49.

992. *castris*: § 92. *ut—prohiberetur*: this shows that Ariovistus was succeeding in his design; see ll. 972–977.

993. *ultra*: i.e. to the south, along the line of his communications.

994. passus: § 99.  
 995. castris: § 32 or § 33.  
 999. numero: § 82. hominum milia  
 expedita: (light-armed thousands of men),  
 thousand light-armed troops.  
 1000. quae prohiberent: § 162.  
 1001. nihilo: see vocabulary and  
 § 81.

## CHAPTER 50.

1006. instituto suo: § 86.  
 1007. paulum: § 99.  
 1009. circiter: this adverb modifies the  
 adjectival idea in meridiē.  
 1012. pugnatum est: § 144, 2.  
 1013. multis — vulneribus: (many  
 wounds having been both inflicted and  
 received), after an indecisive engagement.  
 1015. quam ob rem: see vocabulary  
 under ob and § 243.  
 1016. quod—esset: § 215, 2, a.  
 1017. ut—declararent: § 213.  
 1018. utrum—esset: § 243.

## LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.

*Being finally forced to fight, the Germans are conquered and flee to the Rhine. The Gallic ambassadors are freed.*

## CHAPTER 51.

1021. praesidio: § 32.  
 1024. minus valebat: (was less strong), was weaker. multi-  
 tudine: § 82. pro hostium numero: (in proportion to the number  
 of the enemy), than the enemy.  
 1031. eo: (thither), on these; see l. 843.  
 1032. proficiscentes: (setting out), as they advanced.  
 1033. manibus: § 78. fientes: with quae. se: i.e. mulieres.

## CHAPTER 52.

1035. legionibus: § 27. quaestorem: Caesar perhaps had only five  
 legati, and had to use his quaestor as general officer for the other legion.  
 1037. a: § 98.

1039. *ita*: with *acriter*.

1040. *itaque*: = *et ita*, with *repente celeriterque*.

1041. *ut daretur*: §§ 165 and 166.

1043. *ex*: *as a result of, according to*; § 85.

1045. *insilirent*: § 168.

1047. *a*: § 98; see l. 1037.

1051. *tertiam aciem*: for the use of the third line in battle, see introduction.

1052. *laborantibus*: see vocabulary.      *subsidio*: § 32.

This was the end of the battle. "The victory was decisive. The Suevi, who were on the point of crossing the Rhine, lost heart and set out homewards. And Caesar—where was he to go? What was he to make of his victory? It would be fatal to withdraw his legions into the Province. That would be to invite the German to attempt a new invasion: to confess weakness to the Gaul. Fortune beckoned him on. Gaul was disunited: her foremost state was on his side: and others felt the spell of his success. For the present indeed he must return to Cisalpine Gaul to conduct the civil duties of his government and watch the politics of Italy: but leaving his legions under the command of Labienus, he quartered them for the winter in the stronghold of Vesontio. In this last act of his we may read the registration of a great resolve: and doubtless he reflected, as he travelled southward, upon the magnitude of the undertaking to which he had committed himself. For to all who had eyes to see and ears to hear he had made it evident that his purpose was nothing less than the conquest of Gaul."—HOLMES.

### CHAPTER 53.

1056. *viribus*: § 72.

1057. *inventis, reppererunt*: *invenio* means *find* (by chance), *come upon*; *reperio*, *find* (by seeking).

1060. *consecuti interfecerunt*: (having followed, killed), *followed and killed*.

1061. *natione*: § 82.      *duxerat*: *had brought*.

1063. *duxerat*: sc. *in matrimonium*.

1064. *filiae*: sc. *fuerunt*, from l. 1060.

1066. *trinis*: (triple), *three sets of*.      *hostes*: object of *insequentem*.

1071. *restitutum*: sc. *et*, connecting with *ereptum*.      *calamitate*: *loss*.      *tanta*: (so great as *his*), *his great*.

1073. *consultum (esse)*: impersonal;—(it had been consulted), *the Germans had consulted*.

1075. *beneficio*; see vocabulary.

*The Suebi return home. The army is stationed in winter quarters.  
Caesar hastens into nearer Gaul.*

## CHAPTER 54.

1077. Suebi: the most powerful German tribe; see ll. 700-708.

1078. quos: *that they*; § 136.

1079. Ubii: the most civilized German tribe. Rhenum: § 33,  
note. perterritos: sc. esse.

1081. paulo: § 81.

1084. ad conventus agendos: see vocabulary under ago; § 271.

## BOOK II.

57 B.C.

For the heading *Commentarius Secundus*, see note on similar heading for Book I. Those who have not studied the first book should read the summaries of the two campaigns given on pp. 3 and 28.

### *I. THE WAR WITH THE BELGIANS.*

#### CHAPTERS 1-33.

The campaign of 58 B.C. had brought to Caesar the submission of central Gaul, at least for the time being. But the Belgians were as yet unterrified. They formed a league to resist the further progress of Caesar and, if possible, to drive him from the country. The Remi cast in their lot with Caesar. Every other Belgian tribe joined the league against him. Galba, king of the Suesiones, was chosen commander-in-chief, and was able to muster more than 200,000 men, while Caesar had less than 50,000.

But Caesar was not caught napping for a moment. He made preparations during the late winter and crossed from Cisalpine Gaul in the early spring. He marched from the country of the Sequani, entered the territory of the Remi and remained there some days. His headquarters probably were near Durocortorum (Rheims), their chief town.

Hearing that the Belgae were marching against him, he crossed the Axona by a bridge which was within an easy march of the eastern frontier of the Suessiones, and there, close to the right bank of the river, pitched his camp. The camp was on a hill, which, with the defences which he constructed, is described in Chapter 8. It was probably situated near the modern town of Berry-au-Bac, about seven miles from Bibrax, a stronghold of the Remi, which the Belgae proceeded to attack.

Caesar came to the assistance of the garrison and defeated the Belgae, but did not care to attack the camp of so vast a host. The armies faced each other for some time, neither caring to make an advance, although the Roman cavalry was making havoc with the Belgian forces. Caesar at length led his army back into camp.

The Belgae finally moved down the Axona about two miles, to a place where the river was fordable. Caesar attacked them while

they were crossing with his cavalry and light-armed troops and inflicted serious losses upon them. Disheartened by this, they decided to disband and go home. Caesar pursued with his cavalry and slaughtered them in great numbers. He then pushed on to the westward, down the river to Noviodunum, the stronghold of the Sueiones. This town surrendered shortly after and Caesar moved on still farther westward to Bratuspantium, chief town of the Bellovaci, which also surrendered. Continuing northward, he received the submission of the Ambiani.

“ But now he learned that his progress was about to be disputed. On the northeast, among the inhospitable forests of the Sabis (Sambre) and the marshes of the Scaldis (Scheldt), dwelt a tribe whose primitive virtues had not yet been enfeebled by contact with civilization. No traders were suffered to cross their frontier, for fear the luxuries of which the rude warriors were still ignorant might sap their manhood.” These people would not yield without a stubborn resistance, and here was fought one of the hottest fights of Caesar’s career. After the battle, Caesar moved eastward against the Aduatuci, whose stronghold was finally taken; and the campaign of 57 B.C. ended in the complete overthrow of the Belgian Confederacy.

*Confederation of the Belgians, with the exception of the Remi, who intrust themselves to Caesar’s protection.*

#### CHAPTER 1.

1. *cum esset*: §182. *citeriore Gallia*: this was the part of modern Italy north of the Po. *ita*: omit in translation. *uti*: for the meaning with the indicative, see vocabulary. *supra demonstravimus*: this refers to the closing statement of Book I.

2. *afferebantur, fiebat*: note the imperfect tense used of repeated action; §148.

3. *certior*: see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. *omnes Belgas coniurare*: in direct discourse, *omnes Belgae coniurant*, progressive, *all the Belgians are uniting*; hence in indirect discourse, *that all the Belgians were uniting*; it is governed by *certior fiebat*, an expression of *saying*. If indirect discourse has not been studied before, see §§ 217–246.

4. *quam*: subject accusative of *esse*; it agrees with *partem*, but in English we must make it agree with its antecedent and say *whom*. *dixeramus*: see Book I, Chapter 1. In such an expression the English prefers the present perfect, which the Latin may use, as in l. 2, above.

5. dare: like coniurare; see l. 3. For the phrase *inter se dare*, see vocabulary under *inter*.

6. coniurandi: §§ 40 and 267. has esse: indirect discourse, like coniurare and dare; *that these were*, etc.; for the case, see § 1. quod vererentur, quod sollicitarentur: substantive clauses in apposition with causas: §§ 215, 2, a, 170 and 228. ne adducerentur: § 211.

7. omni pacata Gallia: (all Gaul having been "pacified"), *now that all (Celtic) Gaul was subdued*. For the sense in which Gallia is used, see notes on Book I, Chapter 1. ad: against.

8. ab non nullis Gallis: § 68.

9. qui: sc. eis as antecedent, in distributive apposition with non nullis Gallis (§ 4); *those who*. Germanos versari noluerant: § 257. The subjunctive might have been expected instead of noluerant, ferebant, etc. (§ 228). In using the indicative, Caesar gives the explanations as a fact; § 170.

10. hiemare, inveterascere: progressive, like coniurare, l. 5.

11. qui: see note, l. 9. mobilitate, etc.: § 84. ferebant, studebant and occupabantur: these imperfects denote a continued condition; § 148.

12. novis imperiis: see vocabulary under novus, and § 23. ab non nullis: this is in addition to those designated by the non nullis of l. 8.

13. ad conducendos homines: § 272.

14. regna: plural, because the Latin thinks of a regnum in each state; translate, *the power in individual states*.

15. imperio nostro: *under our rule*; a combination of the idea of time and cause: §§ 84 and 89.

This chapter means that the Belgians feared " (1) annexation, (2) foreign garrisons, (3) repression of irregular native greatness founded on birth or wealth."—MOBERLEY.

## CHAPTER 2.

17. duas legiones novas: the thirteenth and fourteenth; he already had six in transalpine Gaul, numbered seventh to twelfth inclusive; see Book I, Chapter 10.

18. inita aestate: ablative absolute; see vocabulary under in eo.

19. qui deduceret: §§ 156, 162 and 163. legatum: §§ 1 and 2.

20. cum primum inciperet: (when first began), *as soon as there began*; § 182. This would be late in June; see Book I, Chapter 16. cum primum almost always takes the indicative.

21. *dat negotium*: see vocabulary under *negotium*, and §147.

22. *Belgis*: § 33. *uti cognoscant, faciant*: in apposition with *negotium*: § 208. *quae gerantur*: § 203.

24. *de*: *of*. *certiorem*: see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. *manus, exercitum*: the former refers to small numbers of men from single localities, the latter to the force that was organized when the small bands had been drilled and brought together. So in this country in 1861 companies were recruited in towns and villages, and regiments were organized in the cities, which were afterwards united into brigades, divisions and corps. *cogi, conduci*: progressive passive: *were being collected*, etc.

25. *dubitandum (sibi esse)*: §278.

26. *quin proficisceretur*: § 214. *re frumentaria comparata*: (a grain supply having been prepared), *after he had provided for a supply of grain*.

27. *castra movet*: (he moves camp), *he breaks up his winter quarters*. *diebus*: §§ 89 and 105.

### CHAPTER 3.

29. *cum venissent*: § 182. *opinione*: see vocabulary and § 69.

30. *Galliae*: § 33. *ex Belgis*: § 53.

31. *primos*: in apposition with *legatos*; §§ 1 and 111.

32. *qui dicerent*: §§156, 162 and 163. The rest of the chapter is indirect discourse. For the use to be made in study of the direct form given below, see Book I, l. 224.

*Nos* (§ 222) *nostraque* (like *nos*) *omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus* (§ 237); *neque [nos]* (§§ 222 and 122) *cum Belgis reliquis consensimus* (like *permittimus*) *neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare: reliqui omnes Belgae* (§ 237) *in armis sunt, Germanique, qui cis Rhenum incolunt* (§§ 239 and 202), *sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantusque est eorum omnium furor ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur* (like *incolunt*), *unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent, deterrere potuerimus* (§§ 239 and 165) *quin cum his consentiant* (§§ 239 and 214).

32. *se*: this is object, as shown by *suaque omnia* (§ 111); another *se* is to be understood as subject accusative of *permittere*; *that they intrusted*, etc.

35. *et*: see note, Book I, l. 410. *dare*: this and the three following infinitives are complementary to *paratos*, which is to be considered as a predicate adjective.

36. *facere*: see vocabulary. *oppidis*: §92. *frumento*: §71. *recipere, iuvare*: supply object.

37. *esse, coniunxisse, esse*: these are infinitives of indirect discourse after *dicerent*, like *permittere*, etc.

38. *cis*: *on this side of*, i.e. on the side towards Rome, the south-western side. *incolant*: §228.

40. *ut potuerint*: §§ 151, 152, note, 165 and 166. *Suessiones*: accusative; this may be translated after *ut ne quidem*, then the following appositives and clauses, finally *detertere potuerint*, *could they prevent*.

41. *iure*: § 73. *isdem*: = *iisdem*. *utantur*: § 228; after it supply *et qui*, with *habeant*.

43. *quin consentirent*: § 214.

### *The origin of the Belgians and their forces.*

#### CHAPTER 4.

44. *ab his*: § 67. *quae, quantae*: interrogative adjectives.

45. *essent*: § 243. *quid*: interrogative pronoun; contrast with *quae* above. *quid possent*: (what they were able), *how strong they were*; §13. *sic reperiebat*: the direct discourse of the rest of the chapter would be as follows:

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque antiquitus traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incolebant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos fines ingredi prohibuerint: qua ex re fit uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . sumant. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci . . . valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti (sunt) ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc . . . summa totius belli . . . defertur; oppida habent numero duodecim, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta: totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambiani xxv milia, Morini,

etc. . . . Condrusos, Eburones, etc. . . . qui . . . Germani appellantur arbitramur ad XL milia.

46. ab Germanis: § 67.

48. Gallos: object of *expulisse*; Belgas is the subject of all the infinitives in this sentence. solos: *the only ones*.

49. patrum: § 39. memoria: see vocabulary and §§ 89 and 105. omni Gallia vexata: *when all*, etc.; §§ 87 and 264, 1.

50. ingredi prohibuerint; see vocabulary under *prohibeo*, and § 168. Verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid* (e.g. *iubeo* and *prohibeo*) govern the infinitive as a rule; *impero*, which takes an *ut* clause, means *command*.

51. qua ex re fieri: (from which fact it was happening), *the result was*; the subject accusative of *fieri* is the clause *uti—sumerent* (§ 213). rerum: § 40; contrast with *patrum*, l. 49. memoria: § 84.

53. omnia habere explorata: § 266.

54. propterea: modifies *habere*.

55. coniuncti: agrees with the subject of *cognoverint*. quantam—polliciti sint: indirect question after *cognoverint*.

57. cognoverint: §§ 170 and 228. For the primary tenses of the subjunctive here and below, as compared with *sumerent*, l. 53, see § 152, note. plurimum valere: (availed most), *were strongest*; § 13. virtute, etc.; § 84.

59. conficere: see vocabulary. armata milia: (armed thousands), *thousand armed men*. pollicitos: sc. *esse*. electa: agrees with *milia*; translate similarly, *picked men*.

61. suos: i.e. of the Remi. fines—agros: notice the so-called chiasmic arrangement of the words—noun, adjective; adjective, noun.

62. possidere: subject, *eos* (i.e. *Suessiones*).

63. memoria: see vocabulary and § 105.

64. cum . . . tum: § 279, 3.

66. hunc: § 128. summam: see vocabulary under *summa*.

67. voluntate: § 86.

68. numero: § 82. milia armata: see l. 59.

69. maxime feri: superlative, *fiercest*; this adjective is not compared by terminations. inter ipsos: (among themselves, i.e. the Belgians), *among them*. habeantur: *were considered*; this is a quite common meaning of *habeo*.

70. absint: i.e. from the Remi; they were in the northwest of Belgic Gaul. quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambianos decem milia: see note on l. 61. This and the different forms of expression employed here serve to break the monotony of the passage.

74. *appellantur*: § 240. Contrast with *habeantur*, l. 69.

75. *arbitrari*: i.e. (Remos) *arbitrari* *Condrusos*, . . . *ad XL milia* (*conficere posse*); *that they (the Remi) thought that the Condrusi . . . (could furnish) about forty thousand.*

*Caesar's camp at the Aisne.*

#### CHAPTER 5.

76. *cohortatus*: § 261.

77. *prosecutus*: see vocabulary. *senatum venire*: § 255.

78. *obsides*: § 2, note. This was a characteristic act on Caesar's part. He took the Remi at their word when they said they intrusted *se suaque omnia* to him, and thus got security that they would assist him. The Gauls were notably fickle (see Chapter 1 of this book), and Caesar never felt that he could trust them unless their direct interests or their fears compelled them to side with him. In this case, however, as it turned out, the Remi proved the most faithful to Caesar of all the Gallic states. *quae*: § 136. *omnia*: § 111. *ab his*: § 68.

79. *diem*: see vocabulary. *Diviciacum Aeduum*: the year before, Caesar had taken the part of the Aeduans, one of the strongest states of Celtic Gaul, in their contests with other states for the leadership; Diviciacus was the most influential leader of the conservative party among the Aeduans, and a trusted adviser of Caesar.

80. *quanto—distineri*: § 63.

82. *ne configendum (sibi) sit*: (that it might not have to be contended by him), *that he might not have to contend*; §§ 31, 156 and 278.

83. *id*: i.e. *manus hostium distineri*. *posse*: sc. *docet*.

84. *si introduxerint*: § 242, 5 or 6.

85. *postquam vidit*: § 176.

86. *venire*: in direct discourse, *veniunt*, *are coming* (§145, 1); hence in indirect discourse, *were coming*. *neque*: connects *vidit* and *cognovit*, but negatives *longe*. *abesse*: sc. *a se*, *from him*; the subject is *copias Belgarum*. *ab iis . . . exploratoribus et ab Remis*: ablatives of source modifying *cognovit*; translate immediately after it.

88. *flumen*: § 11.

90. *quae res*: *this movement*. *et*: *both*.

91. *ripis*: § 71. *post eum quae essent*: (what were behind him), in military language, *his communications*.

92. *tuta*: predicate adjective agreeing with *ea* understood, the antecedent of *quae*; § 16. *commeatus ut possent efficiebat*: (effected that provisions were able), *made it possible for provisions*; § 213.

95. *in altera parte*: i.e. on the southern side; see map.

97. *pedum duodecim*: §§ 44 and 45.

98. *munire*: sc. *eum* (i.e. *Sabinum*), as subject.

*Bibrax, a town of the Remi besieged by the Belgians, is relieved by Caesar.*

*The Belgians, while withdrawing, suffer heavy loss.*

#### CHAPTER 6.

99. *nomine*: § 82.

100. *milia*: §§ 14 and 99.      *magno impetu*: § 78.

101. *die*: § 104.      *sustentatum est*: § 144, 2.

#### TESTUDO.

102. *eadem atque Belgarum*: (*which is*) *the same as that of the Belgians*; parenthetical.

103. *moenibus*: § 27.

105. *defensoribus*: § 65.      *testudine facta*: (a "testudo" having been made), *they form a testudo and*.

106. *quod*: § 136.      *tum*: i.e. in the storming of Bibrax.

107. *conicerent*: § 143.

108. *potestas erat nulli*: § 30. Note the emphatic position of *nulli*.  
*finem oppugnandi*: § 267.

109. *summa nobilitate*: § 80.  
 110. *oppido*: § 27. *ex iis*: § 53.  
 111. *legati*: § 2, note. *de*: *concerning, to sue for*.  
 112. *nisi, etc.*: (*saying that*) *unless, etc.*; § 227. For mood and tense, see § 242, 5.

## CHAPTER 7.

114. *de media nocte*: (from, i.e. after, the middle of the night), *about midnight*; § 113. *isdem*: = *iisdem hominibus*. *ducibus*: § 2, note. So *nuntii*, l. 115.  
 115. *Cretas*: notice Greek ending. *sagittarios*: appositive to *Numidas et Cretas*, but the latter may be translated as adjectives.  
 116. *subsidio*: § 32.  
 117. *et . . . et*: *not only . . . but also*. *Remis*: § 27.  
 118. *hostibus*: § 29. *potiundi*: old form of gerundive. For the use of the gerundive of such verbs, see § 273, 2.  
 121. *quo adire poterant*: (whither they were able to go to), *which they could get at*. *omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis*: this ablative absolute is coördinate with *morati* and *populati*, but since deponent verbs have no passive participle and active verbs have no perfect active participle, we find this awkward combination. In translating make the voices of all the participles the same, here rendering *incensis* by the perfect active. *omnibus copiis*: § 77.  
 122. *a*: adverb, *away*. *milibus duobus*: §§ 70 and 81.  
 123. *quae*: § 136.  
 124. *milibus*: § 69. This statement is given to show the great number in the Belgian army. See Chapter 4.

## CHAPTER 8.

126. *primo*: § 115.  
 127. *virtutis*: § 40. *proelio*: § 65.  
 128. *quid—posset*: (what the enemy could in bravery), *how brave the enemy was*; §§ 13, 82 and 243.  
 129. *quid—auderent*: like the above clause, *how daring our men were*. *periclitabatur*: notice tense; § 148.  
 130. *loco pro castris idoneo*: *the ground in front of the camp (being) convenient*. This use of *pro*, local, is rare. It is so employed only when it means *immediately before, practically, on the edge of*.  
 131. *natura*: § 84.  
 132. *quod redibat*: this gives the reason for *opportuno atque idoneo*.

133. *editus*: agrees with *collis*; *rising*. *tantum*—*patebat*: (extended in breadth, turned toward *the camp*, so much as of place as a line drawn up could occupy), *covered as much space in front of the camp as his line of battle would fill*. In describing a hill it is hard to use definitely such terms as *width*, *end*, *side*, etc., unless it has a very distinct ridge, which was not the case here. *tantum*: § 14.

134. *quantum*: object of *occupare*. *loci*: § 47.

135. *ex utraque parte*: *on each end (of the ridge)*; § 98. *lateris deiectus*: (slopes of side), *comparatively steep slopes*.

136. *ab utroque latere*: compare *ex utraque parte* above. It means, on either side of the ridge at the end near which the camp was.

137. *transversam*: *at right angles (to the front of his line of battle)*; this was on his right, the *latus apertum*; see Book I, line 457, note.

“The camp was situated on rising ground between the river (Aisne) and its tributary, the Miette, a small stream flowing through a marshy ooze. The camp was, as usual, quadrilateral, as nearly square as the lie of the land permitted. The rampart, eight feet high, was faced with sods and revetted with timbers and fascines, to keep its slope of the requisite steepness; along the top of it was set a palisade of interlaced branches, and the ditch which surrounded it was eighteen feet wide and ten feet deep. Caesar’s rear was protected by the Aisne; and his supplies could be brought up in safety by the Remi.”—HOLMES.

138. *extremas*: § 113.

139. *tormenta*: *engines*, which corresponded exactly to modern artillery. *ne possent*: § 157. *cum instruxisset*: § 182.

140. *quod*—*poterant*: *because they were so strong in numbers; with their superior numbers*; it modifies *possent*, and should be translated immediately after it. *ab lateribus circumvenire*: (to come around on the sides), *to outflank*.

141. *pugnantes*: (*while*) *fighting; during the battle*.

143. *si quo*: (if anywhere), *wherever*; *quo*, adverb, is indefinite after *si*, like forms of *quis* and *qui* (§ 139). *opus*: the indeclinable noun; see vocabulary. *esset*: § 242, 5. *subsidio*: § 32.

145. *copias eductas instruxerunt*: (drew up their troops, having been led out), *led out their troops and drew them up*.

## CHAPTER 9.

147. *si transirent*: § 243, note. *expectabant*: § 148.

148. *si*—*fieret*: (in case a beginning of crossing should be made

by them), *if they began to cross*; § 242, 5. **transeundi**: § 267.  
**impeditos**: sc. eos; for translation, see vocabulary.

150. **proelio equestri contendebatur**: impersonal; (it was contended by means of a cavalry battle), *a cavalry battle was fought*. **ubi faciunt**: § 176.

151. **neutri**: *neither army*; when designating one of two *bodies of men*, the plural of this word, as of **alter**, is used. **secundiore proelio**: §§ 87 and 88. For the translation of **secundiore**, see § 116.

152. **nostris**: § 33.

156. **eo consilio**: (this being their plan), *with this design*. **si possent**: § 242, 5. **cui**: § 27.

157. **pontemque interscinderent**: they would thus have the Romans cut off from provisions and from retreat. It was good strategy, if they could have carried it out.

158. **minus potuissent**: (should be less able), *could not do this*; § 242, 5. **popularentur, prohiberent**: sc. ut; they are coördinate with **ut expugnarent, interscinderent**, above. **qui**: the antecedent is **agros**.

159. **usui**: see vocabulary and § 32. **gerendum**: gerund or gerundive? See § 271. **commeatu**: § 65.

## CHAPTER 10.

161. **certior factus**: it is not stated of what he was informed, but it can be easily supplied,—*of their attack, of what was going on*, etc.

162. **levis armaturae**: § 44. He takes these troops because they can get there more quickly than the heavily armed legionaries. The fact that he goes with them shows that he understood the vital importance of preventing the enemy from crossing.

163. **pontem**: § 10. This is the bridge mentioned in l. 94. **eos**: i.e. the Belgians.

164. **pugnatum est**: § 144. **hostes**: the case is shown by **impeditos**; for the latter, see l. 148.

165. **per**: *on, over*. Without any fear or sentiment, the others tried to use the bodies of the men in the front ranks as a causeway across the stream, so as to be better able to get at the Romans.

166. **reliquos . . . conantes . . . reppulerunt**: keep the Latin order; *the rest, trying . . . , they drove back*. Observe Caesar's terse description of the fight. He divides the slaughter into three parts: first, those who were trying to cross when he came (**hostes impeditos in flumine**); second, those who tried to cross after them (**reliquos per eorum corpora audacissime transire conantes**); third, those who had crossed before he

arrived (*primos qui transierat*). He did not deal first, as might at first thought be expected, with this last division, because not enough had crossed to do any harm and it was more important to stop the rest; but he kept them occupied with the cavalry, while dealing with the others, and finally cut them to pieces.

168. *equitatu*: § 71. *primos circumventos interfecerunt*: keep the order and translate participle by main verb, *they surrounded and killed*.

169. *oppido*: i.e. Bibrax; see Chapters 6 and 7. *spem se fefelisse*: (that the hope had deceived them), *that they were disappointed in the hope (of, etc.)*.

170. *neque*: = *et non*; take the negative part of the conjunction with *progredi*, *did not advance*. It was a great feature of Caesar's tactics in Gaul to get the enemy to attack him in a place of his own choosing.

171. *pugnandi causa*: §§ 54 and 55. *ipsos*: emphatic, contrasted with the Romans, whom a little while before they had hoped to cut off from their base of supplies.

172. *convocato consilio*: translate by main clause: *called a council and, etc.*

173. *optimum*: predicate adjective agreeing with the subject accusative of *esse*, i.e. the infinitive clauses following. *domum*: § 94. *suam quemque*: in this combination the possessive regularly precedes. *quemque reverti*: § 257. *quorum in fines*: *into whose territory*; the antecedent of *quorum* is *eos*, l. 175. *introduxissent*: *should lead*; §§ 153 and 203.

175. *convenirent*: this is the second object of *constituerunt*; the first was a mere statement of a fact, that a certain thing was best; hence the accusative and infinitive. The *purpose* of their decision was that they should reassemble; hence the subjunctive, which, used thus without *ut*, is much like the use that appears when an imperative becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse; §§ 208, 212, 221 and 245. *ut —uterentur*: adverbial purpose clause modifying *convenirent*.

176. *finibus*: § 91. *copiis*: § 73.

178. *quod—cognoverant*: § 215, 2, b.

179. *finibus*: § 27. *appropinquare*: progressive, *was approaching*.

180. *his persuaderi non poterat*: (it could not be persuaded these), *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded*; §§ 23 and 26. So this terrible league dissolved, and Caesar proceeds against the various tribes separately.

181. *neque*: *and not*; see l. 170.

## CHAPTER 11.

182. *ea re constituta: when this move had been settled on.* magno—tumultu: § 78.
183. *nullo—imperio: attendant circumstance; § 78.*
184. *cum—properaret: § 172: this clause modifies fecerunt ut—videretur.* sibi: § 28.
185. *ut videretur: § 213.*
186. *fugae: § 33.* *hac re cognita: § 264, 4.*
187. *veritus: § 261.* *qua de causa: for what reason, why.* *qua* is here an interrogative adjective.
188. *discederent: § 245.* Note the tenses of *perspexerat* and *discederent*; the latter is progressive.
189. *castris: § 92.*
190. *qui moraretur: §§ 162 and 163.*
191. *his: § 27.* *Pedium, Cottam: these two legati were often detailed together. We find that they were men of different characteristics, so that perhaps Caesar thought that one would serve to balance the other.*
192. *Labienum: see vocabulary.*
195. *fugientium: (while) fleeing.* *cum (ei) ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent . . . (et) priores (i.e. priores hostes) praesidium ponerent: (since those on the extreme end of the line of march, to whom it had been come, made a stand, . . . and those in front placed a guard), since, (while) those on the extreme rear who were overtaken made a stand . . . those in advance took refuge.* ab: § 98. *extremo: § 113.*
197. *priores: § 111.* *quod viderentur: § 170.* *abesse a: be out of.*
199. *perturbatis ordinibus: (their ranks having been disturbed), broke ranks and.*
201. *tantam quantum fuit diei spatium: as great as (was the space of the day) the day allowed.* The comparison is careless and illogical.

*The Suessiones are received in surrender.*

## CHAPTER 12.

205. *postridie eius diei: § 56.* *prius quam reciperent: § 181.*
207. *Remis: what other case might have been used? See § 33, note.*
208. *ex itinere: i.e. without encamping or making any especial preparations.*

209. ab defensoribus: § 65.  
 211. paucis defendentibus: § 264, 4.  
 212. quaeque: *and (the other things) which*.  
 213. usui: see L. 159.

## VITRA.

215. actis: *being pushed*. For the methods of the Romans in siege operations, see introduction.

216. quae: *such as; the like of which*.

219. petentibus Remis: see note on Book I, l. 512.      ut conservaretur: object of petentibus; § 208.

*At the request of Diviciacus, Caesar receives the Bellovaci in surrender; he inquires about the character and customs of the Nervii.*

## CHAPTER 13.

220. primis: (the first), *the chief men*; § 111.

221. ex oppido: we use an adjective phrase, *the arms in the town*; the Latin uses an adverbial phrase, *having been handed over out of the town*.

223. qui—contulissent: *when they had retired with all their possessions into the town (of) Bratuspantium*.

226. natu: see vocabulary under magnus, and § 276.

227. voce: *tone of voice*, for Caesar would not have understood their language.

230. accessisset, ponerent: *notice tenses*.

231. ex muro: (*standing*) *on the wall*.      more: § 86.

## CHAPTER 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter would be as follows:

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae

fuerunt; impulsī ab suis principibus, qui dicebant, "Aedui a Caesare in servitutem redacti omnes indignitates . . . preferunt," et ab Aeduis defecerunt et populo Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intellegebant quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt. Petunt non solum Bellovaci sed etiam pro his Aedui ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utaris. Quod si feceris, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas amplificabis, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderunt, sustentare consuerunt.

235. omni tempore, fide: see vocabulary. civitatis: § 39.

236. impulsos, etc.: the construction is (eos), impulsos . . . , et defecisse et intulisse, (*that*) *they* (the Bellovaci), (having been) *urged on* . . . , *had both revolted and waged*. qui dicerent: § 228; this governs the indirect discourse, Aeduos . . . redactos, . . . perferre, *that the Aeduians, having been, etc. . . . , were enduring*.

239. Qui: sc. eos as antecedent and subject accusative of profugisse; *that those who etc. . . . , had fled*.

240. quod: conjunction. quantam—intulissent: § 243.

242. Bellovacos, Aeduos: subjects of petere, the object of which is the clause ut—utatur.

243. sua: *his (usual), his (well known)*; this is not an unusual force of suus. quod si fecerit: *if he did this*; § 242, 5.

245. amplificaturum: sc. eum (Caesarem) as subject. si qua bella inciderint (Aedui) consuerint: for the form in direct discourse, see above; English, *if any wars happen, we are accustomed*. Indirect discourse, *if any wars happened, they were accustomed*; § 228. qua: this form may be used instead of quae in the feminine singular and neuter plural of the indefinite pronoun.

## CHAPTER 15.

247. honoris Diviciaci causa: (for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus), *as a mark of honor to Diviciacus*; honoris, § 54; Diviciacus, § 40.

249. magna auctoritate: § 80.

250. multitudine: § 82.

251. ex oppido: see note on l. 221.

254. quorum: § 135. Caesar cum quaereret: *when Caesar inquired*. It would be possible here to consider Caesar the subject of reperiebat; but often a nominative preceding a cum clause cannot be the subject of the main verb. This shows that, in such a sentence as we have here, the subject that is expressed belongs to the subordinate clause.

255. mercatoribus: § 30.

256. vini: § 49. pati: sc. eos as subject.

259. magnae virtutis: § 44.

260. qui: *because they*; § 173.

261. confirmare: progressive; see note on l. 179. It is coördinate with *esse*, *increpitare* and *incusare*. sese—accepturos: this is indirect discourse, object of *confirmare*.

*The Nervii, with the Atrebates and Viromandui, are defeated by Caesar with heavy loss on both sides, and their surrender is accepted.*

#### CHAPTER 16.

263. cum fecisset: § 182. eorum: i.e. of the Nervii. tri-  
duum: § 14.

264. ex captivis: § 67. Sabim: note the ending.

265. milia: §§ 14 and 70.

266. consedissee, expectare: note change of tense, *had encamped, were waiting for*.

268. uti—experirentur: object of persuaserant; §§ 25 and 208. eandem: (the same), *with them*.

270. copias: notice the voice of expectari; then is copias subject or object? quique: = et eos qui.

271. coniecisse: notice voice; then is mulieres subject or object? eum locum quo: = talem locum ut eo, *such a place that to it*; §§ 165 and 166.

272. exercitui: § 30.

#### CHAPTER 17.

273. exploratores, centuriones: the former would try to find various possible sites; then the latter, experienced officers, would confer and select the best place.

274. qui deligant: §§ 162 and 163. castris: § 33. cum facerent: § 182. ex: § 53. Notice here the difference between a bad and a good translation. Following the Latin we might say, "When from the surrendered Belgians and the remaining Gauls, several, having followed Caesar, were making a march," etc. This is "Latin-English." Contrast the following: "When quite a number of other Gauls and of the recently surrendered Belgians had joined Caesar and were marching with him," etc.

276. *ex his*: cf. *ex*—Gallis, above. *ex captivis*: § 67.
277. *cognitum est*: § 148. *eorum dierum*: (of) *during these days*; with *itineris*; § 37. *consuetudine*: (custom), *order*.
278. *nostri exercitus*: with *itineris*; § 39. *nocte*: § 89.
279. *inter singulos legiones*: *between* (the single) *every two legions*.
280. *numerus*: *amount*. *neque—negotii*: (nor was anything of trouble), *and that it was not a difficult matter*; § 49.
281. *cum venisset*, *abessent*: in direct discourse, *cum venerit* (future perfect indicative), *aberunt*, (when it shall have come, shall be away), *when it has come, are behind*; § 182. In indirect discourse the English tenses are like the Latin.
283. *adoriri*: in apposition with *quidquam negotii*. *qua pulsa*: (which having been driven), *that when this had been routed*.
284. *futurum (esse)*: *it would (be) happen (that, etc.)*; object of demonstrant.
285. *adiuvabat*, etc.: the subject is the clause *quod—effecerant*; (the fact that the Belgians had made . . . , aided the plan of those who . . . ); translate passively, *the advice of those who . . . , was reënforced by the fact that the Belgians . . .*
286. *equitatu nihil possent*: (since they were nothing able in respect to cavalry), *since they had no cavalry at all*; §§ 13 and 82.
287. *neque enim*: see vocabulary under *enim*. *ad hoc tempus*: (to this time), *at present*; i.e. when Caesar was writing. *ei rei*: *this arm of the service*. *quicquid possunt*: *so far as they can*.
288. *valent*, etc.: (they are strong in), *they rely on*. *quo facilius impedirent*: § 160.
289. *si venissent*: § 242, 5. *praedandi causa*: see vocabulary under *causa*.
290. *teneris*, etc.: (tender trees having been cut into and bent over, and numerous branches having grown out laterally, and brambles and briars having been planted among them); *had planted young trees and then cut into them and bent them over*; thus they would remain bent over but would keep on growing; *numerous branches would then grow out sidewise, and by planting briars and brambles among them they had made (that) these hedges (should) furnish*, etc.; § 213.
292. *instar*: in apposition with *munimentum*. *muri*: § 57.
293. *quo . . . intrari, . . . perspicere posset*: § 168; verbs impersonal; (whither it was able . . . to be entered, . . . to be seen through), *such that one could . . . penetrate it, . . . see through it*.
294. *cum—impediretur*: this clause modifies *omittendum (esse)*; in direct discourse the future indicative would be used (§ 182). *cum*

**iter agminis eorum impediatur, non omittendum nobis consilium erit;**  
*when the advance of their column (shall be) is impeded, we ought not, etc.*

295. **sibi:** § 31.

### CHAPTER 18.

296. **haec:** (this), *as follows*.      **castris:** § 32.

297. **ab summo:** *from the top*.

299. **pari acclivitate:** *with a similar slope*; § 80.      **adversus:** note that this, with **contrarius**, **infimus**, **apertus** and **silvestris** are all adjectives modifying **collis**.

300. **huic:** § 33.      **passus:** § 99.      **infimus apertus:** the former of these adjectives is partitive in force (§ 113), the latter predicate; (the lower part open), *open at the base*.

301. **a superiore parte:** contrasted with **infimus**; (on the higher part), *towards the top*.      **ut perspici posset:** see l. 293 and § 166.

303. **continebant:** compare the different uses of the imperfect in this chapter; § 148.      **secundum:** a preposition; see vocabulary.

305. **pedum trium:** § 45. This is a clear description of a battlefield; try to imagine how it looked, and draw a plan.

### CHAPTER 19.

306. **subsequebatur:** note the imperfect again; with which imperfect in Chapter 18 does this correspond? Note also the meaning of the compounds of **sequor** with the various prepositions.      **omnibus copiis:** § 77.

308. **hostibus:** § 27.

309. **consuetudine sua:** § 86.

311. **duae legiones:** see l. 18.

312. **praesidio:** § 32.

315. **illi:** i.e. **hostes**.

317. **quem—pertinebant:** (to what limit the open places extended, stretched out), *to the edge of the woods*.      **quem ad finem:** = **ad eum finem ad quem**.

318. **cedentes:** sc. **eos** (i.e. **hostes**); (*when*) *retreating*.      **interim:** i.e. while this game of hide and seek was going on between the two bodies of cavalry.

319. **opere dimenso:** this had been done by the centurions who had been sent ahead; see l. 273.

320. **prima:** § 113.

321. *abditū latebant*: *were lying hidden*. *quod*: relative pronoun, subject of *convenerant*, having for its antecedent the clause *ubi -visa sunt*. *tempus*: predicate nominative; (*as*) *the moment*; § 2, note.

322. *convenerat*: see vocabulary. *ut—confirmaverant*: this clause explains why they were able to do all these things so quickly.

323. *ipsi sese confirmaverant*: *had made their plans*; § 133.

327. *ut viderentur*: § 166.

328. *in manibus nostris*: (*in our hands*), *within our reach*.

329. *adverso*: see vocabulary. *ad*: *toward*.

## CHAPTER 20.

This passage is one of the most brilliant in Caesar. Notice the directness of statement and the rapidity of style corresponding to the action described.

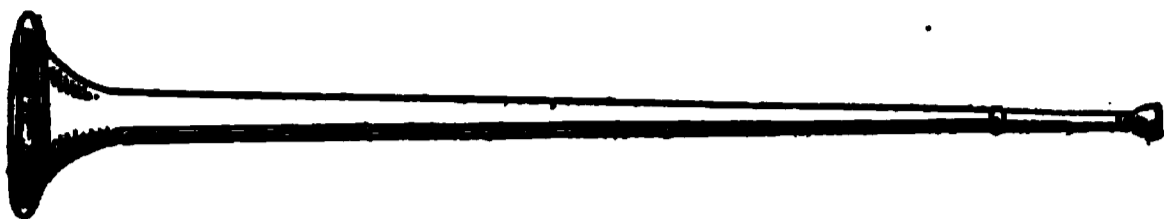
331. *Caesari agenda*: (*all things were to be done by Caesar at one time*), *Caesar had to do everything at once*; §§ 31 and 278.

## VEXILLUM.

332. *proponendum*, etc.: supply the proper form of *sum* with this and each of the following gerundives, and compare *erant agenda* for translation; these clauses explain *omnia*. *concurri oportebat*: both impersonal, § 144; (*it ought to be run*), *the soldiers were to rush*; *occurri* is the subject of *oportebat*.

333. *tuba*: those who did not see the *vexillum* might hear the *tuba*.

334. *qui*: the antecedent is *ei*, indefinite, the subject of *arcessendi* (*erant*). *longius*: § 116. *aggeris*: see vocabulary.



TUBA.

335. *milites cohortandi*: see note on Book I, l. 444.

336. *signum*: this means the signal to begin fighting or to charge.

337. *difficultatibus*: § 92.

338. *subsidio*: § 32.

339. *duae res*: the first of these is *scientia atque usus* taken together as a single thing, *discipline*, which is explained by the clause *quod—poterant*; the second is the clause *quod—vetuerat*, *the fact that*, etc. *superioribus*: *former*. *exercitati*: participle agreeing with *ei* (i.e. *milites*), the subject of *poterant*. *quid—oporteret*: § 243; it is the direct object of *praescribere* and the second object of *doceri* (§ 15, end). *quid fieri* taken as a whole is the subject of *oporteret*.

340. *non minus commode . . . quam*: (not less readily than), *as easily . . . as*. *ipsi sibi*: (themselves to themselves), *to each other*; § 133.

341. *singulis legionibus singulos legatos*: (the single legati from the single legions), *each commander from his particular command*.

342. *nisi munitis castris*: here we have an ablative absolute introduced by a subordinating conjunction. This happens most frequently after *nisi*, but also after conjunctions such as *tamquam*, *quasi*, *quamquam*, etc. Translate, *unless the camp was fortified*.

344. *nihil expectabant*: (awaited not at all), *did not wait a moment for*; § 13.

345. *per se*: *on their own responsibility*. *videbantur*: see vocabulary.

## CHAPTER 21.

It is part of Caesar's design to show his own part in the battle, and attention is called to him at the beginning of this and the preceding chapter.

346. *necessariis rebus imperatis*: (the necessary things having been ordered), *after giving the necessary orders*.

347. *quam [in] partem*: *in whatever direction; wherever*.

348. *non longiore oratione quam uti*: with a speech not longer than (to urge them) to, etc. "Keep cool, men, and remember the honor of the legion. Stand up against that rush."—HOLMES.

350. *animo*: § 82.

352. *non—posset*: the enemy were (away not farther than whither a javelin could be driven), "within a javelin's cast."

354. *pugnantibus occurrit*: (he ran against fighting men), he found them (already) fighting.

355. *temporis—exiguitas*: (so great was the shortness of the time); what does this mean? *hostium animus*: scarcely different from *hostes*.

356. *ut*: what Latin words should be translated directly after *ut*, to give the English order? *insignia*: decorations; i.e. badges indicating rank, medals won for bravery, and perhaps colored crests or some other sign for every soldier to indicate the legion and manipule to which he belonged. These latter would correspond to the different devices used to distinguish the army corps and divisions in the Union army in the Civil War.

#### GALBAN.

357. *galeas*: the helmets that were worn in battle would be too heavy and uncomfortable to be worn all the time. These, with the shields in their leather coverings (*tegimenta*) and the *insignia*, the soldier while marching carried in his pack or hung on his person, as our soldiers carry their cartridges and canteens. *scutis*: § 65.

358. *quam in partem*: see l. 347. *defuerit*: this sequence of tense is exceptional in a result clause.

359. *prima*: were the first that; § 115.

360. *ad haec*: (at these), here.

## CHAPTER 22.

363. *rei—ordo*: (the reason and custom of military affairs), *the principles of military science*. The first subjects of *postulabat* are *natura*, *deiectus* and *necessitas*, which are contrasted with *ratio atque ordo*. For the agreement of *postulabat*, see § 142.

364. *cum legiones resisterent, -que prospectus impediretur*: § 172. *aliae alia in parte*: (some in another part), *some in one place, and others in another*. Such an abridged form of expression is called *brachylogy*.

365. *saepibusque*, etc.: repeat the *cum* here to keep the connection clear; *and since*, etc. *saepibus interiectis*: *by the intervening hedges*; § 264, 7.

367. *neque*: *neither*; this begins the main clause. *neque provideri (poterat)*: impersonal; the subject is the clause *quid—esset*; *nor could it be foreseen what need there would be in each part (of the field)*.

370. *fortunae eventus*: *vicissitudes of fortune; fortunes*.

## CHAPTER 23.

Having described the circumstances under which the battle began, Caesar now begins to tell what actually happened,—what the *fortunae eventus varii* were. He begins with the success of his own left wing.

372. *cursu—confectos*: translate this after *compulerunt* and its modifiers and the parenthesis; (out of breath from running and weariness and exhausted with wounds), *because they were tired out with running and (so many) were wounded (by the javelins)*.

375. *conantes*: accusative, agreeing with *eos* understood; (*when they were*) *trying*. *transire*: i.e. *to recross the river*. *gladiis*: if this modified *secuti*, it would probably be before it, so we may conclude that it modifies *interfecerunt*. *impeditam*: (*while thus*) *embarrassed; by taking them at this disadvantage*.

376. *ipsi*: i.e. *legionis nonae et decimae milites*, l. 371.

377. *locum iniquum*: *an unfavorable position*; i.e. they were now fighting up hill.

378. *rursus—proelio*: *resistentes hostes* is accusative, object of *coniecerunt*, *the enemy, (who were) beginning to resist again and trying to renew the battle*.

381. *ex—proeliabantur*: *were fighting from their higher position right on the bank of the river*; i.e. they had driven the Viromandui back down the hill, but the latter were making a stand on the edge of the water and were between this and the Romans, who were still fighting down hill.

The plural (*ripis*) refers to different points on the same side of the river.

382. *at totis nudatis*: *and so, while the whole*, etc. At the start the eighth and eleventh legions were in front of the camp, the ninth and tenth on the left, and the twelfth and seventh on the right. By the success of those in the front and on the left, and because of their pursuit of the flying enemy, the places they had occupied were left open and the camp exposed on these two sides.

385. *confertissimo agmine*: § 78. *duce Boduognato*: *under the lead of*; § 88.

386. *summam*: see vocabulary. *imperii*: § 47. *ad eum locum*: where they saw the two legions.

387. *ab aperto latere circumvenire*: (to come around on the exposed flank), *to turn their right flank*. They had numbers enough so that those in front could divide and pass to either side of the two legions so as to attack them more advantageously, and, at the same time, those coming behind could attack them and keep them busy in front.

388. *summum castrorum locum*: (the highest part of the camp's location), *the top of the hill where the camp was*; § 113.

## CHAPTER 24.

More than anything that has preceded, the description of this battle marks Caesar as an artist in literature. He begins with the left, the point of the easiest and most complete Roman success, then takes the less decisive victory of the centre, and at the close of Chapter 23 he hints of disaster on the right. Chapter 24 might be omitted; but like a dramatist he waits before telling the outcome of the Nervian attack, and details the movements of the cavalry, the camp-followers and the mule-drivers in such a manner as to present to the reader in the most vivid form the picture of the crushing reverse which had apparently been inflicted on the Roman arms.

389. *levis armaturae*: see l. 162.

390. *quos pulsos (esse) dixeram*: either, *whom I had said to have been routed*, or, *who, I had said, had been routed*; do not mix the two.

391. *cum reciperent*: § 182; the action is progressive.

392. *adversis, occurrebant, partem*: see vocabulary.

393. *porta*: sc. *castrorum*.

394. *summo*: § 113.

395. *egressi*: i.e. *a castris*; they had followed the ninth and tenth legions.

396. *versari*: (were turning about), *were actually*; it is a strong synonym for *esse*. *praecipites*: § 114.

398. *oriebatur*: (was rising), *began to be heard*. *alii—partem*: compare ll. 364, 365.

401. *virtutis*: § 40. *opinio*: see vocabulary.

402. *cum*: conjunction, introducing *vidissent*; § 182.

405. *dispersos dissipatosque fugere*: *were fleeing, dispersed and scattered*. As a result of this report, the Treveri lost pretty much all their respect for Caesar and gave him repeated trouble. Had such a report gone out three years later, it is probable that there would instantly have been a general uprising of Gaul.

## CHAPTER 25.

For the time being, we have lost sight of Caesar. The last mention of him was in l. 354. Notice how he brings out his own part in the battle. He had started the successful charge on the left. Now, after the scene showing the desperate pass to which affairs had come without him, he reappears and assumes command in person.

409. *Caesar, etc.*: the structure of this, the longest sentence in the *Bellum Gallicum*, is as follows: *Caesar, . . . profectus, ubi . . . vidit* (l. 412) . . . *vidit* (l. 421), *processit . . . -que . . . iussit*; each *vidit* governs some clauses of indirect discourse; *quartae—posset* consists of ablatives absolute and their modifiers, giving various circumstances; *scuto—detracto* is an ablative absolute that is practically coördinate with *profectus* (l. 410). The sentence should first be mastered as it stands, then broken up into shorter sentences in translation, as suggested below. *cohortatione*: see ll. 346–348.

410. *signis collatis*: ablative absolute denoting cause (§ 246, 2); *and (that), because the standards were collected, etc.*

411. *confertos*: *being (therefore) huddled together*. *sibi ipsos esse impedimento*: (themselves were for a hindrance to themselves), *hindered each other*; §§ 32 and 133.

416. *multis—confecto*: (overcome by many and severe wounds), *who had received many severe wounds*. When *multi* is followed by another attributive adjective, the two are regularly connected by a conjunction, contrary to the English idiom.

418. *tardiores esse, etc.*: here begins the indirect discourse which is the object of the second *vidit* (l. 421); this verb should be translated here, repeating the *ubi* for clearness, and supplying a conjunction; (*and when*) *he saw that the rest were, etc.* *tardiores*: § 116. *non*

**nullos:** for clearness express the introductory particle *that* (§ 220) before each clause of indirect discourse; and *that some*, etc. **ab:** *at or in*; § 98.

419. **deserto loco:** ablative absolute, (their place having been deserted), *deserting their posts*. **proelio:** § 65. **discedere:** progressive, *were withdrawing*; so also **vitare**. **hostes neque:** = **et hostes non**; and *that the enemy did not*.

420. **subeuntes intermittere:** an example of what is called the *supplementary participle*, agreeing with the subject but really adding to the predicate; *cease coming*. **ab:** § 98.

421. **neque:** see note on **neque**, l. 419; take the negative with **ullum rem esse in angusto:** (that the thing was in a narrow place), *that a crisis had come*; compare our colloquial expression, "things were in a tight place."

422. **scuto detracto:** (a shield having been seized), *seizing a shield*; see note on l. 409. **ab novissimis:** see l. 418.

## CLIPPEI.

423. **[uni]:** omit. See note on Book I, l. 433. **militi:** § 29.

424. **centurionibusque appellatis:** *and, calling*, etc. "Among them (his soldiers) there was hardly one not known to him by name or one who had not formed more or less of a personal relation to the general." —MOMMSEN.

425. **cohortatus:** (*and*) *encouraging*.

426. **quo posset:** § 160.

The sentence may now be broken up as follows. Make the first statement include what he saw when he came, i.e. as far as **vidit**, l. 412,

—"When Caesar reached the right wing, he saw that . . ." Next, state in simple sentences what is told in the following ablatives absolute,—  
 "All the centurions were killed . . ." Then bring in the second *vidit* with its indirect discourse,—*"He saw also that . . ."* Finally tell what he did,—*"So, seizing a shield, . . ."*

The effect of this long sentence may be explained. Caesar takes in at a glance all the varying conditions of the field. With the same instantaneous decision he takes his resolution to put his own life to the hazard, the last resort of a desperate position. All the confusion of the field, all the quickness and resoluteness of Caesar's marvellous mind, are shown in the structure of this sentence, and by this single event in his life he made his reputation as one of the world's greatest commanders secure. *He did not lose his head.*

427. *cuius*: § 135.      *militibus*: § 27.

428. *cum cuperet*: § 172.

429. *in extremis suis rebus*: (in his own extreme affairs), *though his own danger was extreme.*

## CHAPTER 26.

431. *Caesar cum*: see note on l. 254.

433. *conversa*: see vocabulary. Just what manœuvre this phrase describes we do not know, but it appears that one line, probably the third, took a new front: to right, to left, or to the rear. Here if the third line of the twelfth legion swung around to the left, and that of the seventh legion to the right, the two legions would then form three sides of a rectangle with double line to the front where the attack was heaviest. This formation could then easily be closed in to nearly a hollow triangle if necessary. See plan, and Book I, l. 461.

435. *cum—ferrent*: (since some bore aid to others), *since they aided each other.*      *aversi*: see vocabulary.

438. *impedimentis*: § 32.      *proelio nuntiato*: *learning of the battle.*

439. *cursu incitato, conspiciebantur*: *quickened their speed and began to be seen*; § 148.

441. *gererentur*: see vocabulary.

442. *subsidio*: like *impedimentis*, l. 438.

443. *qui cum*: *when they.*      *qui—esset*: (in what place the thing was), *what was the condition of affairs.*

446. *reliqui*: see vocabulary. The whole phrase means that they came as fast as their legs would carry them.

## CHAPTER 27.

448. **qui:** (*those*) *who*. **volneribus confecti:** (finished with wounds), *severely wounded*. **procubuissent:** § 168.

449. **scutis:** § 72. **innixi:** *leaning*; § 261. **So conspicati** below. **calones:** *sc.* et before it.

450. **inermes:** (*though*) *unarmed*.

451. **vero:** emphasizing equites; *while* THE CAVALRY.

452. **pugnando:** § 82.

453. **extrema spe salutis:** (their last hope of safety), *their last stand*.

455. (**eis**) **iacentibus:** modifies **insisterent** (§ 27); observe that this cannot be a form of **iacio**.

456. **his**, etc.: the result clause, **ut . . . insisterent atque . . . pugnarent**, is continued by **remitterent**; to show this clearly, repeat a part of the main statement before beginning the ablatives absolute; (*such courage, indeed, that,*) *when these*, etc.

457. **qui:** as in l. 448. **ut:** see vocabulary.

458. **pila intercepta remitterent:** (sent back intercepted javelins), *caught javelins as they flew past and threw them back*. **ut non—deberet:** this clause expresses the result of all that has preceded. **nequiquam:** modifies **ausos esse**; translate after it.

459. **virtutis:** § 44. **homines:** the subject of **iudicari deberet** (impersonal) is **homines tantae virtutis nequiquam ausos esse**, etc. The sense is, that the Belgians were so brave that they were justified in expecting success in the execution of their daring plan. Nowhere else does Caesar pay such a tribute to the Gauls, which is at the same time an indication of the peril he had himself so narrowly escaped.

461. **ex:** *instead of*.

462. **animi magnitudo:** (the greatness of their courage), *their great courage*.

“The two legions which guarded the baggage had heard of the fight and were marching up at their utmost speed. Suddenly above the ridge they appeared, and presently the tenth, despatched by Labienus, recrossed the river, hurried up the hill-side and threw themselves upon the enemy’s rear. The effect was electrical. Even the wounded leaned on their shields and plied their swords; the scattered camp-followers plucked up courage and turned upon the enemy; while the cavalry did all they could to atone for their flight.

“The Nervii in their turn were hemmed in. But in their last agony they made good their proud boast [ll. 260, 261]. Man by man, beneath the javelin and the thrust of the short sword, their front ranks fell.

Higher rose the heap of prostrate bodies; and leaping into them, the survivors snatched up the fallen javelins and flung them back, till they too fell; and all was still. So ended this wild fight, a soldier's battle, and withal the battle of a great man. Within an hour it was over, fought and wellnigh lost and won."—HOLMES.

## CHAPTER 28.

463. *prope ad internecionem*: this is greatly overstated. They had plenty of men left, as events three years later proved.

464. *natu*: § 82. *quos coniectos dixeramus*: see note on l. 390.

466. *cum*: § 172. *victoribus*: § 28.

467. *impeditum (esse)*: *stood in the way of*.

468. *consensu*: § 86.

470. *sexcentis*: sc. *senatoribus*.

471. *vix*: modifies *quingentos*. *qui possent*: § 168.

473. *usus (esse)*: we would use the present infinitive. This is a cynical confession that his humane action was also partly politic.

474. *uti*: (to use), *to return to*.

475. *finitimis*: (their neighbors), *the chiefs of the neighboring tribes*.

*The Aduatuci also are subdued.*

## CHAPTER 29.

478. *venirent*: progressive. *nuntiata*: see note on l. 438. *ex itinere*: modifies *reverterunt*; it means, *without stopping to encamp*.

480. *sua omnia*: sc. *possessions*; § 111. *egregie natura munitum*: (conspicuously fortified by nature), *naturally well fortified*.

481. *quod cum*: *while this*; § 199. *ex—partibus*: *on all sides in succession*; if one began at a certain place and followed around, he found himself facing ledges and cliffs all the way until he got nearly around.

484. *pedum*: §§ 45 and 70. *duplici altissimo muro*: = *duobus altissimis muris*; these had a space between them so that, if the enemy succeeded in getting through the first, they would be more or less between two fires.

485. *tum*: i.e. when Caesar arrived. Notice tenses. *magni ponderis*: § 44.

486. *in muro collocabant*: i.e. for ammunition.

488. *iis impedimentis depositis*: (that baggage having been put down), *had deposited that baggage . . . and*.

489. *agere ac portare*: (to drive and carry), *to take*. The *impedimenta* included not only the ordinary baggage of an army, but cattle, sheep, etc., taken along for food; also prisoners and captured spoils. The Latin word (literally, *hindrances*) is much more inclusive in its meaning than the English *baggage*. We cannot speak of *driving baggage*, so we must use one less accurate word that will combine the idea of the two employed in Latin.

490. *custodiam ex suis*: (a watch of theirs), *some of their number as a watch*, to take care of it. *praesidium*: a guard, to defend it.

491. *eorum*: (their), *of the rest of the two tribes*. *obitum*: see note on Book I, l. 769.

492. *annos*: § 14. *alias*: adverb. *cum bellum inferrent, illatum (bellum) defenderent*: (since they were either bringing on war and warding off war brought on), *since they were waging offensive and defensive war*.

493. *eorum omnium*: *of all those concerned*.

494. *pace facta*: in translating, make this a main clause, like *impedimentis depositis*, ll. 488, 490.

#### CHAPTER 30.

495. *primo*: adverb.

496. *faciebant*: § 148. The subject is *Aduatuci*.

498. *milium*: sc. *pedum* from l. 497. *circummuniti*: (having been), *being hemmed in* by Caesar. *oppido*: § 93.

499. *ubi, vineis actis, etc.*: *when, after the vineae, etc.*

500. *constitui*: progressive; *was being built*. *irridere*: § 258.

501. *a*: see *ab*, l. 122.

502. *spatio*: § 81. *instrueretur*: § 170. *quibusnam, etc.*: (*asking*) *with what, etc.*; §§ 223 and 227.

503. *praesertim homines*: *especially (being) men*. *nam, etc.*: reserve the parenthesis until the end.

504. *omnibus*: emphatic, including Belgians, Celts and Aquitanians.

505. *contemptui*: see vocabulary and § 32.

506. *sese posse confiderent*: *did they trust that they could*; § 243.

#### CHAPTER 31.

507. *moveri, appropinquare*: progressive; see line 500; sc. *turrim* as subject.

509. *de*: see l. 111. *qui, etc.*: the construction is: *qui, locuti, dixerunt*; (who, having spoken, said), *who spoke and said*. *ad*

**hunc modum:** *to this effect*; this is explained by the indirect discourse **non—possent**; **dixerunt** governs **se—permittere**.

510. **non se existimare:** the negative makes a difference in the form of translation; **existimamus**, *we think*; **non existimamus**, *we do not think*; indirect discourse of the latter, *that they did not think (that, etc.)*.

511. **qui possent:** § 172.      **tanta celeritate:** § 78.

512. **se:** this, as shown by **suaque omnia**, is object accusative; strictly, another **se** is to be supplied as subject accusative, but it is regularly omitted in such cases. This phrase is the formula for “surrender at discretion,” or “unconditional surrender.”

513. **unum petere:** *sc. se* as subject; keep the Latin order; *one thing they sought*. **unum** is explained by the clause **ne—spoliaret** (§ 208), *that he would not*, etc. In translating, place the *that* before the *si* clause. **petere ac deprecari:** (*sought and entreated*), *most earnestly begged*. Latin frequently emphasizes one idea by employing two words of similar meaning to express it; see **clementia ac mansuetudine**, l. 514.

514. **pro sua:** *in accordance with his usual*; this force of **suus** is not uncommon. **audirent:** the direct discourse would be the imperfect indicative, *were (continually) hearing of*.

515. **esse conservandos:** § 278.      **se:** i.e. **Aduatucos**; § 123.

516. **armis:** § 65.      **sibi:** § 33.

517. **virtuti:** § 23.      **traditis armis:** *if their arms were surrendered*; § 264, 3.

518. **possent:** § 228. It might be expected that this would have been treated as a main clause, with the verb in the infinitive. **praestare:** direct discourse, **praestat**, impersonal, *it is better* (subject, **pati**); indirect discourse, *that it was better* (subject, **pati**). **si—deducerentur:** *if they were brought to this pass*, i.e. if they must submit to somebody; § 242, 1.

519. **a:** *at the hands of*.

520. **per cruciatum interfici:** (to be killed through torture), *to be tortured to death*.

## CHAPTER 32.

522. **merito eorum:** (because of their merit), *because they deserved it*; § 84.      **si dedidissent:** § 242, 5.

524. **prius quam attigisset:** § 181.

525. **nisi armis traditis:** see note on l. 342.

526. **in:** *in the case of*.

527. **quam:** § 139.

529. *facere*: progressive; see l. 500.

531. *summam altitudinem*: *the greatest height*, i.e. the height where it was greatest.

534. *portis patefactis*: *they opened . . . and*, etc.      *die*: § 89.  
*pace*: § 73.      *usi*: see vocabulary.

### CHAPTER 33.

535. *sub vesperum*: *towards evening*. Caesar uses *sub* in a temporal sense only with *lucem*, *occasum solis*, *noctem* and *vesperum*.

536. *quam*: § 139.

537. *ante inito consilio*: (the plan having been gone into before), *according to a plan previously arranged*.      *ut intellectum est*: that is, by the subsequent attack.

539. *denique*: see vocabulary.      *indigentius*: the standard of comparison is often omitted when it is self-evident; so here, supply *than usual*.

540. *partim—partim*: this is in distributive apposition with *illi*, the subject of *fecerunt* below; it may be loosely translated: *some—others*.

541. *ex cortice*: § 67.      *viminibus intextis*: § 71.

542. *pellibus*: § 71.

543. *qua*: adverb.

545. *fecerunt*: the whole sentence beginning with *illi* is apparently very complicated, but, like most of Caesar's long sentences, is clear and easy if the proper relation of the clauses is observed.

547. *concursum est*: (it was run together), *the soldiers all ran*; § 148. Treat in the same way *pugnatum ab hostibus est*.      *ita*: *as*.      *in—salutis*: see l. 453.

548. *a viris fortibus pugnari debuit*: compare l. 547.

550. *iacerent*: (*were so situated as*) *to throw*; § 168.

551. *consisteret*: see vocabulary.      *ad*: adverb.

553. *diei*: § 56.

555. *Caesar vendidit*: Caesar's constant purpose in dealing with the Gauls was, indeed, to subdue them to Rome, but to make subjection as easy as possible for them; to absorb them ultimately into the Roman state as contented people, rather than to hold them down, discontented, under an iron rule. To do this he granted them easy terms, but insisted that these be strictly kept. So when a tribe broke faith with him they were made a terrible example, for the warning and ultimate benefit of the rest.

556. *milium*: explanatory to *numerus*; § 36. The translation should be the nominative.

## II. THE EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO THE AREMORICAN STATES.

### CHAPTER 34.

559. *miserat*: this is the first intimation of the detachment of Crassus. It must have been after the battle with the Nervii, for all the eight legions were engaged there. Crassus seems to have been a very energetic officer, who was quite capable of independent command.

561. *Oceanum*: except for the description of the geography of Gaul in Book I, Chapter 1, we have had no reference to the ocean. Of course the Atlantic is meant, although it was understood to include also the North Sea, into which the Rhine empties ; see Book IV, l. 138.

## III. OCCURRENCES AT THE CLOSE OF THE YEAR.

### CHAPTER 35.

564. *omni Gallia pacata*: this ablative absolute should be distinguished in translation from *his rebus gestis*. The latter is the means by which Gaul was subdued: *when all Gaul had been subdued by these operations*.

565. *opinio*: see vocabulary.

566. *incolerent*: § 203.

567. *qui pollicerentur*: § 162. *daturas, facturas*: feminine, because *se* refers to *nationibus*. The conjunction *et* is omitted between these two participles, to increase the effect. There is thus brought about a kind of rhyme, which under ordinary circumstances the Romans avoided.

569. *inita aestate*: see vocabulary and l. 537.

570. *quae civitates*: (what states), *those states which*. in Carnutes, etc.: modifies *deductis*.

572. *legionibus . . . deductis*: the location of these legions was thus such that the Gallic tribes on different sides of the river could not combine. This was characteristic of all Caesar's plans.

573. *ex litteris*: on receipt of despatches. *supplicatio*: this was a religious ceremony, a thanksgiving and a rejoicing for victory, with which the people were ordered by the senate to honor the gods when there was cause for it. And now there *was* cause for it; as Plutarch says: "The enemies from the north who had so long threatened Italy had been followed to their remote fastnesses, conquered, slaughtered and sold." Now for the first time the republic was released from the fear of Gallic invasion, the only dread the Romans had.

574. *quod*: the antecedent is the preceding clause; (*an honor*) which *accidit nulli*: note the position of the pronoun; *had been bestowed upon no one*. This action of the senate was partly spontaneous as shown above, partly political; for no doubt Caesar's supporters made the most of the opportunity to shower honors upon him for political effect. The longest previous thanksgiving was of twelve days, in honor of Pompey after the war with Mithradates.

## BOOK III.

### I. WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES.

Fall of 57 B.C.

#### CHAPTERS 1-6.

After the campaign of 57 B.C. was finished, the legions, eight in all, were sent to various parts of Gaul for wintering. The twelfth legion, under Galba, was sent to open up the road leading to Italy through the Alps by way of the pass now known as the Great St. Bernard, the shortest route between Gaul and the valley of the Po. Galba's course was up the south side of the valley of the Rhone. This valley was narrow, with the mountains increasing in height as he proceeded. His camp at Octodurus was on the river Dranse near its confluence with the Rhone, upon the site of the modern Martigny. The events narrated in these chapters took place in the fall of 57 B.C., and might properly have been included in Book II, from which they were separated because perhaps of the anti-climax which they would form to the triumphant close of the latter.

#### CHAPTER 1.

*Certain tribes, situated among the Alps, rebel; they are subdued by Galba, one of Caesar's legati, who afterward returns into the Province.*

1. *proficisceretur*: for the circumstance, see Book II, ll. 568, 569. Note that the imperfect indicative was used there and that here the same tense of the subjunctive has the corresponding progressive force.

4. *ad summas Alpes*: i.e. to the watershed between the Rhone and the Po.

5. *iter . . . patefieri volebat*: keep the Latin order; *the road . . . he wished to be opened*. This route was used by Napoleon in 1800. *quo*: § 71.

6. *cum*: (*but only*) *with*. *periculo*: i.e. danger of attack by the lawless mountaineers. *portoriis*: if they let the traders pass unmolested, it was because the latter paid them tolls.

7. *huic*: i.e. Galba; § 128. The direct object of *permisit* is the clause *uti—collocaret*. *si arbitraretur*: §§ 229 and 242, 5; it modifies *collocaret*. *opus*: indeclinable; see vocabulary.

9. *proeliis factis*, etc.: this is the first of five ablatives absolute; the agent of the action of the first two is Galba, of the last three the Alpine tribes; so while we might begin by saying, "Galba, having fought," etc., we cannot for the fourth say, "having sent ambassadors." Translate the first two as main verbs and the last three by a causal clause; *Galba fought . . . , and captured . . . , and then, since ambassadors were sent . . . , decided*.

17. *vacuam relictam*: *left vacant*; *vacuam* is a predicate adjective.

18. *ab his*: i.e. the Gauls. It modifies *vacuam*; § 65. *cohortibus*: dative with *attribuit*.

## CHAPTER 2.

20. *dies*: nominative.

22. *certior factus est*: put the *that*, which is to introduce the English indirect discourse, immediately after this phrase. *concesserat*: § 240. Contrast with *impenderent*, l. 23, which follows the general rule (§ 228).

23. *montesque*: *and (that) the mountains*.

25. *id*: *it*, explained by *ut—caperent*. *aliquot causis*: explained by *primum quod—despiciebant*, and *tum etiam quod—existimabant*; and continued in the next sentence by *accedebat quod—dolebant et—sibi persuasum habebant*.

27. *quod*, etc.: *propter paucitatem despiciebant* is to be translated directly after the *quod*. *legionem*: *the (single) legion*. *neque eam plenissimam*: (nor this very full), *this indeed having very small numbers*. *detractis duabus cohortibus et compluribus absentibus*: § 264, 2.

31. *cum decurrerent*: *would rush down*; § 172.

33. *accedebat*: see vocabulary. *suos liberos abstractos (esse)*: the indirect discourse construction governed by *dolebant*.

34. *obsidum nomine*: § 35. *Romanos conari*: the indirect discourse construction, object of *habebant*, having *persuasum* agreeing with it as predicate participle; (they had that-the-Romans-were-trying, persuaded to themselves), *they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were trying*.

35. *possessionis*: sc. *causā*, *for the sake*; § 54.

37. *adiungere*: complementary infinitive with *conari*, like *occupare*.

## CHAPTER 3.

38. *hibernorum*: on the winter quarters; § 40.

39. *de*: for.

40. *satis, provisum*: see vocabulary.

41. *deditione—acceptis*: now that they had surrendered and he had received their hostages; compare ll. 9–11. *nihil—timendum (esse)*: (that nothing was to be feared concerning war), that he need have no fear of war.

46. *neque subsidio veniri (posset)*: impersonal; (and it could not be come by any one for aid), and since no aid could come; § 32.

47. *interclusis itineribus*: § 264, 2. *prope—salute*: (safety having been now nearly despaired of), since many now almost despaired of successful resistance.

48. *eius modi*: of this sort; to this effect; § 44.

51. *parti*: § 23. *placuit*: see vocabulary. *reservato*: to reserve . . . and.

## CHAPTER 4.

54. *spatio*: sc. *temporis*. *ut vix tempus daretur*: § 165. *rebus collocandis atque administrandis*: for assigning duties and carrying out the measures. For the case, see § 32. *constituisset*: § 203.

56. *decurrere, conicere*: § 258. So five other infinitives below.

58. *ex loco superiore*: i.e. from the rampart.

59. *nudata*: being stripped of.

61. *hoc superari*: (were overcome in respect to this), were at a disadvantage in this respect.

62. *defessi*: (when) tired out. *integris viribus*: § 80.

63. *quarum rerum*: with *nihil*; § 47.

64. *non modo*: supply another *non*, which may be omitted when a negative (here *ne quidem*) follows and when the two expressions are used with substantives which are connected with a common predicate; contrast Book II, l. 293. *defesso (facultas non dabatur) excendendi*: to a tired (soldier) was opportunity not offered, of withdrawing, etc.

65. *saucio*: like *defesso*. *eius loci relinquendi*: of leaving the place, explained by *ubi constiterat*. *facultas dabatur*: this is expressed only once in Latin, but it would best be repeated in translating, using different words, *was chance given*.

## CHAPTER 5.

67. horis sex: § 69.                      pugnaretur: § 144.  
 69. languidioribusque nostris: *and, because our men were fighting without much spirit.*  
 70. resque, etc.: *and matters had come to the last degree of desperation.*  
 73. confectum vulneribus: see Book II, l. 417, and note.  
 74. et consilii magni et virtutis: §§ 44 and 110.  
 75. unam esse spem, si, etc.: (that there was one hope, if they should, etc.), *that the only hope was to make . . . and try.*  
 76. extremum auxilium: *their last resort.*  
 78. certiores: see vocabulary.                      (ut) intermitterent: § 212.  
 79. tantum modo: see vocabulary under tantum.  
 80. post: notice that this cannot be a preposition.

## CHAPTER 6.

82. iussi sunt: sc. facere, which governs quod.  
 84. sui colligendi: § 273, 1.  
 85. in spem venerant: see vocabulary under venio.                      potius-  
 dorum castrorum: § 273, 2.  
 86. circumventos interficiunt: *they surround and kill.*  
 87. milibus amplius XXX: doubtless an exaggeration.                      quem  
 numerum: (which number), *the number which.* quem numerum venisse  
 is the subject of constabat. It cannot be translated literally, but  
 constabat must be made parenthetical; *the number which, it was ad-  
 mitted, had come.*  
 91. armis: § 65; the Gauls threw them away in their flight.                      exu-  
 tis: agrees with copiis.  
 92. saepius: see vocabulary.  
 93. alio consilio: *with one design*; § 78.  
 94. aliis rebus: *other matters*; § 27.                      meminerat: what tense in  
 translation?                      viderat: (but) had seen.

## II. THE WAR WITH THE VENETI.

56 B.C.

## CHAPTERS 7-16.

The seventh legion under Crassus had been stationed among the Andes near the west coast. The remaining six spent the winter in the

valley of the Liger with the purpose of preventing communication between northern and southern Gaul. Caesar spent the winter in Illyricum. The various tribes of the west coast were as yet unsubdued, and did not propose to submit tamely to the conqueror. Trusting in their natural defences and their skill in seamanship, they determined to try conclusions with Caesar. This is the campaign described in Chapters 7–16. The allies of these people on the northwest were next subdued (Chapters 17–19), while Crassus was carrying on a successful campaign in Aquitania (Chapters 20–27). The year ended with a campaign against the Morini and the Menapii in the extreme northwest. Thus all the operations of the year 56 B.C. were confined to the coast regions of the west and north.

*The Aremorican tribes, following the example of the Veneti, demand the return of their hostages.*

#### CHAPTER 7.

102. *inita hieme*: see note on Book II, l. 18.

103. *Illyricum*: Caesar made no effort to enlarge the limits of this province, since it offered no such opportunities as did Gaul. It gave him no trouble except on one unimportant occasion (see Book V, Chapter 1).

104. *regiones cognoscere*: *become acquainted with the country*.

106. *adulescens*: see vocabulary and Book I, Chapter 52. *proximus*: this means *the nearest* of any of Caesar's commanders. *mare Oceanum*: see vocabulary under *mare*, and, for the case, § 33, note.

107. *is*: § 122.

108. *praefectos tribunosque*: see Introduction.

#### CHAPTER 8.

112. *hulus*: *the last named*.

113. *omnis—earum*: (of all the sea coast of these sections), *of all the maritime states in these sections* (Holmes). *orae maritimae* = *maritimarum civitatum*, objective genitive modifying *auctoritas*; *regionum* is possessive genitive modifying *orae*.

114. *plurimas*: *the most* (i.e. of any of these states). *quibus—consuerunt*: this is parenthetical, just an interesting fact that Caesar inserts about them, having nothing in particular to do with their prestige, except that it made them a rugged set of men, thoroughly accus-

tomed to the sea in all its moods. These characteristics gave Caesar a chance to show his ability in a new kind of warfare, and he proved equal to the task.

115. *scientia atque usu*: *knowledge (of) and experience (in)*; for the case, see § 82. *rerum nauticarum*: § 40.

116. *in magno*, etc.: a phrase primarily denoting place, and limiting *vectigalia habent*. It also expresses cause as an attendant circumstance. Translate: (in the great violence of the vast and open sea), *on a coast exposed to the full violence of the sea*.

117. *paucis portibus interiectis*: (only a few harbors having been thrown among), *and in view of the fact that there are only a few harbors on this part of the coast, these some distance apart*. *quos ipsi tenent*: (which they themselves hold), *and in their own possession*.

118. *omnes habent . . . vectigales*: *they hold all . . . tributary*. Distinguish *vectigal*, noun, and *vectigalis*, adjective. *ab—Sili*: (by these a beginning was made of retaining Silius), *these began by retaining Silius*.

119. *eos*: i.e. Silius and Velanius. *se*: i.e. the Veneti; subject of *recuperaturos (esse)*.

122. *subita*: *sudden*. *repentina*: *unexpected*. See Book II, Ch. 1.

125. *eundem*: (the same), *together*. *fortuna*: *battle*.

126. *ut mallent*: in translation express the verb with *permanere* and let it be understood with *perferre*.

128. *quam*: used as a comparative conjunction with the *magis* which appears in *mallent* (= *magis vellent*).

130. *si velit*: §§ 227 and 242, 1.

131. *remittat*: § 245.

*Caesar prepares a fleet to subdue them.*

## CHAPTER 9.

133. *quod—longius*: this clause modifies *iubet*. *longius*: § 116. *interim*: i.e. while he was on his way to the scene of action.

134. *in—Ligeri*: most of Caesar's troops had spent the winter in the valley of this river.

136. *cum primum—potuit*: (when first he was able through the time of the year), *as soon as the season permitted*; about the first of May.

139. *simul*: *at the same time* (that they heard this news). It modifies *instituunt*. *quod intellegebant*: § 170. *quantum—admisissent*: object of *intellegebant*: § 243. *in se admittere*: (ad-

mit to themselves), *commit*. *facinus*: explained by the indirect discourse *legatos—coniectos, that legati*, etc.

140. *quod nomen*: (which name), *a name which*. *ad*: among.

142. *pro*: in view of.

144. *hoc maiore spe*: *their hope (being) greater for this reason*. *multum*: greatly; § 13. *natura*: § 72.

147. *neque nostros exercitus posse confidebant*: *and they were confident that our armies could not*.

148. *diutius*: longer (than the winter).

149. *ut omnia acciderent*: *though everything was happening*; § 199. This force of *ut*, its only occurrence in Caesar, is clearly shown by the following *tamen*.

150. *opinionem*: see vocabulary. *tamen se plurimum navibus posse*: *still (they considered) that they had a very strong navy*; §§ 13 and 82.

151. *Romanos*: *and that the Romans*. *facultatem*: great number.

153. *aliam*: see vocabulary. *navigationem*: managing ships.

154. *concluso mari*: what sea is meant?

157. *Caesarem—gesturum*: indirect discourse, subject of *constabat*.

#### CHAPTER 10.

163. *multa*: many (things), *considerations*. *ad*: to (undertake).

164. *iniuriae*: in apposition with *multa*; so the following *nominales*, and the clause *ne—arbitrarentur*. *retentorum*: § 265.

165. *obisdibus datis*: translate like *post deditionem, after giving*, etc.; § 264, 1.

166. *in primis*: see vocabulary under *prior*. *ne—arbitrarentur*: (the fear) that, etc.; § 211. *hac parte neglecta*: § 264, 3.

167. *idem*: subject of *licere*. Impersonal verbs usually have only clauses or infinitives as subjects, but they may have a neuter pronoun.

168. *cum intellegeret*: § 172.

170. *studere, odisse*: §§ 140 and 221, note.

171. *prius quam conspirarent*: § 181.

#### CHAPTER 11.

174. *flumini*: § 33. Contrast l. 106. *huic*: § 128.

175. *adeat*: § 212.

176. *auxilio*: to help them; § 32. *arcessiti*: sc. *esse*.

183. *qui distinendam curet*: §§ 162 and 270.

186. *cum primum posset*: § 228; sc. *classis* as subject.

187. *copiis*: § 77.

The arrangement of his troops as described in this chapter well illustrates Caesar's skill as a commander. His purpose always was to keep his barbarian foes well scattered. During all of his campaigns in Gaul he had a comparatively small army. His only means of success, therefore, against the vast hordes of the Gauls was to "divide and conquer."

*Description of the towns and ships of the Veneti.*

CHAPTER 12.

188. *eius modi*: (of this sort), *such*. *fere*: generally. *ut*  
*haberent*: § 165. *posita*: being situated.

189. *in extremis*: on the end of; § 113. *neque pedibus*: neither  
 (by feet), by land; correlative to *neque navibus*, l. 191.

190. *cum incitavisset*: § 182. *[bis]*: omit.

191. *spatio*: § 105.

192. *afflictarentur*: would be stranded; § 242, 5. The condition is here understood,—if they should attempt to approach.

193. *utraque re*: (on account of each thing), on both accounts, whether the tide was flood or ebb. *ac si*, etc.: the structure of the sentence is as follows: *ac si quando*, . . . *superati*, (*extruso—adaequatis*) . . . *coeperant*, *magno appulso* . . . *deportabant*, etc.; and if ever, conquered . . . , (*extruso—adaequatis*), they had begun . . . , bringing up a number of ships, they would put on board, etc.

195. *aggere ac molibus*: ablative of means with *extruso*. *atque*: connects *extruso mari* with his (i.e. *aggere ac molibus*) *adaequatis moenibus*: § 27.

196. *fortunis suis*: § 28.

197. *cuius rei*: (of which thing), of which, referring to the ships.

198. *deportabant*: notice translation above; § 148. *omnia*: notice the emphatic position; they could load the ship at leisure with all their effects.

202. *magnis—portibus*: because the tides were high and the harbors few and (almost none) far between.

In lines 193–196 Caesar gives us a running description of the means he used to attack the strongholds of the Veneti. This has been interpreted to mean that he built two parallel dykes or embankments from the land side toward the town. At low tide, work could be carried on; and when they were joined to the town, the water was shut out and a dry passage-way from the mainland was made. This availed nothing

for the reason that, when they reached the town, the inhabitants had sailed away.

## CHAPTER 13.

204. *ad hunc modum*: *in this way*.

205. *carinae planiores*: *erant* may be supplied here and below, but it is not necessary, as we have the same abbreviated form of expression in Eng., *bottoms flatter*.

206. *nostrarum navium*: (*those*) *of*, etc.      *quo possent*: § 160.  
*vada ac decessum aestus*: (the shallows and the ebbing of the tide), *the shallows left by the ebbing tide*; § 280.

209. *totae*: (whole), *wholly, entirely*.      *ex robore*: § 67.

210. *ex—trabibus*: (out of foot-in-thickness timbers), *consisting of timbers a foot thick*.      *digiti pollicis crassitudine*: modifying *clavis*; (characterized by the thickness of the thumb finger), *as thick as a man's thumb*; § 80.

212. *pro*: *instead of*.

213. *pro*: *as*; translate after *confectae*.

214. *eius*: (i.e. *lini*), *its*.      *eo quod . . . quod*: *for the following reason, which . . . because*.

215. *veri*: see vocabulary and § 58.      *tantas tempestates Oceani*: (so great storms of the ocean), *such severe storms as those on the ocean*.

216. *tantos impetus ventorum*: (so great attacks of the winds), *such violent winds*.      *sustineri*: sc. *velis non satis commode posse*: *could not very well be met with sails*.

218. *cum—classi*: *between these ships and our fleet*; § 28.      *eius modi*: see l. 188.

219. *ut praestaret*: § 165; subject, *nostra classis*, *it*.      *una*: *only*.

220. *pro*: *in view of*.      *illis*: § 33.

221. *his*: § 23.      *nostrae*: sc. *naves*.      *rostro*: (with the beak), *by ramming*.

223. *facile telum adigebatur*: (was a weapon driven to *them* easily), *did a weapon reach them effectively*.

224. *copulis*: the ancient method of fighting at sea was to grapple and fasten ships together and then fight it out hand to hand.      *accedebat*: see vocabulary; the subject is the following clause.

225. *dedissent*: see vocabulary.      *et*: *both*; omit in translation.

227. *relictæ*: (*when*) *left*.      *nihil*: § 13.

228. *navibus*: § 13 or 28.      *rerum*: § 39.      *casus*: *occurrence*.      *erat extimescendus*: § 278.

*The Veneti, defeated in a sea fight, surrender and are sold into slavery.*

## CHAPTER 14.

231. *captis oppidis*: § 264, 7.      *iis*: § 26.

235. *ex portu*: Caesar's fleet had assembled at the mouth of the Liger (Loire) and sailed thence to meet the Veneti, who came out of the mouth of one of their harbors (*ex portu*). Where this harbor was is by no means certain at the present day. Napoleon claimed that the battle took place in what is now Quiberon Bay to the northwest of the mouth of the Liger.      *nostris*: sc. *navibus*; § 33.      *satis*: with *constabat*;

81

## WAR GALLEY.

238. *agerent*: in direct discourse, *agamus*; § 155, 2.      *rostri*: § 71.

239. *noceri*: sc. *eis*, i.e. *navibus Venetorum*.      *turribus excitatis*: § 264, 4.

240. *ex*: of.      *has*: sc. *turres*.

242. *adigi*: compare l. 223.      *missa*: sc. *tela*, (*those*) *thrown*.

243. *usui*: see vocabulary.      *praeprata*: translate after *una res*.

244. *insertae affixaeque longuriis*: *inserted in and fastened to long poles*; § 27.      *non absimili forma (formae) muralium falcium*: (characterized by a form not dissimilar to the form of wall hooks), *much like the hooks used in pulling down walls*; *forma* modifies *falces* (§ 82); (*formae*), § 33.

248. *ut eriperetur*: § 165.      *cum consisteret*: § 172.

249. Gallicis navibus: § 28.

250. his ereptis: § 264, 1.

254. paulo: § 81. fortius: *braver (than usual)*.

#### CHAPTER 15.

257. cum circumsteterant: § 182. singulas: sc. naves Venetorum. binae ac ternae naves (nostrae): the Roman ships were not necessarily more numerous, but by agreement, and through the advantage of being propelled by oars, two or three of them would close in together on one of the enemy, and thus make the danger of boarding less by doing it at several points at once. summa vi: see vocabulary under vis.

259. quod: *this*; subject of fieri, which is progressive.

263. in eam partem quo, etc.: i.e. so as to run before the wind.

268. cum pugnaretur: § 172.

#### CHAPTER 16.

270. Venetorum: *with*, etc.

271. cum . . . etiam . . . tum: § 279, 3.

272. gravioris aetatis: see vocabulary under gravis and § 44. consilii: § 47.

273. navium quod: *what* (of) *ships*.

274. fuerat: sc. eis (§ 30), (had been to them), *they had had*.

275. quo se reciperent: (whither they might betake themselves), *a place to which they could retire*; § 156. The following clause is like it, quem ad modum defenderent: (after what manner they should defend), *means for defending*.

277. in quos eo gravius vindicandum (esse): (that it ought to be punished more severely against these on this account), *that they ought to be punished more severely than usual for this reason*.

278. quo diligentius conservaretur: § 160. reliquum: see vocabulary.

In the latter part of Chapter 7 the cause of this war is stated. The agents of Crassus were sent to obtain supplies. These people of the coast had previously professed submission to the Romans and given hostages against breaking the truce. By retaining these agents of Crassus, they had broken their promise and Caesar resolved to take severe measures of punishment. His action seems to us unnecessarily cruel; but he was dealing with a desperate people, ready to rise in arms at the first opportunity, and his object was the conquest of Gaul. Therefore, from his point of view, no other course was feasible.

## III. THE WAR WITH THE VENELLI.

56 B.C.

## CHAPTERS 17-19.

*Sabinus, one of Caesar's legati, overcomes the Venelli.*

## CHAPTER 17.

281. *dum—geruntur*: § 178.  
 283. *summam imperii tenebat*: see vocabulary under *summa*.  
 285. *exercitum magnasque copias*: *a well equipped army*; § 280.  
 286. *his—diebus*: *within the last few days (before Sabinus arrived)*.  
 287. *exercitu interfecto*: i.e. by the people. *auctores belli*: (promoters of the war), *responsible for the war*.  
 292. *rebus*: *respects*; § 82. *limits idoneo*.  
 293. *castris*: § 33. *cum consedisset*: concessive; § 199. *duorum milium spatio*: (at a space of two miles), *two miles away*; § 103.  
 295. *hostibus*: § 28.  
 297. *non nihil*: see vocabulary under *nihil* and § 13.  
 300. *eo absente*: *in the absence of—whom? (qui—teneret)*.  
 301. *nisi aequo loco*: *unless the position was favorable*; see note on Book II, l. 342.  
 302. *legato dimicandum (esse) non existimabat*: translate directly after *quod*: §§ 31 and 278.

## CHAPTER 18.

305. *ex iis*: (one) of those; § 53.  
 306. *magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque*: (by great rewards and promises), *by promises of great rewards*; § 280.  
 309. *quibus angustii Caesar prematur*: (with what narrowness Caesar was pressed), *how hard Caesar was pressed*.  
 310. *neque longius abesse quin, etc.*: § 214.  
 312. *auxilii ferendi causa*: (for the purpose of bearing aid), *to reinforce him*.  
 314. *negotii bene gerendi*: (of carrying on the matter successfully), *of winning a victory*. *ad castra iri oportere*: impersonal, (it ought to be gone to the camp), *they ought to attack the camp*.  
 316. *superiorum dierum*: *during, etc.*; § 45. Notice the many varieties of adnominal genitive following.

317. *cui rei*—*provisum*: see l. 40, and note the dative here for *de* with the ablative there. *diligenter*: see vocabulary.

318. *spes*: *the hope (of the outcome)*. *quod*—*credunt*: in same construction as the preceding nominatives; *the fact that*, etc.

319. *credunt*: § 146.

320. *prius . . . quam sit concessum*: § 181.

323. *laeti*: § 114. *ut explorata victoria*: (*as men are*, victory having been found out), *as though they had already gained the victory*; see note on Book II, l. 342.

324. *quibus compleant*: *with which to fill*; § 165.

#### CHAPTER 19.

328. *minimum*: § 113. *spatii*: § 49.

330. *cupientibus*: *sc. eis*, (*to them desiring it*), *for which they were impotently waiting*.

338. *equites*: nominative. *paucos*: object of *reliquerunt*.

343. *animus*: *disposition*, the emotional side of the character. *minime resistens*: (*by no mean resisting*), *feeble*.

344. *mens*: *intellect, resolution*.

### IV. THE EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA.

56 B.C.

#### CHAPTERS 20–27.

It is stated in Chapter 11 that Crassus had been sent into Aquitania with twelve cohorts and a large number of cavalry. There seems to have been no uprising there before the arrival of Crassus, and it is likely that Caesar deemed it best to show these people of the southwest of what stuff his army was made in order that they might fear his power for all time. Having no use for his cavalry in his campaign on the coast, he sent it all, or nearly all, with Crassus, but gave him only about five thousand legionaries.

*The Sotiates are conquered by Crassus.*

#### CHAPTER 20.

347. *latitudine*: see vocabulary and § 84. *hominum*: see vocabulary. *ex*: *as*. *tertia parte*: this is inaccurate, as Aquitania, while one of the three divisions of Gaul, was much smaller than

either of the others. Perhaps Caesar thought that the Garonne had a course about due west through its entire length.

348. aestimanda: § 270, 1.

349. sibi bellum gerendum: § 278. L. Valerius, etc.: these two generals had been defeated twenty-two years before by Hirtuleius, a lieutenant of Sertorius (see l. 403). annis: § 107.

356. finitimae: agrees with civitates. his regionibus: § 33.

358. quo: § 82.

359. adorti: § 261. primum: adverb, correlative to deinde; § 115.

## CHAPTER 21.

365. victoriis: § 72. This refers to ll. 350, 351.

366. autem: *whilst*.

367. adolescentulo duce: *under the command of a mere youth*.

368. perspici: (*it*) *to be seen*; the subject is quid—possent. confecti vulneribus: (finished with wounds), *many being wounded; after heavy loss*.

370. ex itinere: see note on Book II, l. 478.

373. cuius rei: *for in such matters*; § 58. peritissimi: i.e. of the Gauls.

375. diligentia: cause. his rebus: means. Contrast the two.

## CHAPTER 22.

The structure of this sentence is as follows. Adiatunnus, . . . conatus, . . . repulsus, . . . impetravit. Everything from quorum (l. 382) to recusaret is parenthetical, and should be omitted in working out the sentence until the rest is understood. cum his Adiatunnus (l. 387) is a repetition of the Adiatunnus cum DC devotis above, which is necessary on account of the long parenthesis.

379. intentis animis: *while the attention . . . was fixed*.

381. illi: i.e. the Aquitanians.

382. quorum haec est condicio ut fruantur: *whose conditions of service are (these) that they shall enjoy*. fruantur: § 213.

383. quorum amicitiae: *to whose friendship*; antecedent, his. dediderint: § 203. si: (*and that then*), *if*.

384. quid—accidat: (*if anything happens to them violently*), *if their leaders meet a violent death*, in battle or in some feud or brawl.

386. qui recusaret: § 168. eo—devovisset: (*he having been*

killed to whose friendship he had devoted himself), *after the death of his leader.*

388. clamore . . . sublato, cum: (a shout having been raised . . . , since), *since a shout was raised . . . and.*

390. repulsus; tamen impetravit: (having been driven back, he nevertheless obtained), *he was driven back; but (in spite of his violation of the agreement), he was allowed.*

391. uti—uteretur: (that he might use), *to receive; object of impetravit; § 208.*

*Crassus attacks other tribes.*

#### CHAPTER 23.

395. manu: see vocabulary.

396. paucis—erat: (within the few days within which it had been come thither *by Crassus*), *only a few days after Crassus had arrived.*

399. citerioris Hispaniae: § 46.

400. finitimae: agrees with quae.

Aquitaniae: § 33.

401. auctoritate: *show; éclat; display.*

403. duces vero: *as commanders, moreover.*

404. omnes annos: (all years), *constantly.*

Sertorio: see vocabulary.

406. capere: *select carefully.* These men had caught the Roman tactics from Sertorius.

407. quod: *therefore; so.* animadvertit: governs the following indirect discourse.

408. non facile diduci: we say, *could not, etc.*

hostem et: *that the enemy both.*

409. et relinquere: *and (at the same time) left.*

410. ob eam causam: (and that), *for this reason.*

412. cunctandum quin decertaret: § 214.

413. ad consilium: *before the council of war; see note on Book I, l. 757.*

414. pugnae: § 32.

#### CHAPTER 24.

415. duplici: the usual triple line would not have had front enough.

416. auxiliis—coniectis: the provincial auxiliaries were generally placed on the wings. The plan was usually to have the front of the legionaries broad enough to oppose the whole of the enemy, so that they would do all the fighting, while the enemy, seeing the wings extended

beyond them, would not try to turn the Roman flank. In the present case Crassus had not men enough for this, even with his double line, so he had to adopt the alternative. *quid caperent: (to see) what, etc.; § 243.*

417. *illi: i.e. the Gauls.*

419. *se tuto dimicatueros (esse): (that they would fight safely), that it would be safe to fight. tutius: contrasted with tuto; much more safe. esse: the subject is potiri.*

420. *obsessis, etc.: to blockade, etc. . . . and. sine vulnere victoria: (victory without wound), a bloodless victory.*

421. *et cogitabant: and they intended.*

422. *impeditos: (while) embarrassed.*

423. *infirmiores animo: (weaker in mind), when they would be more or less disheartened, by having to retreat.*

424. *productis copiis: § 264, 4.*

426. *sua: their, referring to hostes: § 123.*

428. *expectari—iretur: in apposition with voces; § 214.*

430. *omnibus cupientibus: (all desiring), to the delight of everybody.*

#### CHAPTER 25.

431. *alii multis telis coniectis: (and) others, by throwing, etc.; § 264, 7.*

433. *quibus: § 72. non multum confidebat: did not have much confidence; § 13.*

434. *lapidibus subministrandis, etc.: §§ 271 and 272. ad aggerem: the auxiliaries, not being trained like the Roman soldiers, did not attempt to scale the walls of the camp, but brought materials for a mound or causeway, by which to get at the enemy on even terms. Undoubtedly they pretended to be very busy about this, while all the time they were hoping that something would happen so that they would not have to make a direct assault.*

436. *ab hostibus pugnaretur: impersonal passive; translate personal and active.*

438. *circumitis castris: (the camp of the enemy having been gone around), who had ridden entirely around the camp.*

439. *ab decumana porta: § 98.*

#### CHAPTER 26.

441. *praefectos cohortatus ut excitarent: urging the prefects to arouse.*

442. *praemiis pollicitationibusque*: see l. 306.

443. *devectis*: *taking*.

444. *ab labore*: § 65.

448. *prius quam posset*: § 181.

449. *his*: *the latter*. *videri*: sc. *possent*; the subject is the same as of *convenerunt*, i.e. the Romans.

451. *quod*: the antecedent is the idea of *impugnare coeperunt*; (*a thing*) *which; as*.

456. *ex numero*: limits *parte*. *quae*: subject of *convenisse*; see l. 87.

*Almost all Aquitania surrenders.*

#### CHAPTER 27.

463. *paucae ultimae nationes*: *only a few, the most distant tribes*; (NOT, "a few of"). *tempore*: § 72.

### V. CAESAR'S EXPEDITION AMONG THE MORINI AND MENAPII.

56 B.C.

#### CHAPTER 28.

466. *omni Gallia pacata*: *though all Gaul was subdued*; there was no more active or open hostility, but still these two tribes had not formally surrendered.

470. *longe alia ac*: see l. 153. *ratione*: see vocabulary.

473. *continentesque*, etc.: for clearness, repeat the conjunction; *and because*, etc.

476. *neque hostis*: notice number; *and not an enemy*.

479. *compluribus*: sc. *hostium*.

480. *longius*: *too far*. *secuti*: *while following*.

#### CHAPTER 29.

483. *ne quis*: with *impetus*; *that no*. *militibus*: ablative absolute.

485. *conversam ad*: (turned toward), *with the top of the trees toward*.

488. *extrema impedimenta*: *the rear of their baggage trains*. *ipsi*: (*and*) *they*; the pronoun marks contrast with *impedimenta*.

## BOOK IV.

55 B.C.

### I. WAR WITH THE GERMANS.

#### CHAPTERS 1-15.

By the fall of 56 B.C. almost the whole of Gaul had formally surrendered and everything seemed to point to peace. There was still a powerful war party, however, which never rested, but was constantly seeking a way to expel the Romans.

Across the Rhine the powerful German tribe of the Suebi was harassing the weaker communities, and two of the latter were finally forced to seek homes outside their own land. Four hundred and thirty thousand of them crossed the Rhine during the winter, apparently near the modern town of Cleves. In the spring they began to spread southward, and messengers from various Gallic states opened communications with them with the obvious purpose of securing a strong ally against Caesar. The latter, with his usual rapidity of movement, met them when they had no expectation of his coming, and literally annihilated them.

Just where this rout took place is uncertain, but there are strong reasons for the belief that it was not far from the junction of the Moselle with the Rhine.

*The Usipetes and Tencteri, two German tribes, cross into Gaul and overpower the Menapii.*

#### CHAPTER 1.

1. *qui*: agrees with *annus* rather than with *hieme*. The whole expression, *qui—consulibus*, is somewhat peculiar when closely analyzed, but the sense is clear enough.

2. *Pompeio, Crasso*: in the spring of 56 B.C. a famous conference between Caesar, Pompey and Crassus was held at the town of Luca, near the southern border of Caesar's province, at which it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus were to be the next consuls.

4. *Rhenum*: the Rhine formed the western boundary of Germany

down to the close of the Franco-Prussian War in 1872. **quo:** (whither), *into which*.

7. **Sueborum gens**, etc.: the following description of the manners and customs of the Germans, together with similar passages in the succeeding books, forms one of the most valuable parts of the Commentaries, being the earliest account of these matters, of any accuracy and length, that has come down to us. Whether Caesar is to be believed in his statement of the actual numbers of the Suebi is doubtful.

9. **ex quibus singula milia**: (from which single thousands), *from each of which a thousand*.

11. **manserunt**: § 149, 1. **hi**: i.e. *reliqui*.

13. **agri cultura**: while these Germans were practically a pastoral people, they tilled the soil to some extent. **ratio atque usus**: *theory and practice*.

14. **privati . . . agri**: property in common has always been the condition of barbarous and half-civilized peoples. We hear much, in these days, of "municipal ownership." This is but a return to primitive custom, differing only in the conditions brought about by a highly refined civilization.

15. **longius anno**: by this frequent change of locality, attachment to particular places was avoided and the people retained their wild character. For the case of **anno**, see § 69.

16. **maximam partem**: § 13.

18. **quae res**: *this sort of life*; subject of **alit**. **genere**, etc.: ablative of cause with **alit**.

21. **immani magnitudine**: § 80. **corporum**: we use the singular.

22. **in—adduxerunt**: (they have brought themselves to this custom), *they have accustomed themselves*. **ut—fluminibus**: in apposition with **consuetudine**.

23. **locis frigidissimis**: *though the climate is very cold*; § 264, 4. **vestitus**: genitive with **quicquam**; notice the emphatic position of the latter.

## CHAPTER 2.

26. **mercatoribus**: § 30. **magis eo . . . quam quo**: § 174.

28. **iumentis**: ablative with **utuntur**.

30. **pretio**: § 75. **importatis**: (*if*) *imported*; § 264, 3. **quae . . . haec**: *those which*.

32. **summi—efficiunt**: (they effect that they be of the greatest labor), *they make capable of the greatest labor*; § 44.

33. **pedibus**: see vocabulary.

34. *assuefecerunt*: § 149, 1.

38. *quamvis pauci*: *however few (they may be)*.

### CHAPTER 3.

43. *a suis finibus*: *on their frontiers*. *vacare*: intransitive; hence *agros* is subject; § 257. *significari*: coördinate with *esse*; the subject is *numerus posse*; *that it is shown that a number can*.

45. *una ex parte*: see Book I, l. 32. *a*: *of*.

48. *captus*: noun. *paulo*: with *humaniores*; § 81.

49. *generis*: § 46. *ceteris*: § 69.

53. *experti . . . non potuissent*: (*having tried . . . had not been able*), *had tried . . . but had found themselves unable (to accomplish their purpose completely)*.

### CHAPTER 4.

56. *in eadem causa*: *in the same situation (as the Ubii)*.

67. *reverti se*: progressive, *that they were returning*.

68. *viam*: § 12, note.

70. *qui*: *for they*.

73. *prius quam certior fieret*: § 181.

*Caesar advances to meet the Germans. Their embassy.*

### CHAPTER 5.

78. *certior factus . . . et . . . veritus, . . . existimabat*: *learned . . . and . . . since he feared, . . . thought*.

80. *nihil his committendum*: (*that it was to be trusted these not at all*), *that they were not to be trusted at all*; §§ 13 and 23.

81. *consuetudinis*: § 46.

82. *invitos*: (*though*) *unwilling; against their will*. *cogant*: subject *Galli*; *to compel*. *quisque . . . quaque*: be sure to translate both so as to get the emphasis of the Latin.

84. *vulgus circumstat*: coördinate with *cogant*; *for the common people to surround*.

85. *quibusque*: the *-que* connects *circumstat* with *cogant*; the real subject of the latter is *vulgus*, but since this is collective and some distance away, the verb becomes plural again; translate as in l. 82.

86. cogant: object, eos (i.e. mercatores). rebus: tales.  
 87. summis: most weighty. quorum—est: § 60.  
 88. cum serviant: § 172.  
 89. rumoribus: § 23. ad voluntatem eorum: (to their wish), to suit them. ficta respondeant: see vocabulary under fingo.

## CHAPTER 6.

91. cognita: knowing. graviori bello: if this affront to Caesar's position were neglected, recruits for this war would gather from Gaul and it would thus become too formidable for his comfort.

93. ea—facta: (that those things, which he had suspected would be, had happened), *that what he had expected would happen, had happened*; this is explained by the following clauses.

95. Germanos: i.e. the Usipetes and the Tencteri.

96. postulassent: subject Germani. se: the Gauls. fore parata: (would be, having been prepared), *would be prepared*. This expression takes the place of the future passive infinitive (paratum iri), which seldom appears outside the grammars (once in the Bellum Gallicum).

## CHAPTER 7.

103. delectis: levy. Caesar, pretending to be ignorant of the negotiations between the Gauls and the Germans, calls upon the former to supply him with cavalry as usual, announcing his intention to wage war on the common enemy.

107. neque priores inferre: (were not the first of the two parties to wage war), *were not seeking a quarrel with*; § 115.

108. tamen: on the other hand. quin contendat: § 214.

109. consuetudo—tradita: compare Book I, ll. 232, 258.

110. resistere neque deprecari: in apposition with consuetudo.

111. dicere: sc. se as subject; haec, object, is explained by the following indirect discourse, (se) venisse, etc.

113. attribuant vel patiantur: § 245.

114. quos armis possiderint: i.e. what had belonged to the Menapii.

116. reliquum . . . neminem: no one else. How such statements must have startled Caesar!

## CHAPTER 8.

119. *sibi cum eis: between him and them.*

121. *qui: (for those) who.*

123. *licere: sc. eis; (it was permitted them), they might.* It is unlikely that this offer was made seriously by Caesar. The Ubii had placed themselves under his protection, the only German tribe to do so, and he could hardly expect them to receive into their lands this great host. It is more than likely that this suggestion was made merely for the purpose of throwing the Germans off their guard.

126. *hoc Ubiis: § 25.* He had hostages from the Ubii (see Chapter 16), as well as ambassadors, so that he was in a position to command, if he really so desired.

## CHAPTER 9.

128. *post diem tertium: § 107.*

131. *aliquot diebus ante: § 107.* Compare with the above construction.

132. *frumentandi causa: they had eaten up all the stores of grain belonging to the Menapii in that quarter, and were in need of more.*

133. *expectari, interponi: translate in active voice; that they were waiting for.*

*Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.*

## CHAPTER 10.

135. *Mosa, etc.: the Mosa (Meuse) is joined by an offshoot from the Rhine (Vacalus, the Vaal), and eighty miles from this junction the combined rivers flow into the sea. The island is formed by the Meuse, the Vaal, the Rhine and the sea.*

137. *Batavi: (belonging to the Batavi), inhabited by the Batavi.*  
*neque longius inde: and not further than . . . from this.*

140. *longo spatio: 850 miles.*

142. *citatus fertur: (is borne, moved rapidly), flows swiftly.*

145. *sunt qui: there are (some) who.*

*The Germans are conquered and flee across the Rhine.*

### CHAPTER 11.

147. *Caesar cum . . . legati revertuntur*: see note on Book II, l. 254.

152. *pugna prohiberet*: (keep them from a fight), *order them not to fight*.

155. *ferretur*: offer.      *usuros*: accept.

156. *tridui*: § 44.      *daret*: coördinate with *praemitteret*, etc.

157. *eodem illo*: adverbs; see vocabulary. It is evident that Caesar had no faith in the Germans. He believed they were trying to outwit him and gain time enough to collect their scattered forces. Ever quick to act, he had surprised them already and they did not know which way to turn.

161. *frequentissimi*: § 114. From his direction that great numbers of their chiefs should come to him, we strongly suspect that his intention all the time was to seize these leaders and thus further disconcert the German host.      *convenirent*: § 245.

165. *quoad accessisset*: § 180.

### CHAPTER 12.

167. *cum haberent*: § 199.

170. *nihil*: § 13.

171. *indutiis*: § 32.

174. *subfossisque equis*, etc.: *and, stabbing the horses in the belly and thus dismounting*, etc.

176. *egerunt*: sc. *eos*, with which *perterritos* agrees; *and drove them (back), so frightened*.      *prius quam venissent*: subjunctive only because attracted to the mood of *desisterent*; § 181.

179. *genere*: § 67.

182. *intercluso*: § 264, 6.

183. *ipse*, etc.: *but his own horse was wounded and he himself dismounted, (yet), etc.*      *quoad potuit*: § 179.

### CHAPTER 13.

191. *expectare*: subject of *esse*.      *vero*: emphatic; *and*.

192. *summae dementiae*: *a piece of the greatest foolishness*.      *equitatus reverteretur*: Caesar saw ruin staring him in the face. For if

eight hundred Germans had routed his five thousand Gauls, what would the latter amount to when the rest of the Germans, say two thousand more, got back? His supplies and communications would be cut off, and the Gauls would probably rise in his rear.

197. *ne—praemitteret*: explains *consilio*.

199. *simulatione et perfidia usi*: apparently Caesar means to tell us that by coming to him in this way the Germans intended to employ the same treacherous tactics that the cavalry had used in attacking his forces on the previous day. Just how this could be so is not clear. It seems rather that he was seeking an excuse for his own conduct, which did not seem quite fair when he thought it over afterwards; so that he is therefore more bitter and unfair in describing their acts than in any other part of his history.

201. *natu*: see vocabulary under *magnus* and § 82. *simul . . . simul*: see vocabulary.

202. *purgandi sui*: § 273, 1. *contra atque*: *contrary to what*.

204. *quid*: § 13. *fallendo*: § 267.

205. *quos sibi oblatos (esse) gavisus*: (having rejoiced that they had been offered to himself), *greatly pleased that they had put themselves in his power*.

#### CHAPTER 14.

209. *acie—confecto*: this is the only instance where Caesar appears to have marched any distance in the formation used for battle. The country was open; and if not using the actual formation of the *acies triplex*, it was one which could easily be deployed into it.

210. *pervenit prius quam posset*: the force of the subjunctive (§ 181) may be shown thus: *he arrived, as he intended, before, etc.*

216. *quorum, etc.*: *while their fear was being shown*.

#### CHAPTER 15.

225. *post—audito*: the men took post at the side of the camp that was attacked, while the women and children naturally fled to the rear. The Roman cavalry, passing around the flanks, soon overtook them, so that the German warriors heard and saw their families butchered.

229. *oppressi*: (overcome by), *yielding (to)*.

231. *ex*: *relieved of*.

232. *capitum CCCCXXX milium*: thus about a hundred thousand fighting men were killed or drowned; and doubtless nearly all the rest

of this great number were either cut down by the cavalry, were taken prisoners by the Romans or by surrounding tribes and sold as slaves, or perished from starvation, exposure or grief.

Caesar's extreme severity on this occasion caused great indignation at Rome and has been a blot upon his name ever since. He did not do things, however, on impulse and we are forced to the conclusion that he thought himself justified in this case. His great object in the conquest of Gaul was the protection of Italy. The Germans had crossed the Rhine before, and, after roaming at will over southern Gaul, had come down to the very gates of Rome itself. These barbarians must be taught to fear the power of Rome.

Again, Gaul was restless and needed only a good opportunity to make trouble for the conqueror. If these two powerful peoples should once unite, not only Caesar but Italy would be doomed. Still further, if the Gauls should behold the destruction of these invaders, they would be slow to take a chance of suffering the same fate. It was a desperate deed, but it was deliberately done; and from Caesar's standpoint, we must say that it was justifiable.

## II. CAESAR'S PASSAGE INTO GERMANY.

### CHAPTERS 16-19.

Wishing to show the rest of the Germans that others could cross the Rhine as well as they, Caesar builds a bridge, crosses upon it and remains in Germany eighteen days, while the Suebi retire to impenetrable fastnesses.

The foes most dreaded by all Romans were the terrible Germans. They knew their country only in the most meagre sense as bounded by the Rhine and the Danube. Thousands of these people had poured across the Rhine, and Caesar had reasons to suspect that hundreds of thousands more were ready to do the same thing. Once firmly established in Gaul, their next movement would be towards Italy. To prevent such a catastrophe was unquestionably Caesar's purpose in invading Germany. There is no reason to suppose that he ever contemplated the subjugation of that people as Gaul was to be subjugated. The moral effects of Roman skill and resourcefulness were to be propelled over the Rhine for the purpose of keeping the inhabitants of that region within their present boundaries. The purpose was achieved by

this and the subsequent expedition, and Italy was saved for centuries. It is true that the western frontier of Germany was pounded by Roman arms for generations after Caesar's time, but little impression was made, and Germany never was subdued by Roman arms.

The invasion of Britain was of a different character and undertaken solely for purposes of conquest. While Caesar seemed to have accomplished little by these invasions at the time, the effects were permanent, and Britain afterwards became a Roman province and so remained for four hundred years. His description of these two countries and their people are fragmentary and inaccurate; but they make interesting reading and are valuable as being the earliest statements made from personal observation.

## CHAPTER 16.

239. *iustissima*: *most important*.                      *quod voluit*: §§ 170 and 215, 2, *a*.
240. *rebus*: *possessions*; § 28.
241. *cum*: (*as they would*) *when*.                      *et posse et audere*: *both could and would*.
248. *postularent*: § 212.
249. *Rhenum*: subject of *finire*.
250. *se*: i.e. Caesar.
251. *sui—imperii*: (*that anything of authority be his*), *the right to exercise authority*; *sui*, § 46; *imperii aut potestatis*, § 47.
254. (*et*) *fecerant*, (*et*) *dederant*: predicates of *qui*.                      *orabant*: predicate of *Ubii*; notice tense.
257. *modo*: notice quantity of final *o*.                      *transportaret*: § 245.
258. *auxilium*: i.e. for the present.                      *reliqui temporis*: *for the future*; § 40.                      *satis*: §§ 1 and 3.

## CHAPTER 17.

266. *dignitatis*: *consistent with*, etc.; § 46.
267. *summae*: predicate adjective after *proponeretur*; (*as being*) *very great*.
269. *id contendendum*: *strain every nerve to accomplish it*.
271. *tigna*, etc.: *logs (in pairs) each a foot and a half in thickness, sharpened slightly at the lower end, graded (in length) according to the*

*depth of the water he joined (by cross pieces) in such a way that they were always two feet apart. (When these [tigna bina], having been lowered . . . he had fixed . . . ), when he had lowered these into the stream by means of engines and fixed them in position and driven them home by means of pile-drivers, not exactly vertical, after the manner of an ordinary pile, but inclining slightly in the direction of the current, he likewise set another pair opposite these at a distance of forty feet down the river (in such a way) that they leaned toward the flow of the current. By letting in from above beams two feet thick, (how much the joining of these piles stood apart), which was the space between the two piles of each pair, by the aid of a pair of fasteners at each end, joined to the upper end of the piles [ab extrema parte], these two pairs of piles [haec utraque] were kept at the right distance apart [distinebantur]. Since these were kept apart as well as held from spreading, such was the strength of the structure and the carefulness of the workmanship that, the [quo, § 81] greater the force with which the water drove against it, the [hoc, § 81] more firmly bound were the several parts.*

Notice that this description covers one truss only. Others similarly constructed were built all the way across the river, which is about 1,200 feet wide at this point. The remainder of the description explains the means used for connecting and covering these trusses and for protecting the bridge.

Just where this bridge was located is not certainly known. The weight of evidence seems to place it between Coblenz and Andernach.

285. *haec*: i.e. the different trusses which took the place of the piers of an ordinary bridge. *materia*: either ablative of means modified by predicate adjective *iniecta*, or, with the latter, an ablative absolute denoting means (§ 264, 6).

288. *quae exciperent*: § 156.

## CHAPTER 18.

294. *diebus decem quibus*: (within ten days within which), *ten days after*. This was a very rapid piece of work. There were engineers with the army who were accustomed to bridge small streams with great rapidity. This undertaking was therefore not an unusual matter except for the width and depth of the river and the consequent size of the structure. *coepta erat*: for the voice, see vocabulary.

296. *partem*: *end*.

301. *hortantibus iis*: (those urging), *upon the advice of those*.

## CHAPTER 19.

310. *more suo*: § 86. *nuntios*: *messengers (to direct them)*.

311. *uti demigrarent*, etc.: dependent upon the idea of announcing implied in *nuntios*.

313. *hunc—fere*: *that this place had been selected (as being) at about the centre*; § 1.

320. *et—utilitatem*: *to secure glory for himself and to be of advantage to the public interest*.

321. *prōfectum*: notice 8.

It would seem that Caesar accomplished very little by this expedition. But he had shown the Germans what he could do in the way of engineering and by this feat had increased his influence both in Germany and Gaul.

## III. THE WAR WITH THE BRITONS.

## CHAPTERS 20–36.

*Having explored the coast of Britain, Caesar collects a fleet to make the passage.*

## CHAPTER 20.

326. *hostibus nostris*: dative with *subministrata*.

327. *subministrata auxilia*: there is no evidence that this was true, and Caesar himself only “understood it.” It is likely that he is merely seeking to justify his expedition.

329. *si adisset*, etc.: § 242, 5. *modo*: see l. 257.

330. *loca*: *the lie of the land*. *quae*: *for these matters*.

331. *temere adit*: (goes rashly), *is rash enough to go*.

332. *his ipsis*: with *notum*: § 33.

334. *vocatis—mercatoribus*: § 264, 4.

## CHAPTER 21.

340. *prius quam faceret*: § 181.

342. *huic*: §§ 23 and 128.

355. *arbitrabatur*: this word becomes noteworthy when we find later that Commius joined the revolt of Vercingetorix; see Book VII, Chapter 76.

356. *magni*: § 62.

359. (*tantum*) *quantum*—*potuit*: (as much as of means could be given), *as much as opportunity allowed*; (*tantum*), adverbial accusative with *perspectis*; *quantum*, subject of *potuit*; *facultatis*, § 47. *ei*—*auderet*: *to such a man as did not dare*; § 168. This is clearly a sharp reprimand of Volusenus.

#### ROMAN TRANSPORTS

*The Morini, from whose territory there is the shortest passage to Britain, he receives in surrender.*

#### CHAPTER 22.

365. *superioris temporis consilio*: see Book III, Chapters 28 and 29.

366. *homines barbari*: (*being*), etc. *nostrae consuetudinis*: § 58.

367. *se*—*facturos imperasset*: direct discourse, *ea quae imperaveris faciemus*, we will do what you (shall have commanded) command; compare § 242, 5; indirect discourse, . . . *he commanded*.

368. *pollicerentur*: notice that this is coördinate with *excusarent* and translate in the same way.

371. *has—anteponendas*: (that these occupations of so little things ought to be placed before Britain), *that such unimportant matters ought to take precedence over the expedition into Britain.*

375. *quot*: (how many), *as many as.*

376. *quod—habebat*: *the warships which he had besides*; *navium*, § 47.

379. *tenebantur quo minus—possent*: § 161.

381. *Sabino, Cottae*: see Book II, Chapter 11.

383. *ducendum*: § 270, 2.

*Caesar crosses to the island.*

#### CHAPTER 23.

387. *tertia vigilia*: a little after midnight.

389. *cum*: *although.*

390. *ipse*: *he (without them).*      *hora quarta*: about 9 A.M.    The distance is about thirty miles.

393. *ita—continebatur*: (so narrowly was the sea bounded by hills), *so steeply did the cliffs rise from the sea.* This description of the coast makes it certain that he was opposite the cliffs of Dover.

396. *dum convenirent*: § 180.

399. *monuitque*, etc.: the object of *monuit* is the whole following clause; *ut* in each case means *as*, each verb that is introduced by an *ut* being attracted (§ 229) into the mood of *administrarentur*. The latter is the verb of a substantive purpose clause, whose introductory *ut* is omitted (§ 212), to avoid having the word occur twice in succession. Translate, *and advised (that) as the art of war and especially of naval warfare demands.*

400. *ut quae*: (as which), *since ships*; *quae* refers to *maritimae res*, which easily passes into the idea of *naves*.

404. *ab eo loco*: Caesar sailed northwest to Deal.

*He puts the Britons to flight. They surrender.*

#### CHAPTER 24.

407. *quo genere*: (which kind), *the kind of soldiers which.*

408. *copiis*: § 77.      *subsecuti*: seeing the fleet stand out to sea,

they guessed Caesar's purpose and marched at once to oppose his landing.

411. *militibus*: dative of agent with *desiliendum erat*: §§ 31 and 278. It is modified by *oppressis*, *who were handicapped*; § 264, 7. *ignotis locis*: *not knowing the bottom*; § 87. *impeditis manibus*: *having their hands full*; § 87. *autem*: *while*.

414. *cum illi*: *while the Britons*; § 199.

418. *pugnae*: § 54.

## CHAPTER 25.

422. *inusuatio*: *quite strange*. The Britons were accustomed to sailing vessels only.

425. *fundis*, *sagittis*, *tormentis*: it seems a queer combination to join two instruments for throwing (*fundis*, *tormentis*) with a class of missiles (*sagittis*, *arrows*). Translate the latter, *bows*. *tormentis*: Caesar had mounted part of his artillery on ship-board.

426. *quae res*: *a movement which*.

431. *ea res*: *his act*.

434. *praestitero*: notice the tense and translate accurately. *Whatever happens*, or some similar phrase, is implied.

438. *conspexissent*: the subject is indefinite, the men in the nearest ships. See note on Book II, l. 221.

## CHAPTER 26.

### AQUILIFER

442. *signa subsequi*: i.e. the standards of their several maniples. There was no orderly advance such as an army would make when on land, but each fell in as best he could behind any standard in sight. *alius*, etc.: see vocabulary and Book II, l. 364.

444. *vadis*: *the shallow places*.

446. *plures (hostes) paucos (Romanos) circumstabant*, etc.: note the imperfect tenses for vivid descriptions.

455. *hoc unum*: refers to Caesar's inability to pursue because his cavalry had not arrived.

## CHAPTER 27.

457. *simul atque receperunt*: § 176.  
 459. *imperasset*: *he commanded*; direct form, *imperaveris*; cf. § 242, 5.  
 462. *illi*: nominative plural. *cum deferret*: § 199.  
 463. *modo*: § 79.  
 466. *ignosceretur*: sc. *sibi*: § 26.  
 468. *bellum sine causa intulissent*: we get a glimpse here of Caesar's idea that the world belonged to Rome. Why should not these people defend their country against invasion?  
 469. *imprudētia*: see note on *ignosceretur*, l. 466.

*The Roman fleet being damaged by a storm, the Britons form a conspiracy.*

## CHAPTER 28.

475. *rebus*: *means*. *post—quam*: this cannot be construed literally, since *post* takes an object as a preposition meaning *after*, and then is followed by *quam*, *than*, as if it were an adverb meaning *later*. Translate, *on the third day after he had come*, and see note on Book I, l. 176.  
 479. *Britanniae*: § 27. *viderentur*: *were in sight*.  
 482. *ad inferiorem partem*: i.e. to the southwest; see Book V, Chapter 13.  
 483. *suo*: *to themselves*; § 43.  
 484. *ancoris iactis*: § 264, 4. *complerentur*: *began to fill*.  
 485. *adversa*: see vocabulary. *in altum provectae*: (being borne into the deep), *put to sea and*.

## CHAPTER 29.

488. *aestus maximos*: the tides in the English channel are notably high, as much as twenty feet, while the rise off the coast of Italy is only a few inches.  
 490. *transportandum*: § 270, 2.  
 496. *id*: the antecedent is the whole idea of *magna totius—facta est*.  
*id quod*: (that which), *as*. See also *necesse* in vocabulary.  
 499. *usui*: see vocabulary and § 32.  
 500. *omnibus*: § 27. *constabat*: see vocabulary.

## CHAPTER 30.

502. principes: subject of duxerunt:  
 506. hoc: § 84.  
 508. factu: § 276.  
 509. rem: *the campaign*.  
 510. his: i.e. this detachment of Romans.

*Caesar repairs the ships.*

## CHAPTER 31.

516. ex eo quod: *from the fact that*.  
 517. fore id quod accidit: (that that would be which happened), *that that would happen which actually did*.  
 518. ad omnes casus: *for any emergency*.  
 519. quae . . . naves, earum: *of those ships which*.  
 521. ad eas res: *for this purpose*.  
 524. reliquis ut navigari posset: (that it could be sailed by the rest), *that the rest could sail*. For condensing this with effecit, see note on Book II, l. 92.

*The Britons are routed in battle and flee.*

## CHAPTER 32.

527. frumentatum: § 275.  
 529. ventitaret: notice the *frequentative* verb.  
 532. quam—ferret: *than usual*; see vocabulary under fero.  
 533. id quod erat: (that which was), *the truth*; compare l. 517. This is explained by the following clauses, aliquid—initum (esse) consilii, *that some new plan*, etc.  
 537. paulo longius: *some little distance*; §§ 81 and 116.  
 543. dispersos: agrees with nostros understood from l. 542.  
 544. incertis ordinibus: *they had bewildered the ranks and*, etc.; § 87.

## CHAPTER 33.

548. perequitant: subject, essedarii. ipso: *simply*.  
 549. equorum: *inspired by their horses*; § 40.  
 553. illi: *the fighting men*.

556. *tantum efficiunt: they are so skilful.* *usu: as a result of,*  
etc.; § 84.

557. *incitatos: when at full speed.* *sustinere: to control.* *brevi:*  
modifies both *moderari* and *flectere*; see vocabulary.

558. *per temonem, etc.: merely a circus trick.*

#### CHAPTER 34.

561. *quibus rebus: under these circumstances.* *nostris: dative*  
with *auxilium tulit*, modified by *perturbatis.* *novitate: § 84.*

564. *quo facto: (which having been done), then.*

565. *suo: see vocabulary.*

568. *(ei) qui: i.e. the Britons.*

569. *quae continerent: § 168.*

574. *sui liberandi: § 273, 1.* *si expulissent: § 242, 5.*

#### CHAPTER 35.

577. *idem quod acciderat fore: see l. 517.* Explained by the follow-  
ing clause, *namely, that, etc.*

582. *diutius: very long.*

583. *tanto spatio: § 103.* *cursu et viribus: hard running; § 280.*

584. *efficere: cover.*

*After receiving hostages, Caesar returns to Gaul.*

#### CHAPTER 36.

590. *propinqua die, infirmis navibus: ablatives absolute.* From vari-  
ous calculations concerning the moon it has been estimated that Caesar  
spent about three weeks in Britain.

595. *infra: below; down; i.e. to the southwest.* See l. 482.

### IV. CAESAR SUBJUGATES THE REBELLIOUS MORINI AND MENAPII. A THANKSGIVING DECREED BY THE SENATE.

#### CHAPTER 37.

599. *primo, etc.: at first with not such a very large, etc.*

601. *celeriter, etc.: this forms the contrast to primo, etc., above.*

## CHAPTER 38.

613. *quo se reciperent*: compare Book III, l. 275. *quo per-fugio*: *the refuge which*; translate after *siccitates*.

621. *His rebus gestis*, etc.: compare the similar ending of Book II.

622. *supplicatio*: it would appear that Caesar had accomplished comparatively little in the campaign of 55 B.C. He had, however, crossed the Rhine and the Channel, two feats never before attempted by a Roman general. The people of Rome had little knowledge of either Germany or Britain. Hence this opening up of new lands excited great interest in the minds of a conquest-loving people; and in the same manner as had been the case two years before, the popular enthusiasm was worked by the politicians for all it was worth, in the face of the opposition of the conservative party, so that unheard-of honors might again be bestowed upon the coming man.

## BOOK V.

54 B.C.

### I. CAESAR'S JOURNEY TO ILLYRICUM. SUPPRESSION OF THE PIRUSTAE.

#### CHAPTER 1.

2. *Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. See note on Book I, l. 168.

4. *naves aedificandas*, etc.: § 270, 2.

5. *earum*: i.e. of the *naves aedificandae*, of course. *modum*: size.

9. *minus magnos fluctus*: the choppy seas of the English Channel are notorious, but the reason can scarcely be the one assigned; rather its shape and narrowness.

10. *onera*: sc. *transportanda* from l. 11.

11. *paulo latiores*: sc. *facit*, from l. 7.

13. *quem ad rem*: *and for this purpose*. *multum adiuvat*: *was a great help*. *ea quae usui*, etc.: Spain furnished especially ropes, iron and other metals.

15. *Illyricum*: this was a part of Caesar's province of Cisalpine Gaul.

21. *omnibus rationibus*: *by all (reasonable) means*.

### II. CAESAR'S SECOND EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN.

#### CHAPTERS 2-23.

*The dissensions of the Treveri are settled.*

27. *conventibus peractis*: i.e. the matters of the province had been adjusted.

30. *studio*: § 84. *in*: *in spite of*.

31. *cuius*: attracted to case of antecedent; translate as if *quod*.

32. *instructas*: i.e. the frames were in position. *neque multum*, etc.: § 214.

37. *traiectum*: noun, explained by *transmissum*, noun; see vocabulary.

38. *rei*: purpose, i.e. to carry out his orders. *militum*: with quod; § 47.

41. *veniebant*: denoting habitual action, shown by *concilia*, plural; § 148.

## CHAPTER 3.

43. *equitatu*: § 71 or § 82. See also Book II, l. 400, etc.

45. *supra*: see Book III, l. 173. *duo*: this was a situation quite to Caesar's liking. "If a kingdom be divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand."

47. *alter*: the latter, as shown by l. 51.

49. *in officio futuros*: would do their duty; would remain faithful.

51. *cogere*: complementary infinitive with *statuit*.

58. *ab eo petere*: to talk with him.

59. *quoniam possent*: notice mood; § 170. *civitati*: consulo with accusative, to consult; with the dative, to consult the interests of.

60. *veritus*: agrees with *Indutiomarus*.

61. *sese*, etc.: (saying that) he (*Indutiomarus*), etc.

## CHAPTER 4.

68. *quaeque—deterretet*: and what cause detained him from his determined purpose.

72. *nominatim*: expressly.

73. *evocaverat*: the subject is Caesar. *consolatus (est)*: he consoled him for being deprived of his son and other relatives.

76. *quod*, etc.: (which he not only understood to be done by himself in accordance with his merit), for Caesar not only considered that this was happening to him deservedly, but also thought, etc. *cum . . . tum*: § 279, 3.

77. *magni*: § 62.

78. *suos*: refers to *Cingetorix*.

80. *qui fuisset*: while he, etc.; § 199.

82. *dolore*: grievance; § 84.

*Caesar collects his forces at Wissant; Dumnorix, again treacherous, is summoned back from flight, and while resisting arrest is killed.*

## CHAPTER 5.

88. *invenit*: contrast with *cognoscit*, l. 84.

89. *numero*: § 82. *milia*: in apposition with *equitatus*.

## CHAPTER 6.

93. *de quo ante*, etc.: see Book I, Chapters 16–20.

96. *imperii*: § 58, and so *navigandi*, l. 103. *magni animi*: of a high spirit; § 44.

101. *id factum*: *this fact*. *suis hospitibus*: i.e. the friends of Dumnorix. *ille*: Dumnorix.

103. *quod*: *because (as he said)*; § 170.

104. *id*: *this request*.

107. *territare*: coördinate with *hortari* (sc. *coepit*); the indirect discourse that follows, to *necaret*, explains this phrase.

108. *causa*: i.e. some secret motive.

110. *hos omnes*: this alludes to the Gallic hostages whom Cæsar intended to take to Britain with him.

111. *interponere*, etc.: like *trepidare*; see vocabulary.

113. *intellexissent*: direct discourse, *intellexerimus*, future perfect indicative.

## CHAPTER 7.

115. *quod tantum tribuebat*: *because he was accustomed to pay so much respect*.

118. *progredi*: progressive; *was going*. *prospiciendum*: sc. *statuebat*.

119. *quid*: § 13.

124. *cognosceret*: coördinate with *contineret*.

130. *retrahi*: an unusual use of the infinitive.

132. *qui*: *since he*. *praesentis*: sc. *ipsius (Caesaris)*.

134. *manu*: see vocabulary.

By contrast with his treatment of Dumnorix four years before, this incident shows what a mastery over Gaul Caesar had obtained, or, rather, thought he had obtained.

*Caesar leads his army into Britain and puts to flight the natives.*

## CHAPTER 8.

141. *pro tempore*, etc.: see vocabulary under *tempus*.

142. *pari*: = *eodem*.

146. *delatus*: i.e. to the northeast.

147. *relictam*: far away.  
 148. *secutus*: taking advantage of.  
 150. *laudanda*: § 270, 1.  
 157. *privatis*: belonging to officers and traders.

## CHAPTER 9.

162. *cohortibus decem*: probably two from each legion.  
 164. *navibus*: § 28.      *in—aperto*: on a smooth and open shore.  
 168. *equitatu atque essedis*: § 77.  
 172. *domestici belli causa*: for use in civil war.

*The fleet is wrecked by a storm and repaired on shore.*

## CHAPTER 10.

185. *extremi*: only the rear, i.e. of the Roman detachment.  
 187. *afflictas*: dashed against one another.

## CHAPTER 11.

193. *resistere*: see vocabulary. Caesar did not wait for the legions, but returned to the shore ahead of them.  
 195. *sic*: namely.      *amissis navibus*: § 264, 4.  
 196. *reliquae refici posse viderentur*: (the rest seemed to be able to be repaired), it seemed possible to repair the rest.  
 200. *res erat multae operae ac laboris*: §§ 44 and 110.  
 208. *summa—administrandi*: the general control and conduct of the war.  
 211. *milia passuum LXXX*: i.e. this distance north of Caesar's landing place.  
 212. *huic—intercesserant*: between him and the other states, in former times, constant warfare had existed; now he was the defender of the whole nation.

*Description of Britain and its inhabitants.*

Caesar's object in writing these details about Britain, and in Book VI about the Germans and the Gauls, is to satisfy a very strong and en-

lightened curiosity at Rome about these strange new countries. Thus Cicero writes to his brother to tell him all about the island. Compare foreign interest in America at the time of its discovery, and our own in African explorations.

## CHAPTER 12.

216. quos—dicunt: (whom they say it to have been handed down in memory to have been born on the island), *who, they say there is a tradition, were born on the island*; i.e. they thought that the inhabitants of the interior were indigenous or autochthonous, i.e. sprung from the soil.

220. quibus pervenerunt: (having sprung from which states, they came thither); *from which they have come*.

223. aedificia Gallicis consimilia: "according to Strabo, the Gallic houses were large, built of planks and watling, of a round form, with a high roof. They were sometimes thatched; see Chapter 43."—LONG.

226. plumbum album: in Cornwall, not in mediterraneis regionibus.

227. ferrum: in Sussex, quite a distance inland. Caesar got the two reversed.

230. fas: what is right according to divine law; ius, what is right according to human law. So fas non putant means that they had religious scruples against eating these things. animi—causa: (for the pleasure of the mind), *for pleasure*; § 280.

231. sunt temperatiora: *have a more even climate*.

## CHAPTER 13.

233. triquetra: the statement of the shape of Britain is roughly accurate; but his distance of 500 miles is too great by over 150 miles if a straight line be taken.

235. quo . . . appelluntur: (whither . . . are driven), *where . . . land*; note adpello, Ære.

238. ad Hispaniam: of course this is utterly wrong. qua ex parte: cf. una ex parte, Book I, l. 31.

239. dimidio: § 81. England is two and a half times greater than Ireland.

240. pari spatio: § 80. atque: see vocabulary under par.

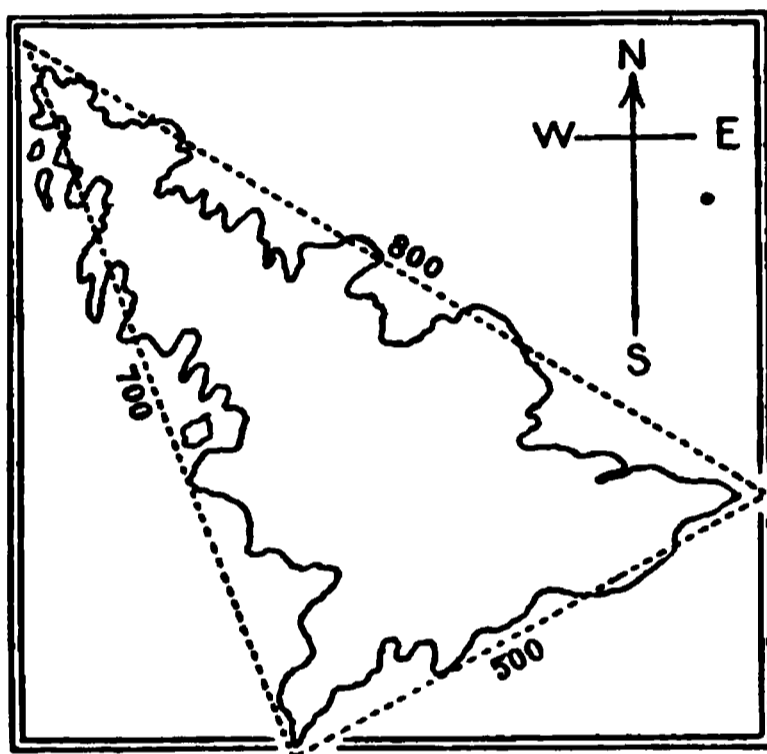
244. noctem esse dies XXX: here Caesar has trace of the fact that the length of the day and night grows more unequal at the solstices the

farther we recede from the equator, and his measurement (l. 246) substantiates it, but he could not generalize from it. This statement would not be true even for the northernmost islands about the coast of Britain.

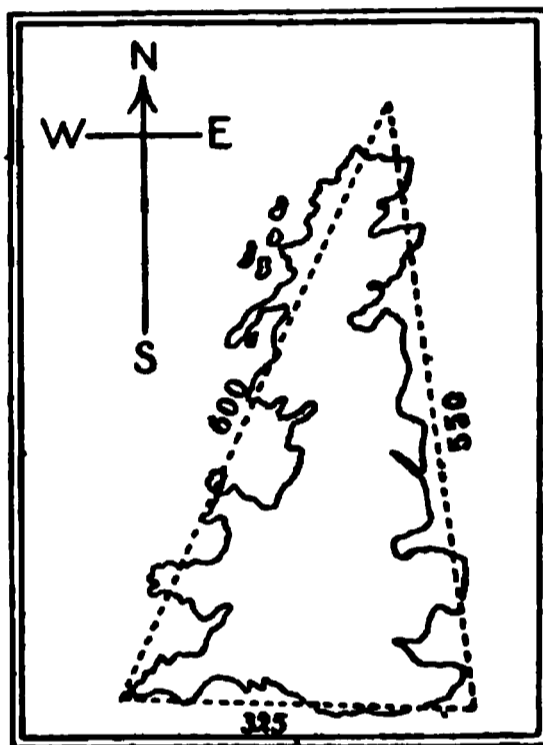
248. DCC milium: this distance is too great by 90 Roman miles.

250. *maxime ad Germaniam*: in general toward Germany; another error.

251. octingentum: this distance is too great by 90 Roman miles.



BRITAIN AS CAESAR THOUGHT IT WAS.



BRITAIN AS IT WAS.

These statements of Caesar are not intended to be regarded as anything else than summaries of the most apparently accurate reports which he could get from traders. He feels bound to tell what he can, but his words *circiter*, *ut existimatur*, etc., show that he would not vouch for the facts.

#### CHAPTER 14.

260. *aspectu*: § 82. *capillo promisso, corpore rasa*: § 80.

262. *uxores*: accusative. *deni duodenique*: distributives; (*ten* together and twelve together), *ten or twelve together*.

265. *quo—deducta est*: (whither each maiden was first led away), *by whom each maiden was first espoused*. *deducta* refers to the custom of conducting a bride from her father's house to that of her husband.

*Caesar crosses the Thames, defeats the Britons, and subdues their leader, Cassivellaunus.*

#### CHAPTER 15.

271. *spatio*: sc. *temporis*, and contrast with *loci spatio*, l. 276.

275. *atque his primis* (*cohortibus*): *and these, too, the first cohorts*, which were composed of veterans.

277. *per medios*: for their tactics, see Book IV, Chapter 33.

#### CHAPTER 16.

286. *ad*: *to fight with; to cope with*.

287. *illi*: the Britons.

288. *cederent*, etc.: *would retreat*; for the subjunctive, see § 228; if the indicative were used, it would be the imperfect, to denote habitual action; § 148.

290. *dispari proelio*: (in unequal battle), *with great advantage*. [*Equestris—inferebat*]: omit. No satisfactory idea can be gotten out of the sentence.

295. *defatigatis*: § 27.

#### CHAPTER 17.

302. *ab . . . non absisterent*: *were close to*.

304. *subsidio*: § 72.

306. *sui colligendi*: § 273, 1.

309. *summis copiis*: *even with their strongest forces*.

#### CHAPTER 18.

313. *pedibus transiri potest*: i.e. *is fordable*.

319. *ea, eo*: *such*.

320. *cum—exstarent*: (though they stood out of the water with the head only); what does this mean?

321. *ut*: translate after *ierunt*.

#### CHAPTER 19.

328. *iis regionibus*: ablative of separation with *compellebat*.

332. *omnibus viis semitisque*: ablative of means.

333. *nostrorum equitum*: objective; *to our cavalry*.

334. *cum his*: i.e. *cum milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum*.

335. *relinquebatur*: *the result was*.

336. *discedi*: impersonal; (it to be departed), *any one to depart*.  
*tantum . . . quantum*: (*only*) *as much . . . as*. (in): omit. *agris*,  
 etc.: ablative of means.

337. *hostibus noceretur*: § 26.

338. *labore atque itinere*: *laborious marches*; § 280.

*Surrender of the Trinovantes and several other states.*

#### CHAPTER 20.

347. *Cassivellauni*: § 39.

348. *qui—obtineat*: § 162.

351. *obsides ad numerum*: (hostages to the number), *the required number of hostages*.

#### CHAPTER 21.

352. *defensis*: i.e. from *Cassivellaunus*. *militum*: sc. *nostro-*  
*rum*: § 39.

357. *autem*: *now*.

358. *silvas impeditas*: *an impassable piece of woods*; i.e. they would select a place that was almost impenetrable anyway, fortify a part of it and call it a town.

#### CHAPTER 22.

381. *quid . . . vectigalis*: § 49. Not a sesterce of this tribute was ever paid, and Caesar never returned; not until 43 A.D. did a Roman again set foot on the island, when half the island was subdued, though never assimilated like Gaul into the Roman empire. But Caesar accomplished much, if not all that he wished, by his second invasion, since he showed the Gauls that neither the Rhine nor even the Ocean could stop him from an expedition in force.

*Caesar's return to Gaul.*

#### CHAPTER 23.

389. *ac sic accidit*, etc.: compared with the brilliant achievements of his first years in Gaul, Caesar was now accomplishing little. So he magnifies matters of less importance, and even mentions negative matters, such as *not* losing ships.

395. *locum caperet*: *made the port*; i.e. were able to reach Caesar again.

398. *aequinoctium*: thus Caesar spent about two months in Britain.

399. *tranquillitate*: this does not mean that there was no wind, but that the sea was smooth.

### III. THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX.

#### CHAPTERS 24-52.

*The Roman legions are distributed among more states than usual.*

#### CHAPTER 24.

402. *Samarobrivae*: §§ 91 and 93.

413. *et cohortes quinque*: Caesar then mentions the dispositions for eight and a half legions. Just how or to what extent the number was last increased he does not tell us, but it appears that he had a levy during the summer, for in Book II, Chapter 2, he raises the number of legions to eight, and when he went to Britain in this campaign he took five legions with him and left three with Labienus. As any levy would probably have included an entire legion, we may perhaps conclude that he now had nine in all and kept five cohorts with him in *Samarobriva*. See note, l. 802.

From this arrangement of the army in winter quarters we may very reasonably infer that Caesar saw trouble brewing in Gaul and made the best possible arrangements to meet it.

418. *inopiae*: § 23.

422. *milibus—continebantur*: this might be supposed to mean that all except Roscius were contained within a circle of 50 miles' radius, so that no two were more than 100 miles apart. This, however, was not actually the case. But no one of these camps was more than a hundred miles from at least two others.

423. *quoad—cognovisset*: § 180. It modifies *morari*.

*Tasgetius, a friend of Caesar, is killed by his enemies.*

#### CHAPTER 25.

425. *summo loco*: § 67.

428. *singulari*: predicate; translate after *opera*. *usus*: see vocabulary.

429. *tertium—regnantem*: (him reigning now the third year), *just at this time, in the third year of his reign*.

430. *auctoribus*: *approving*; used like an adjective, as is *victor*, frequently.

431. *ad plures* (sc. *res*, nom.) *pertinebat*: (*the affair pertained to more*), *many were involved*.

434. *quorum*: antecedent, *hos*.

*The Eburones under the lead of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack the camp of Sabinus and Cotta.*

#### CHAPTER 26.

439. *diebus*, etc.: see Book III, l. 396.

441. *cum fuissent*: § 199.

442. *Sabino Cottaeque*: § 27.

450. *aliqui*: singular, instead of the more usual *aliquis*.

*A conference being held, Ambiorix advises the Romans to leave. The legati disagree.*

#### CHAPTER 27.

458. *plurimum debere*: *that he was greatly indebted*. *ei*: i.e. Caesar. *confiteri*: predicate of *sese*, and governing *plurimum debere*.

465. *non minus iuris in se*: *as much authority over him*.

469. *ut confidat*: *as to believe*; § 165.

471. *omnibus hibernis oppugnandis*: § 32. So *subsidio* below.

473. *negare*: *to say "No."*

475. *quibus*: i.e. the Gauls. *pro pietate satisfecerit*: *had done enough to prove his patriotism*.

477. *pro hospitio*: *in consideration of the ties of hospitality*.

479. *conductam*: (*had been*) *hired (and)*.

480. *ipsorum esse consilium*: *their (the Romans') best move was*. *velint-no*: *whether they wished to do so (or not)*.

485. *quod cum faciat*: (*when he was doing this*), *in doing this*. *consulere, referre*: progressive.

#### CHAPTER 28.

491. *civitatem—ausam (esse)*: subject of *erat credendum*; *that the state had dared . . . , was scarcely*, etc.

503. *quid esse levius*, etc.: § 246.

#### CHAPTER 29.

505. (*se*) *facturos*: *that they would act*. *clamitabat*: note tense.

508. *Caesarem profectum*: governed by *arbitrari*, whose subject is *se*, understood.

510. capturos fuisse : § 242, 4. The condition is supplied by *aliter* = *quae si ita non essent*.

511. si adesset, venturos: § 242, 2. nostri: § 43.

512. auctorem: § 2, note. rem: *the facts of the case*.

514. mortem Ariovisti: from this we may assume that Ariovistus died soon after his defeat by Caësar.

517. hoc: *of this*, explained by *sine—descendisse*; § 25. sibi: *him*, i.e. Sabinus.

519. in utramque rem: *in either event*. si esset, perventuros: § 242, 5.

521. si consentiret, esse: § 242, 1.

523. habere: § 246.

### CHAPTER 30.

526. in utramque partem: *on each side*.

527. primis ordinibus: = *centurionibus primorum ordinum*. re-sisteretur: § 26.

530. qui terreare: § 168. gravissime ex nobis: the use of the second person, when really including the speaker, is sometimes found in English; as we might say, "I'm not the greatest coward of you."

531. si acciderit, reposcent: § 193. gravior: *very serious*.

532. qui: *since they*. si liceat, sustineant: § 194.

*The Romans abandon their camp; on the march they are surrounded by the Eburones and all killed.*

### CHAPTER 31.

536. consurgitur ex consilio: *the council rises*. comprehendunt: *sc. centuriones as subject*.

541. dat manus: ("throws up his hands"), *yields*.

543. vigiliis: *without sleep*.

544. quid: (*to see*) *what*.

546. omnia, etc.: *everything is thought of that is calculated to prevent their remaining without danger, and to increase the danger through the weariness and sleeplessness of the soldiers; i.e. it seems as though they omitted nothing that would make their destruction certain. Others render: Every reason is thought of, to show that they cannot remain without danger, and that the danger will be increased, etc.; i.e. they tried to persuade themselves in every way that this was their best course.*

549. ut, etc.: *like men who were persuaded that the idea had been been suggested (consilium datum).*

## CHAPTER 32.

554. a milibus, etc.: see Book II., l. 122.

559. nostris: modifying iniquissimo; § 33.

## CHAPTER 33.

561. qui providisset: § 173. It gives the reason for *trepidare* only.

562. *trepidare*, etc.: § 258. *haec ipsa*: sc. *fecit*.

563. *ut*: in such a manner that. *omnia*: all his wits.

569. *imperatoris officia praestabat*: did the duty of a general.

572. *pronuntiari*: impersonal; (it to be announced), *command to be given*.

575. *militibus*: § 28.

579. *quae—que*: the -*que* connects *discederent* and *properaret* (subject *quisque*).

581. *fletu*: a sign of anger, not of weakness.

## CHAPTER 34.

582. *barbaris*: § 30. *consilium*: *cunning*.

584. *illorum*: § 46. *discederet, esse*: see note on Book II, l. 175.

585. *reliquissent*: *left*; in direct discourse *reliquerint*, future perfect indicative, (shall have left), *leave*.

586. *existimarent*: § 245. [*erant—pares*]: omit.

## CHAPTER 35.

596. *cum excesserat*: § 182.

602. *sin vellent*: § 242, 3.

606. *resistebant*: *continued to resist*; § 148.

608. *ipsis*: § 83. *Balventio*: § 32.

## CHAPTER 36.

618. *si velit, licere*: § 242, 1.

620. *quod—pertineat*: subject of *posse*; *what pertained*. *ipsi*: §§ 23 and 26. *vero*: at any rate. *nihil*: § 13.

621. *nocitum iri*: only occurrence of this form in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

622. *ut*: translate before *si videatur*.

624. *sua*: though grammatically referring to *se* (Sabinus), it undoubtedly is intended to include Cotta.

625. *in eo*: *in maintaining this attitude*.

#### CHAPTER 37.

626. *quos tribunos*: = *eos tribunos quos*. *in praesentia*: *at the time*.

629. *Ambiorigem*: § 33, note.

640. *illi*: i.e. the rest of the Romans.

This was the most serious reverse Caesar suffered in Gaul. The annihilation of over 5,000 Romans at once aroused Gaul to the fact that they were not invincible, and a new hostility to the conqueror arose. We are told by the Roman historian Suetonius that, upon receipt of the news of this disaster, Caesar vowed that he would not cut his hair or beard until he had inflicted revenge upon its authors.

*The winter quarters of Cicero are attacked by the Eburones, aided by the Aduatuci and the Nervii.*

#### CHAPTER 38.

651. *sui liberandi*: § 273, 1.

654. *nihil esse negotii*: see Book II, l. 280. *oppressam legionem interfici*: (that the legion, overpowered, be killed), *in overpowering and wiping out*.

#### CHAPTER 39.

669. *is dies sustentatur*: (this day is sustained), *that day the attack is sustained*; cf. Book II, l. 101.

#### CHAPTER 40.

673. *si pertulissent*: implied indirect discourse; § 242, 5.

674. *missi*: (*those sent*), *the messengers*.

683. *ad*: *to meet*. *opus*: indeclinable; *necessary*.

#### CHAPTER 41.

697. *eos*: i.e. Cicero and his men.

698. *iis qui*, etc.: i.e. Caesar and the other *legati*. *rebus*: *situation*; § 23.

701. *per se*: see Book I, l. 827.

706. *utantur*: § 245.

707. *se*: subject of *sperare*; sc. *eos* as subject of *imperaturos esse*. *pro*: *by*.

## CHAPTER 42.

709. *vallo*, etc.: the genitives indicate the height of the wall and the width of the ditch.

711. *de exercitu captivos*: *men who had been prisoners in the Roman army.*

717. *XV*: this is undoubtedly wrong, but just what the numeral should be we do not know.

719. *idem*: see vocabulary.

## CHAPTER 43.

723. *casas*: which the soldiers had built for winter use.

742. *introire*: i.e. to come out of the tower and inside the rampart.

743. *quorum nemo*: *but not one of them.*

744. *deturbati*: sc. *hostes* as subject, and *sunt*.

## CHAPTER 44.

747. *appropinquarent*: i.e. they were well along in the line of promotion; were approaching the point where they would become *centuriones primi ordinis*; § 168.

749. *alteri*: § 27.      *anteferretur*: § 243.      *loco*: *promotion.*

762. *Pulloni*: § 28.

764. *conanti*, etc.: sc. *ei* (§ 28); (the hand to him trying), *his hand*, *when he tries*, etc.

765. *laboranti*: sc. *ei* (§ 27), *comes to his aid while thus endangered.*

768. *rem gerit*: *engages.*

776. *anteferendus videretur*: *it seemed, ought to be considered superior.*

*By the arrival of Caesar the siege is raised; the enemy are put to flight.*

## CHAPTER 45.

777. *quanto*: (by how much), *the*; § 81.      *in dies*: *from day to day.*

779. *res*—*pervenerat*: (the thing had come to fewness of defenders), *only a few were left to continue the defence.*

780. *tanto*: (by so much), *the*; § 81; correlative with *quanto*, l. 777.

783. *nomine*: § 82.      *loco honesto*: § 67.      *prima*: § 113.

786. *has*: *this*, the letter.

## CHAPTER 46.

790. *Caesar*: he was at Samarobriua (Amiens).

794. *cum nuntio*: i.e. as soon as possible after receipt of the order.

796. *rei publicae commodo*: *with advantage to the public interests*; this is the form of a discretionary order, such as Caesar would give only to Labienus.

798. *veniat*: § 212 or § 245.

800. *proximis hibernis*: i.e. those about Samarobriva.

#### CHAPTER 47.

801. *hora tertia*: assuming that Crassus started at midnight, he had made good time for a night march, for the soldiers were undoubtedly *sub sarcinis*.

802. *certior factus*: Caesar does not wait for the actual arrival of Crassus, but as soon as he was certain of his approach he starts on his relief expedition, leaving word for Crassus to take command at Samarobriva. Caesar must have had with him the legion either of Trebonius or of Plancus; see Chapter 24. We may conjecture that one of these had been encamped *near* the town, and that the half legion of recruits which he does not account for in speaking of the dispositions for the winter was *in* the town (see note, l. 413), and held it during the short interval that passed between Caesar's departure and the arrival of Crassus. Caesar thus starts with a fresh legion and replaces it by that of Crassus.

806. *relinquebat*: notice tense.

807. *non ita multum*: *not so very much*; a reprimand.

810. *similem*: (*which would seem*) *like*.

#### CHAPTER 48.

820. *unum auxilium*: *his only hope*.

832. *casu adhaesit*: (*clung by chance*), *happened to stick*.

834. (*epistulam*) *perlectam recitat*: *he reads the letter by himself and then aloud*.

#### CHAPTER 49.

846. *animo*: § 82.

854. *vix*, etc.: (*belonging to*), *containing scarcely*, etc.

856. *angustiis viarum*: *by narrowing the streets of the camp*.

857. *contemptionem hostibus*: see Book II, l. 295.

#### CHAPTER 50.

863. *si*: (*to see*) *if*; § 243, note. *suum locum*: *position of his own choosing*.

871. *concursari*, *agi*: impersonal passive; *they should run about and act*.

## CHAPTER 51.

877. *seu quis Gallus, etc.*: (*that*) *if any one, whether Gaul, etc.*

880. *obstructis portibus*: § 264, 4.

881. *ea*: *sc. viâ, that way; there.*

## CHAPTER 52.

889. *neque, etc.*: take the negative with *parvulo*; he saw that if there was any lack of vigilance a great disaster might occur.

891. *institutas*: *which had been erected by the Romans*; § 264, 7.

893. *decimum quemque*: (each tenth man), *one out of ten.*

901. *quod detrimentum . . . hoc*: (*that*) *this defeat which.*

## IV. MOVEMENTS OF THE SENONES AND THE TREVERI.

## CHAPTERS 53–58.

*Hearing of the slaughter of the Eburones, Indutiomarus withdraws his forces. Caesar prepares to spend the winter in Gaul.*

## CHAPTER 53.

907. *fama perfertur*: for the Gallic method of spreading news, see Book VII, ll. 40–47.

912. *Indutiomarus*: see Chapters 3, 4, 26 and 47 of this book.

916. *tribus*: those of Crassus and Cicero, and the one he had brought from Samarobriua (that of Trebonius or Plancus). *trinis*: the distributive, to show that *hibernis* is plural in sense.

919. *de Sabini morte*: *when Sabinus was killed.*

921. *quid reliqui consilii*: *what further plans.*

925. *quin acciperet*: § 214; it explains *sollicitudine*.

926. *in his*: *sc. nuntiis; among these reports.*

## CHAPTER 54.

934. *territando*: § 267.

945. *valuit*: see vocabulary; the subject is the following clause; *that some had been found (to be) leaders.*

946. *voluntatem commutationemque*: *change of sentiment*; § 280.

951. nobis: § 28. idque, etc.: *and I do not know whether (-ne) this is so much to be wondered at.*

952. cum—tum: § 279, 3. (ei) qui praeferebantur: *(those) who used to be considered superior.*

953. virtute: § 82. gentibus: § 27. tantum eius opinionis: *object of deperdidisse.* se—deperdidisse: *indirect discourse governed by dolebant, the subject of which is (ei), antecedent of qui, l. 952.*

*The Treveri under the lead of Indutiomarus attack the camp of Labienus.*

#### CHAPTER 55.

962. cum dicerent: *compare §§ 171 and 172.*

#### CHAPTER 56.

971. veniri: *that individuals and embassies were coming.*

972. facinoris: *Caesar terms it a "crime" for men to attempt to gain freedom from Rome. Compare Book IV, l. 468.*

975. hoc: *nominative, referring to armatum concilium.*

976. more: § 86. quo: *(whither), to which.*

977. armati: *predicate adjective.*

#### CHAPTER 57.

990. rei bene gerendae: *of gaining a success.*

991. cogitabat: *(but) was planning.*

996. sub: *close to.*

*Indutiomarus being killed, Gaul is restored to quiet.*

#### CHAPTER 58.

1008. magna contumelia verborum: *(great insult of words), most insulting words.*

1012. perterritis, etc.: *(that), when the enemy was, etc.*

1013. fore sic ut accidit: *cf. Book IV, ll. 517 and 533.*

1014. petant: § 212.

1016. spatium nactum effugere: *(to escape, having found space), find opportunity to escape.*

1018. hominis: = eius, i.e. Labienus.

1021. redeuntes equites: *nominative; i.e. after killing Indutiomarus, they go after the rest.* quos: *as many as.*

## BOOKS VI AND VII.

### *CAMPAIGN OF 53 B.C.*

The season of 53 B.C., which is the subject of Book VI, saw no great enterprise carried out by Caesar. The Gauls were restless, and Caesar contented himself with keeping them in order and taking vengeance upon certain sections for their temerity in attacking his troops. He also crossed the Rhine for the second time, but accomplished little on the German side of the river. On the whole, this was a season of comparative quiet in Gaul, though there were signs of the great storm which was to break in the following year.

Book VI contains also an interesting account of the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans (Chapters 11–28).

### *CAMPAIGN OF 52 B.C.*

In 52 B.C. occurred the last and greatest struggle for independence for Gaul, a thrilling narrative, well set forth in Book VII. Under the leadership of the greatest man of his race, Vercingetorix, the Celts rose to expel the invaders and set their country free. This young man was brave, energetic, able; but it was a hopeless struggle, and he became merely the martyr of a lost cause. The sympathy of all the world has been his for almost two thousand years, and so it will be while liberty has an advocate left.

The scene of these stirring events is in central Gaul. The people of this section had learned that Rome itself was rent with factional strife. Thinking that Caesar would be embarrassed by affairs at home, they determined to strike again for freedom. Caesar was in Italy. The legions were quartered at Agedincum, the chief town of the Senones in the north, two hundred miles from the centre of rebellion, which was in the country of the Arverni.

The first outbreak took place at Cenabum, one of the important towns of the Senones. This was attacked, and every Roman put to death. Within a day's time the news of this attack reached Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni and the home city of Vercingetorix. This was admirably located on a mountain two thousand feet above the sea. The country of the Arverni also was protected by a frontier

formed by the Cevennes Mountains, as yet blocked by snow to the depth of six feet. Consequently the Gauls never dreamed that Caesar, who had only a handful of troops, could cross this range, and Vercingetorix was a hundred miles away intent upon keeping Caesar from joining his troops. Suddenly, however, Caesar appeared in the plain, having shovelled a path over the mountains. Vercingetorix hastened home to protect his capital. But Caesar, leaving a small force, went back over the mountains, gathered some cavalry, and passed swiftly around Vercingetorix and Gergovia, and rejoined his troops at Agedincum. Thus the Gallic leader was outwitted and failed in his first design.

Vercingetorix knew full well that his vast army of undisciplined recruits would be no match for the Roman legions in a pitched battle, so he adopted the plan of burning and laying waste the whole country and thus starving the Romans. The Gauls burned their towns and farms. Twenty towns of the Bituriges were destroyed by fire in a single day. Avaricum, however, was not destroyed. This Caesar besieged and captured. Of forty thousand people within its walls only eight hundred escaped death. Gergovia, the mountain stronghold of the Arverni, was next attacked, but it could not be taken. After suffering a loss of forty-six officers and seven hundred men, the Romans gave up the attack and retired. This was the only failure ever encountered by Caesar in Gaul, when he was with the army in person.

This acknowledgment of defeat aroused tremendous enthusiasm among the Gauls. They had him beaten now, as they thought; so they were rash enough to risk a battle in open field. The result was their defeat with great loss and flight to Alesia, another mountain fortress, situated in the country of the Mandubii, on the slope of the modern Mont Auxois, where now stands the French village of Alise-Sainte-Reine. Into this town Vercingetorix passed with 80,000 men. Caesar immediately undertook the siege, and built the most elaborate works ever undertaken. The story of this attack and defence is wonderfully interesting as related in this book. The result was the final destruction of the army of Gaul and the capture of the brave young leader. Thus ended the campaign, and Gaul never more attempted to throw off the Roman power.

## APPENDIX

The grammars cited are those of Gildersleeve (G.), Allen & Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Harkness (H.), and West (W.).

### SYNTAX OF NOUNS

**Agreement of Appositive and Predicate Substantive.** G. 321, 211 ; A. 184, 185 ; B. 169, 168 ; H. 393 ; W. 291, 292, 290.

- 1 **RULE:** An appositive or a predicate substantive agrees in case with the word it explains ; when possible, it agrees in gender and number also.

*reperit ipsum esse Dumnorigem*, I. 18, 3, *he finds that Dumnorix is THE VERY ONE.* *cōniūrandī hās esse causās*, II. 1, 2, *that the causes of uniting were THESE.*

In these examples both words are accusative in Latin and nominative in English, but the rule holds equally.

- 2 An appositive is placed beside the word it explains without a connecting verb.

**NOTE.**—When an appositive has also a predicate force, it is often best shown in translation by inserting the word *as*.

*hominēs bellicōsōs . . . fīnitimōs habēre*, I. 10, 2, *to have warlike men (AS) NEIGHBORS.* *liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūci iūssit*, II. 5, 1, *he ordered the children to be brought to him (AS) HOSTAGES.*

- 3 A predicate substantive occurs after *sum*, and *fiō*, *become*, *videor*, *seem*, *appear*, *appellor*, *be called*, etc. See § 17.

*qui Celtae appellantur*, I. 1, 1, *who are called CELTS.* So II. 4, 10.

- 4 An appositive may explain in part the word it modifies ; e.g. *alius*, *alter*, *pars*. This is called *distributive apposition*.

*Helvētīi, . . . alīī vadīs Rhodanī*, I. 8, 4, *the Helvetians . . . SOME by the fords of the Rhone.*

## NOMINATIVE CASE.

**Subject of Verb.** G. 203; A. 173, 1; B. 170; H. 387; W. 289.

- 5 **RULE :** The subject of a finite verb (i.e. one that has person and number) is in the nominative.

The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the accusative (§ 257). But the subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative (§ 258).

## VOCATIVE CASE.

**Vocative of Address.** G. 201, Remark 1; A. 241; B. 171; H. 402; W. 307.

- 6 **RULE :** The name of a person or thing addressed is in the vocative.

It is independent of the rest of the sentence in construction, and therefore has no real syntax (i.e. relation to another word).

*dēsillite, commilitōnēs*, IV. 25, 6, *jump down, FELLOWS !*

## ACCUSATIVE CASE.

**Accusative of Direct Object.** G. 328-330; A. 237; B. 172-174; H. 404, 405; W. 308-310.

- 7 **RULE :** The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.
- 8 Many verbs of emotion and the like, which are intransitive in English, may be transitive in Latin; they then require the addition of a preposition in translating, as follows: *queror complain (of)*, *contendō, strive (for)* *labōrō, labor (for)*, *horreō, shudder (at)*, *dēspērō, despair (of)*, etc.; the last only in the ablative absolute passive (see vocabulary).
- 9 Some verbs of motion, usually intransitive, may be used transitively, especially *fugiō, flee*, and its compounds *dēfugiō* and *effugiō*, in the sense of *escape, shun* or *avoid*. See vocabulary.

**Accusative with Compounds.** G. 331; A. 237, *d*, 239, 2, *b*; B. 175, 2, *a*, 179; H. 406, 413; W. 311.

- 10 **RULE :** Verbs compounded with prepositions take the accusative, *when they become transitive*, as follows; all with

circum, per, praeter, trāns and subter, many with ad, in and super, some with ante, con, inter, ob and sub.

Id Helvētī trānsibant, I. 12, 1, *THIS the Helvetians* (were going across) *were crossing*. suōs circumvenire, II. 8, 4, *to surround HIS MEN*.

So praecedunt in the following example, a very unusual use. See lexicons.

reliquōs Gallōs praecedunt, I. 1, 5, *they* (go before) *surpass THE REST OF THE GAULS*.

- 11 If the simple verb is transitive, the compound verb may take two accusatives, (1) one the object of the verb, (2) the other of the preposition. In the passive the object of the verb becomes the subject (1), the object of the preposition (2) remains accusative.

trēs partēs<sup>1</sup> cōpiārum id flūmen<sup>2</sup> trādūxērunt, I. 12, 2, *they have led THREE FOURTHS<sup>1</sup> of their troops across THIS RIVER.<sup>2</sup>* So II. 5, 4. multitūdō<sup>1</sup> Rhēnum<sup>2</sup> trādūcitur, I. 31, 16, *A GREAT NUMBER<sup>1</sup> is being led across THE RHINE.<sup>2</sup>* So II. 4, 1.

With many of these compounds the preposition may be repeated, but never circum.

### Accusative of Inner Object (Accusative of Result Produced).

G. 332, 333; A. 238; B. 176, 2; H. 409; W. 812, 813.

- 12 **RULE:** Neuter pronouns and adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive idea that lies in the verb.

idem cōnārī, I. 3, 5, (to attempt **THE SAME THING**), *make the same attempt*. id eis persuādere, I. 2, 3, (to persuade them **IT**), *to persuade them of it, or to persuade them (to do) it*.

**NOTE.**—When this accusative takes the form of a noun of kindred derivation or signification with the verb, it is called the *cognate accusative*. Examples in English are,—*to dream a dream, to run a race, to see a sight or vision*.

tridui viam prōcēdere, I. 38, 1, *to proceed A three days' MARCH*. So IV. 4, 5.

### Accusative of Extent in Degree (Adverbial Accusative). G. 334 ;

A. 240, a, b; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; W. 316.

- 13 **RULE:** The accusative is used adverbially to denote extent in degree.

This accusative answers the question, *How much? To what extent?* It is an extension of the preceding use (§ 12), and is mostly confined to the neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns (often classed as adverbs), e.g. multum, *much*, plūs, *more*, plurimum, *very much*, very, *the*

*most*, *paulum*, *a little*, *nihil*, *not at all*, *quid* (indefinite), *at all*, *aliquid*, *nōn nihil*, *somewhat*, etc. It also includes some special expressions.

*plūrimum posse*, I. 3, 7, II. 4, 5, *to be* THE MOST *powerful*. *māximam partem vivunt*, IV. 1, 8, *they live* FOR THE MOST PART.

**Accusative of Extent in Time and Space (Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space).** G. 335, 336 ; A. 256, 2, 257 ; B. 181, 1 ; H. 417 ; W. 324.

- 14 **RULE :** Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

This construction appears in English as one form of the *adverbial objective* (see translation of examples below). It answers the question, *How long ? How far ?* Or, with *longus*, *lātus* or *altus*, simply, *How ?*

*rēgnum multōs annōs obtinēre*, I. 3, 4, *to hold royal power* MANY YEARS. *mīlia passuum CCXL patēre*, I. 2, 5, *to extend* two hundred and forty MILES.

**Two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing.** G. 339 ; A. 239, 2, c ; B. 178 ; H. 411 ; W. 318.

- 15 **RULE :** Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching* and *concealing* may govern two accusatives, (1) one of the person, (2) the other of the thing.

With verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, the English may also have the same construction, e.g. *he asked me<sup>1</sup> my opinion,*<sup>2</sup> *he teaches me<sup>1</sup> Latin.*<sup>2</sup> With the verb *to demand*, the name of the person is expressed with *of*; and with *to conceal*, with *from*, e.g. *he concealed it<sup>2</sup> from me.*<sup>1</sup>

*Aeduōs<sup>1</sup> frūmentum<sup>2</sup> flagitare*, I. 16, 1, *he was demanding* (§ 258) GRAIN<sup>2</sup> (OF) THE AEDUANS. Only example in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

In the (rare) passive of this construction, either of the accusatives may become nominative, the other remaining accusative.

NOTE.—Verbs of asking more frequently express the person by the ablative of source (§ 67).

*ab eō postulare*, I. 34, 1, *to demand* OF HIM.

**Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing.** G. 340 ; A. 239, 1, a ; B. 177 ; H. 410 ; W. 317.

- 16 **RULE :** Verbs of *naming*, *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *regarding*, *showing* and the like may govern two accusatives of the same person or thing.

*quem vergobretum appellant*, I. 16, 5, *whom they call* “VERGO-

**BREIT.** *Caesarem certiōrem faciunt*, I. 11, 4, (they make CAESAR MORE CERTAIN), *they inform Caesar*.

7 In the passive of this construction the first accusative becomes subject nominative, the second a predicate nominative (§ 3).

(Caesar) *certior fiēbat*, II. 1, 1, (CAESAR was made MORE CERTAIN), *Caesar was informed*. See also example under § 3.

**Two Accusatives with Compounds.** See § 11.

**Terminal Accusative (Place to Which, Place Whither).** See § 94.

**Accusative, Subject of Infinitive.** See § 257.

**Accusative with Prepositions.** G. 416; A. 152, *a*; B. 141; H. 420; W. 242.

8 The accusative is used with all prepositions which do not govern the ablative. For the list of the latter and of those that govern either case, see § 90.

## DATIVE CASE.

**Dative of Indirect Object with Transitive Verba.** G. 345; A. 225; B. 187, 1.; H. 424; W. 326, 327.

9 **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the indirect object, with transitive verbs which already have a direct object expressed or understood in the active voice, or which are in the passive.

It is translated in English by the indirect object or by *to* or *for*, and may be distinguished from other uses of the dative translated by the same prepositions by inquiring if it *can* be translated by an indirect object.

*eī filiam suam dat*, I. 3, 5, *he gives HIM his daughter*, or, *he gives his daughter TO HIM*. *ea res est Helvētīlīs ēnūntiāta*, I. 4, 1, *this conspiracy was made known TO THE HELVETIANS*, or, *was told THE HELVETIANS*. *illīs rēgna conciliāre*, I. 3, 6, *to win (FOR) THEM the power*.

20 Some verbs, especially *dōnō*, *present*, *circumdō*, *put around*, *surround*, and *circumiciō*, *throw around*, may take either (1) the dative of the person and (2) the accusative of the thing, or (3) the accusative of the person and (4) the ablative (of means) of the thing. See next page.

**patrem<sup>1</sup> cīvitāte<sup>4</sup> dōnāre**, I. 47, 4, *to present HIS FATHER<sup>3</sup> WITH CITIZENSHIP<sup>4</sup>*; <sup>4</sup> this might have been written, **patri<sup>1</sup> cīvitātem<sup>1</sup> dōnāre**, *to present HIS FATHER<sup>1</sup> CITIZENSHIP<sup>1</sup>*.<sup>3</sup> Compare VII. 11, 9. **circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus**, II. 6, 2, (*a multitude of men having been thrown around THE WHOLE WALLS*), *after stationing a large force of men all around the walls*.

- 21 In Caesar **circumdō** always takes the accusative and the ablative, except in VII. 72, 3, where there is the accusative of the thing and the locative ablative.

**Dative of Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs.** G. 346; A. 226; B. 187, II; H. 424; W. 330.

- 22 **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the indirect object with intransitive verbs.

**fortūnae cedere**, VII. 89, 2, *to yield TO FORTUNE*.

Under this construction is included the so-called

**Dative with Special Verbs.** G. 346; A. 227; B. 187, II. a; H. 426, I, 2; W. 330 f.

- 23 **RULE:** With certain verbs the Latin uses a dative which with the corresponding English verbs is translated by an objective. These are,—

“Verbs of *advantage or disadvantage, yielding and resisting, pleasure and displeasure, bidding and forbidding*.”—GILDERSLEEVE.

“Most verbs signifying *to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare*.”—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH.

“Verbs signifying *favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade, and the like*.”—BENNETT.

“Verbs meaning *to please or displease, command or obey, serve or resist, benefit or injure, favor or oppose, trust or distrust, and the like; and to indulge, aid, spare, pardon, believe, persuade, flatter, threaten, envy, be angry, and the like*.”—HARKNESS.

“Verbs meaning *to favor, please, trust, assist, and their opposites: command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, persuade, and the like*.”—WEST.

A dative put, remember, pray,  
 After *envy*, spare, obey,  
*Persuade*, believe, command ; to these  
 Add *pardon*, succor and displease;  
 With *vacare*, to have leisure,  
 And *placere*, to give pleasure,  
 With *nubere*, of the woman said,  
 The English of it is *to wed*.  
*Servire* add, and add *studere*,  
*Heal*, favor, hurt, resist and *indulgere*.—GILDERSLEEVE.

*civitatī persuāsit ut exirent*, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded* (THE STATE) THE  
 CITIZENS *to emigrate*. *novīs imperiīs studere*, II. 1, 3, *to desire*  
 CHANGES OF GOVERNMENT.

24 The verbs in the *Bellum Gallicum* that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: *persuadeō* (17), *studeō* (16), *noceō* (6), *parcō* (6), *resistō* (5), *ignōscō* (3), *indulgeō* (3), *placeō* (3), *pareō* (3), *cōfidō* (3), *dēspērō* (3), *diffidō* (2), *serviō* (2), *faveō* (2), *imperō* (2), *cupiō* (1), *dēnūntiō* (1), *invideō* (1), *medeor* (1), *temperō* (1), *obtemperō* (1), *repugnō* (1); perhaps also *prōsum* (1), *cōsulō* (9), *prōspiciō* (2); and *audiēns sum* (4) = *oboediō*, *obey*, and *fidem habeō* (1) = *cōfidō*; and *satis faciō* (4).

25 Some of these verbs may also take as a direct object an accusative of a neuter pronoun, an accusative and infinitive, or a clause. But the English, having translated the dative by a direct object, has to express the Latin accusative by some other method. See the first example under § 23 and the second under § 12.

26 In the passive these verbs are used impersonally, thus: *mihi persuādētur*, I. 40, 3, (it is persuaded me), *I am persuaded*. So *tibi persuādētur*, *you are persuaded*, *eī persuādētur*, etc.

**Dative with Verbs compounded with Prepositions.** G. 347; A. 228; B. 187, III; H. 429; W. 332.

27 **RULE:** The dative of indirect object is used with many (but not all) verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and sometimes with *circum*.

This dative is due to the meaning of the compound verb and really follows the principles laid down in §§19, 22 and 23.

1. When one of these prepositions is compounded with a transitive verb, there may be both an accusative and a dative, and the construction is that of § 19; the dative is usually rendered as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin verb.

*fīnītimīs bellum inferre*, I. 2, 4, *to wage war on THEIR NEIGHBORS*.  
*hīs lēgātōs praefēcit*, II. 11, 3, *he placed legati in command of THESE*.

2. When the simple verb is intransitive the construction is the same as that of § 22; if the English verb used in translation is transitive, the dative is translated by the objective (compare § 23); otherwise as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin.

*omnībus praestāre*, I. 2, 1, *to surpass ALL*. *Rēmīs studium prōpūgnandī accēssit*, II. 7, 2, (a desire of fighting forth came to THE REMI), *a disposition to make sorties was inspired in the Remi*.

The *intransitive* verbs in the *Bellum Gallicum* that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: *appropinquō* (11), *occurrō* (10), *succēdō* (6), *subveniō* (4), *obveniō* (3), *intercēdō* (2), *succurrō* (2), *accēdō* (1), *adsum* (1), *insistō* (1), *obsistō* (1), *praestō* (1), *succumbō* (1).

Note.—The passive of these verbs must be used impersonally; compare § 26.

*Quibus rēbus occurrendum est*, I. 33, 5, (it must be run against WHICH THINGS), *these conditions must be met*. *huic rei praevertendum existimāvit*, VII. 33, 3, *this matter he thought should be forestalled*.

**Dative of Reference.** G. 345, 352; A. 235; B. 188; H. 425, 4; W. 335.

28 **RULE:** The dative denotes the person with reference to whom a statement is true.

This use of the dative may be tested by trying the translation “*with reference to*”; it is frequently rendered by a possessive. It does not modify the verb directly but belongs to the thought of the whole predicate.

*Caesarī ad pedēs sēsē prōiēcērunt*, I. 31, 2, (they threw themselves, WITH REFERENCE TO CAESAR, at his feet), *they threw themselves at Caesar's feet*. *mīlitibus spem minuit*, V. 33, 1, (WITH REFERENCE TO THE SOLDIERS, it lessened hope), *it lessened the soldiers' hope*.

**Dative of Separation.** G. 345, 1; A. 229; B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; W. 337.

- 29** This term is applied to a dative of reference which occurs with verbs of *taking away* and the like, usually with verbs compounded with *ab*, *dē* or *ex*. It is usually best translated as the object of the preposition *from*, suggested by the verb, though the Latin thought was simply *with reference to* (§ 28).

*Aeduīs libertātem ēripere*, I. 17, 4, *to take away liberty FROM THE AEDUANS. hostibus spēs discēssit*, II. 7, 2, *FROM THE ENEMY hope departed.*

**Dative of the Possessor.** G. 349; A. 231; B. 190; H. 430; W. 340.

- 30** **RULE:** The dative is used with forms of the verb *sum* to denote the person possessing the subject.

In this construction three points are to be noticed:

	<i>Person Possessing.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Thing Possessed.</i>
Latin	mihi, dative	est	liber, nominative
English	<i>I</i> , nominative	<i>have</i>	<i>a book</i> , objective

*nōbīs nihil est*, I. 11, 5, (nothing is TO US), *we have nothing.* *nōbīs est in animō iter facere*, I. 7, 3, (to make a march is TO US in mind; WE have it in mind to march), *we intend to march.* *potestās erat nūllī*, II. 6, 3, (the power was TO NO ONE, NO ONE had the power), *no one could.*

Some compounds of *sum*, especially *absum* and *dēsum*, also take this construction.

**Dative of (Apparent) Agent.** G. 354, A. 232; B. 189; H. 431; W. 339.

- 31** **RULE:** The dative is used to denote the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation or the gerundive alone.

Since the preposition *by* is used to express agency in English, it must be employed in translating this dative. For the passive periphrastic conjugation, see § 278.

*mihi exspectandum est*, I. 11, 6, (it must be waited BY ME), *I must wait.* *omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum*, I. 31, 14, *the same thing must be done BY ALL THE GAULS.* *(mihi) dubitandum est*, II. 2, 5, (it ought to be hesitated BY ME), *I ought to hesitate.*

**Dative of the Object for Which (Dative of Purpose or End).**

G. 356; A. 233; B. 191; H. 433; W. 341–343.

- 32 **RULE:** A dative is used to denote the object for which a thing serves, or the purpose of an action.

This may be accompanied by another dative of indirect object or of reference, and the construction is then sometimes termed the *double dative*,—*object for which* and *person to whom*.

The dative of the object for which is literally translated as the object of the preposition *for*; but the best translation when used with a form of *sum* is by a predicate noun; in most other cases after *as*.

*equitatus quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant*, I. 18, 10, *the cavalry which the Aeduans had sent to Caesar (FOR AID), AS AN AUXILIARY FORCE*. So II. 8, 5. *Gallis impedimentō erat*, I. 25, 3, *it was (for) A DISADVANTAGE to the Gauls*. *praesidiō impedimentis erant*, II. 19, 3, *(were for a guard to the baggage), guarded the baggage*.

**Dative with Adjectives.** G. 359; A. 234; B. 192; H. 434; W. 333.

- 33 **RULE:** Adjectives of *likeness, fitness, friendliness, nearness*, and the like, with their opposites, are modified by a dative.

*proximi Germānis* I. 1, 4, *nearest (to) the Germans*. So II. 3, 1. *castris idoneus*, I. 49, 1, II. 17, 1, *suitable for a camp*.

An adverb derived from such an adjective may also take this construction.

*legiōnī feliciter*, IV. 25, 3, *fortunately for the legion*.

Note.—*Propior* and *proximus*, and corresponding adverbs, may govern the accusative, as if prepositions.

*proximi Rhēnum*, I. 54, 1, *nearest the Rhine*. So III. 7, 2.

**GENITIVE CASE.***I. Genitive with Nouns.*

**Adnominal Genitive (Genitive with Nouns).** G. 360, 1; A. 213; B. 195; H. 439; W. 347.

- 34 **RULE:** A substantive in the genitive is used to limit or describe another usually denoting a different person or thing.

The genitive with nouns is usually equivalent to the English possessive case or to the objective with *of*, but the following subdivisions of its use need to be distinguished.

**Appositional Genitive.** G. 361, 1; A. 214, *f*; B. 202; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

- 35 The genitive is sometimes used in the sense of an appositive after such words as *vox*, *expression*, *nōmen*, *name*, *verbum*, *word*, etc.  
*nōmen obsidum*, III. 2, 5, *the name* (of) HOSTAGES.

**Epexigetical Genitive (Explanatory Genitive, Genitive of Material).** G. 361, 2; A. 214, *e*; B. 197; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

- 36 The genitive is sometimes used to explain the noun it modifies.  
*locus grātiaē*, I. 18, 8, *a position* OF FAVOR. *cōpia pābulī*, II. 2, 1, *plenty* OF FODDER.

**Possessive Genitive.** G. 362; A. 214, 1; B. 198; H. 440, 1; W. 353.

- 37 The possessive genitive designates a person, more rarely a thing, to whom something (denoted by the modified noun) belongs. It may include the idea of origin or of fitness.  
*finēs Belgārum*, I. 1, 5, II. 2, 6, *the territory* OF THE BELGIANS.

- 38 Possession in the first and second persons and in the third person *if reflexive* is indicated by the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns), instead of by the genitive of a personal pronoun. But when *omnium* is added, *nostrum* and *vestrum* (genitives plural of *ego* and *tū*) are used. Distinguish these forms from *nostrī* and *vestrī*, used as objective genitives (§ 43).

*prōvinciam nostram*, I. 2, 3, *OUR province*. *suīs finibus*, I. 1, 4, *from THEIR OWN territory*. *in eōrum finibus*, I. 1, 4, *in THEIR* (i.e. some one's else) *territory*. *omnium vestrum cōsēnsū*, VII. 77, 4, *by the consent* OF YOU all.

**Subjective and Objective Genitives.** G. 363, 364; A. 213, 1, 2; B. 199, 200; H. 440, 1, 2; W. 350, 351.

- 39 The subjective genitive (§ 39) and the objective genitive (§ 40) are  
 40 used *only with nouns having corresponding verbal ideas*.

When the thought of the two words is expanded into a sentence, the genitive is *subjective* if it would become the subject of an active verb in such a sentence, *objective* if it would become the object of an active verb or the subject of a passive verb, or any adverbial modifier.

The subjective may also be described as denoting the one *on whose part* the action takes place or the condition is true; the objective as denoting that *toward which* the action is directed, or *with reference to which* the condition is true.

SUBJECTIVE: *occāsus sōlis*, I. 1, 7, (the setting OF THE SUN), *sunset*; the sun sets; the setting on the part of the sun. *omnium opinio*, II. 3, 1, *the expectation OF ALL*; all expected; expectation on the part of all. *patrum nostrorum memoria*, II. 4, 2, *the memory (OF OUR FATHERS) of the last generation*; our fathers remembered; memory on the part of our fathers.

OBJECTIVE: *rēgnī cupiditas*, I. 2, 1, *desire (of) FOR ROYAL POWER*; royal power was desired; desire directed toward royal power. *eārum rērum memoria*, II., 4, 3, *the memory OF THESE DEEDS*; remembering these deeds.

- 41 The sense is the only guide to the relation of the two nouns, for in an isolated expression it may be impossible to tell which is meant. E.g. *amor Dei*, *the love of God*, may mean in either Latin or English, (1) *the love which God has for some one, love on the part of God* (God loves), subjective, or (2), *the love which some one has for God, love directed toward God* (God is loved), objective.

To avoid this ambiguity both languages may substitute prepositional phrases for the objective genitive, Latin *in*, *ergā*, English *for*, *toward*, *to*.

*Diviciaci* (subjective) *summum in populum Rōmānum studium*, I. 19, 2, *the great devotion OF DIVICIACUS TO THE ROMAN PEOPLE*. *dēspectus in mare*, III. 14, 9, *a view OF THE SEA*. So *ergā*, V. 54, 4.

- 42 Both these genitives may be connected with the same noun. *veterēs Helvētiōrum* (subjective) *iniūriæ populī Rōmānī* (objective), I. 30, 2, (THE HELVETIANS' ancient injuries OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE), *the ancient injuries inflicted by the Helvetians upon the Roman people*.
- 43 The subjective genitive, like the possessive (§ 38), is used only of the third person, not reflexive. For the first and second persons and the third person *if reflexive*, the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns) are used. But for the objective relation in such cases the forms *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī* and *vestrī* are generally used.

SUBJECTIVE: *sui mōrēs*, I. 4, 1, *THEIR customs*. *nostra memoria*, II. 4, 7, *OUR memory*. But, *scelus eōrum*, I. 14, 5, *THEIR crime*. OBJECTIVE: *sui potestas*, I. 40, 8, *a chance OF (getting at) HIM*. But *suum periculum*, IV. 28, 2, *danger TO THEMSELVES*.

**Genitive of Quality (Descriptive Genitive, Genitive of Characteristic).** G. 365; A. 215; B. 203; H. 440, 3; W. 354.

- 4 The genitive, *when modified by an adjective or its equivalent*, is used to denote a quality.

**levis armātūrae Numidae**, II. 10, 1, (Numidians OF LIGHT ARMOR), *light-armed Numidians*. **hominēs māgnae virtūtis**, II. 15, 4, *men OF GREAT BRAVERY*.

With this use compare the ablative of quality (§ 80). The use of the genitive is limited chiefly to essential qualities and is therefore used of number, measure, time and space; but often the use seems indifferent.

- 15 Under this use is included the *genitive of measure*. **trium mēnsium molita cibaria**, I. 5, 3, *THREE MONTHS' flour*; i.e. *flour enough to last three months*.

NOTE 1. The adjective may be implied in the noun.

**triduū viam**, I. 38, 1, IV. 4, 5, *a THREE DAYS' march*.

NOTE 2. This genitive may be connected with the predicate.

**erat altitūdō pedum trium**, II. 18, 3, *the depth was (OF) THREE FEET*.

**Predicate Possessive Genitive.** G. 366; A. 214, c; B. 198, 3; H. 439, second part, and 3; W. 359, 360.

- 46 The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate, with a form of *sum* or a similar verb. *Sum* with this construction may often be translated *belong to*.

**quid suū sit cōsiliū ostendit**, I. 21, 2, *he shows* (what is OF HIS PLAN, what belongs to his plan), *what his plan includes*. **iūdicium est imperātōris**, I. 41, 3, *the decision is THE COMMANDER'S, belongs to the commander*.

**Gallia est Ariovistī**, I. 45, 1, *Gaul belongs to Ariovistus*.

**Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).** G. 367–372; A. 216; B. 201; H. 440, 5–444; W. 355–358.

- 47 The partitive genitive denotes the whole of a class, of which the modified noun denotes a part. It is used especially as follows :

- 48 (1) With substantives of quantity, number and weight. This use is often hardly to be distinguished from the genitive of material (§ 36).

**carrōrum numerus**, I. 3, 1, *a number OF CARTS*. **multitūdō eōrum**, II. 11, 4, *a great number OF THEM*.

- 49 (2) With the neuter singular of many adjectives and pronouns of quantity, in the nominative and accusative. *Here the English uses no preposition.*

**nihil reliquū**, I. 11, 5, *nothing* (of) LEFT. **minus dubitātiōis**, I. 14, 1, *less* (of) HESITATION. **satis causae**, I. 19, 1, *sufficient* (of) REASON, *reason enough*. **tantum quantum loci**, II. 8, 3, (so much as OF PLACE), *as much* SPACE. **nihil vini**, II. 15, 4, (nothing of WINE), *no* WINE.

This genitive is often widely separated from its noun. E.g. **quid . . . auxiliū**, I. 31, 14; **quid . . . negotiū**, I. 34, 4.

NOTE.—Adjectives of the second declension can be used as substantives in the neuter in this construction; e.g. **reliquū** (see above). But adjectives of the third declension cannot be so used, unless (rarely) when combined with one of the second.

- 50 (3) With numerals, both general and special if used substantively; *with the latter the English uses no preposition.*

GENERAL: **multi eōrum**, V. 22, 2, *many* OF THEM. SPECIAL: **mīlia passuum**, I. 2, 5, II. 6, 1, (thousands OF PACES), *miles*. **hominum mīlia**, I. 26, 5, II. 28, 2, (thousands OF MEN), *thousand men*.

- 51 **Uterque** is commonly used as an adjective with nouns but as a substantive with pronouns.

**uterque eōrum**, VII. 32, 3, *each* OF THEM. Not so, however, II. 16, 2, and IV. 17, 6.

- 52 (4) With comparatives and superlatives, of either adjectives or adverbs.

**Hōrum fortissimi**, I. 1, 3, *the bravest* OF THESE. **tōtius Galliae plurimum possunt**, I. 3, 7, *they are the most powerful* (§ 13) OF ALL GAUL. **quārum interior**, VII. 72, 3, *the interior* OF WHICH.

- 53 Instead of the partitive genitive with numerals, pronouns, comparatives and superlatives, the ablative with **dē** or **ex**, or, less often, the accusative with **inter** or **apud**, may be used; especially with cardinals (except **ūnus** when denoting the first of a series) and with **quidam**. In such cases these prepositions should be translated *of*.

**pauci dē nostris**, I. 15, 2, *a few* OF OUR MEN. **proximi ex Belgis**, II. 3, 1, *the nearest* OF THE BELGIANS.

**Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.** G. 373; A. 223, *e*; B. 198, 1, 2, 201, 3; H. 475, 2, 446, 4, 5; W. 348, 349.

- 54 The genitive precedes **causā** and **grātiā**, *because*, *on account*, *for the sake*, *for the purpose*. Examples follow on next page.

**hūius potentiae causā**, I. 18, 6, *for the sake of (increasing) THIS POWER.* **reī frūmentāriae causā**, I. 39, 1, *for the purpose of (procuring) GRAIN; for grain.* **auxiliī causā**, II. 24, 4, *(for the purpose OF AID), as an auxiliary force.*

5 A gerund or gerundive preceding **causā** or **grātiā** forms an expression of purpose.

**suī mūnendī causā**, I. 44, 6, *(for the purpose of protecting himself), to protect himself; see § 272.* **pūgnandī causā**, II. 10, 4, *(for the purpose of fighting), to fight; see § 267.*

6 The genitive **ēius diēi** is used with the adverbs **prīdiē** and **postrīdiē** (old case forms; see vocabulary). In the *Bellum Gallicum*, **prīdiē** is used alone four times and with the genitive once; **postrīdiē**, six times, always with the genitive.

**prīdiē ēius diēi**, I. 47, 2, *the day before (THIS DAY).* **postrīdiē ēius diēi**, I. 23, 1, *the day after (THIS DAY); the next day.*

7 The genitive is used with the indeclinable noun **īstar**, *likeness*.

**īstar mūrī**, II. 17, 4, *(the likeness OF A WALL), like a wall.* Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

## II. Genitive with Adjectives.

(Objective) Genitive with Adjectives. G. 374; A. 218, a; B. 204, 1; H. 450, 451, 1, 2; W. 352.

8 RULE: The objective genitive is used with some adjectives denoting *fulness* and *want*, *participation*, *power*, *knowledge*, and *ignorance*, *desire* and *disgust*.

“*Desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt and their opposites.*”—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH. “*Desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness and their opposites.*”—BENNETT. “*Desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, and the like, with their contraries.*”—HARKNESS.

**bellandī cupidus**, I. 2, 4, *desirous OF CARRYING ON WAR.* **cūius reī perītissimus**, III. 21, 3, *very skilled IN SUCH MATTERS.*

This construction occurs in the *Bellum Gallicum* 21 times, as follows: —with **perītus** (3), **imperītus** (6), **cupidus** (4), **medius** (3), **īnsuētus** (2), **plēnus** (1), **cōnsciūs** (1), and with **similis** in the phrase **vērī simile**, III. 13, 6; elsewhere **similis** takes the dative (§ 33).

The corresponding English meanings do not always admit *of* as a following preposition; the proper ones in such cases are suggested in the vocabulary.

### III. Genitive with Verbs.

**Genitive with Verbs of Memory.** G. 376; A. 219; B. 206, H. 454; W. 364.

- 59 **RULE:** Verbs of *reminding, remembering and forgetting* govern the genitive.

This genitive is translated by the objective in English.

*reminiscere veteris incommodī*, I. 13, 4, *remember THE FORMER DEFEAT*. So with *obliviscor*, I. 14, 3 and VII. 34, 1. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Genitive with Verbs of Emotion (Genitive with Impersonals).**  
G. 377; A. 221; B. 209; H. 457; W. 368.

- 60 **RULE:** *Misereor* and the impersonals *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet*, take<sup>1</sup> the accusative of the person and<sup>2</sup> the genitive of the thing.

*cōsilia, quōrum<sup>2</sup> eōs<sup>1</sup> paenitet*, IV. 5, 3, *plans, OF WHICH<sup>2</sup> (it repents THEM<sup>1</sup>) THEY repent*. Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Genitive with Verbs of Judicial Action.** G. 378; A. 220; B. 208; H. 456; W. 367.

- 61 **RULE:** Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning and acquitting* govern the genitive of the charge.

*inīquitātis condemnārī*, VII. 19, 5, *to be condemned FOR MISCONDUCT*. *prōditiōnis insimulātus*, VII. 20, 1, *accused OF TREASON*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Genitive with Verbs of Buying, Selling and Rating (Genitive of Price or Value).** G. 379; A. 252, a; B. 203, 3, 4; H. 448; W. 361-363.

- 62 **RULE:** With verbs of *buying, selling and rating* the genitive is usually employed to express indefinite price.

*tantī tua apud mē grātia est*, I. 20, 5, *your favor with me (is worth so MUCH, is OF SO GREAT ACCOUNT), is so great*. *cūius auctōritās māgnī habēbātur*, IV. 21, 7, *whose influence was considered (OF GREAT WEIGHT), great*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum* besides the two under the following rule.

**Genitive with *Interest* and *Rēfert*.** G. 381, 382; A. 222; B. 212, 2; H. 458, 3; W. 369.

**3 RULE:** *Interest* and *rēfert*, *it concerns*, take <sup>1</sup> a genitive of the person, rarely of the thing, concerned.

The degree <sup>2</sup> of concern is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial accusative, or a genitive of value.

The thing <sup>3</sup> about which there is concern is expressed by the subject, which may be a neuter pronoun, an infinitive with subject accusative, or an indirect question.

*docet quantō opere<sup>1</sup> rei pūblīcae<sup>1</sup> intersit manūs<sup>1</sup> hostium distīnērī,* II. 5, 2, *he shows (HOW GREATLY<sup>2</sup> it concerns), how important it is to THE REPUBLIC,<sup>1</sup> that THE FORCES<sup>2</sup> of the enemy BE DIVIDED.<sup>3</sup>* This is the only example of (1) in the *Bellum Gallicum*. *māgnī<sup>2</sup> interest,* with accusative and infinitive, V. 4, 3, VI. 1, 3, *it GREATLY concerns, it is OF GREAT IMPORTANCE.* *neque interest, ipsōsne<sup>1</sup> interficiāmus an impedīmentīs exuāmus,* VII. 14, 8, *and (it does not concern us), it makes no difference, WHETHER<sup>2</sup> WE KILL THEM OUTRIGHT, OR<sup>3</sup> STRIP THEM OF THEIR BAGGAGE.* These are the only instances of interest in the *Bellum Gallicum*; *rēfert* does not occur.

**Genitive with Verbs of Plenty and Want.** See § 65, note.

**Genitive with *Potior*.** See § 73, note.

### ABLATIVE CASE.

**64** The ablative case unites in its different uses the functions of three cases that were originally distinct in form and meaning,—the true ablative (*ab*, *ferō*), denoting separation, the instrumental and the locative.

**Ablative of Separation.** G. 390; A. 243; B. 214; H. 461–466; W. 374–377.

**65 RULE:** Separation is expressed by the ablative sometimes with, sometimes without, the prepositions *ab*, *dē* or *ex*.

The preposition is regularly omitted with verbs and adjectives of *freeing*, *excluding*, *depriving*, *lacking*, *abstaining* and *removing*, but is expressed if the substantive denotes a person.

*Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna dividit,* I. 1, 2, *the Garonne separates the Gauls FROM THE AQUITANIANS.* *suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent,* I. 1, 4, *they keep them (forth FROM) out of THEIR OWN TERRITORY.*

**tūta ab hostibus**, II. 5, *safe FROM THE ENEMY*. . . **ab hīs castris oppidum aberat**, II. 6, 1, *FROM THIS CAMP a town was distant*.

NOTE. Instead of the ablative, the genitive may be used with certain verbs of *plenty and want*. The *Bellum Gallicum* shows but one example.

**auxiliū egēre**, VI. 11, 4, (to be destitute OF AID), *to lack aid*.

- 66 The words with which the ablative of separation is used without a preposition can be learned only by practice. The following list contains all the verbs that are *ever* used without a preposition in the *Bellum Gallicum*. The first number in parenthesis indicates the number of times it is used *with* a preposition, the second the number of times it is used *without* a preposition.

Verbs and adjectives of *freeing*, etc. (§ 65): **abstineō** (1, *ā mulieribus*; 1, *proeliō*), **careō** (0; 2), **dēpellō** (0; 3), **dēspoliō** (0; 1), **exspoliō** (0; 1), **exuō** (0; 1), **interclūdō** (6, not collective or personal; 2, *ab exercitū, ā praesidiō et impedimentis*), **interdicō** (0; 3), **levō** (0; 1), **liberō** (0; 3), **nūdō** (0; 2), **spoliō** (0; 3), **supersedeō** (0; 1).

Other verbs: **absum** (25; 1, *tōtō bellō*), **cēdō** (0; 1, *locō*), **dēcidō** (0; 1, *equō*), **dēficiō** (0; 6), **dēsistō** (0; 8), **ēdūcō** \* (18, including *castris*; 2, *castris*), **ēgredior** \* (13; 5), **ēruptionem faciō** (1, *ex oppidō*; 4, *portis*, including *idea of means*), **excēdō** \* (6; 10), **expellō** (2, *ex civitate, ex silvis*; 6), **labor** (0; 1, *spē*), **praecipitō** (0; 1, *mūrō*), **prohibeō**, in sense of *keep away* (2; 14), **prohibeō** in other senses (5; 0).

**Ablative of Place from Which (Place Whence).** See § 91.

**Ablative of Origin (Source).** G. 395, 396; A. 244; B. 215; H. 467, 469, 470; W. 378.

- 67 RULE: Origin or source is expressed by the ablative, generally with **ab** or **ex**.

Besides the ordinary forms of source, this use includes *paren'age* and *material*. Parentage is expressed without a preposition except in the case of remote ancestors, when **ab** is used, and in the case of personal pronouns, when **ex** is used. Material is expressed with **dē** or **ex**.

SOURCE: **ab aliquō quaerere**, cf. I. 18, 2, II. 4, 1, *to inquire (FROM) of ANY ONE*. **ex sōlō quaerere**, I. 18, 2, *to inquire OF (him) ALONE*. **Rhēnus oritur ex Lepontiis**, IV. 10, 3, *the Rhine rises (FROM) among THE LEPONTII*. MATERIAL: **nāvēs factae ex robore**, III. 13, 3, *ships made (out) OF OAK*. PARENTAGE: **amplissimō genere**

\* Takes and omits preposition, sometimes with the same noun, without apparent difference in meaning.

**nātus**, IV. 12, 4, (born) OF MOST DISTINGUISHED FAMILY. **ortū**  
**ab Germānīs**, II. 4, 1, (SPRUNG FROM THE GERMANS), of German de-  
*scent.*

**Ablative of Agent.** G. 401, second part; A. 246; B. 216; H. 468;  
 W. 379.

- 68 **RULE:** Agency is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, except in connection with the gerundive.

This ablative answers the question, *By whom?* It is the name of a person and is used with the passive voice.

**quī ā senātū amicus appellātus erat**, I. 3, 4, *who had been called friend*  
 BY THE SENATE. **quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur**, II. 1, 3,  
*because they were stirred up* BY SOME (OF THE) GAULS.

For the dative of the agent see § 31.

The person through whom an action takes place is expressed by the accusative with **per**.

**Ablative after Comparatives.** G. 398; A. 247; B. 217; H. 471;  
 W. 380.

- 69 When a comparison between two substantives is expressed in full, the comparative word is usually followed by **quam**, *than*, with the second substantive in the same case as the first. This construction may sometimes be condensed, however, in Latin, as follows:

**RULE:** The ablative may be used after comparatives, instead of **quam** with the nominative or accusative.

This ablative is translated by *than* with the case of the first substantive.

**nōn amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum**, I. 15, 5, *not more* THAN FIVE MILES (*a day*). So II. 7, 3, 4.

- 70 After **plūs**, **minus**, **amplius** and **longius**, **quam** *may* be omitted without changing the construction to the ablative. In such cases *than* must be supplied in translation.

**spatium quod nōn amplius pedum sēscentōrum**, I. 38, 5, *a distance which is not more (than) (OF) SIX HUNDRED FEET* (§ 45). **flūmen nōn amplius mīlia passuum X abest**, II. 16, 1, *the river is not more (than) ten MILES away* (§ 99).

**Ablative of Means or Instrument.** G. 401; A. 248, c; B. 218; H. 466; W. 386.

- 71 **RULE:** Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *By what means?* It is translated with the prepositions *by* or *with*, when the sense of these is *by means of*. It is almost always the name of a *thing*; if of a person, it is one considered as a "tool."

*flūmine continētur*, I. 1, 5, *it is bounded BY THE RIVER.* *legiōne militibusque mūrum perdūcit*, I. 8, 1, *WITH THE LEGION AND THE SOLDIERS he constructs a wall.* *litteris certior fiēbat*, II. 1, 1, *he was informed BY THE DISPATCHES.*

- 72 This ablative is sometimes translated otherwise than as above; for example, when some other idea that is denoted by the ablative is combined with it, or when the English thought is different from the Latin.

*proeliis contendere*, I. 1, 4, *to contend IN BATTLES.* *dolō niti*, I. 13, 6, *to rely ON TREACHERY.* *flūmine subvehere*, I. 16, 3, *to bring up (by) THE RIVER.* *viribus cōfidere*, I. 53, 2, *to rely ON ONE'S STRENGTH.* *victōriis frēti*, III. 21, 1, *relying ON THEIR VICTORIES.* *peditātū contentus*, VII. 64, 2, *content WITH INFANTRY.*

**Ablative with Deponents.** G. 407; A. 249; B. 218, 1; H. 477. I; W. 387.

- 73 **RULE:** The ablative of means is used with *utor*, *use*, *frutor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *potior*, *obtain (control of)*, *vāscor*, *eat*, and their compounds.

This ablative is translated by the objective in English.

*imperio potiri*, I. 2, 2, *to obtain CONTROL.* *eōdem iure et iisdem lēgibus uti*, II. 3, 5, *(to use THE SAME RIGHT AND THE SAME LAWS), to have the same constitution and the same laws.*

NOTE. Instead of the ablative, the genitive is once used with *potior* in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

*tōtius Galliae potiri*, I. 3, 8, *to obtain control OF ALL GAUL.*

**Ablative with *opus* and *usus*.** G. 406; A. 243, e; B. 218. 2; H. 477, III.; W. 389.

- 74 **RULE:** The ablative of means is used with *opus* (indeclinable), *need*, and *usus*, *need*, to denote the thing needed.

**si quid** (acc.) **opus** (nom.) **factō erit**, I. 42, 5, (if there shall be need at all, § 13), *if there is any need OF ACTION.* **si quō opus erit**, II. 8, 5, (if there shall be need OF ANYTHING), *if there is any need.* Only examples in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Ablative of Price.** G. 404; A. 252; B. 225; H. 478; W. 395.

5 **RULE:** Price is expressed by the ablative when **pretiō** or a similar word is used, or when the amount is definite.

**parvō pretiō**, I. 18, 3, AT A SMALL PRICE. So IV. 2, 2. **levi mōmentō**, VII. 39, 3, OF SLIGHT CONSEQUENCE. **quantō detrīmentō victōria cōstet**, VII. 19, 4, WITH HOW GREAT LOSS *victory would be obtained, how great a loss the victory would cost.* Only examples in the *Bellum Gallicum*. Compare the genitive of price, § 62.

**Ablative of Attendance (Accompaniment).** G. 392; A. 248, a, b; B. 220; H. 473; W. 390.

76 **RULE:** Attendance or accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum**.

This ablative answers the question, *With whom? In company with what?*

**cum omnibus cōpiīs exire**, I. 2, 1, *to set out WITH ALL THEIR POSSESSIONS.* **Sabinum cum sex cohortibus relinquit**, II. 5, 6, *he left Sabinus WITH SIX COHORTS.*

77 **cum** may be omitted in military descriptions when the noun is modified by an adjective that is not a numeral.

**omnibus cōpiīs contendere**, II. 7, 3, *to hasten WITH ALL THEIR TROOPS.*

**Ablative of Manner (including Attendant Circumstance).** G. 399; A. 248; B. 220; H. 473, 3; W. 390, 391.

78 **RULE:** Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, which may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative answers the question, *How? Under what circumstances?*  
**māgnō cum periculō erit**, I. 10, 2, *it will be (WITH GREAT DANGER), very dangerous.* **multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāre**, I. 20, 1, *to beseech WITH MANY TEARS.* **māgnō impetū oppugnāre**, II. 6, 1, *to*

*attack* WITH GREAT VIGOR.

**māgnō cum strepitū egredi**, II. 11, 1,

*to set out* WITH GREAT NOISE.

- 79 A few words, many of which have practically become adverbs, are used without a preposition: e.g. *iniūriā*, (with injustice), *unjustly*, *wrongfully*; *silentiō*, (in silence), *silently*; *meritō*, (by merit), *deservedly*; *commodō*, (with advantage), *advantageously*.

**Ablative of Quality (Characteristic).** G. 400; A. 251; B. 224; H. 473, 2; W. 394.

- 80 **RULE:** A quality or characteristic is expressed by the ablative modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative always modifies a substantive, and may be tested by the translation "characterized by," which in actual rendering should be replaced by *of*.

**Allobrogēs bonō animō nōn vidēbantur**, I. 6, 3, *the Allobroges did not seem* (characterized by a good feeling), *of friendly disposition, well disposed*. **Iccius summā nōbilitāte**, II. 6, 4, *Iccius, (a man)* (characterized by), **OF THE GREATEST PROMINENCE**.

With this construction compare the descriptive genitive, § 44.

**Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference.** G. 403; A. 250; B. 223; H. 479; W. 393.

- 81 **RULE:** The amount (degree) of difference between two objects or actions is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *How much?* It appears before comparatives and words implying a comparison, and in expressions of distance.

In translation it takes the construction of the English adverbial objective; hence *there is no preposition in the English rendering*.

**nihilō minus**, I. 5, 1, (less BY NOTHING, NONE the less), *nevertheless*. **multō facilius**, I. 6, 2, (easier BY MUCH), *MUCH easier*. **paucīs ante diēbus**, I. 18, 10, (before BY A FEW DAYS), *A FEW DAYS before*. **a (adverb) mīlibus passuum duōbus**, II. 7, 3, *TWO MILES away*. **paulō longius**, II. 20, 1, (too far BY A LITTLE), *A LITTLE too far*.

**Ablative of Specification.** G. 397; A. 253; B. 226; H. 480; W. 396.

- 82 **RULE:** Specification is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *In respect to what? In what respect?* It is translated as the object of *in*, or, less frequently, of *by*. It modifies verbs, adjectives and, more rarely, nouns.

*virtūte praecedunt*, I. 1, 4, *they excel* IN (respect to) COURAGE. *oppida numerō duodecim*, II. 4, 7, *towns twelve* IN (respect to) NUMBER. *nōmine Bibrax*, II. 6, 1, *Bibrax* BY NAME.

- 83 Under this use of the ablative is generally considered to belong that with *dignus*, *worthy* (of), VII. 25, 1. and *indignus*, *unworthy* (of), V. 35, 5, VII. 17, 3. ALLEN and GREENOUGH, however, class this under the ablative of cause.

**Ablative of Cause.** G. 408; A. 245; B. 219; H. 475; W. 384, 385.

- 84 **RULE:** Cause is expressed by the ablative generally without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *Why? On what account? For what reason?* It is translated *because of*, *on account of*, *for*, *from*, etc., according to the English word with which it is connected.

*grātiā plurimum poterat*, I. 9, 3, *he was very influential* ON ACCOUNT OF HIS POPULARITY. *virtūte cōgnitī*, I. 28, 5, *noted* FOR THEIR VALOR. *mōbilitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant*, II. 1, 3, ON ACCOUNT OF THEIR FICKLENESS (of mind) *they desired changes of government*.

- 85 Instead of the simple ablative prepositions are often used; especially *dē* or *ex* with the ablative, or *ob* (see vocabulary) and *propter* with the accusative.

*quā dē causā*, I. 1, 4, *FOR THIS REASON*. *ex cōsuētūdine*, I. 52, 4, *ACCORDING TO THEIR CUSTOM*.

### **Ablative of Accordance.**

- 86 An ablative translated *in accordance with* is classed by GILDERSLEEVE and ALLEN and GREENOUGH as specification, by BENNETT and WEST as manner, by HARKNESS as cause.

*mōribus suis*, I. 4, 1, *according to their customs*. So II. 13, 3.

**Ablative Absolute.** G. 409, 410; A. 255; B. 227; H. 489; W. 397–399.

- 87 **RULE:** A noun and a participle or their equivalents are

used in the ablative to add an attendant circumstance to a sentence.

This construction corresponds to the independent *nominative* with participle in English, hence no preposition is used to translate the Latin case. On account of the rarity of this construction in good English, however, the literal translation should rarely be retained, but should be changed to an active participial construction, a phrase or a clause.

While connected logically or in thought with the rest of the sentence, it has no grammatical connection; hence the name *absolute*.

**rēgnō occupātō**, I. 3, 8, (the control of the government having been seized), *having seized control of the government; after seizing control of the government.* **initā aetate**, II. 2, 1; see vocabulary under *ineō*. See also § 364.

- 88 Instead of a noun and a participle there may be (a) two nouns, (b) a noun and an adjective, when the lacking participle of the verb *sum* is understood.

**Messālā, Pīsōne cōsulibus**, I. 2, 1, (Messala and Piso *being* consuls), *in the consulship of Messala and Piso.* **sē invitō**; see vocabulary.

**Ablative of Place Where (Place in Which).** See § 91.

**Ablative of Time.** G. 393, 394; A. 256; B. 230, 231; H. 486–488; W. 406, 407.

- 89 **RULE:** The time when or within which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *When?* It is translated with the preposition *at* or *on* if it is “*time when*,” with the preposition *within* if it is distinctly “*time within which*.”

**eō tempore**, I. 3, 5, **AT THAT TIME.** **eō diē**, II. 6, 2, **(ON) THAT DAY.** **patrum nostrōrum memoriā**, I. 12, 5, **WITHIN THE MEMORY** (of our fathers), *of the last generation.* So II. 4, 7. See also § 105.

**Ablative with Prepositions.** G. 417; A. 152, b; B. 142; H. 490; W. 243, 245.

- 90 The following prepositions, used in the *Bellum Gallicum*, govern the ablative only: **ā** (ab, abs), **dē**, **ē** (ex), **prae** (twice), **prō**, **sine**.

**In** and **sub** govern either accusative or ablative. See vocabulary.

## EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.

**Place Where (Place in Which or at Which).** G. 385–389, 411;  
A. 254, 258, *c-f*; B. 228, 232; H. 482–485; W. 401–403.

- 91 **RULE:** Place where is expressed by the locative case when it exists (see § 93), otherwise by the ablative with *in*.

*domī*, I. 18, 5, AT HOME. *in eōrum fīnibus*, I. 1, 4, IN THEIR TERRITORY. *in Galliā*, II. 1, 1, IN GAUL.

- 92 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition, and it is frequently omitted in expressions containing forms of *locus*, *pars*, or *tōtus*, and when some other idea is combined with that of place.

*nōn nūllīs locīs*, I. 6, 2, IN SOME PLACES. So II. 33, 4. *tōtīs castrīs*, I. 39, 5, THROUGHOUT THE CAMP. *castrīs sē ac palū-dibus tenuerat*, I. 40, 8, *he had kept himself* IN CAMP (and) AMONG THE MARSHES. *proeliō Nervicō*, III. 5, 2, IN THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII.

- 93 **LOCATIVE.**—Forms of the locative case are confined to the names of towns and small islands in the singular of the first and second declensions, where it is like the genitive; to a very few in the singular of the third declension, where it is like the dative; and to the following forms of common nouns,—*domī*, *at home*, *rūrī*, *in the country*, *humī*, *on the ground*, *militiae* and *belli*, *in war*.

The locative occurs as follows in the *Bellum Gallicum*: *domī*, I. 18, 5, 20, 2, 28, 3, IV. 1, 5, 6, VII. 4, 8, 39, 1; names of towns, V. 24, 1, VI. 44, 3, VII. 3, 3, 10, 4, 14, 1 (three times), 31, 4, 32, 1, 47, 5, 55, 5, 57, 1, 77, 1, 90, 7, 8.

**Terminal Accusative (Place Whither, Place to Which).** G. 337;  
A. 258, 2; B. 182; H. 418, 419; W. 325.

- 94 **RULE:** Place whither or to which is usually expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

*pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis*, I. 1, 6, *they extend* TO THE LOWER PART of the river. *in interiōrem Galliam dēducere*, II. 2, 1, *to lead (them)* INTO THE INTERIOR OF GAUL (§ 113).

- 95 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also *domum*, *domos*, when meaning *home*, and *rūs*, *into the country*. But *ad* may be used with the name of a town to denote motion to its vicinity.

*domum reditiō*, I. 5, 7, *a return HOME*. *domum pervenire*, II. 11, 1, *to get HOME*. *Bibracte ire*, I. 23, 1, *to go TO BIBRACTE*. *ad Genāvam pervenit*, I. 7, 1, *he arrives IN THE VICINITY OF GENEVA*.

**Place Whence (Place from Which).** G. 390, 391; A. 258; B. 229; H. 491, I. 2, II. 2; W. 404.

- 96 **RULE:** Place whence or from which is usually expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē* or *ex*.

*dē suis finibus exire*, I. 2, 1, *to go out FROM THEIR TERRITORY*. *ex castris educere*, II. 8, 5, *to lead out FROM CAMP*.

- 97 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also *domo*, *from home*, and *rūre*, *from the country*. But *ab* may be used with the name of a town to denote motion from its vicinity.

*domo efferre*, I. 5, 3, *to take FROM HOME*. So IV. 7, 3. *Metio-sedō fugere*, VII. 58, 6, *to flee FROM METIOSEDUM*. *ab Ocelo*, I. 11, 5, *FROM THE VICINITY OF OCELUM*.

- 98 **THE POINT OF VIEW** is expressed by the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; English use, *at* or *on*.

*unā ex parte*, I. 2, 3, *ON ONE SIDE*. *ab utroque latere*, II. 8, 3, *ON EACH SIDE*.

- 99 **DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS EXTENT OF SPACE** is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14).

- 100 **THE WAY BY WHICH** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. This is generally considered as a subdivision of the ablative of means (§ 71).

- 101 **LOCATION AMONG TRIBES** is expressed by the ablative with *in* or by the accusative with *inter* or *apud*.

- 102 **LOCATION NEAR A PLACE** is expressed by the accusative with *ad*, *near*, *at*.

- 103 **DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS AN INTERVAL BETWEEN TWO PLACES** is expressed by the ablative of degree of difference (§ 81).

## EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

- 04 **TIME WHEN (TIME AT WHICH)** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89).
- 05 **TIME WITHIN WHICH** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89), or, for clearness, with the preposition *in* (e.g. *in cōsulātū suō*, I. 35, 2).
- 06 **TIME DURING WHICH (TIME HOW LONG)** is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14). See also note to Book I., line 476.
- 07 **THE INTERVAL OF TIME** before or after an event is generally expressed by *ante* or *post* as prepositions with the accusative, or by *ante* or *post* as adverbs, modified by an ablative of degree of difference (§ 81). E.g. *post trēs annōs*, *after three years*, or *tribus annis post*, *three years after*.

**Roman Dates.** G. Appendix; A. 259, *e*, 376; B. 371; H. 754, 755; W. 718–754.

- 08 The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (*Kalendae*), Nones (*Nōnae*), and Ides (*Īdūs*), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: *Kalendae Iānuāriāe*, *Nōnae Februāriāe*, *Īdūs Mārtiae*. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,  
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,  
The Nones the seventh; but all besides  
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward the Romans used for “the day before” *pridīe* with the accusative. E.g. *pridīe Kalendās Iānuāriās*, Dec. 31.

The longer intervals are expressed by *ante diem tertium*, *quārtum*, *etc.*, before the accusative, so that *ante diem tertiam Kal. Iān.* means “two days before the Calends of January;” *ante diem quārtum*, or *a.d. iv.*, or *iv. Kal. Iān.*, “three days before,” and so on. (See note on Book I. line 176.) These expressions are idiomatic; the nouns cannot be parsed separately, and the whole may be treated as an indeclinable noun.

**TO TURN ROMAN DATES INTO ENGLISH.**—For Nones and Ides, add one to the date on which these fall, and subtract the given number;

for Kalends, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (*ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis*), I. 6, 4, (31 + 2 — 5), *March 28*.

## SYNTAX AND USES OF ADJECTIVES.

**Agreement of Adjectives.** G. 289, 286; A. 186, 187; B. 234, 235; H. 394, 395; W. 293–295.

109 **RULE:** An adjective, a participle (verbal adjective) or an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) agrees with the substantive it modifies in gender, number and case.

110 The common attributive modifier of two or more substantives usually agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important.

*vir et cōsiliū māgnī et virtūtis*, III. 5, 2, a *man of* (both) **GREAT wisdom and courage**. So V. 11, 5.

**Substantive Use of Adjectives.** G. 204, Notes 1–4; A. 188, 189; B. 236–238; H. 494, 495; W. 409–411.

111 Any gender of an adjective may be used alone as a substantive, the ending or the context showing the appropriate sense.

*nōbilissimus*, adjective, I. 2, 1, **THE MOST PROMINENT**. *nōbilissimōs civitātis*, I. 7, 3, **THE MOST PROMINENT (men) of the state**. *sua omnia*, II. 3, 2, **ALL THEIR (possessions)**.

112 A certain adjective may have been used most frequently with a particular noun, which comes to be regularly omitted. The gender remains that of the noun with which it was combined.

*hīberna* (sc. *castra*), I. 10, 3, III. 2, 1, (**WINTER camp**), **WINTER quarters**. *hominēs ferī*, I. 31, 5, II. 15, 5, **FERCE men**; but *fera* (sc. *bestia*, *beast*), VI. 25, 5, 28, 2, **WILD beast**.

**Partitive Use of Adjectives.** G. 291, 1, Remark 2; A. 193; B. 241, 1; H. 497, 4; W. 416.

113 The following adjectives in the *Bellum Gallicum*, being superlatives, or implying order or sequence, sometimes designate a *part* of a following substantive,—*primus*, *extrēmus*, *summus*, *medius*, *infimus* (*Imus*), *reliquus*. See vocabulary. Examples follow.

**summus mōns**, I. 22, 1, **THE HIGHEST PART OF the hill, THE TOP OF the hill.** **ad extrēmās fossās**, II. 8, 4, **at THE ENDS OF the ditches.**

**Predicate or Adverbial Use of Adjectives.** A. 191; B. 239; H. 497, 1; W. 412.

- 14 Certain adjectives are best rendered adverbially when they modify the subject;—in the *Bellum Gallicum*, **annuus**, **laetus**, **invitus**, **frequēns**, **tristis**, **praeceps**. See vocabulary.

**qui creātur annuus**, I. 16, 5, **who is chosen ANNUALLY.** **praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant**, II. 24, 2, **they took to flight PRECIPITATELY.**

**Adjective Contrasted with Adverb.** A. 191; B. 241, 2; H. 497, 3, W. 417.

- 115 **Primus** and some similar adjectives must be carefully distinguished from the corresponding adverbs.

**prīmus prōgressus est**, (he, **FIRST**, advanced), **he was the first to advance**; others, it is implied, advanced afterward. So II. 19, 5. **prīmum prōgressus est**, **he FIRST advanced**; afterward, it is implied, **he** did something else. So I. 25, 1, II. 10, 4. **prīmō celeriter prōgressus est**, **AT FIRST he advanced quickly**, but presently, it is implied, **he slackened his pace.** So I. 31, 5, II. 8, 1.

**Translation of the Comparative of Adjectives and Adverbs.**  
G. 297; A. 93, a; B. 240, 1; H. 298; W. 414, 2.

- 116 The Latin comparative is translated not only by the English comparative. but by *too*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *quite*, with the positive.

**Translation of the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs.**  
G. 302, 303; A. 93, b,; B. 240, 2, 3; H. 498; W. 414, 3, 4.

- 117 The Latin superlative may be translated not only by the English superlative but by *very* with the positive. It may be strengthened by *vel* (compare VII. 37, 6, where **principēs** = **prīmī**), or by *quam* with a form of *possum* expressed or understood (see *quam* in vocabulary).

## SYNTAX AND USES OF PRONOUNS.

- 118 All Latin pronouns may be divided into two classes as regards their syntax: substantive pronouns and adjective pronouns (pronominal adjectives).

**SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUN:** *erant itinera duo quibus exire possent, there were two routes BY WHICH they could emigrate.*

**ADJECTIVE PRONOUN:** *erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent, I. 6, 1, there were two routes BY WHICH ROUTES they could emigrate.*

- 119 The syntax of an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) is the same as of any adjective,—it agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number and case (§ 109).

### Agreement of a Substantive Pronoun.

- 120 **RULE:** Any substantive pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender. Its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

**NOTE.**—The distinction is not always made clear in English grammars. Thus *my* or *mine* is sometimes considered the possessive case of the personal pronoun, *I*, sometimes a possessive adjective. Contrast, "*this box came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative adjective), with "*this came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative pronoun).

### 121 Table of Personal and Possessive Pronouns.

<i>First Person.</i>			<i>Second Person.</i>		
	Ordinary.	Reflexive.	Ordinary.	Reflexive	
Personal	{	ego, <i>I</i>	_____	tū, (thou), <i>you</i>	_____
		meī, <i>my</i>	meī, <i>of myself</i>	tui, <i>your</i>	tui, <i>of yourself</i>
		mihi, <i>to me</i>	mihi, <i>to myself</i>	tibi, <i>to you</i>	tibi, <i>to yourself</i>
		etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
Possessive	{	Sing. meus, a, um, <i>my</i>		tuus, a, um, (thy), <i>your</i>	
		Plu. noster, tra, trum, <i>our</i>		vester, tra, trum, <i>you</i>	

<i>Third Person.</i>			
	Ordinary.	Reflexive.	
Personal	{	is, <i>he</i> , ea, <i>she</i> , id, <i>it</i>	_____
		ēius, <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i>	sui, <i>of himself</i> , <i>of herself</i> , <i>of itself</i>
		eī, <i>to him</i> , <i>to her</i> , <i>to it</i>	sibi, <i>to himself</i> , <i>to herself</i> , <i>to itself</i>
		etc.	etc.
Possessive	{	Sing. ēius, <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i>	suus, a, um, <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> ( <i>own</i> )
		Plu. eōrum, eārum, <i>their</i>	suus, a, um, <i>their</i> ( <i>own</i> )

**Nominative of the Personal Pronouns Omitted.** G. 304, 1; A. 194, a; B. 242, 1; H. 500; W. 419.

- 122 The personal pronoun is regularly omitted when it would be the subject of a finite verb, being expressed only for emphasis or for contrast.

**Is** coniūratiōnem fēcit, I. 2, 2, **HE** made a conspiracy. Compare also **ego**, IV. 25, 3.

For the use of the possessive pronouns for the genitive of the personal pronouns see §§ 38 and 43.

**Direct and Indirect Reflexives.** G. 309; A. 196; B. 244, I, II; H. 502–504; W. 421, 422.

123 'The reflexive personal and possessive pronouns may refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive); but often, especially in indirect discourse, they refer to the subject of the main clause (indirect reflexive); sometimes to another particularly emphatic word.

124 Since the possessive pronouns (except the substitute possessive genitives, **eius**, **eōrum**, **eārum**) are adjectives (see §§ 118 and 121), they take their gender, number and case from the word they modify, not from their antecedent. Therefore it is necessary to find the antecedent of a form of **suus**, **a**, **um**, in order to translate it correctly.

**Casticus** rēgnū in **suā** civitatē occupat, I. 3, 4, *Casticus* seizes the royal power in **HIS** state.

125 For illustration of the contrast between the two possessives of the third person (§ 121), note the following sentence.

**Helvētīī** aut **suīs** (i.e. **Helvētīōrum**) finibus **eōs** (i.e. **Germānōs**) prohibent aut ipsī in **eōrum** (i.e. **Germānōrum**) finibus bellum gerunt, I. 1, 4, *the Helvetians either keep them (the Germans) out of THEIR OWN territory or carry on war themselves in THEIR (the Germans') territory.*

126 Sometimes two reflexives stand in the same clause of indirect discourse, one referring to the subject of the main verb, the other to the subject of the infinitive. English has the same ambiguity.

**Ariovistus** respondit . . . **nēmīnem** **sēcūm** sine **suā** perniciē contendisse, I. 36, 6, *Ariovistus* answered . . . that no one had fought **WITH HIM** without **HIS** OWN destruction, i.e. without being destroyed. Here **sēcūm** refers to **Ariovistus**, and **suā** to **nēmīnem**.

**Demonstrative Pronouns.** G. 305–308; A. 195; B. 246–249; H. 505–509; W. 426–428.

127 The three especial demonstrative pronouns are (1) **hic**, **haec**, **hōc**, *this* (of mine, or near me), called the demonstrative of the *first* person; (2) **iste**, **ista**, **istud**, *that* (of yours, or near you), called the demonstrative of the *second* person, and (3) **ille**, **illa**, **illud**, *that* (of his, or near him), called the demonstrative of the *third* person.

When only two objects are contrasted, *hic* and *ille* are generally used; in such cases *hic* usually means *the nearer*, if referring to real position, *the latter*, if referring to that which is nearer in thought; and *ille*, *the more remote*, *the former*.

*Iste* has often a contemptuous, sneering force, as in VII. 77, 5, its only occurrence in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 128 These pronouns, like the English demonstratives (see § 120, note), may be used either as adjectives or as substantives. When used substantively, *especially when referring to persons*, they are generally best translated by personal pronouns.

*huic* (i.e. *Galbae*) *permisit*, III., 1, 3, *he permitted HIM*. It is very bad English ever to say, "He permitted this one," or "He permitted this man."

- 129 *is*, when used *adjectively*, is demonstrative and means either *this* or *that* (*these* or *those*), according to the sense. When used simply as the antecedent of the relative pronoun, it is to be translated *that* (*those*).

PERSONAL PRONOUN: *eī filiam dat*, I. 3, 5, *he gives HIM his daughter*.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE: *ad eās rēs cōficiendās*, I. 3, 3, *for completing THESE preparations*. *eō tempore*, I. 3, 5, *at THAT time*.

ANTECEDENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: *id quod*, I. 5, 1, *THAT which*.

- 130 *ipse* is the intensive or emphatic pronoun, like the English *himself*, etc., when the latter is *not reflexive* (see § 121); it emphasizes the word with which it is joined. When it is nominative its translation is shown by the person of the verb.

*ipsī bellum gerunt*, I. 1, 4, *they THEMSELVES carry on war*. *ipsī bellum gerimus*, *we OURSELVES carry on war*.

- 131 When *ipse* is used to strengthen a noun not the name of a person it may be translated in various ways.

in *ipsīs ripis*, II. 23, 3, *RIGHT on the bank(s)*. *hōc ipsō tempore* VI. 37, 1, *at this VERY time; JUST at this time*.

- 132 The genitive case of *ipse* is often used, for contrast or emphasis, instead of forms of the possessive reflexive pronoun, *suus*, *a*, *um*, and is then translated *his own*, *their own*, etc.

*ipsōrum linguā*, I. 1, 1, *in THEIR OWN language*. Here *suā* might have been used, but contrast with the following *nostrā* is desired. So I. 21, 1.

- 133 *Ipse* is often used in the nominative to intensify a reflexive pronoun. In such cases it may often be omitted in translation; it sometimes gives the reciprocal force (*each other*). See the examples.

**ipso sibi mortem conscivit**, I. 4, 4, (he **HIMSELF** decreed death to himself), *he committed suicide*. **sibi ipsi sunt impedimentō**, II. 25, 1, (they **THEMSELVES** are for a hindrance to themselves), *they hinder each other*.

**Relative Pronouns.** G. 614-619; A. 198-201; B. 250, 251; H. 510; W. 229-304

134 **RULE:** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number. Its case is determined by the structure of the clause in which it stands. See § 120.

135 Note the use of the relative *adjective* in Latin, much more common than in English.

**quae civitas**, I. 10, 1, (**WHICH** state), *a state which*. See also the first example under § 118.

136 The Latin often uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence. This should never be translated literally, but generally by a demonstrative (regularly so if it is used adjectively), sometimes by a personal pronoun.

**quārum**, I. 1, 1, **OF THESE**. **quā de causā**, I. 1, 4, *for THIS reason*. **quī**, I. 15, 2, **THEY**. **quī cum**, II. 13, 2, *when THEY*.

For the compound relatives, **quisquis**, **quicumque**, see vocabulary.

**Interrogative Pronouns.** G. 467, Remark 2, 106; A. 210, e, 104; B. 90; H. 511; W. 148.

137 In both English and Latin the relative and interrogative words are almost the same if not identical in form. Compare the following sentences:

<i>Interrogative.</i>	<i>Relative.</i>
Who came? What boy came? Which boy came?	The boy who came.
What happened? What event happened? Which event happened?	The event which happened.
I know who came. I know what boy came. I know which boy came.	I know the boy who came.

138 For the interrogative pronouns used in the *Bellum Gallicum*, **quis**, **quī**, **quisnam**, and **uter**, see vocabulary. The last is used adjectively, I. 12, 1, and substantively, V. 44, 14, VI. 19, 2.

**Indefinite Pronouns.** G. 313–319; A. 202; B. 252; H. 512–515; W. 430–435.

- 139 Forms of *quis* and *quī* are usually indefinite (meaning *any, any one*) after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē* and *num*.

See vocabulary for the uses of the other indefinite pronouns used in the *Bellum Gallicum*,—*aliquis*, *aliquī*, *quidam*, *quispiam*, *quisquam*, *quīvis*, *quisque*.

- 140 *Quisque* following a superlative is to be noted, as an idiom.  
*nōbilissimī cūlusque liberī*, I. 31, 12, (the children OF EACH most prominent man), *the children of all the most prominent men*. So I. 45, 3.

### SYNTAX OF VERBS.

**Agreement of Verb.** G. 211, 285–287; A. 204–206; B. 254, 255; H. 388–392; W. 296–298.

- 141 **RULE:** A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

- 142 The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural unless the two are considered together as a unit.

*Matrona et Sēquana dividit*, I. 1, 2, *the Marne-and-Seine divides*. Here the principal river and its tributary are considered as one, like the “Missouri to the sea.”

- 143 Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the plural.  
*cum tanta multitudō cōnicerent*, II. 6, 3, *when such a great number (WERE) was throwing*. Similarly *exirent* (sc. *civitas*), I. 2, 1.

**Impersonal Verbs.** G. 208, 528, 2; A. 146; B. 138; H. 302, 611; W. 233, 442, 4.

- 144 Besides the impersonal verbs common to both Latin and English pertaining to the state of the weather (*it rains*, etc.), which do not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*, and those which are active and take a neuter pronoun, an infinitive or a clause as the subject (*oportet*, *licet*, *interest* (§ 63), etc., there are the following impersonal uses of *passive* verbs.

1. Verbs that take an indirect object in the active voice. See §§ 26 and 27, note.

2. Verbs that take no object in the active voice. These are used impersonally, especially in the compound tenses. The literal translation should not be retained.

*pūgnātum est*, I. 26, 1, (it was fought), *they fought; the battle raged*.  
*sustentātum est*, II. 6, 1, (it was sustained), *the attack was sustained*.

**Tenses of the Indicative.** G. 222-245; A. 276-281; B. 257-264; H. 526-540; W. 445-460.

145 **SPECIFIC PRESENT.** The present tense is used of (a) *that which is now going on* or of (b) *that which is undefined or habitual* in the present.

(a) *quò proficiscimur*, VII. 38, 2, *where ARE WE GOING?* (b) *turpissimam servitùtem dēditionis nōmine appellant*, VII. 77, 3, *THEY TERM the basest slavery a surrender.*

146 **UNIVERSAL PRESENT.** The present tense is used of statements *that apply to all time.*

*omnēs hominēs nātūrā libertātī student*, III. 10, 3, *all men naturally DESIRE liberty.*

147 **HISTORICAL PRESENT.** The present tense is used far more frequently than in English *as a lively representation of the past*, or in an *annalistic sense.*

*profectionem cōfirmant*, I. 3, 2, *THEY DECREE (decreed) their departure.*

148 **IMPERFECT TENSE.** The imperfect indicative primarily denotes an action as continued in the past, or a past condition of affairs. It is then accurately translated by the English past progressive. But if the idea of continuance is not strong, or if the voice is passive, the simple past should be used.

*hiemābant*, I. 10, 3, *were passing the winter.* So *populābantur*, I. 11, 1; *expectābant*, II. 9, 1. Contrast the following: *arbitrābantur*, I. 2, 5, *they thought.* *patēbant*, I. 2, 5, *extended.* *māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur*, I. 2, 4, (they were being affected with great grief), *they were greatly grieved.*

The imperfect also denotes (1) attempted, (2) repeated, (3) accustomed or habitual action in the past.

(1) *prohibēbant*, V. 9, 6, *they tried to prevent.* (2) *cōniciēbant*, I. 26, 3, *they kept throwing.* (3) *versābantur*, I. 48, 6, *they would engage.* *servi cremābantur*, VI. 19, 4, *slaves used to be burned.*

149 **PERFECT TENSE.** The Latin perfect has two distinct uses. It is equivalent either to (1) the English past, or to (2) the English present perfect (e.g. *dēmōstrāvimus*, II. 1, 1, *we have shown*).

**Tenses of the Subjunctive.** G. 277; A. 283-287; B. 266-269; H. 541-550; W. 461-472.

150 *The tenses of the subjunctive do not express absolute time. (Over.)*

In independent clauses (§§ 154 and 155) the tenses of the subjunctive generally have especial uses.

In dependent clauses the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive express incomplete action, the perfect and pluperfect completed action. Further than this, the choice of tense is usually determined by the law of *sequence of tenses*.

151 **SEQUENCE OF TENSES.** If the tense of the principal verb is *present*, *future* or *future perfect* (the so-called *principal* tenses), it is followed by the *present* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *perfect* subjunctive to denote completed action; if the tense of the principal verb is *imperfect*, *perfect* or *pluperfect* (the so-called *historical* tenses), it is followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *pluperfect* subjunctive to denote completed action.

152 This rule is subject to several modifications. (1) The historical present (§ 147) may be considered according to its form as present or according to its sense as past; in the *Bellum Gallicum* it is considered a principal tense about three times out of every four. (2) The present perfect (§ 149, 2) may be felt as giving the past starting point and so be considered as historical, or as giving the present completion and so be considered as principal.

#### PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pr. (Pure or Hist.),	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am finding out,</i>	{	quid faciās,
Fut.,	cōgnōscam,	<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		quid fēceris,
Pure Pf.,	cōgnōvī,	<i>I have found out (I know),</i>		what you have done,
Future Pf.,	cōgnōverō,	<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		what you have been doing (what you did), what you were doing (before).

#### HISTORICAL TENSES.

Hist. Pr.,	cōgnōscō,	<i>I am (was) finding out,</i>	{	quid facerēs,
Impf.,	cōgnōscēbam,	<i>I was finding out,</i>		quid fēcissēs,
Hist. Pf.,	cōgnōvī,	<i>I found out,</i>		what you were doing;
Plupf.,	cōgnōveram,	<i>I had found out (I knew),</i>		what you had done, what you had been doing, what you were do- ing (before).

It will be noticed from the above examples that the English has the same rule. Compare also "He *comes* that he *may* see," with "He *came* that he *might* see."

NOTE.—Exceptions to all these rules of sequence are common, especially in indirect discourse, being sometimes required by the sense, sometimes by clearness, and being often used for vividness.

63 FUTURE TIME IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. Since the subjunctive tenses do not represent absolute time, but only complete or incomplete action relative to the time of the principal verb, it follows that *any tense of the subjunctive may refer to the future*, when the action of the principal verb looks to the future. For especial clearness in this respect the active periphrastic conjugation is used (§ 277).

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Subjunctive as an Imperative (Hortatory Subjunctive). G. 263, 1; A. 266; B. 274; H. 559, 1; W. 482.

54 RULE: The present subjunctive, first person plural, is used to express an exhortation. The negative is *nō*.

*persequāmur eōrum mortem*, VII. 38, 8, LET US AVENGE *their* death. So *interficiāmus*, following, and *respiciāmus*, VII. 77, 7.

55 NOTE.—The following uses of the subjunctive appear in the *Bellum Gallicum* only in the changed form made necessary by indirect discourse.

1. Subjunctive as an Imperative (Jussive Subjunctive). G. 263, 3; A. 266; B. 275; H. 559, 2; W. 482.

RULE: The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the third person, more rarely in the second. The negative is *nō*.

*cum volet, congregiātur* I. 36, 7, LET HIM COME ON *when he* (shall wish) *wishes*.

2. Deliberative Subjunctive. G. 265; A. 268; B. 277; H. 559, 4; W. 493.

RULE: The subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt or indignation. The negative is *nōn*.

*Cūr quisquam iūdicet*, I. 40, 2, *why* SHOULD ANY ONE JUDGE?

## MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

**Pure Final Sentences (Subjunctive of Purpose).** G. 545; A. 317; B. 282; H. 564; W. 506-508, 517, 518.

**156** **RULE:** The subjunctive is used to express purpose or design with *ut* (*utī*), *nē*, *quō*, *quō minus*, forms of the relative pronoun, and relative adverbs.

**157** *ut*, the normal introductory word in this construction, means *in order that*, or simply *that*. When either of these conjunctions is used in English, the subjunctive is translated by *may* or *might*. See § 152, end, and § 164.

*sēmentēs facere, ut cōpia frūmentī suppeteret*, I. 3, 1, (to make plantings), *to plant corn*, IN ORDER THAT A SUPPLY OF grain MIGHT BE AVAILABLE. *duās legiōnēs in castrīs reliquit ut subsidio dūci possent*, II. 8, 5, *he left the two legions in camp* (IN ORDER THAT THEY MIGHT BE ABLE to be led for aid) *to act as reserves* (§ 164).

**158** *nē* is the negative of *ut*; it means *in order that . . . not*, or simply *that . . . not*. The verb is translated as with *ut* (§ 157).

*id nē accidat, mihi praecavendum est*, I. 38, 2, *I must be on my guard* THAT THIS MAY NOT HAPPEN. *ibi tormenta collocavit nē hostēs suōs circumvenire possent*, II. 8, 4, *he placed his artillery there*, THAT THE ENEMY MIGHT NOT BE ABLE to surround his troops.

**159** When the sentence involves the idea of fearing that a thing *will* happen, though the purpose is that it shall *not* happen, *nē* is translated *lest*, and the subjunctive, usually, by *shall* or *should*.

*nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī trānsirent*, I. 28, 4, *he did not wish this region to be unoccupied*, LEST THE GERMANS SHOULD CROSS.

**160** *quō* is really an ablative of means (or degree of difference) and is generally used when there is a comparative in the purpose clause. *quō*, by *which*, = *ut eō*, *that thereby*, or simply *that*.

*castella commūnit, quō facilius prohibere posset*, I. 8, 2, *he constructed forts* THAT (THEREBY) HE MIGHT BE ABLE *more easily* to prevent them (from crossing). So II. 17, 4.

**161** *quō minus* is used after verbs of *hindering*, *refusing*, *preventing*, and the like. See § 210.

**162** The relative pronoun is used chiefly when its antecedent is the object of an active or the subject of a passive or intransitive verb. The equiva-

lent translation is by the periphrastic use of the infinitive with forms of *to be*, or by *shall* or *should*.

*légatōs mittunt quī dīcerent*, I. 7, 3, *they sent ambassadors (WHO WERE TO ASK) to ask*. So *quī dēdūceret*, II. 2, 1.

- 13 A form of the relative pronoun in such clauses is equivalent to *ut* with the corresponding form of *is*.

*diem dicunt quā (= ut eā) diē convenient*, I. 6, 4, *they appoint a day ON WHICH (day) THEY SHALL ASSEMBLE; i.e. they appoint a day that on this day they may assemble*.

- 14 Since after many English verbs purpose is regularly expressed by the infinitive, this often forms the best translation for Latin purpose clauses. But this is impossible when the subject of the subjunctive is an expressed noun. See examples, §§ 157–163.

For substantive clauses of purpose, see §§ 208–212.

**Consecutive Sentences (Subjunctive of Result).** G. 552; A. 319; B. 284; H. 570; W. 519, 527, 528.

- 15 **RULE:** The subjunctive is used to denote result with *ut* (*utī*), *ut nōn* and *quīn*.

*ut* means *that* or *so that*; the subjunctive is usually translated by the English indicative. *ut nōn* is the negative of *ut*.

*tantī tua grātia est utī condōnem*, I. 20, 5, *your favor is so great (§ 62) THAT I PARDON*. (*collis*) *silvestris ut nōn facile intrōsus perspicī posset*, II. 18, 2, *a hill wooded (SO THAT IT COULD NOT easily be seen into), so thickly that one could not easily see anything among the trees*.

- 16 **Purpose or Result?** Negative result clauses cannot be mistaken for purpose clauses, since *nē*, the introductory word for a negative purpose clause, is not used in expressions of result. Compare the rules.

Clauses of result frequently follow such words as *tantus*, *so great*, *tālis*, *such*, *ita*, *so*, *eius modī*, *hūius modī*, *of such sort*, etc. A sentence containing one of these words is incomplete without a result clause following, so that the presence of such a word indicates this construction.

- 67 If there is no such word as those mentioned above (§ 166), the matter is entirely a question of *meaning*,—was there any *intention* or *will* on the part of the subject of the main clause? If so, the subordinate clause denotes *purpose*; if not, it denotes *result*.

*mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent*, I. 6, 1, a *mountain rose sharply near by, so THAT A VERY FEW (men) COULD check (them)*. Here, of course, the mountain did not have any *intentions*; hence the clause is one of result.

For substantive clauses of result see §§ 213 and 214.

**Subjunctive of Characteristic.** G. 631; A. 320; B. 283; H. 591; W. 587.

- 168 **RULE:** The subjunctive with *quī* or any relative word may be used to characterize an antecedent, especially when it is general, indefinite or unexpressed.

This subjunctive usually needs an expansion in accurate translation if its force is to be clearly shown. This may be done by supplying words to show its limitations.

*obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, popōscit*, I. 27, 3, *he demanded (of the Helvetians) hostages, their arms, and the slaves THAT HAD DESERTED to them, or what slaves had deserted to them*. If the indicative had been used, the sense would have been different,—*he demanded the slaves, a class which had all escaped to them*. *domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent*, I. 28, 3, *there was nothing at home (BY WHICH THEY COULD SUSTAIN a famine, i.e. such that by it they could endure a famine), to live on*. *duo itinera quibus itineribus exire possent*, I. 6, 1, *two routes (BY WHICH ROUTES THEY COULD go out), (such that) by them they could emigrate*. *sōli sunt quī prohibuerint*, II. 4, 2, *they are the only ones THAT PREVENTED*.

- 169 A subjunctive introduced by *quī* follows *dignus*, *indignus* and *idoneus*. This use is generally referred to the above construction, but by Bennett, to § 156. Caesar shows but one example, VII. 31, 2.

### *Causal Clauses.*

**Causal Clauses with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* and *quandō*.** G. 539, 542; A. 321; B. 286, 1; H. 588; W. 543, 544.

- 170 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *because*, *quia*, *quoniam* and *quandō*, *since*, take the indicative when the reason is stated as a fact, the subjunctive when it is given doubtfully or upon the authority of another person.

The force of the subjunctive can be given in English only by adding parenthetically, “as we said,” or a similar phrase.

INDICATIVE: *fortissimi sunt Belgae propterea quod longissime absunt*, I. 1, 3, *the bravest are the Belgians (on this account) BECAUSE THEY ARE farthest AWAY.* [*sollicitabantur*], *quod regna vulgo occupabantur*, II. 1, 4, *they were stirred up BECAUSE THE POWER (in individual states) WAS GENERALLY SEIZED.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: *quod sit destitutus queritur*, I. 16, 6, *he complains BECAUSE (AS HE SAYS) HE HAS BEEN DESERTED; he complains that he has been deserted.* *Ubi orabant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur*, IV. 16, 5, *the Ubi were asking him to aid them BECAUSE, AS THEY SAID, THEY WERE HARD PRESSED by the Suebi.*

- 71 Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* are occasionally put in the subjunctive when the sense is the same as that which would be given by the subjunctive of the verb they govern, only less clearly expressed.

*Bellovacii suum numerum non contulerunt, quod se suo nomine bellum gesturos esse dicerent*, VII. 75, 5, *the Bellovacii did not furnish their complement (of men), (BECAUSE THEY SAID THAT) because, as they said, they were going to wage war on their own account.* Similarly, *quod viderentur*, II. 11, 5, *because they thought that they were.*

**Causal Clauses with *cum*.** G. 586: A. 326: B. 286, 2: H. 598: W. 542.

- 72 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by *cum*, *since*, take the subjunctive.

This subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

*his cum persuadere non possent, legatos mittunt*, I. 9, 2, *SINCE THEY COULD not persuade them, they send ambassadors.* So. II. 11, 1.

**Causal Clauses with *qui*.** G. 633; A. 320, e; H. 592; W. 586, 5.

- 73 **RULE:** Causal clauses introduced by *qui* take the subjunctive.

The relative is here equivalent to *cum*, causal (§ 172), and the corresponding form of *is*.

*magnum Caesar iniuriam facit qui vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat*, I. 36, 4, *Caesar is doing me great injury, SINCE HE IS MAKING my revenues less.* So V, 33, 1, 2, VI. 31, 5.

- 174 A peculiar use of *quod*, *because*, for *eod quod*, *for this reason, because*, occurs once in the phrase *magis eod . . . quam quod*.

*mercatoribus est aditus magis eo ut (ea) quae bello ceperint, (eos) quibus vendant, habeant, quam quod... desiderent, IV. 2, 1, the traders are allowed access to them MORE FOR THIS REASON, that they may have men to whom they may sell what they have captured in war, THAN BECAUSE they desire...*

### Temporal Clauses.

- 175 The action of a temporal clause may be in one of three relations to the action of the principal verb:—it may be antecedent (conjunction, *after*) contemporaneous (conjunction, *while, as long as*), subsequent (conjunction, *before*).

**Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc.** G. 561–567; A. 324; B. 287; H. 602; W. 530–532.

- 176 **RULE:** Temporal clauses introduced by *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *after*, *ut*, *ubi*, *when*, *simul ac* (*atque*), *as soon as*, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

The historical present is used with *ubi* II. 9, 2, and the pluperfect IV. 26, 2. The English translation is frequently past perfect.

*Ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt, I. 7, 3, WHEN THEY WERE INFORMED, they sent ambassadors. postquam... cōgnōvit, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, II. 5, 4, AFTER HE HAD LEARNED (this), he hastened to lead his army across.*

**Temporal Clauses with *dum*, *dōnec* and *quoad*.** G. 568–573; A. 328; B. 293; H. 603, 604; W. 533.

- 177 The English word *while* has two distinct meanings,—(1) *as long as*, and (2) *at some time during the time that*. Compare the following sentences:—(1) *he waited while (i.e. as long as) his friend was talking*; (2) *he arrived while (i. e. at some time during the time that) his friend was talking*.

- 178 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with *dum* in the sense of *while* (= *at some time during the time that*), take the (historical) present indicative.

*dum ea conquīruntur, ē castris ēgressi sunt, I. 27, 4, WHILE THESE WERE BEING SOUGHT FOR, they set out from camp. So III. 17, 1.*

- 179 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, and

**quam diū**, in the sense of *while* (= *as long as*), take the indicative.

**quoad potuit, restitit**, IV. 12, 5, *he resisted AS LONG AS HE COULD*. So V. 17, 3, and **dum**, VII. 82, 1.

180 **RULE**: Temporal clauses with **dum**, **dōnec** and **quoad** in the sense of *until* take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or to represent an act as expected or anticipated*).

Compare the construction with **antequam** and **priusquam**, § 181. The subjunctive is idiomatically translated by *can* or *could*.

**SUBJUNCTIVE**: **ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites convenirent, respondit**, I. 7, 6, *in order that time might (be able to) intervene, UNTIL THE SOLDIERS COULD ASSEMBLE, he answered*. So IV. 13, 2, 23, 4, VII. 23, 4; and I. 11, 6, where the direct discourse would be the same. **Quoad**, IV. 11, 6, V. 24, 8.

The indicative under this construction does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*. An example is: **Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore retinuit quoad renūtiātum est vicisse Boeōtiōs**, Nepos, xv. 9, 3, *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body UNTIL WORD WAS BROUGHT BACK that the Beotians had conquered*.

**Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam***. G. 574–577; A. 327; B. 292; H. 605; W. 534.

181 **RULE**: Temporal clauses with **antequam** and **priusquam** take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or to represent an act as expected or anticipated*).

Compare the construction with **dum**, § 180. The subjunctive is sometimes idiomatically translated by *can* or *could*. The words are often separated,—*ante quam, prius quam, sooner than* = *before, until*. **antequam** does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**INDICATIVE**: **nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt**, I. 53, 1, *and they did not stop fleeing (SOONER THAN) UNTIL THEY REACHED the Rhine*. So VII. 25, 4, 47, 3.

**SUBJUNCTIVE**: **prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum vocārī iubet**, I. 19, 3, (SOONER THAN) BEFORE HE ATTEMPTED (*to do*) anything, *he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned*. **prius quam hostēs sē ex**

**terrōre reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit, II. 12, 1, BEFORE THE ENEMY COULD RECOVER from their fright, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.** The indicative would mean "before the enemy recovered," and would imply that they did recover afterward. The subjunctive indicates that they did *not* recover.

**Temporal Clauses with cum.** G. 578–588; A. 325; B. 288–290; H. 600–601; W. 535–539.

- 182 **RULE:** Temporal clauses with **cum** take the indicative of any tense when they define the *date* at which the action of the leading verb took place, takes place or will take place; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to define the *circumstances* under which the action of the leading verb took place.

Either mood is translated by the indicative.

**INDICATIVE:** **contendunt cum suis finibus prohibent, I. 1, 4, they fight WHEN THEY ARE KEEPING THEM OUT of their own territory.** **his cum fūnēs comprehēnsi adductīque sunt, praerumpēbantur, III. 14, 6, WHEN THE ROPES HAD BEEN CAUGHT by these (hooks) AND DRAWN TAUT, they were snapped off short.**

**SUBJUNCTIVE:** **cum cīvītās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est, I. 4, 3, WHEN THE STATE WAS TRYING to assert its lawful power by force of arms, Orgetorix died.**

- 183 **Cum INVERSE.** When the two actions are independent, **cum** is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

**iam nōn longius biduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs cōgnōscunt, VI. 7, 2, they were now not more than two days' march away, WHEN THEY LEARNED that the two legions had come.**

### *Conditional Sentences.*

**Conditional Sentences with sī, nisi, sīn.** G. 589–597; A. 304–311; B. 301–306; H. 572–583; W. 551–562.

- 184 Conditional sentences with **sī, nisi, sīn**, may be divided into *three* classes as regards *time*,—present, past, and future; and into *two* classes as regards *form*,—whether the condition is regarded as a *fact*, or not. A condition is thus fully described by two terms.

- 15 When a condition is regarded as a *fact*, it may be called a "logical" condition; or, in the present and past a "simple" or "assumed" condition, and in the future a "more vivid" or "probable" condition.
- 16 When a condition is regarded not as a fact but as an assumption, it may be called in the present and past an "unreal" or "contrary to fact" condition; and in the future an "ideal," "less vivid," or "possible" condition.
- 17 In both English and Latin, a condition that is regarded as a fact is put in the indicative, in whatever tense is required. A condition that is regarded as an assumption is put in the potential or subjunctive in English, the subjunctive in Latin.

18 TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

		REGARDED AS A FACT Called "LOGICAL," "SIMPLE," or "ASSUMED"	REGARDED AS AN ASSUMP- TION Called "UNREAL" or "CON- TRARY TO FACT"
Time of Condition	Mood	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
		Tense of the Indicative	Tense of the Subjunctive
	<i>Present</i>	Present, sometimes (Pres- ent) Perfect	Imperfect
	<i>Past</i>	Imperfect or Perfect, some- times Pluperfect	Pluperfect
	<i>Future</i>	Future or Future Perfect	Called "IDEAL," "POSSIBLE," or "LESS VIVID"
			Present or Perfect

*Type Conditional Sentence in All Its Ordinary Forms.*

- 189 PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). Present indicative.  
Si iter facit, bene est.  
If he marches (or is marching), it is well.
- 190 PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Imperfect subjunctive.  
Si iter faceret, bene esset.  
If he were marching, it would be well.  
This form implies that he is NOT marching.

- 191 PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE or ASSUMED). Any past tense of the indicative.

**Si iter faciēbat, bene erat.**

*If he was marching, it was well.*

**Si iter fēcit, bene fuit.**

*If he marched, it was well.*

- 192 PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Pluperfect subjunctive.

**Si iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.**

*If he had marched, it would have been well.*

This form implies that he *did NOT* march.

NOTE.—The indicative is the regular construction in the conclusion, with verbs which signify *possibility* or *power*, *obligation* or *necessity*.

**si [populus Rōmānus] alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre, I. 14, 2, if the Roman people had been conscious (to themselves) of any injury, IT WOULD NOT HAVE BEEN DIFFICULT (for them) to be on their guard.**

- 193 FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE or MORE VIVID). Future indicative, sometimes the future perfect (usually in the condition).

**Si iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.**

*If he marches [for shall march (shall have marched)] it will be well.*

In this form the English is peculiar in using the present tense to refer to the future.

- 194 FUTURE IDEAL (POSSIBLE or LESS VIVID). Present subjunctive, sometimes the perfect (usually in the condition).

**Si iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.**

*If he should march, it would be well.*

This form implies that the speaker considers the condition only as *possible*.

- 195 MIXED CONDITIONS. The above are the ordinary types of conditional sentences. But a conditional sentence may be "mixed," that is, it may have a condition of one form and a conclusion of another; in this case the two parts must be described separately. Especially, the condition and conclusion may be in different *tenses*, or the condition may be compound, containing two clauses, one of one tense and the other of another tense. E.g. "If he *was* there yesterday and *is* coming home to-day, we *shall be* glad." "If he *had been* here yesterday and *were* going away to-day, it *would be* different."

**Conditional Clauses of Comparison.** G. 602; A. 312; B. 307; H. 584; W. 566–568.

- 6 **RULE:** Conditional clauses of comparison introduced by *ac si*, *ut si*, *quasi*, *quam si*, *tamquam (si)*, *velut si*, etc., *as if*, *than if*, take the subjunctive.

The uses of tenses is under the law of sequence.

*absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si adsit, horrent*, I. 32, 4, *they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus (though) absent*, AS IF HE WERE PRESENT. So VII. 38, 7.

- 7 Such sentences regularly involve the ellipsis of a verb form for the conclusion. Thus above, *as (THEY WOULD SHUDDER) if he were present*.

### *Concessive Clauses.*

**Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *etsi*, etc.** G. 604; A. 313. c; B. 309, 2; H. 585; W. 572.

- 8 **RULE:** Concessive clauses introduced by *etsi*, *etiamsi*, etc., take the same construction as conditional clauses with *si* (§§ 189–194).

*nam etsi . . . vidēbat, tamen putābat*, I. 46, 3, *for ALTHOUGH HE SAW . . . , yet he thought*.

The subjunctive under this construction does not occur in the *Bel-lum Gallicum* in direct discourse.

**Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *cum*, *ut*, etc.** G. 606–608, 587, 634; A. 313, 320, e; B. 309; H. 586, II., 569, II.; W. 571, 586, 7.

- 9 **RULE:** Concessive clauses introduced by *cum*, *ut*, *nē*, *licet*, or the relative pronoun, take the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

*cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit*, I. 26, 2, *THOUGH THE BATTLE CONTINUED from one o'clock until evening, nobody could see one of the enemy in retreat*.

*Cicerō, quī . . . milites in castris continuisset, quinque cohortes mittit*, VI. 36, 1, (*Cicero WHO*), *THOUGH Cicero HAD KEPT the soldiers in camp, he sent out five cohorts*.

*ut* is concessive, III. 9, 6.

*Relative Clauses.*

**Relative Sentences.** G. 624–637; A. 316–328, 342; B. 311, 312; H. 589–593; W. 580–589.

200 A relative clause is most often introduced by the relative pronoun, *quī*; also by relative adjectives, *quantus* (antecedent, *tantus*), *quālis* (antecedent, *tālis*), *quot* (antecedent, *tot*), etc.; and by relative adverbs, *ubi*, *where*, *when* (antecedent, *ibi*), *unde*, *whence*, *from which* (antecedent, *inde*), *quō*, *whither*, *where* (antecedent, *eō*), etc.

201 Relative clauses taken as a class have no especial rules of construction; the relative may take the place of almost any conjunction, coördinate or subordinate, together with its corresponding demonstrative form.

202 **INDICATIVE MOOD.** When a relative clause simply describes the antecedent of the relative, or states an additional fact, the indicative mood is used.

[*Helvētī*] *proximī sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt*, I. 1. 4, *the Helvetians are nearest to the Germans, WHO LIVE across the Rhine, WITH WHOM THEY CARRY ON war*. Here *quī*—*incolunt* simply describes the Germans, and *quibuscum*—*gerunt* merely gives an additional fact about the Helvetians.

203 **SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.** Relative sentences which depend on infinitives and subjunctives and form an integral part of the thought (i.e. a part which could not well be omitted if the sense is to be preserved), are put in the subjunctive.

*cum . . . eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre iūssisset, paruerunt*, I. 27, 2, *when he had ordered them to await his arrival at that point WHERE THEY then WERE, they obeyed*. So *quae gerantur*, II. 2, 3.

For the subjunctive in relative clauses see the rules for the various kinds of subordinate clauses and examples of the use of the relative pronoun given under them, as follows:

Subjunctive of Purpose, §§ 156–164.

Subjunctive of Characteristic, §§ 168, 169.

Causal Clauses, § 173.

Concessive Clauses, § 199.

*Kinds of Subordinate Clauses.*

14 Subordinate clauses may be divided into three kinds as regards their use in sentences,—(1) *attributive* (used like an adjective), (2) *adverbial* (used like an adverb) and (3) *substantive* (used like a noun).

15 **ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES.** Relative clauses which explain the antecedent of the relative word are attributive. See §§ 168 and 202, and examples.

16 **ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.** The following kinds of clauses may be adverbial, and all the examples given are such:—purpose (§§ 156–164), result (§§ 165–167), causal (§§ 170–173), temporal (§§ 175–183), conditional (§§ 184–197), and concessive (§§ 198, 199), including the equivalent relative clauses (§ 203, end).

17 **SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.** Various adverbial clauses have developed into substantive clauses. Thus in the sentence, *suis ut idem faciant imperat*, V. 37, 1, the clause is not thought of as answering the question, *For what purpose?* but as defining *what order was given*. It becomes practically the internal object of *imperat*,—*he orders his men to do the same*.

Substantive clauses are therefore described according to the adverbial clauses from which they are developed or according to the introductory word.

**Complementary Final Sentences (Substantive Clauses of Purpose).**

G. 546–550; A. 331; B. 295; H. 564; W. 510–516.

208 Verbs of *will* and *desire*, including those of *warning* and *beseeking*, of *urging* and *demanding*, of *resolving* and *endeavoring*, are followed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive.

*civitātī persuāsīt ut exīrent*, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded* (the state) *the citizens* TO EMIGRATE. See § 164. *obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius statueret*, I. 20, 1, *he began to beseech* (him) NOT TO TAKE any very severe measures.

209 Verbs of *hindering*, including verbs and phrases signifying to *prevent*, *forbid*, *refuse* and *beware*, are often followed by *nē* with the subjunctive if they are not negated.

*nē causam dīceret, sē eripuit*, I. 4, 1, *he saved himself* FROM PLEADING his case; *he escaped* PLEADING his case. *multitūdinem deterrent nē frumentum cōferant*, I. 17, 2, *they prevent the people* FROM BRINGING grain. So I. 31, 16.

- 210 Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* may be followed by *quō minus* (= *ut eō minus*, *that thereby the less*). See §§ 160 and 161.

*recūsare quō minus essent*, I. 31, 7, *to refuse TO BE*. *nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent*, IV. 22, 4, *the ships were prevented by the wind (FROM BEING ABLE to come to the same port) from reaching the same port*. So VII. 49, 2. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

- 211 After verbs of *fearing*, *ut* means *that . . . not*, and *nē* means *that*.  
*rem frūmentāriam timēmus ut supportārī posset*, I. 39, 6, (*we fear the grain supply, THAT IT CAN NOT be furnished*), *we are afraid THAT a supply of grain can NOT be furnished*. Only instance of *ut* in this construction in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

*nē offenderet verēbātur*, I. 19, 3, *he was afraid THAT HE WOULD HURT*. So. II. 1, 2.

- 212 *ut* is sometimes omitted in object clauses, especially after verbs of *wishing*, *necessity* and *permission*.

*rogat finem orandī faciat*, I. 20, 5, *he asks (him) (TO MAKE an end of his entreating), to end his entreaties*.

**Substantive Clauses of Result.** G. 553, 557; A. 332; B. 297; H. 571; W. 521–526.

- 213 Substantive clauses of result include chiefly those used (1) after verbs of *effecting* and *accomplishing*, (2) as subjects of impersonal verbs signifying *to happen*, *to follow*, etc., (3) to explain a noun or pronoun.

(1) *nōlī committere ut hīc locus . . . nōmen capiat*, I. 14, 7, (*be unwilling to allow THAT THIS PLACE TAKE a name*), *do not allow this place to get a name (in history)*. *fēcērunt ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur*, II. 11, 2, (*they made THAT THEIR DEPARTURE SHOULD SEEM similar to a flight*), *they made their departure seem like a flight*.

(2) *fiēbat ut vagārentur*, I. 2, 4, *it happened THAT THEY WANDERED*. *erit ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audeant*, II. 17, 3, *it will (be) happen THAT THE REST WILL NOT DARE to stand against (us)*.

(3) *id . . . ut flūmen trānsīrent*, I. 13, 2, *this . . . NAMELY, CROSS the river*. *iūs est bellī ut quī vicērunt eis quōs vicērunt imperent*, I. 36, 1, *it is a law of war THAT (those who have conquered) the conquerors GIVE COMMANDS TO (those whom they have conquered) the conquered*.

**Substantive Clauses with *quīn*.** G. 555, 556; A. 332, *g*; B. 298; H. 594, II, 595, 596; W. 573–579.

- 14** Substantive clauses with *quīn* are used after sentences and phrases of *doubting, hindering*, and the like when they are *negatived* or *questioned*. The general translation of *quīn* is *but that* (taken together as a subordinate conjunction), often shortened to *that*; but *quīn* and its verb are often condensed into an entirely different idiom.

*nōn est dubium quīn Helvētīī plūrimū possint*, I. 3, 6, *there is no doubt (BUT) THAT THE HELVETIANS ARE the most POWERFUL*. Similarly I. 4, 4, 17, 4, 31, 15, VII. 38, 8, 66, 6. *nōn dubitāre quīn proficiscātur*, II. 2, 5, *not to hesitate (BUT THAT HE SHOULD SET OUT) to set out*. *nōn cunctāre quīn pūgnā dēcertet*, III. 23, 7, *not to delay (BUT THAT HE SHOULD FIGHT IT OUT in close conflict) fighting a pitched battle*. Similarly V. 55, 1, and VII. 36, 4. *expectārī nōn oportet quīn eātur*, III. 24, 5, (it ought not to be awaited BUT THAT IT SHOULD BE GONE), *he ought not to defer going*. *neque longius abest quīn . . .*, III. 18, 5, (and it is not further off BUT THAT), *and not later than . . .* *neque multum abest ab eō quīn paucis diēbus dēdūci possint*, V. 2, 2, (and it is not very far from this stage, THAT THEY CAN be launched within a few days), *and they will, in a few days, be nearly ready for launching*. Similarly VII. 11, 8. *sine sollicitūdine quīn acciperet*, V. 53, 5, *without anxiety (THAT HE WOULD RECEIVE), lest he should receive*. *nōn sibi temperābunt quīn exeant*, I. 33, 4, (they will not restrain themselves BUT THAT THEY SHOULD GO OUT), *they will not refrain from passing out*. Similarly I. 47, 2, II. 3, 5. *nōn recūsāre quīn contendat*, IV. 7, 3, *not to refuse TO FIGHT*. *neque aliter sentiunt quīn . . .*, VII. 44, 4, (and they do not think otherwise THAN THAT), *and they certainly think that . . .*

These are the only instances of *quīn* in the *Bellum Gallicum* except in the conjunctive phrase *quīn etiam* (see vocabulary).

**Substantive Clauses with *quod*.** G. 524, 525; A. 333; B. 299; H. 588, 3, 4; W. 549.

- 215** Causal clauses with *quod* (§ 170) shade into substantive clauses. As a conjunction *quod* has four principal meanings, (1) *because*, (2) *that* or *the fact that*, (3) *in regard to the fact that*, (4) *so far as*.

1. When *quod* means *because*, the clause may be,—(a) adverbial (see § 170), or (b) substantive, in apposition with some such word as *propterea*, *eō*, *hōc*, *on this account*; this usage shades into (2).

(a) Caesar quod... memoriā tenēbat, concēdendum nōn putābat, I. 7, 4, Caesar, BECAUSE HE REMEMBERED..., *did not think that (it) their request ought to be granted.* (b) eō minus dubitātiōis mihi datur quod... memoriā teneō, I. 14, 1, (less of hesitation is given to me), *I can hesitate less (in this matter) FOR THIS REASON, BECAUSE I REMEMBER.*

2. When quod means (a) *that* or (b) *the fact that*, it is a substantive clause, used either as subject, object, or appositive.

(a) num recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēponere possum, quod... vexāstis? I. 14, 3, (can I lay aside the memory of your recent wrongdoing, THAT YOU HAVE HARASSED), *can I forget your recent wrongdoing, in plundering...?* (b) accēdēbat quod... dolēbant, III. 2, 5, (there approached THE FACT THAT THEY GRIEVED), *an additional fact was that they grieved...*

3. When quod means *in regard to the fact that*, as for the fact that, it introduces a substantive clause that has also an adverbial force with reference to the whole sentence.

quod multitudinem Germanōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id mei mūniendī causā faciō, I. 44, 6, IN REGARD TO THE FACT THAT I AM BRINGING a host of Germans into Gaul, *I am doing it for the purpose of protecting myself.*

4. Similar to the above is quod, *so far as*.

quod commodō rei pūblicae facere poterit, Aeduōs dēfendet, I. 35, 4, SO FAR AS HE SHALL BE ABLE to do (so) with advantage to the public interests, *he shall defend the Aeduans.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

- 216 CLAUSES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The accusative and infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 228) and indirect questions (§ 245) are also subordinate clauses.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN ENGLISH.

- 217 DEFINITION OF DIRECT DISCOURSE. Direct discourse (Latin, orātiō rēcta) is the quotation of words in the exact form in which they were spoken. E.g. *He said, "I AM GOING."*

- 218 DEFINITION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Indirect discourse (Latin, orātiō obliqua) is the quotation of words *with adaptations in grammatical construction, in person, or in tense* to the standpoint of the person who quotes. E.g. *He said THAT HE WAS GOING.*

- 219 INTRODUCTORY VERB. Indirect discourse occurs after verbs of

*saying, hearing, believing, thinking* and the like. Such a verb is said to introduce or govern the indirect discourse and is called the introductory verb.

**20** **INTRODUCTORY PARTICLE.** Indirect discourse is further introduced by the subordinate conjunction *that*, expressed or understood, which is called the introductory particle.

**21** **CHANGE OF TENSE.** When indirect discourse occurs after an introductory verb that is in any *past* tense, all the verb forms that were in the present tense in the direct discourse, both main verbs and auxiliaries, change to the corresponding past tense.

<i>Direct Discourse.</i>		<i>Indirect Discourse.</i>	
My son WRITES daily.	He said that	{	his son WROTE daily.
My son IS writing.			his son WAS writing.
My son MAY write.			his son MIGHT write.
My son CAN write.			his son COULD write.
My son HAS written.			his son HAD written.
My son WILL write.			his son WOULD write.
My son SHALL write.			his son SHOULD write.

Observe that number and voice do not change; a change in the former would alter the *sense* of the original statement, a change in the latter would alter its *form*.

NOTE.—An exception to this change of tense occurs when the verb of the direct discourse is a universal present (§ 146).

DIRECT: *All men naturally DESIRE liberty.* INDIRECT: *he knew that all men naturally DESIRE liberty.* Compare B. G., III. 10, 3.

**222** **CHANGE OF PRONOUNS.** In passing from direct to indirect discourse changes of pronouns often occur. These changes depend entirely upon the relation of the person quoting to the one who is addressed. Thus, A says to B, "I will help you."

If A quotes this to B, it becomes,—				I	said that	I	would help you.
" A	"	C,	"	I	"	I	him.
" B	"	A,	"	You	"	you	me.
" B	"	C,	"	He	"	he	me.
" C	"	D,	"	He	"	he	him.

**223** **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.** When an interrogative sentence is quoted, it often has an introductory verb different from those that introduce declarative sentences; especially verbs and phrases signifying *to ask, to*

*doubt, to be a question, etc.*, though such a verb as *to know* may introduce either a declarative or interrogative clause.

The rule for changing a question to the indirect form divides into two parts.

224 1. If an interrogative sentence contains an interrogative word (a pronoun, an adjective or an adverb), it is put into the indirect form in the same manner as a declarative sentence. E.g. "Who is going?" I know who is going. He **ASKED** who **WAS** going.

225 2. If an interrogative sentence is one that can be answered by "Yes" or "No" and has the inverted order (i.e. verb or auxiliary before the subject), the declarative is restored in the indirect form, and *whether* or *if* is added after the introductory verb as an introductory particle. E.g. "Are you ready?" I doubt if you are ready. I do not know whether he is ready. I could not see whether he was ready.

226 **INDIRECT FORM OF IMPERATIVES.** An imperative is changed to indirect discourse by the use of (1) the auxiliary *should*, or (2) the infinitive. E.g. "Shut the door." (1) He said you should shut the door. (2) (He said to shut the door.) He told you to shut the door.

Other English colloquial forms, such as the auxiliary *might*, or *for* with the infinitive, should be avoided.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN LATIN.

**Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Obliqua).** G. 648-663; A. 335-341; B. 313-323; H. 641-653; W. 597-619.

227 The definition of indirect discourse is the same for Latin as for English. The construction, however, is far more widely extended and *the introductory verb is very often merely implied*. E.g. He persuaded the citizens to emigrate; [saying] that it was very easy.

228 **RULE:** Declarative principal clauses of direct discourse, on becoming indirect, change the indicative (or subjunctive) with subject nominative to infinitive with subject accusative. Interrogative and imperative principal clauses and all subordinate clauses become subjunctive.

229 **SUBJUNCTIVE IN IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE.** Under the construction of subordinate clauses of indirect discourse are included many

subjunctives which depend on an infinitive or another subjunctive, where the idea of indirect discourse is merely implied.

- 230 **TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE.** A present indicative of direct discourse becomes present infinitive in indirect; an imperfect, perfect or pluperfect indicative becomes perfect infinitive; and a future or future perfect indicative becomes future infinitive.

*The tense of the introductory verb has nothing to do with the tense of the infinitive.*

- 231 **TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.** The tense of the subjunctive is determined by the general law of the sequence of tenses (§ 151). If either the introductory verb or the infinitive is a past tense, the subjunctives are regularly imperfect or pluperfect. But the law of sequence is frequently suspended for vividness.

NOTE.—An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive of the direct discourse, as in unreal (contrary to fact) conditions, is always retained in the indirect.

- 232 **CHANGES IN PERSON** depend upon the same principles as in English (§ 222).

- 233 As in English (§ 221) **VOICE and NUMBER** do not change.

- 234 **TRANSLATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.** The subjunctive is usually translated by the indicative (the tense being according to the English rules), unless in the direct discourse it would be a use of the subjunctive that requires some special auxiliary in translation (e.g. a purpose clause, see § 156).

- 235 **TRANSLATION OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.** English sometimes employs the accusative and infinitive like the Latin, in such expressions as, "I thought the man to be honest," "I understood him to say it"; but the use of this construction is limited. It is *not* English to say, "He declares himself to be about to win"; and such expressions should be changed to the regular construction of English indirect discourse, viz. a subordinate clause introduced by *that*, with subject nominative and a finite mood.

- 236 **CHANGE FROM INDIRECT TO DIRECT DISCOURSE.** For a complete understanding of a sentence of indirect discourse it must be changed to the direct form in Latin, this translated to the direct in English, and the last changed to the English indirect, when it becomes a translation of the given Latin. See next page.

Latin Indirect; *dixit perfacile esse*, I. 2, 2, cf. I. 3, 6, 7, etc.

Latin Direct: *dixit "perfacile est."*

English Direct: *He said, "It is very easy."*

English Indirect: *He said that it was very easy.* This is the translation of the first.

237 RULES FOR CHANGING PRINCIPAL CLAUSES. 1. *Subject accusative changes to nominative of the same number.* If it is a pronoun, there may be a change of person. For this no rule can be given because it depends upon circumstances (see § 222); but forms of the reflexive pronouns and adjectives usually become first person.

2. Present infinitive changes to present indicative of same voice.

Perfect	"	"	"	{ imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect }	"	"	"	"
Future	"	"	"	{ future or future perfect }	"	"	"	"

The person and number is determined by the subject, already found by Rule 1.

3. Pronouns (other than the subject) require change *in person only*.

(Orgetorix) *cōfirmat sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum (esse)*, I. 3, 7.

1. The subject accusative is *sē*, which refers to the subject of *cōfirmat*, namely, Orgetorix. Since Orgetorix is speaking of himself, in his own words he must have used the first person. For the same reason the number of *sē* is singular. Hence according to the rule, the direct discourse of *sē* is first person, singular, nominative, *ego*.

2. *conciliātūrum (esse)* is future, active. It therefore changes to future, indicative, active, and agrees with *ego*; hence *conciliābō*.

Since the person and number are shown by the personal ending, *ego* may be omitted (§ 122).

3. Like *sē*, the possessive adjectives *suis* and *suō* refer to the subject, and for the same reason would become first person; their construction is in no way affected and they change to the corresponding forms of *meus*, namely, *meis* and *meō*.

*illis* refers to Dumnorix and Casticus, to whom this promise was made. Hence this changes to the corresponding form of the second personal pronoun, namely *vōbis*.

The sentence in direct discourse thus reads, *meis cōpiis meōque exercitū vōbis rēgna conciliābō*.

English Direct: I WILL win the power (in your states) for YOU with MY forces and MY army.

English Indirect: *Orgetorix* { declares / declared } that HE { WILL / WOULD } win the power (in their states) for THEM with HIS forces and HIS army.

Notice that it is not necessary to translate a Latin sentence before finding the Latin direct discourse, but only that the relations of any persons mentioned shall be understood.

Notice also that after changing the English direct to indirect, the pronouns are a translation of those in the Latin indirect; so that, as far as concerns getting a translation of Latin indirect discourse, there is nothing that requires attention except the accusative and infinitive.

- 238 The following type sentences should be kept thoroughly in mind. They cover all cases that occur in the *Bellum Gallicum* (if the historical present is translated by the past), except such as are mentioned especially in the notes. If these are used, it will not be necessary to go through the process of changing to direct discourse in order to get the translation.

Dixit sē	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{appellāre,} \\ \text{appellārī,} \\ \text{appellāvīsse,} \\ \text{appellātum esse,} \\ \text{appellātūrum esse,} \\ \text{appellātum irī,} \end{array} \right.$	he said that he	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{called (was calling).} \\ \text{was called.} \\ \text{had called.} \\ \text{had been called.} \\ \text{would call.} \\ \text{would be called.} \end{array} \right.$
----------	---	-----------------	---

- 239 CHANGE OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TO DIRECT DISCOURSE. The mood of a subordinate clause of direct discourse depends upon its construction under the various rules that have been given (§§ 156–215). Therefore in changing from indirect to direct discourse, the mood of a subordinate clause may or may not change.

If the indicative is to be used in the direct discourse, the tense may be prescribed (e.g. in clauses with *dum*) or may depend upon the sense (e.g. in clauses with *quod*).

If the subjunctive is to be retained (e.g. in a purpose clause), the tense may or may not change, under the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 151).

*perfacile esse probat propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset*, I. 3, 6.

Here *quod* introduces a reason which was certainly assigned by

Orgetorix as a fact. Hence the indicative in direct discourse; tense, present periphrastic or future (§ 153).

*perfacile est, propterea quod ipse meae civitatis imperium obtenturus sum (obtinēbō), it is very easy, because I AM GOING TO HAVE (shall have) control of MY state MYSELF.* Indirect: *He proved that it was very easy, because HE WAS GOING TO HAVE (WOULD HAVE) control of HIS state HIMSELF.*

(dicit) *nōn esse dubium quin plurimum Helvētī possent, I. 3, 7.*

Clauses introduced by *quin* always take the subjunctive (§ 214), hence the mood of the direct discourse is the same. As it stands, *possent* is imperfect because it depends upon an historical present (*probat, I. 3, 6*), which may take the sequence of an historical tense (§ 152). In the direct discourse the subjunctive will depend upon *est*, and hence will change to the present.

*nōn est dubium, quin plurimum Helvētī possint, there is no doubt that the Helvetians ARE the most powerful.* Indirect: [*He said*] *that there WAS no doubt that the Helvetians WERE the most powerful.*

240 INDICATIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. The indicative is sometimes used in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse, (1) when the clause is inserted by the writer by way of explanation and does not form a part of the quotation (e.g. II. 4, 10), (2) to show that the writer himself considers the matter as a fact (e.g. I. 40, 5).

241 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, while following the same general rules as other complex sentences, present peculiarities of sequence, periphrastic forms, etc., so that all the regular forms of condition are presented for reference.

242 When reference is made to this article, see what tense, mood and auxiliary is used in translating the type sentence, and use the same in translating the desired passage.

1. PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE or ASSUMED). See § 189.

*Si iter facit, bene est.*

*If he marches (or is marching), it is well.*

*Dicit si iter faciat, bene esse.*

*He says that if he marches (or is marching), it is well.*

*Dixit si iter faceret, bene esse.*

*He said that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.*

## 2. PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). See § 190.

**Si iter faceret, bene esset.**

*If he were marching, it would be well.*

**Dicit si iter faceret, bene futurum esse.**

*He says that if he were marching, it would be well.*

**Dixit si iter faceret, bene futurum esse.**

*He said that if he were marching, it would be well.*

## 3. PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). See § 191.

**Si iter faciēbat, bene erat.**

*If he was marching, it was well.*

**Si iter fēcit, bene fuit.**

*If he marched, it was well.*

(For either) **Dicit si iter faceret, bene fuisse.**

*He says that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.*

**Dixit si iter faceret, bene fuisse.**

*He said that if he marched (or was marching), it was well.*

## 4. PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). See § 192.

**Si iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.**

*If he had marched, it would have been well.*

**Dicit si iter fēcisset, bene futurum fuisse.**

*He says that if he had marched, it would have been well.*

**Dixit si iter fēcisset, bene futurum fuisse.**

*He said that if he had marched, it would have been well.*

**NOTE.**—A sentence of this type, the conclusion of which is passive, requires a periphrastic form in indirect discourse.

**Si iter fēcisset, victus esset.**

*If he had marched, he would have been conquered.*

**Dicit } si iter fēcisset, futurum fuisse ut vinceretur.**  
**Dixit }**

*He says } that if he had marched, (it would have been that he  
He said } would be conquered), he would have been conquered.*

## 5. FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE OR MORE VIVID). See § 193.

**Si iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.**

*If he marches [for shall march (shall have marched)], it will be well.*

**Dicit si iter faciat (fēcerit, subjunctive), bene futurum esse.**

*He says that if he marches, it will be well.*

**Dixit si iter faceret (fēcisset), bene futurum esse.**

*He said that if he marched, it would be well.*

## 6. FUTURE IDEAL (POSSIBLE or LESS VIVID). See § 194.

**Si iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.**

*If he should march, it would be well.*

**Dicit si iter faciat, bene futūrum esse.**

*He says that if he should march, it would be well.*

**Dixit si iter faceret, bene futūrum esse.**

*He said that if he should march, it would be well.*

- 243 **INDIRECT QUESTIONS.** It has been said (§ 228) that interrogative principal clauses of direct discourse on becoming indirect discourse (indirect questions) take the subjunctive.

Such clauses present no difficulties in translation since the English has the same construction, including the rules for the sequence of tenses. See §§ 152 and 223. This use of the subjunctive in Latin is easily recognized from the fact that there is always an interrogative word in the clause.

To change to the direct form follow the principles of the changes for declarative sentences. Thus:

**oculis in utram partem [Arar] fluat iūdicārī nōn potest, I. 12, 1.**  
**DIRECT:** in utram partem Arar fluit? *In what direction DOES the Saône FLOW?* **INDIRECT:** *It cannot be judged by the eye(s) in what direction it FLOWS.*

**NOTE.**—**Si** is sometimes used in the sense of *to see if*, introducing an indirect question after verbs of trial. E.g. **si perrumpere possent, cōnāti**, I. 8, 4; see note. So II. 9, 1.

- 244 Indirect questions usually have different introductory verbs in Latin as in English (§ 223). But when a long speech in Latin is quoted in indirect form, neither Latin nor English takes the pains to insert a different introductory verb before an interrogative clause.

**[dixit] Ariovistum populi Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse; cūr quisquam iūdicāret...? I. 40, 2, he said that Ariovistus had sought the friendship of the Roman people; why should any one judge...? [he asked why any one should judge...].** So I. 40, 4, 43, 8, 44, 8, etc.

- 245 **IMPERATIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.** It has been said (§ 228) that imperatives of direct discourse on becoming indirect take the subjunctive. The tense is according to the rules of sequence. For the different methods of translation see § 226.

**respondit... si quid vellent, reverterentur, I. 7, 6. DIRECT:** si quid vultis, revertimini, *if you want an answer, RETURN.* **INDIRECT:** *He answered... that if they wanted an answer, THEY SHOULD (MIGHT)*

RETURN; or, *he answered . . . if they wanted answer, (FOR THEM) TO RETURN.* So I. 13, 4.

*nē . . . suae virtūti tribueret*, I. 13, 5. DIRECT: *nōlī . . . tuae virtūti tribuere*, (BE UNWILLING TO ATTRIBUTE), DO NOT ATTRIBUTE (*it*) to YOUR OWN *valor*. INDIRECT: HE SHOULD NOT ATTRIBUTE *it* to HIS OWN *valor*; or, (FOR HIM) NOT TO ATTRIBUTE *it* to HIS OWN *valor*.

**246** RHETORICAL QUESTIONS. When a question is asked merely for effect, it is usually equivalent to a strong declarative statement. Such questions, like a declarative sentence, take the accusative and infinitive in indirect discourse.

*num memoriam depōnere posse*, I. 14, 3, COULD *he* (lay aside the memory) *forget*? So V. 28, 6.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**First or Present Imperative.** G. 268, 270, and Remark 2; A. 269; B. 281; H. 560; W. 473, 474, 495, 496.

**247** The use of the present imperative in Latin is the same as in English. The imperative occurs seven times in the *Bellum Gallicum*, IV. 25, 3 (see § 6), V. 30, 1, VII. 38, 3, 50, 4, 6, 77, 9 (see note), 16. The other imperative does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**248** A negative imperative sentence or prohibition is most frequently expressed by *nōlī* (sometimes *cavē*) with the infinitive, sometimes by *nē* with the imperative, or perfect subjunctive.

*nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre*, VII. 77, 9, (BE UNWILLING TO DEPRIVE), DO NOT DEPRIVE *them of your aid*. Only instance in the *Bellum Gallicum* of a prohibition in direct discourse.

### INFINITIVE.

**249** The Latin infinitive has two uses, (1) as a substantive, (2) as a representative of the indicative.

**The Infinitive as a Substantive.** G. 280; A. 270, 271; B. 326–328; H. 606–612; W. 622–626.

**250** As a substantive the infinitive has two tenses, present and perfect.

**251** The present is the common form of the infinitive used as a substantive; it has to do with continued action. The perfect infinitive used as a sub-

stantive, having to do with completed action, does not occur in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

252 The infinitive as a substantive is used only as the subject and object of verbs. For the oblique cases and for the objective after a preposition, the gerund is used (§ 267).

253 As subject the infinitive is used chiefly with forms of *sum* and impersonal verbs.

*praestat perferre*, I. 17, 3, *it is better TO ENDURE*.

254 As an object (complementary infinitive) it is used to complete the meaning of verbs meaning to *wish*, *decide*, *fear*, etc., which take the same construction in English.

*cōstituērunt comparāre*, I. 3, 1, *they determined TO PREPARE*.

255 An accusative and a complementary infinitive may both be used as the objects of verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid*, *to permit*, etc.

*eōs ire patī*, I. 6, 3, *to allow THEM TO GO*. So II. 5, 1.

**The Infinitive as the Representative of the Indicative.** G. 281; A. 272; B. 329–331; H. 613–619; W. 628–635.

256 As the representative of the indicative, the infinitive has three tenses,—present, perfect and future.

257 The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as a substantive clause (i.e. as subject or object) like the infinitive alone. See §§ 253 and 254.

*poenam sequī oportēbat*, I. 4, 1, (*PUNISHMENT-TO-FOLLOW* was fitting), *it was the law for the punishment to follow*; or, *that the penalty . . . be inflicted*.

*quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est*, I. 1, 5, (*GAULS-TO-CONSTITUTE-which*, has been said), *which it has been said that the Gauls constitute*.

*optimum est quemque revertī*, II. 10, 4, *it is best (for) EACH ONE TO RETURN, OR, THAT EACH ONE RETURN*.

This construction is essentially that of indirect discourse. The first and third examples show instances which are *informal* indirect discourse, and show the development of the construction from that of § 255.

**Historical Infinitive.** G. 647; A. 275; B. 335; H. 610; W. 631.

258 The infinitive with subject nominative is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indicative for vividness in historical narration.

*Caesar flāgitāre*, I. 16, 1, *Caesar WAS DEMANDING*. So I. 16, 4, 32, 3; II. 30, 3; III. 4, 1, 2, 3; V. 33, 1.

## PARTICIPLES.

**259** A participle is a verbal adjective. All Latin participles are declined like adjectives and agree with some substantive expressed or understood in gender, number and case, while at the same time they have tense and voice.

**260** **TENSE OF PARTICIPLES.** The participle, both in Latin and in English, denotes time *relative* to that of the principal verb. Thus:

The present participle denotes action that is continuing at the time of the principal verb. E.g. *he comes running, he came running, he will come running.*

The perfect participle denotes action prior to that of the principal verb. E.g. *he is coming (came, or will come), having run all the way.*

**261** **COMPARATIVE TABLE OF PARTICIPLES.**

	Active	Passive
Present	<i>dūcēns, leading</i>	———, <i>being led</i>
Past		} <i>ductus,</i> { <i>led</i> <i>having been led</i>
Perfect	———, <i>having led</i>	
Future	<i>ductūrus, (going to lead)</i>	<i>dūcendus, (to be led)</i>

A deponent verb has the three active participles and the gerundive. E.g. *cōnāns, trying, cōnātus, having tried, cōnātūrus, going to try, and cōnandus, gerundive.* See however § 262.

**NOTE.**—Latin is more exact than English in the use of participles, especially the perfect. E.g. *Seizing the bone, the dog ran away.* Strictly, this would mean that the dog was seizing the bone all the time that he was running. Therefore the perfect participle should be used,—*Having seized the bone, the dog ran away.* But the former has come to be an English idiom and should be used in translation.

**262** Perfect participles of deponent verbs are sometimes passive in meaning. So *dēpopulātus*, I. 11, 4, *dīmēnsus*, II. 19, 5; IV. 17, 3, *partitus*, VII. 24, 5.

**263** Participles often imply some especial relation to the thought of the sentence aside from merely limiting a substantive. E.g. “*Running as fast as he could, he caught the train.*” Here the participle implies *cause*; the thought is that he caught the train *because* he ran.

Again, “*Running as fast as he could, he was unable to catch the train.*” Here the participle implies *concession*; the thought is that he could not catch the train *although* he ran.

Participles may also denote merely an attendant circumstance. E.g. "*Entering the water, he waded out.*" This merely notes two acts,—he entered the water, he waded out. Latin often employs a participle in this way where English requires two coördinate verbs.

**Uses of Latin Participles.** G. 664–668; A. 290–292; B. 336–337; H. 636–640; W. 645–652.

- 264 Latin participles or participial phrases may express,—1, *time*, 2, *cause*, 3, *condition*, 4, *concession*, 5, *attendant circumstance*, 6, *means*, 7, the thought of a *relative clause*.

1. *patrum nostrorum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā*, II. 4, 2, (in the memory of our fathers, ALL GAUL HAVING BEEN OVERRUN), *within the memory of the last generation*, WHEN ALL GAUL WAS IN CONFUSION. 2. *timore perterriti Rōmāni discēdunt*, I. 23, 3, *the Romans are withdrawing* (HAVING BEEN TERRIFIED by fear), BECAUSE THEY ARE AFRAID. 3. *datā facultāte nōn temperābunt*, I. 7, 5, (AN OPPORTUNITY HAVING BEEN GIVEN), IF OPPORTUNITY IS GIVEN, *they will not refrain*. 4. *hāc rē cōgnitā exercitum castris continuit*, II. 11, 2, (THIS THING HAVING BEEN ASCERTAINED), THOUGH HE FOUND THIS OUT, *he kept the army in camp*. In the same sentence the participle *veritus* denotes cause. 5. *persuādent finitimis, uti . . . ūsī . . . oppidīs . . . exūstīs . . . proficiscantur*, I. 5, 4; see note, Book I., l. 88. 6. *ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs phalangem perfrēgerunt*, I. 25, 2, (SPEARS HAVING BEEN THROWN), BY THROWING THEIR SPEARS *from the higher position, they broke the line*. 7. *frātri interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferēbat*, IV. 12, 5, (he was bearing aid to his brother, CUT OFF by the enemy), *he was trying to help his brother WHO HAD BEEN CUT OFF (from retreat) by the enemy*.

- 265 The perfect passive participle modifying a substantive is sometimes translated by a verbal noun with an object.

*iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum*, III. 10, 2, (the wrong of RETAINED Roman knights), *the crime of retaining Roman knights*.

- 266 *Habeō* with a direct object modified by a perfect passive participle is often used in a sense that is practically equivalent to the pluperfect tense of the latter verb. Strictly, however, it denotes more than the pluperfect, laying emphasis on the *maintenance of the result*.

*portōria . . . redēpta habet*, I. 18, 3, (HE HAS the import duties BOUGHT UP), *he has bought up the import duties, (and still holds them)*. *omnia explōrāta habēmus*, II. 4, 4, (WE HAVE all things FOUND OUT), *we have found out everything*.

Besides the above examples this construction occurs as follows,—  
I. 9, 3 (see note), 15, 1, 44, 12; III. 2, 5; VI. 13, 6, 20, 1; VII. 29, 6, 54, 2.

For uses of the future passive participle (the gerundive) see §§ 269, 270, and 278.

### THE GERUND.

The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used in the nominative and as the object of verbs (not of prepositions).

**Uses of the Gerund.** G. 426–433; A. 295–301; B. 338; H. 625–631; W. 637–639.

- 267 The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used as the nominative and the accusative after verbs (the gerund after prepositions).

The uses of the gerund in the *Bellum Gallicum* are as follows:

**GENITIVE:** Objective, explanatory, with adjectives (I. 2, 4; V. 6, 3), with *causā* and *grātiā*. See examples under §§ 56 and 58.

**DATIVE:** Of purpose or end (III. 4, 1; V. 27, 5).

**ACCUSATIVE:** Only after *ad*. E.g. *ad proficiscendum*, I. 3, 1, (to setting out), *for leaving home*.

**ABLATIVE:** Of means (IV. 13, 5; V. 54, 1; VII. 71, 4), and after *dē* and *in*.

- 268 The gerund *may* take an object in the case which the verb regularly governs, accusative, dative (with special verbs), genitive (with verbs of *remembering*, etc.), but for this use the gerundive construction is generally substituted, regularly so after prepositions.

### THE GERUNDIVE.

- 269 The gerundive has two uses,—(a) as the future passive participle, (b) as a substitute for the gerund.

**Gerundive as a Participle.** G. 251, 2, note; A. 294; B. 337, 7; H. 621–622; W. 638, 643, 644.

- 270 As the future passive participle the gerundive implies *necessity*, *obligation*, or the idea of *deserving*. In these senses it is used in the *Bellum Gallicum* as follows:

1. As a predicate adjective.

*nōn ferendus*, I. 33, 5, (not to be borne), *unendurable*. Similarly

cōferendum, comparandam, I. 31, 11, (to be compared,) *comparable*; laudanda, V. 8, 4, (to be praised), *praiseworthy*. *māximē admirandum*, VI. 42, 3 (most to be wondered at), *most remarkable*.

2. As a predicate accusative after *cūrō*, *provide for*, *cause*, *dō*, *give*, *trādō*, *hand over*, and similar verbs.

*pontem faciendum cūravit*, I. 13, 1, *he caused a bridge TO BE BUILT*. *Sabinum mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet*, III. 11, 4, *he sent Sabinus (who was to cause this force TO BE KEPT SEPARATE), to see that that force was kept separate*. *exercitum Sabinō in Menapiōs dūcendum dedit*, IV. 22, 5, *he gave the army to Sabinus TO BE LED among the Menapii*.

See also § 278.

**Gerundive for Gerund.** G. 427; A. 296; B. 339; H. 623; W. 640.

271 When the gerund might be used but would have an object, the gerundive construction is often substituted, regularly so after a preposition. Also III. 25, 1, in the ablative of means; see example below.

272 The gerundive construction consists in putting the substantive in the case which the gerund would have had, and making the gerundive agree with it, as a verbal *adjective*, in gender, number, and case.

**GERUND:** *ad effēminandum animōs*, I. 1, 3, *to WEAKENING the minds*. Here the construction is identical in both languages: *effēminandum* is the object of *ad*, and *animōs* is the object of *effēminandum*, just as *weakening* is the object of *to*, and *minds* is the object of *weakening*.

**GERUNDIVE:** *ad animōs effēminandōs*. Here *animōs* is the object of *ad*, and *effēminandōs* agrees with it in gender, number, and case. English has no such verb form as the gerundive, and cannot translate any differently from above,—(to weakening the minds), *to weaken the character*.

**GERUNDIVE:** *lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs*, III. 25, 1. **GERUND:** *lapidēs tēlaque subministrandō*, BY FURNISHING STONES AND SPEARS. So *caespitibus comportandīs* following. What would be the form of these two words if the gerund were used?

273 1. With *meī*, *tuī*, *sui*, *nostrī*, and *vestrī*, the gerundive is employed with the same ending, regardless of gender or number, since these forms were originally neuter singular.

*sui colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt*, III. 6, 1, *they leave the enemy a chance (OF COLLECTING THEMSELVES), OF COLLECTING*

THEIR WITS. Here *sui*, referring to *hostibus*, is plural, and strict agreement would require *colligendōrum*.

2. The gerundive construction would naturally be confined to transitive verbs, but the deponent verbs which govern the ablative (§ 73) regularly admit it.

*spēs potiundī oppidī*, II. 7, 2, *hope of capturing the town*. So III. 7, 6.

### SUPINES.

274 The supines are the accusative and ablative of a fourth declension verbal noun.

**Accusative Supine (Supine in -um, Former Supine).** G. 435; A. 302; B. 340, 1; H. 632–634; W. 654.

275 **RULE:** The accusative supine is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose (design). It may take an object. It is translated by the infinitive.

*légātōs mittunt rogātūm auxilium*, I. 11, 2, *they send envoys TO ASK help*.

This construction occurs 22 times in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

**Ablative Supine (Supine in -ū, Latter Supine).** G. 436; A. 303; B. 240, 2; H. 635; W. 655.

276 **RULE:** The ablative supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes an object.

It is translated by the infinitive, if retained in English at all.

*perfacile factū*, I. 3, 6, *very easy (TO DO)*. So IV. 30, 2, VII. 64, 2. *horribiliōrēs āspectū*, V. 14, 2, *more terrible IN APPEARANCE*. Only instances in the *Bellum Gallicum*.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

**Active (First) Periphrastic Conjugation.** G. 247; A. 113, b; B. 115; H. 236; W. 188.

277 The active periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future active participle with forms of *sum*.

The participle is translated separately in its usual way (§ 261), and the form of *sum* according to its tense, mood, use, etc.

**quod portātūrī || erant**, I. 5, 3, *what THEY WERE || GOING TO CARRY*.  
**ubi bellum gestūrī || essent**, III. 9, 6, *where THEY WERE || GOING TO WAGE war*. See also example under § 239.

**Passive (Second) Periphrastic Conjugation.** G. 251; A. 113, *d*;  
 B. 115; H. 237; W. 188.

278 The passive periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future passive participle (the gerundive) with forms of **sum**.

From the adjective use of the future passive participle (§ 270) there is developed the idea of *obligation* or *necessity*, which is expressed in various ways in English.

**agendum est**, *it has to be done, it must be done, it ought to be done*.

**agendum erat**, *it had to be done*.

**agendum erit**, *it will have to be done*.

For examples in the *Bellum Gallicum* see §§ 31 and 215.

Note that this construction does not correspond to that of § 277 in the ordinary relations of active and passive. Obligation in the active voice is expressed with **dēbeō** or **oportet**. But intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in this construction.

The agent under this construction is expressed by the dative (§ 31).

### USES OF **Cum**.

279 1. Preposition with ablative, *with*.

2. Subordinate conjunction, *when, since, although*.

If it introduces an indicative, it certainly means *when*. If the clause is followed by **tamen**, *nevertheless*, it certainly means *although*.

In other cases the meaning can only be determined by the connection, and there is often a combination of the ideas of time and cause, or of time and concession.

3. Practically a correlative conjunction, **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but also, both . . . and*, II. 4, 7, V. 4, 3, etc. Note **cum . . . etiam . . . tum**, *not only . . . and . . . but also*, III. 16, 2.

### HENDIADYS.

280 Hendiadys (ἐν διὰ δυοῖν) is a figure of syntax whereby two nouns connected by a conjunction are used for one with an adjective or a genitive.

**exempla cruciātūsque**, I. 31, 12, (*examples and cruelties*), *sorts of cruelty*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.

The following list contains the principal parts of all the different simple verbs in the *Bellum Gallicum* except those in -ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum and -or, -ārī, -ātus sum, in the order of their first occurrence in simple or compound form.

If any compound that occurs in this work varies in *form* from the simple verb, an example is given; if any compound that occurs in this work differs from the simple verb in the *accent of some one of its principal parts*, it is marked with an asterisk (\*); if it does *not* differ in accent in the *principal parts*, but *does* in *other forms*, it is marked with a dagger (†).

## BOOK I.

CH. 1. \* sum, esse, fuī, (futūrus), *be*.

    dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum, *divide*.

\* colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *cultivate*.

\* ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, *bear*.

† teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold*.

    per-tineō, tinēre, tinuī tentum, *extend; pertain*.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, *carry*.

cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, *go (from); yield*.

tendō, tendere, tetendi, tēsum or tentum, *stretch*.

    con-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, *hasten; fight*.

    os-tendō, tendere, tendī, tēsum (tentum), *show*.

    in-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum (tēsum), *direct upon*.

† habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have*.

    pro-hibeō, hibēre, hibui, hibitum, *keep out; prevent*.

    dēbeō (for de-hibeō), dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitum, *owe, ought*.

    So praebeō (for prae-hibeō), *furnish*.

dīcō, dīcere, dixī, dictum, *say*.

† capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, *take*.

    in-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum, *begin*.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, *touch*.

    at(ad)-tingō, tingere, tigī, tāctum, *touch upon*.

vergō, vergere, —, —, *incline, lie*.

orior, orīri (orī), ortus sum (oritūrus), *rise*.

CH. 2. **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, lead.**

† **faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, do, make.** PASSIVE: **fiō, fieri, factus sum, be done, be made, happen, become.** So compounds with words other than prepositions; others like

**dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, fail;** passive regular.

**suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, advise.**

\* **eō, ire, ivī (iī), itum, go.**

\* **stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, stand** (intransitive).

**prae-stō, stāre, stitī, —, stand before;** but **distō** and **exstō** have no perfect.

**potior, potiri, potitus sum, become master (of).**

**possum, posse, potui, —, be able; can.**

CH. 3. **pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open, extend.**

**statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, stand** (transitive).

**cōn-stituō, stituere, stitui, stitūtum, determine; station.**

† **moveō, movēre, movī, mōtum, move.**

**proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out.**

\* **emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, take, buy.** So **co-emō**; other compounds like

**ad-imō, imere, ēmi, ēmptum, take away; except dēmō** [for **de-emō**], **prēmō** [for **pro-emō**], **sūmō** [for **sub-emō**], like

**sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, (under)take.**

\* **petō, petere, petivī (iī), petītum, seek.**

\* **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, pick; read.**

**dē-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum, choose.** So all compounds, except

**dī-ligō, ligere, lēxī, lēctum, lorc;**

**intel-legō (ligō), legere (ligere), lēxī, lēctum, understand;**

**neg-legō, legere, lēxī, lēctum, neglect.**

**dō, dare, dedi, datum, give.** So compounds with dissyllabic prepositions; others like

**ab-dō, dere, didī, ditum, hide.**

CH. 4. \* **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive, put through.**

**ad-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum, drive to.** **cōgō** contracts in present system.

\* **sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow.**

**oportet, oportēre, oportuit, —, it is proper.**

\* **rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptum, seize.**

**ē-ripiō, ripere, ripui, reptum, snatch away.**

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum (moritūrus), *die*.

sciscō, sciscere, scīvī (iī), scītum, *resolve*.

CH. 5. in-cendō, cendere, cendī, cēsum, *set fire to*.

ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstum, *burn*. So com-(b)ūrō.

tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum, *raise; take away*.

molō, molere, moluī, molitum, *grind*.

iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum, *order*.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, (*serve one's self*), *use*.

CH. 6. pendeō, pendēre, pependī, —, *hang* (intransitive).

im-pediō, pedīre, pedīvī (iī), pedītum, (*get one's foot in*),  
*impede*.

\* fluō, fluere, fluxī, (fluxus), *flow*.

† videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*.

\* patior, pati, passus sum, *suffer, allow*.

per-petior, petī, pessus sum, *endure*.

† veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come*.

CH. 7. \* scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, *cut*.

mittō, mittere, misi, missum, *send, let go*.

licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted; may*.

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, *cause to fall, cut, kill*.

oc-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum, *kill*.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive*.

ex-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, *drive out*. But re-pellō  
has perfect re-ppulī, for re-pepulī.

spondeō, spondēre, spopondī, spōnsum, *promise*.

re-spondeō, spondēre, spondī, spōnsum, *answer*.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing*.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn*. So the compounds, except  
re-vertor, vertī, vertī, versum, *turn back* (deponent in  
present system).

CH. 8. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place*.

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (iī), mūnitum, *fortify*.

† iacio, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw*.

dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled dē-jiciō), icere, iēcī,  
iectum, *throw down*.

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join*.

rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, *break*.

\* sistō, sistere, (stitī), stātum, *cause to stand; in comp., stand*.

dē-sistō, sistere, stitī, stitum, *leave off*. So all com-  
pounds, except ad-, in-, circum-, which have no  
supine; the last has perfect circum-stetī.

- CH. 9. *linquō, linquere, liqui, lictum, leave.*  
*studeō, studere, studi, —, be eager.*  
*stringō, stringere, strinxi, strictum, draw tight.*
- CH. 10. *scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, write.*
- CH. 11. *dē-fendō, fendere, fendi, fensum, defend.*  
*mereō, merere, merui, meritum, or deponent, deserve.*
- CH. 12. \* *gradior, gradi, gressus sum, step.*  
*ag-gredior, gredi, gressus sum, approach.*  
*solvō, solvere, solvi, solutum, loose.*  
*ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, avenge.*
- CH. 13. *re-minīscor, minisci, —, call to mind.*  
*tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tributum, allot.*  
*dē-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spectrum, look.*  
*discō, discere, didici, (discitūrus), learn.*  
*nītor, nīti, nīsus (nīsus) sum, rest, rely.*
- CH. 14. \* *cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsum, fall.*  
*in-cidō, cidere, cidi, cāsum, happen. So most com-*  
*pounds; but ac-, con-, and dē-cidō omit the supine:*  
*and re-cidō sometimes has perfect reccidi.*  
*caveō, cavere, cavi, cautum, be on one's guard (for).*  
*timeō, timere, timui, —, be afraid.*  
*ob-livīscor, livisci, litus sum, forget.*  
*suēscō, suescere, suēvi, suetum, become accustomed.*  
*doleō, dolere, dolui, —, feel pain.*  
*polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, promise.*
- CH. 15. *laccessō, laccessere, laccessivi, laccessitum, provoke.*  
*coepi, coepisse, coeptus, began, have begun.*
- CH. 16. \* *vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum, convey.*  
*nōlō, nolle, nolui, —, be unwilling.*  
*mētior, mētiri, mēnsus sum, measure.*  
*queror, queri, questus sum, complain.*
- CH. 17. *taceō, tacere, tacui, tacitum, be silent.*  
*valeō, valere, valui, —, be strong.*  
*terreō, terrere, terrui, territum, frighten.*  
*arceō, arcere, arcui, (arctus, artus), shut up.*  
*co-erceō, ercere, ercui, ercitur, restrain.*
- CH. 18. *sentiō, sentire, sensi, sensum, perceive.*  
*quaerō, quaerere, quaesivi (ii), quaesitum, ask.*  
*con-quirō, quirere, quisivi (ii), quisitum, seek for.*  
*re-periō, perire, pperi, pertum, find.*  
*liceor, liceri, licitus sum, bid.*

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare.**

**augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, increase.**

**largior, largīrī, largītus sum, give generously.**

**alō, alere, aluī, alitum, (altum), nourish.**

**nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, veil one's self, marry (of the bride).**

**faveō, favēre, fāvi, fautum, favor.**

**cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (il), cupītum, desire.**

**ōdī, ōdisse, ōsus, hate.**

**minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, lessen.**

**CH. 19. (g)nōscō, (g)nōscere, (g)nōvī, (g)nōtum, know. So I-gnōscō, pardon; other compounds like**

**cō-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnitum, ascertain.**

**vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear.**

**CH. 20. plectō, plectere, (plexī), plexum, plait.**

**com-plector, plectī, plexus sum, embrace.**

**sciō, scīre, scīvī (il), scītum, know.**

**crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, increase.**

**fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, weep.**

**prehendō, prehendere, prehēdī, prehēsum, sometimes shortened to**

**prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēsum, grasp.**

**† moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, warn.**

**\* loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak.**

**CH. 21. sīdō, sīdere, sīdī, —, sit down.**

**cōn-sīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessum, settle.**

**scandō, scandere, scandī, scāsum, climb.**

**ā(ad)-scendō, scendere, scendī, scēsum, climb to.**

**CH. 22. com-periō, perire, perī, pertum, find out.**

**currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, run.**

**ac-currō, currere, cucurrī or currī, cursum, run toward.**

**So all compounds, except suc-currō, which always drops the reduplication.**

**\* struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum, build.**

**CH. 23. claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, close.**

**inter-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum, shut off.**

**fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, trust.**

**CH. 24. \* pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum, fill.**

**farcīō, farcīre, farsī, fartum, stuff. So ef-farcīō, or ef-fercīō, like**

**cōn-fercīō, fercīre, fersī, fertum, crowd together.**

- CH. 25. frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *break*.  
           per-fringō, fringere, frēgī, frāctum, *break through*.  
 figō, figere, fixī, fixum, *pierce*.  
 flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *bend*.  
 vellō, vellere, velli, vulsum, *wrench*.  
 fatiscō, fatiscere, —, —, *crack open*.  
           dē-fetiscor, fetisci, fessus sum, *become tired*.  
 ā-periō, perire, perui, pertum, *open*.  
 vincō, vincere, vici, victum, *conquer*.
- CH. 26. \* iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, *help*.
- CH. 27. pareō, parēre, parui, —, *obey*.  
 fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee*.  
 pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, —, *demand*.
- CH. 30. sancio, sancire, sanxi, sanctum, *ordain*.
- CH. 31. arcessō, arcessere, arcessivi (ii), arcessitum, *summon*.  
 ex-perior, periri, pertus sum, *try*.
- CH. 32. tueor, tueri, tuitus (tutus) sum, *look at*.  
           † maneō, manere, mansi, mansum, *remain*.
- CH. 33. \* premō, premere, pressi, pressum, *press*.  
           ex-primō, primere, pressi, pressum, *press out*.  
 horreo, horrere, horui, —, *shudder at*.
- CH. 34. placeō, placere, placui, placitum, *please*.  
 sedeō, sedere, sedi, sessum, *sit*. So compounds with dissyllabic prepositions; but  
           pos-sideō, sidere, sedi, sessum, *sit as master of, possess*.
- \* trahō, trahere, traxi, tractum, *draw*.
- CH. 35. censeō, censere, censui, censum (censitus), *think, decree*.  
 pendō, pendere, pependi, pensum, *hang* (transitive).
- CH. 38. cingō, cingere, cinxi, cinctum, *encircle*.
- CH. 39. fingō, fingere, finxi, fictum, *shape*.  
 audiō, audire, audivi (ii), auditum, *hear*.
- CH. 40. spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsum, *scatter*.  
           di-spergō, spergere, sparsi, spersum, *scatter abroad*.  
 in-dulgeō, dulgere, dulsi, dulsum, *indulge*.
- CH. 41. nascor, nasci, natus sum (nasciturus), *be born*.  
           \* spuō, spuerere, spui, sputum, *sperio*.
- CH. 43. † doceō, docere, docui, doctum, *teach*.
- CH. 45. \* serō, serere, serui, sertum, *join*.
- CH. 47. ad-olēscō, olēscere, olēvi, ultum, *grow up*.
- CH. 51. pandō, pandere, pandi, passum (pansum), *spread*.

- CH. 52. **saliō, salire, salui (salii), saltum, jump.**  
           **īa-siliō, silire, silui, —, leap upon.**
- CH. 53. **nanciſcor, nanciſci, nactus (nactus) sum, get.**  
**vinciō, vincire, vinxi, vinctum, bind.**  
**cōn-sulō, sulere, sului, sultum, consult.**

## BOOK II.

- CH. 1. **veterāscō, veterāscere, veterāvi, —, become established.**
- CH. 5. **fligō, fligere, flixi, flictum, strike.**
- CH. 6. \* **ruō, ruere, rui, rutum (ruiturus), rush down.**
- CH. 10. **fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum, deceive.**
- CH. 15. **languēscō, languescere, languī, —, grow weak.**
- CH. 19. **regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, rule.**  
           **por-rigō, rigere, rēxi, rēctum, extend.**  
           **pergō (for per-rigō), pergere, per-rēxi, per-rēctum, go on. So**  
           **surgō (for sub-rigō), rise.**  
**lateō, latere, latui, —, lie hidden.**
- CH. 20. **vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitum, forbid.**
- CH. 21. **in-duō, duere, dui, dūtum, put on, don. So ex-uō, III. 6.**  
**trūdō, trūdere, trūsi, trūsum, thrust.**
- CH. 25. **urgeō (urgueō), urgere, ursi, —, press.**
- CH. 27. **-cumbō, -cumbere, cubui, cubitum, topple.**  
**dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvi, dēlētum, blot out, destroy.**  
**iaceō, iacere, iacui, —, lie prostrate.**
- CH. 29. **acuō, acuere, acui, acūtum, sharpen.**
- CH. 30. † **rideō, ridere, risi, risum, laugh.**
- CH. 33. **crēdō, credere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe, trust. Compare dō.**  
**texō, texere, texui, textum, weave.**
- CH. 35. **cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, separate.**

## BOOK III.

- CH. 6. **fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, pour.**  
**ex-uō, uere, ui, ūtum, put off, doff. Compare in-duō, II. 21.**  
**memini, meminisse, —, remember.**
- CH. 8. **mālō, malle, mālui, —, prefer.**
- CH. 10. **partior, partiri, partitus sum, divide.**

- CH. 13. *noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, injure.*  
*saeviō, saevire, saevivī (iī), saevitum, rage.*  
*timēscō, timēscere, timuī, —, begin to fear.*
- CH. 17. *carpō, carpere, carpsi, carptum, pluck.*
- CH. 19. *vādō, vādere, vāsī, vāsum, go.*
- CH. 22. *voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow.*  
*fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, enjoy.*

## BOOK IV.

- CH. 1. *vivō, vivere, vixī, victum, live.*  
*lavō, lavāre (lavere), lāvī, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, wash.*
- CH. 2. *mollēscō, mollēscere, —, —, become soft.*
- CH. 5. *paeniteō, paenitēre, paenituī, —, repent; usually impers.*  
*serviō, servire, servivī (iī), servitum, be a slave.*
- CH. 6. *mulceō, mulcēre, mulsi, mulsum, soothe.*
- CH. 12. *fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, dig.*
- CH. 13. *gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus sum, rejoice.*
- CH. 16. *finiō, finire, finivī (iī), finitum, limit.*
- CH. 17. *sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātum, strew.*
- CH. 25. *inquam, 3d pers. inquit, irreg., I say.*
- CH. 32. \* *metō, metere, messuī, messum, mow.*  
*latēscō, latēscere, latuī, —, hide.*  
*dē-litēscō, litēscere, lituī, —, hide away.*

## BOOK V.

- CH. 3. \* *labor, labī, lapsus sum, slip.*
- CH. 4. *ārdēscō, ārdēscere, ārsī, ārsum, begin to burn.*
- CH. 14. \* *serō, serere, sēvī, satum, sew.*  
*vestiō, vestire, vestivī (iī), vestitum, clothe.*  
*rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsum, scrape.*
- CH. 18. \* *tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, cover.*
- CH. 24. *medeor, medērī, —, heal.*  
*quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum, rest.*
- CH. 27. *fateor, fatērī, fassus sum, confess.*  
*con-fiteor, fitērī, fessus sum, confess.*
- CH. 29. *ardeō, ardēre, ārsī, ārsum, be on fire.*  
*stinguō, stinguere, stinxī, stinctum, quench, put out.*
- CH. 30. *sapiō, sapere, sapivī (-sapuī), —, have a flavor; perceive.*
- CH. 36. *parcō, parcere, peperci (parsī), parsūrus, spare.*

- CH. 39. apīscor, apīscī, aptus sum, *reach after*.  
ad-ipīscor, ipīscī, cētus sum, *get*.
- CH. 42. hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustum (hausūrus), *drain*.
- CH. 43. ferveō, fervēre, fervī, —, or  
fervō, fervere, ferbuī, —, *seethe*.  
pariō, parere, peperī, partum (paritūrus), *bring forth, get*.  
torreō, torrēre, torruī, tōstum, *parch*.
- CH. 44. quatiō, quaterē, quassī, quassum, *shake*.  
per-cutiō, cutere, cussī, cussum, *thrust through*.
- CH. 48. haerēscō, haerēscere, haesī, haesum, *cling*.
- CH. 50. laciō, lacere, —, —, *entice*.  
ē-liciō, licere, licuī, licitum, *lure out; but*  
al-liciō, licere, lexi, lectum, *allure*.
- CH. 51. temnō, temnere, —, —, *despise*.  
con-temnō, temnere, tem(p)sī, tem(p)tum, *despise*.

## BOOK VI.

- CH. 1. sarcīō, sarcīre, sarsi, sartum, *patch*.
- CH. 4. cūstōdiō, cūstōdīre, cūstōdivī (ī), cūstōditum, *guard*.
- CH. 9. laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, *harm*.
- CH. 11. egeō, egēre, eguī, —, *lack*.
- CH. 13. ex-cellō, cellere, -celluī, (celsus), *surpass*.
- CH. 15. soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*.
- CH. 21. \* luō, luere, luī, lūtum (luitūrus), *wash*.
- CH. 27. plicō, plicāre, plicāvī or plicuī, plicātum or plicitum, *fold*.
- CH. 29. mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūruī, —, *begin to ripen*.
- CH. 36. valēscō, valēscere, valuī, valitum, *get well*.
- CH. 38. careō, carēre, caruī, —, *be without*.  
im-mineō, minēre, —, —, *overhang*.

## BOOK VII.

- CH. 4. \* secō, secāre, secuī, sectum, *cut*.
- CH. 11. \* cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum, *sleep out*.
- CH. 21. \* crepō, crepāre, crepuī, crepitum, *rattle*.
- CH. 25. fungor, fungi, functus sum, *discharge*.
- CH. 42. pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est, *it shames*.
- CH. 46. molliō, mollīre, molliuī (ī), mollitum, *soften*.

- CH. 47. *canō, canere, cecinī, (cantum), sing.*  
 CH. 49. *metuō, metuere, metuī, —, fear.*  
 CH. 50. *(pangō, pangere), pepigī or panxī, pāctum, agree.*  
 CH. 54. *torqueō, torquēre, torsī, tortum, twist.*  
 CH. 62. *misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtum or mistum, mix.*  
 CH. 73. *stabiliō, stabilīre, stabilivī (il), stabilitum, make steady.*  
 CH. 77. *saepiō, saepīre, saepī, saeptum, hedge.*

### IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

The following substantives require notice as having irregular, extra, or lacking forms. See vocabulary or grammars.

Book I. 1. *bellum, sōl.* 2. *lacus, locus, mīlia.* 3. *fidēs, filia.* 4. *arma.* 5. *domus, nihil, spēs.* 6. *vis.* 9. *angustiae.* 10. *hīberna.* 11. *līberī.* 12. *deus.* 18. *nēmō.* 20. *ops, vulgus.* 22. *aciēs.* 24. *phalanx.* 26. *vesper.* 29. *senex.* 34. *opus.* 43. *planitiēs.* 50. *fās, meridiēs.*

Book II. 17. *instar.*

Book III. 8. *portus.*

Book IV. 12. *indūtiae.* 32. *essedum.*

Book V. 35. *femur.*

Book VI. 13. *druides.* 14. *mīlitia.* 26. *bōs.* 28. *epulum(a).*

Book VII. 8. *nix.*

### GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

#### GENERAL RULES.

*Masculine.* Names of male beings, rivers, winds, months and mountains.

*Feminine.* Names of female beings, countries, towns, plants and trees.

*Neuter.* Indeclinable Nouns.

#### SPECIAL RULES—SUBORDINATE TO THE ABOVE.

Declensions I. and V., *feminine.*

Declensions II. and IV., *masculine or neuter*, according to ending.

Declension III. *Masculine:* those ending in *ō* (except *dō, gō*, and *iō*), or, *ōs, er, es.* *Feminine:* those ending in *dō, gō* and *iō, ās, ēs, is, ūs, x*, and *s* following a consonant. *Neuter:* all others.

## EXCEPTIONS.

Book I. 1. *Garumna* (*m.* or *f.*), *Mātrona* (*f.*), *finis* (*m.*), *mōns* (*m.*), *sōl* (*m.*). 2. *locus* (*m.* and *n.* plural). 3. *iter* (*n.*). 4. *diēs* (*m.*, sometimes *f.*, see vocabulary), *ignis* (*m.*), *iūs* (*n.*). 5. *domus* (*f.*), *mēnsis* (*m.*). 6. *pōns* (*m.*). 7. *Īdūs* (*f.*). 8. *pēs* (*m.*). 10. *Alpēs* (*f.*). 12. *linter* (*f.*). 20. *vulgus* (*n.*, accusative rarely *m.*). 22. *collis* (*m.*). 25. *manus* (*f.*). 38. *Vesontiō* (*m.*). 40. *ōrdō* (*m.*). 46. *lapis* (*m.*). 50. *meridiēs* (*m.*).

Book II. 17. *arbor* (*f.*), *sentis* (*m.*). 27. *cadaver* (*n.*). 33. *cortex* (*m.* and *f.*).

Book III. 13. *fūnis* (*m.*), *pollex* (*m.*). 20. *Narbō* (*m.*).

Book IV. 9. *Mosa* (*f.*). 10. *piscis* (*m.*). 15. *cōfluēns* (*m.*). 31. *aes* (*n.*). 32. *pulvis* (*m.*). 37. *orbis* (*m.*).

Book V. 12. *lepus* (*m.*). 14. *carō* (*f.*). 35. *ōs* (*n.*).

Book VI. 19. *dōs* (*f.*), *cor* (*n.*). 27. *crūs* (*n.*). 34. *stirps* (*f.*, sometimes *m.* in poetry). 36. *seges* (*f.*).

Book VII. 20. *sanguis* (*m.*). 25. *scorpiō* (*m.*). 73. *scrobis* (*m.* and *f.*). 81. *harpagō* (*m.*).

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following adjectives require notice on account of irregular comparison.

Book I. 1. *extrēmus*, *inferior*, *minor*, *proximus*. 2. *dīves*, *māgnus*. 3. *multus*. 6. *bonus*, *difficilis*, *facilis*. 7. *ulterior*. 9. *novus*. 10. *citerior*, *primus*, *superior*. 13. *vetus*. 15. *posterus*. 18. *celer*, *parvus*. 29. *senex*. 31. *pēior*. 32. *miser*. 36. *dēterior*. 44. *līber*.

Book II. 1. *creber*. 2. *interior*. 8. *idōneus*. 17. *tener*.

Book III. 19. *alacer*.

Book IV. 3. *humilis*.

Book V. 40. *aeger*. 45. *asper*.

Book VI. 19. *māgnificus*.

Book VII. 1. *iunior*. 15. *pulcher*.

## ADVERBS.

The following list of adverbs of the *Bellum Gallicum* is intended to contain all that are capable of comparison.

Book I. 1. *minimē*, *saepe*. 2. *facile*. 6. *nūper*. 13. *aegrē*, *magis*. 14. *graviter*, *insolenter*. 15. *audācter*. 16. *diū*. 18. *liberius*, *largiter*.

22. prope. 26. ācriter. 27. suppliciter. 31. superbē. mātūrrimē.  
37. vehementer. 40. adroganter, malē, temerē. 44. libenter. 45.  
potius.

Book II. 1. molestē. 2. cōstanter. 5. dīligerter, līberāliter. 11.  
fortiter.

Book III. 10. mōbiliter. 18. bene.

Book IV. 25. fēliciter. 26. firmiter.

Book V. 6. obstinātē. 29. serō. 33. incommodē. 49. cautē.

Book VI. 8. placidē. 21. prōmiscuē. 22. accūrātius. 28. studiōsē.

Book VII. 6. rēctē. 22. scienter. 43. mitissimē. 45. tumultu-  
ōsius. 51. intolerantius. 60. industriē. 70. parcē. 77. patienter.

# VOCABULARY

## ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative	infin.	infinitive
abs.	absolute	insep.	inseparable
acc.	accusative	interrog.	interrogative
adj.	adjective	intrans.	intransitive
adv.	adverb	lit.	literally
Bel. Gal.	Bellum Gallicum	loc.	locative
card.	cardinal	m., masc.	masculine
cf.	compare	n., neut.	neuter
comp.	composition	nom.	nominative
compar.	comparative	num.	numeral
conj.	conjunction	obj.	object, objective
coörd.	coördinate	opp.	opposite
dat.	dative	ord.	ordinal
decl.	declension	orig.	originally
dem.	demonstrative	p.	page
dep.	deponent	partic.	participle
dim.	diminutive	pass.	passive
dir.	direct	perf.	perfect
dis.	discourse	pl.	plural
e.g.	for example	plup.	pluperfect
Eng.	English	prep.	preposition
espec.	especially	pres.	present
etc.	and so forth	pron.	pronoun
f., fem.	feminine	reflex.	reflexive
ff.	and following	rel.	relative
fig.	figurative	sc.	supply
1st conj.	first conjugation	sing.	singular
fut.	future	spec.	specification
gen.	genitive	subord.	subordinate
i.e.	that is	subj.	subject, subjective
imperf.	imperfect	subjunct.	subjunctive
imper.	imperative	subst.	substantive
impers.	impersonal	super.	superlative
indic.	indicative	trans.	transitive
indecl.	indeclinable	voc.	vocative
indef.	indefinite	w.	with

# VOCABULARY

NOTE.—The literal meaning of a word is given first in each case, but if not used in Caesar it is placed in Roman type in parentheses; other meanings are given approximately in the order of their development. Where chapter references are given for any meaning, it is to be understood that these references cover all instances of its use.

## A

**A.**, abbreviation for **Aulus**, a Roman *praenomen*.

**a. d.**, abbreviation for **ante diem**.

**ā, ab, abs** [**ab** (most primitive form) before vowels and some consonants, especially **l, n, r, s**; **ā** before consonants; **abs** mostly before **t** and **q**, especially with **tō**], prep. w. abl., *away from, from*; in expressions of distance, e.g. **ā milibus passuum, ab spatiō, away, off, distant**; w. verbs of seeking, requesting, *of*; expressing agency w. passives, *by*; w. verbs of happening, suffering, *at the hands of*. With different point of view in English, w. **cornū, latere, āgmine, parte**, etc., *on, in, at*; with names of tribes, *on the side of*, e.g. I. 1, 3.

In composition its forces are the same, but have different effects, depending upon the meaning of the word with which it is joined.

**ā-**, form of **ad** in comp. before **s**, the quantity being lengthened to compensate for loss of consonant.

**ab-dō, dere, didī, dītum** [**dō, dare**], (put away); *conceal*; w. reflex. pron. or in pass., *hide* (in w. acc., *in, among*). Perf. part. as adj., *secluded*, VI. 34, 2.

**ab-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**, *lead away, carry off*.

**ab-eō, ire, (ivī) iī, itum**, *go away; disappear*, VI. 43, 4.

**ab-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **ab-jiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], *throw away, throw down; throw, hurl*, V. 48, 5.

**abiēs, abietis**, f., *fir-tree*.

**ab-lungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctum**, (disjoin); *detach*.

**abs-**, form of **ā, ab**, before **t, q**, and occasionally some other consonants.

**abs-cidō, cidere, cidī, cīsum** [**caedō**], *cut away, cut off*, III. 14, 7; *cut down*, VII. 73, 2.

**absēns**, pres. part. of **absum**.

**ab-similis, e**, *unlike*.

**ab-sistō, sistere, stitī, —**, (stand away from); *advance from*.

**abs-tineō, tinēre, tinui, tentum** [**teneō**], (hold away from); intrans.,

*refrain*, I. 22, 3; trans., *restrain*, VII. 47, 2.

**abs-trahō**, *trahere*, *trāxi*, *trāctum*, *drag away, carry off*.

**ab-sum**, *esse*, *ā-fui* (*ā-futūrus*), *be away from, absent, distant; be lacking*, I. 4, 4; fig., *be far from aiding*, I. 36, 5. Pres. part., *absēns*, *absentia*, *absent; sē* (etc.) *absente*, *in his absence*.

**ab-undō**, 1st conj. [*unda*, *a wave*], (*overflow, abound*); *be strong, well supplied*.

**āc**, form of *atque* before some consonants.

**ao-**, form of *ad* in comp. before *c*.

**ao-cēdō**, *cēdere*, *cēssi*, *cēssum*, *go to or toward, approach; be added*, I. 19, 1, IV. 22, 4, VII. 46, 2; *come*, II. 7, 2; impers. *accēdēbat quod*, *an additional fact (reason) was that*.

**ao-celerō**, 1st conj. [*celer*, *swift*], *hasten toward* (anyone).

**acceptus**, *a, um*, part. of *accipiō*.

**ao-cidō**, *cidere*, *cidī*, — [*cadō*], (*fall to*); *fall*, III. 14, 4, 26, 1; 3d pers., (*be fall*), *happen* (in good, bad, or neutral sense).

**ao-cidō**, *cidere*, *cidī*, *cisum* [*caedō*], *cut into*.

**ao-cipiō**, *cipere*, *cēpi*, *ceptum* [*capiō*], (*take to one's self*); *take command of*, VII. 38, 1; *accept, receive*; of anything unpleasant, *suffer*; of a fact or person, *hear, hear of; find*, VII. 54, 3.

**ao-clivis**, *e* [*clivus*, *slope*], *sloping upward, rising*.

**acclivitas**, *tātis*, f. [*acclivis*], *upward slope, ascent, rise*.

**Accō**, *ōnis*, m., a leader of the Seno-

nes, hostile to Caesar, put to death by him: VI. 4, 1, etc.

**accommodātus**, *a, um*, part. of *accommodō*.

**ac-commodō**, 1st conj. [*commodus*, *convenient*], *fit, adapt; adjust, put on*, II. 21, 5.

**accūrātē**, adv. [*accūrātus*, part. of *ao-cūrō*, *care for*], *carefully*; compar., *too elaborately*, VI. 22, 3.

**ao-currō**, *currere*, *cucurri* or *curri*, *cursum*, *run to or toward; ride up*, I. 22, 1.

**ao-cūsō**, 1st conj. [*causa*], (*call to account*); *blame, reproach, accuse*.

**acerbē**, adv. [*acerbus*], *bitterly*.

*acerbius ferre*, *find too hard to endure*.

**acerbitās**, *tātis*, f. [*acerbus*], (*bitterness*); *privations, suffering*.

**acerbus**, *a, um* [*ācer*, *sharp, sour*], (*bitter—primarily to the taste; hence, fig., to the mind*), *painful, hard*.

**aoervus**, *i, m.* [*ācer*, *sharp*], *pile, heap*.

**aoiēs**, *ēi*, f., plu. only nom. and acc. [*ācer*, *sharp*], (*point, edge*); *piercing glance*, I. 39, 1; *line of battle; pitched battle*, VII. 1, 8, 29, 2, 64, 2.

**ao-quirō**, *quirere*, *quisivi* or *quisi*, *quisitum* [*quaerō*], (*seek in addition*); *aliquid acquirere*, *gain any further success*.

**āoriter**, adv., compar. *ācrius*, super. *ācerrimē* [*ācer*, *sharp*], *sharply; fiercely, vigorously, hotly*.

**āotuārius**, *a, um* [*agō*], (*capable of being driven*); *swift-sailing, driven by both sails and oars*.

**aoūō**, *acuere*, *acui*, *acūtum* [*ācer*,

*sharp*], *sharpen*. Perf. part. as adj., *sharpened, pointed, sharp*.

**acūtus, a, um**, part. of **acuō**.

**ad**, prep. w. acc.; of motion or direction, *to, toward*, (in hostile sense) *against*; of situation, *in the vicinity of, near, at*; with numerals, *to the number of, nearly, about*; of limit, *up to, until, till*; of design, *for the purpose of, for*, I. 51, 1, chiefly w. gerundive; of scope, *for*. Similarly in comp., but cf. remark on **ab**.

**adāctus, a, um**, part. of **adigō**.

**ad-aequō**, 1st conj., *make equal to*, III. 12, 3; (become equal to), *equal*; w. **cursum**, *keep up with, keep abreast*.

**ad-amō**, 1st conj. [**amō**, *love*], *conceive a desire for, covet*.

**ad-dō**, *dere, didī, dītum [**dō**, *dare*], (give to); *add, add to*; *put on*, VII. 41, 4.*

**ad-dūcō**, *dūcere, dūxī, duotum*, (lead to); *bring (to, on, up, along)*; *prevail upon, induce*, I. 31, 8; in pass., w. abl. of cause, *influence, induce*, I. 9, 3; 11, 1, etc.; *pull taut*, III. 14, 6.

**adēemptus, a, um**, part. of **adimō**.

**ad-eō**, *ire, (ivī) īl, itum*, *go to, approach, visit*; *attack*; *get at*, II. 7, 3; intrans., *advance*.

**ad-eō**, adv. [**eō**, adv., *thither*], (to this point, to such a degree); when followed by result clause, *so*; *so much, so very much*.

**adeptus, a, um**, part. of **adipiscor**.

**ad-equitō**, 1st conj. [**equus**, *horse*], *ride up to*.

**ad-haereō**, *haerēre, haesī, haesum*, or, better—

**ad-haerēscō**, *haerēscere, haesī, haesum*, *cling to, stick in*.

**ad-hibeō**, *hibēre, hibui, hibitum* [**habeō**], (have at hand); *have present*, I. 20, 6; *call in, summon, admit*; *employ, use*, III. 20, 1; *consult*, VII. 83, 1; *include*, IV. 13, 4.

**ad-hortor**, 1st conj., *urge (to), exhort, encourage*. (**sē ipsi**, *each other*, VI. 37, 10.)

**ad-hūo**, adv., *hitherto, as yet*.

**ad-iaceō**, *iacēre, iacui, —*, *lie near, border upon, be adjacent*.

**Adiatunnus**, I, m., a chief of the Sotiates, III. 22.

**ad-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **ad-jiciō**), *icere, iēcī, iectum* [**iaciō**], (throw to); *hurl*; *add to*, VII. 72, 4; *throw up, construct*, V. 9, 7; *be near*, III. 1, 5.

**ad-igō**, *igere, ēgī, āctum* [**agō**], (drive to anything); *drive up*, VII. 17, 3; *move up*, V. 43, 6; *drive down*, IV. 17, 4; w. **tēlum**, *hurl, cast*; *force (ad, to take)*, VII. 67, 1.

**ad-imō**, *imere, ēmī, ēmptum* [**emō**], (take to one's self); hence, from another, *take away*.

**ad-ipiscor**, *ipisci, eptus sum* [**api-soor**, *reach after, attain*], *achieve, gain, secure*.

**aditus, ūs**, m. [**adeō**], *approach, access*; w. **sermōnis**, *occasion (for)*, V. 41, 1; *intercourse (ad, with)*, VII. 66, 7.

**ad-iūdicō**, 1st conj. [**iūdex**, *iūdicis*, *judge*], *adjudge, award*.

**ad-iungō**, *iungere, iūxī, iūctum* (join to); *attach (to), ally (with)*; *annex*, III. 2, 5.

**adiūtor**, **ōris**, m. [**adiuvō**], *helper, assistant, supporter*.

**ad-iuvō**, *iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum*, *help, aid, be of assistance or advantage*.

**ad-mātūrō, āre, —, —, (ripen);**  
*hasten, precipitate.*

**ad-minister, trī, m., servant, assist-**  
*ant, agent, minister.*

**ad-ministrō, 1st conj. [minister, ser-**  
*vant], execute, carry out; manage,*  
*conduct; control (one's own ship),*  
*IV. 29, 2.*

**ad-mīror, 1st conj., be astonished at,**  
*wonder at, V. 52, 2; wonder; ad-*  
*mire, VII. 52, 3; gerundive, (to be*  
*wondered at), surprising.*

**ad-mittō, mittere, mīsi, missum,**  
*(let go toward); of a crime, commit;*  
*permit, IV. 25, 5; equō admissō,*  
*on the gallop, at full speed.*

**ad-modum, adv. [prep. phrase, con-**  
*densed], (to a degree); exceedingly,*  
*very, very much.*

**ad-moneō, monēre, monui, moni-**  
*tum, advise, warn, admonish.*

**ad-olēscō, olēscere, olēvi, ultum,**  
*grow up, attain manhood. Pres.*  
*part. as noun, written adulē-*  
*scēns.*

**ad-orior, oriri, ortus sum, (rise**  
*against); attack, assault.*

**ad-sum, esse, af-ful, —, be near,**  
*be present, be at hand.*

**Aduatuca, ae, f., a stronghold of the**  
*Eburones, probably between the*  
*Meuse and the Rhine, exact location*  
*uncertain, VI. 32, 3, etc.*

**Aduatuci, ōrum, m. plu., a Belgic**  
*tribe south of the Eburones, about*  
*the upper part of the Meuse, II. 4,*  
*9, etc.*

**adulēscēns, entis, c. [pres. part. of**  
*adolēscō, with weakened vowel],*  
*(one growing up); young man or*  
*woman; w. Crassus, Brūtus, the*  
*younger, junior.*

**adulēscēntia, ae, f. [adulēscēns],**  
*youth, youthfulness.*

**adulēscēntulus, l, m. [dim. of adu-**  
*lēscēns], very young man, mere boy.*

**adventus, ūs, m. [ad-veniō, come**  
*to], coming, approach, arrival.*

**adversārius, a, um [adversus],**  
*standing opposite. Masc. as subst.,*  
*opponent.*

**adversus, a, um, part. of advertō.**

**ad-versus, prep. w. acc., (opposite**  
*to); against, IV. 14, 2.*

**ad-vertō, vertere, verti, versum,**  
*turn to; animum advertere (turn*  
*the attention to), notice, I. 24, 1;*  
*cf. animadvertō, which probably*  
*represents the actual pronunciation,*  
*however written. adversus, a, um,*  
*(turned to); facing, opposite, II. 8,*  
*3, 18, 2, III. 14, 2; adverse, un-*  
*successful, I. 18, 10, 40, 8; adv.*  
*rēs, reverses, disasters, VII. 30, 3;*  
*in adv. ōs, squarely in the face, V.*  
*35, 8; w. hostibus, face to face, II.*  
*24, 1; w. colle, flūmine, up; adv.*  
*nocte, the darkness being against*  
*them, IV. 28, 3.*

**ad-vocō, 1st conj., call to, summon.**

**ad-volō, 1st conj., (fly to); hasten to,**  
*against, rush upon.*

**aedificium, l, n. [aedificō], building,**  
*dwelling.*

**aedificō, 1st conj. [aedis, dwelling,**  
*faciō, make], (erect a dwelling);*  
*build, trans., III. 9, 1, V. 1, 1; in-*  
*trans., VI. 22, 3.*

**Aeduus, a, um, Aeduan, of the**  
*Aedui. Masc. as subst., an (the)*  
*Aeduan, plu. the Aedui, one of the*  
*most powerful Gallic tribes, friendly*  
*to Caesar until the seventh year of*  
*the war, I. 3, 5, etc.*

**aeger, aegra, aegrum**, compar. **aegrior**, super. **aegerrimus**, *ill, sick*; masc. plu. as subst., *the ill, the sick*.

**aegrō**, compar. **aegrus**, super. **aegerrimō** [**aeger**], (*illy*); *barely, hardly, with difficulty*.

**Aemilius**, I, m., *Lucius Aemilius*, a decurion of the Gallic cavalry, I. 23, 2.

**aequāliter** [**aequālis**, *equal*], (*equally*), *evenly, uniformly*.

**aequinoctium**, I, n. [**aequus**, *equal*; **nox**, *night*], *equinox*.

**aequitās, tātis**, f. [**aequus**], (*evenness*); *fairness*; **animī aequitās**, *contentment*, VI. 22, 4.

**aequō**, 1st conj. [**aequus**], *make equal, equalize*.

**aequus, a, um**, (*even*); *level*, VII. 44, 3; *fair*, IV. 16, 4, VI. 12, 6, VII. 29, 7; *equal*, I. 43, 1, VII. 48, 4; *favorable, advantageous*; **aequō animō**, *with equanimity, resolutely*, V. 52, 6, VII. 64, 3; *without anxiety*, V. 49, 6; **aequō Mārte**, *on even terms*.

**aerārius, a, um** [**aes**], (*relating to copper*), *copper*; fem. as subst. (sc. **sectūra**), *copper mine*.

**aes, aeris**, n. *copper*; *bronze*, an alloy of copper and tin; because used for coins, *money*; **aes aliēnum**, (*money belonging to another*), *debt*.

**aestās, tātis**, f., *summer*.

**aestimātiō, ōnis**, f. [**aestimō**], *estimate, valuation, appraisal*.

**aestimō**, 1st conj. [**aes**], (*put a money value on*), *estimate, esteem, value; consider, regard*, VII. 14, 10.

**aestivus, a, um** [**aestus**, but connected in meaning w. **aestās**], (*of summer*); *summer*.

**aestuārius, a, um** [**aestus**], *relating to the tide*. Neut. as subst. (*a place reached by the tide*); (*salt*) *marsh, creek, inlet, near the ocean*.

**aestus, ūs**, m., (*a seething*); *heat*, VI. 22, 3, 30, 3; *tide*; **māximus aestus**, *spring tide*.

**aetās, tātis**, f. [*for aevitās, from aevum, (life-)time*], *age, time of life; old age; aetāte cōfectus, burdened with years; puerilis aetās, boyhood. (gravlor, advanced, III. 12, 1.)*

**aeternus, a, um** [*for aeviternus, from aevum, (life-)time*], *everlasting, perpetual, eternal*.

**af-**, form of **ad** in comp. before **f**.

**af-ferō, ferre, at-tuli, al-lātum**, *bring (to), bring forward, cite; cause, produce; contribute*, I. 43, 8.

**af-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum** [**faciō**], (*do to*); *affect; fill*, I. 2, 4, VII. 40, 1; *visit*, I. 27, 4; *treat*, I. 35, 2; *subject*, V. 56, 2; *afflict*, VI. 16, 2; *confront*, VII. 17, 3; *cause (to)*, V. 48, 9, *inflict (upon)*, VII. 16, 3; pass. w. abl., *experience*, VII. 6, 2, *receive*, VII. 37, 4.

**af-figō, figere, fixī, fixum**, *attach to, fasten to*.

**af-fingō, fingere, finxī, fiotum**, (*shape to*); *add to falsely*; w. **rūmōribus**, *invent additions*, VII. 1, 2.

**af-finitās, tātis**, f. [**af-finis**, *neighboring*], *relationship by marriage; intermarriage*, II. 4, 4.

**af-firmātiō, ōnis**, f. [**firmātus**, part. of **firmō**, *make firm*], *assurance*.

**af-fixus, a, um**, part. of **affigō**.

**af-flictō**, 1st conj. [*intensive of*

**affligō**], *dash repeatedly, toss*, IV. 29, 2; *pass. be pounded*, III. 12, 1.  
**af-fligō**, **figere**, **fixi**, **fixum** (*dash against*); *throw down*, VI. 27, 2; *bear down*, VI. 27, 5; *pass., of ships, suffer, be shattered, be damaged*.  
**af-fore**, *fut. infin. of adsum (= affutūrus esse)*.

**Āfricus**, **a**, **um**, *African, of Africa*.  
 Masc. as subst. (*sc. ventus*), *south-west wind, i.e. from Africa to Italy*.

**Agēdinum**, **i**, **n.**, *the chief town of the Senones, now Sens, on the Yonne river, tributary of the Seine on the south*, VI. 44, 3.

**ager**, **agri**, **m.** *cultivated land*, IV. 4, 2; *soil, field (opposed to woods), country (opposed to city), territory*; **agri cultūra**, (*cultivation of the soil*), *agriculture, farming*.

**ag-**, *form of ad in comp. before g.*

**ag-ger**, **aggeris**, **m.** [**gerō**, *bring*], (*what is brought to a place*); *mound, rampart, dike, or any structure of earth used in the field operations of an army; especially the Roman agger (see Introduction); material for such mounds, including timber*, II. 20, 1; **cotidiānus agger**, *the daily addition to the agger*.

**ag-gredior**, **gredi**, **gressus sum** [**gradior**, *step*], (*go toward, approach*; cf. Eng. "go for"), *attack*.

**ag-gregō**, *1st conj. [grex, flock]*, (*flock to*); *w. reflex., join, attach*.

**agitō**, *1st conj. [intensive of agō]*, *agitate, discuss earnestly*.

**āgmen**, **minis**, **n.** [**agō**], *army on the march, marching column*; **novissimum** or **extrēmum āgmen**, *rear, rear guard*; **primum āgmen**, *van,*

*vanguard*; **cōnfertō āgmine**, *in close order. (cōnsistō, halt.)*

**agō**, **agere**, **ēgi**, **āctum**, (*put in motion*); *w. praedam, drive, lead*, VI. 43, 2; *w. turrēs, vineās, tēstudinēs, bring up*; *w. impedimenta, take along*, II. 29, 4; *w. cuniculum, construct, sink*, III. 21, 3; *drive, pursue closely*, IV. 12, 2, V. 17, 3; *w. publicās, drive in, down*, IV. 17, 9; *treat, discuss, confer; carry on, do; work*, VII. 17, 2; *impers. pass. infin., the work to be done*, V. 50, 5; **grātiās agere** (*give thanks*), *thank*; *w. conventūs, hold*.

**al-**, *form of ad in comp. before l.*

**alacer**, **cris**, **cre**, *lively, brisk; eager*.  
**alacritās**, **tātis**, **f.** [**alacer**], *liveliness, briskness; eagerness*.

**ālārius**, **a**, **um** [**āla**, *wing*], *relating or belonging to the wing (of a bird or an army); hence of allies, stationed on the wings of the Roman armies, allied, of the allies*; *masc. plu. as subst. (sc. militēs), allies*.

**albus**, **a**, **um**, *white*; **plumbum album**, (*white lead*), *tin*.

**alcōs**, **is**, **f.**, *elk*.

**Alesia**, **ae**, **f.**, *chief city of the Mandubii, north of the territory of the Aedui, now Alise-Sainte-Reine*, VII. 68, 1, etc.

**aliās**, *adv. [orig. acc. plu. of alius]*, *at another time*; **aliās—aliās**, *at one time—at another*.

**aliēnō**, *1st conj. [aliēnus]*, (*make another's*); *estrangle, alienate*, VII. 10, 2; **aliēnātā mente**, *as if they had lost their reason*, VI. 41, 3.

**aliēnus**, **a**, **um** [**alius**], (*belonging to another, another's*); **aes** (*another's*

money), *debt* ; w. *locus, tempus, unfavorable, unsuitable* ; *out of place*, VI. 11, 1. Masc. as subst., *stranger*, super. *utter stranger*, VI. 31, 4.

**aliō**, adv. [old dat. of *alius*], *to another place, elsewhere*.

**aliquam-diū**, adv. [acc. sing. fem. of *aliqui*, sc. *partem*], (somewhat long), *for some time, some time*.

**aliquandō**, adv. [*alius* ; *quandō*, *at some time*], (at some time or other, some time) ; *at length*.

**aliquantus**, a, um [*alius* ; *quantus*, *how great*], (of some size); *some, considerable* ; neut. w. partitive gen. *itineris*, *some distance*, V. 10, 2 ; abl. of degree of difference, *somewhat*, III. 13, 1.

**aliqui**, qua, quod, indef. adj. pron., *some, any*.

**aliquis**, qua, quid, indef. pron., *some one, something* ; *any one, anything* ; neut. w. partitive gen. translated as adj., e.g. w. *cōnsilii*, *any discretion*, III. 16, 2, and so IV. 32, 2, VII. 12, 6 ; adv. acc., *somewhat*, I. 40, 5.

**aliquot**, indeclinable adj. [*alius*, *quot*], *some, several*.

**aliter**, adv. [*alius*], *otherwise, differently, else* ; *aliter āc*, *otherwise than*. *aliter sē habēbat āc* (had itself otherwise than), *was different from what*, II. 19, 1.

**alius**, a, ud, gen. *alius*, dat. *alii*, *other, another, different*. *alius—alius*, *one—another*, plu. *some—others* ; *alia rēs*, *anything else*, I. 26, 6 ; *alia ratiō*, *any other way*, I. 42, 4 ; *longē alius*, *very different* ; *alius āc*, *atque*, *different from, from what, than*. In condensed expression (brachylogy), *alius aliā*

*causā illātā*, *one assigning one reason and another another*, I. 39, 3 ; similarly, II. 22, 1, 24, 3, III. 6, 4, etc. ; *each other*, II. 26, 2, V. 16, 4.

**allātus**, a, um, part. of *afferō*.

**al-līciō**, *licere*, *lexi* or *licui*, *lectum* [*laciō*, *entice*], *entice, allure, induce*.

**Allobrogēs**, um, m. plu., Greek acc. *as*, I. 14, 3, VII. 64, 7, a Gallic tribe in the northeastern part of the Province between the Rhone and the Alps, I. 6, 2, etc.

**alō**, *alere*, *alui*, *alitur* or *altum*, *nourish, strengthen, increase* ; *support* ; *keep*, V. 12, 6 ; w. *contrōversiam*, *continue*.

**Alpēs**, ium, f., *the Alps*, applied to all the mountains between Italy, Gaul and Germany.

**alter**, *altera*, *alterum*, gen. *alterius* or *alterius*, dat. *alteri* [same stem as *alius*], *the other (of two)* ; *the second* ; *a second person, another*, I. 36, 1 ; **alter—alter** (*the one—the other*, plu. (*the one party—the other party, the others*).

**alternus**, a, um [*alter*], *alternate, in turn*.

**altitūdō**, inis, f. [*altus*], *height, elevation* ; *depth* ; *thickness*, III. 13, 4.

**altus**, a, um [part. of *alō*, *nourish*], (*nourished, grown great*) ; *high, deep*. Neut. as subst., sc. *mare*, and cf. Eng., *the deep, the open sea* ; *in altō*, *in deep water*.

**alūta**, ae, f. [*alūmen*, *alum*, used in tanning (?)], (*fine, soft*) *leather*.

**ambactus**, i, m. [Celtic], *vassal*.

**Ambarrī**, ōrum, m. plu. [*ambi*, *around*], a tribe connected with the Aedui, living southeast of them, on both sides of the Saône (Arar), I. 11, 4.

**Ambiāni**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, south of the Morini, on the coast, II. 4, 9.

**Ambibariī**, ōrum, m. plu., one of the Aremorican tribes on the south bank of the Liger (Loire), VII. 75, 4.

**Ambiliati**, ōrum, m. plu., one of the Aremorican tribes, upon the coast of northwestern Gaul, III. 9, 10.

**Ambiorix**, igit, m., a leader of the Eburones, responsible for the Roman disaster at Aduatuca, V. 26, 1, etc.

**Ambivareti**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of whose location nothing is known beyond the fact that they were clients of the Aedui; VII. 75, 2, 90, 6.

**Ambivariti**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe somewhere upon the left bank of the Meuse, toward the lower part of its course, IV. 9, 3.

**ambo**, ae, o, adj. in dual no. (declined like duo), both.

**āmentia**, ae, f. [adj. **āmēns**, out of one's senses, from **ā**, away from, **mēns**, mind], folly, senselessness.

**āmentum**, l, n., thong, strap, attached to a javelin.

**am-fractūs**, ūs, m. [am (for ambi), around, **frangō**, break], bend (in a road).

**amicitia**, ae, f. [amicus], friendship, personal or political; alliance.

**amicus**, a, um, [amō, love], friendly. Masc. as subst., friend.

**ā-mittō**, mittere, misi, missum, (let go away), lose. Neut. plu. of perf. part. as subst., (things lost), lost property, losses, VII. 15, 2.

**amor**, ōris, m. [amō, love], love, affection.

**amplē**, adv. [amplus], widely, largely, generously. Compar. more, not nec-

essarily followed by the abl., though **quam** is regularly omitted; further; any more, I. 35, 3, 43, 9, V. 27, 9, 55, 2, VI. 42, 2.

**amplificō**, 1st conj. [amplius, faciō], (make large), enlarge, increase, extend.

**amplitūdō**, inis, f. [amplus], (size, breadth); **cornuum**, spread, VI. 28, 5; importance, weight, influence.

**amplus**, a, um, large, great, III. 8, 1, IV. 3, 3, V. 19, 1, 50, 2; splendid, VI. 28, 6; of social position, noble, distinguished; **amplius**, neut. of compar. as subst., more, not necessarily followed by the abl., though **quam** is regularly omitted.

**an**, conj. introducing an alternative, in the second part of a disjunctive question, the first part being sometimes omitted, or; **utrum — an**, -ne — an, whether — or. When the first part is omitted **an** is not translatable, except as the sentence is made interrogative, I. 47, 6, VII. 38, 8, 77, 10.

**Anartēs**, ium, m. plu., a people in Transylvania, on the Tibiscus (Theiss) river, marking the eastern terminus of the Hercynian forest, VI. 25, 2.

**Ancalitēs**, um, m. plu., a British tribe, V. 21, 1.

**anceps**, cipitis, adj. [ambi, about, on either side, caput, head] (two-headed), double, I. 26, 1; VII. 76, 6; doubtful.

**ancora**, ae, f. [ἀγκυρα], anchor. (in, at; tollere, weigh.)

**Andebrogius**, l, m., a man of high rank among the Remi, II. 3, 1.

**Andēs**, ium, or **Andī**, ōrum, m. plu.,

a tribe in western Gaul on the north bank of the Loire, about Angers, II. 35, 3. etc.

**angulus**, *l*, *m.*, *angle*, *corner*.

**angustō** [**angustus**], (*narrowly*), *closely*; *scantly*, V. 24, 1.

**angustiae**, *ārum*, *f. plu.* [**angustus**], (*narrowness*), *defile*, *narrow pass*; **angustiae viārum**, *narrowing the streets*, V. 49, 7; *difficulty*, *difficulties*, I. 39, 6, 40, 10, III. 18, 4, VII. 11, 8.

**angustus**, *a*, *um*, [**angō**, *squeeze*], (*narrow*); *small*, *contracted*, I. 2, 5, IV. 30, 1, VII. 70, 3; *in angustō*, *in a tight place*, *in a critical condition*; *difficult*; **angustiōre fāstigiō**, *with slightly converging sides*, VII. 73, 5.

**anima**, *ae*, *f.*, *breath* (of life); *soul*.

**anim-ad-vertō**, **vertere**, **verti**, **versum** [**animus**], *turn the mind to*; *notice*, *observe*; *identify*, VII. 50, 2; *in eum animadvertere*, *attend to him*, *punish him*.

**animal**, *ālis*, *n.* [**anima**], (*living creature*), *animal*.

**animus**, *l*, *m.*, *soul*, *mind*, *spirit*, *feelings*; *courage*; *character*; *sympathy*, I. 20, 4; *consciousness*, VI. 38, 4; *amusement*, *entertainment*, V. 12, 6, VII. 77, 10.

**annōtinus**, *a*, *um* [**annus**], *of last year*, *last year's*, *built the year before*.

**annus**, *l*, *m.*, *year*.

**annuus**, *a*, *um* [**annus**], *of a year*, *yearly*, *annual*; translated by adv., *annually*, I. 16, 1.

**anser**, *eris*, *m.*, *goose*.

**ante**, (1) adv., *before*, of space or time, *formerly*, *previously*; of quotations, *above*. (2) prep. w. acc., *be-*

*fore*, of time or place; **ante diem**, *a. d.*, in dates, *on such a day before*, the adverbial and prepositional uses being confounded.

**anteā**, adv. [**ante**, *eā*, old acc. of *is*], *hitherto*; *before*, *some time ago*, *formerly*.

**ante-cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssum**, *go before*, *go ahead of*, *precede*; *surpass*, *exceed*, *excel*; *anticipate*, *get the start of*, VII. 35, 6; 54, 1.

**ante-cursor**, *ōris*, *m.* [**curro**, *run*], (*one who runs before*, *fore-runner*); *courier*, V. 47, 1.

**ante-ferō**, **ferre**, **tuli**, **lātum**, (*bear before*), *prefer*.

**antenna**, *ae*, *f.*, *sail-yard*.

**ante-pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *place before*, *allow to take precedence over*.

**ante-vertō**, **vertere**, **verti**, **versum**, (*turn in front*), *take precedence (over)*.

**antiquitus**, adv. [**antiquus**], *in former times*, *long ago*, *anciently*.

**antiquus**, *a*, *um* [**ante**], *ancient*, *old*; *former*, I. 18, 8.

**Antistius**, *l*, *m.*, *Caius Antistius Reginus*, a *legatus* of Caesar, VI. 1, 1.

**Antōnius**, *l*, *m.*, in *Bel. Gal.*, *Marcus Antonius*, *Mark Antony*, a *legatus* under Caesar in seventh and eighth years of the war. Afterward famous as a member of the second triumvirate, rival of Augustus and paramour of Cleopatra, VII. 81, 6.

**Ap.**, abbreviation for **Appius**.

**aperiō**, **aperire**, **aperui**, **apertum**, *open*, VII. 22, 5. Perf. part. as adj., (*opened*), *open*, *exposed*, *unprotected*.

**apertō**, adv. [**apertus**], *openly*.

**apertus**, *a*, *um*, part. of **aperiō**.

**Apollō**, *inis*, *m.*, the Greek and

- Roman god, identified by Caesar with one of the Gallic divinities, VI. 17, 2.
- ap-**, form of **ad** in comp. before **p**.
- ap-parō**, 1st conj., *prepare, get ready, construct*.
- ap-pellō**, *pellere*, **pulī**, **pulsum**, (drive to); of ships, *bring up*, III. 12, 3; pass., *land*, V. 13, 1, VII. 60, 4.
- ap-pellō**, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], *address, call upon*, II. 25, 2, V. 33, 2, 36, 2, 52, 4, etc.; *call*.
- ap-petō**, *petere*, **petivī** or **petīl**, **petitum**, *seek after, seek; approach*, VII. 4, 1, 82, 2.
- Appius**, **i**, m., a Roman *praenomen*.
- ap-plicō**, *plicāre*, **plicāvī** or **plicouī**, **plicātum** or **plicitum** [**plicō**, *fold*], *apply; w. reflex., lean against*, VI. 27, 3.
- ap-portō**, 1st conj., *carry to, convey*.
- ap-probō**, 1st conj., *approve*.
- ap-propinquō**, 1st conj., *draw near to, approach; be close at hand*, VII. 77, 11.
- appulsus**, **a**, **um**, part. of **appellō**, *ere*.
- Apr.**, abbreviation for **Aprilis**.
- Aprilis**, **e** [**aperiō**, *open*], of *April*, *April*. Masc. as subst. (sc. **mēnsis**), the month *April*.
- aptus**, **a**, **um** [**apīsoor**, *reach*], *fitted, adapted*.
- apud**, prep. w. acc., of places, *near, at*; of persons, *at the house or camp of, with, among, in the judgment of*.
- aqua**, **ae**, f., *water*; **vis aquae**, *current*; **mēnsūra ex aquā** (measure by water) *water-clock, clepsydra*, an instrument for measuring time, somewhat like an hour glass.
- aquātīō**, **ōnia**, f. [**aquor**, *bring water, from aqua*], *bringing or getting water*.
- aquila**, **ae**, f., *eagle*, the emblem upon standards of the Roman legions.
- Aquilēia**, **ae**, f., a Roman city at the head of the Adriatic, I. 10, 3.
- aquilifer**, **ferī**, m. [**aquila**, **ferō**], (one who bears the eagle), *standard-bearer of a legion*.
- Aquitānia**, **ae**, f. [**Aquitānus**], one of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul, see I. 1, 7.
- Aquitānus**, **a**, **um**, of *Aquitania*, *Aquitanian*. Masc. as subst., *an Aquitanian, one of the Aquitani*, plu. *the Aquitani*.
- ar-**, form of **ad** in comp. before **r**.
- Arar**, **Araris**, m., acc. **im**, the river *Arar*, now the *Saône*, tributary of the Rhone, I. 12, 1.
- arbiter**, **trī**, m., (witness); *judge, referee, arbitrator*.
- arbitrium**, **i**, n. [**arbiter**], *discretion, judgment*.
- arbitror**, 1st conj. [**arbiter**], (judge); *think, consider*.
- arbor** (poetic **arbōs**), **oris**, f., *tree*.
- arcessō**, *arcessere*, **arcessivī**, **arcessitum** [causative of **aocēdō**, *approach* (?)] (cause to come), *summon, invite*; **meroēde arcessere**, (invite by pay), *hire*, I. 31, 4.
- ardeō**, *ardere*, **ārsī**, **ārsūm**, *burn*, lit. or fig.
- Arduenna**, **ae**, f., the *Ardennes*, the great forest of Gaul, extending from the Rhine through the country of the Treveri to the frontiers of the Remi, V. 3, 4.

**arduus**, a, um, *steep*; fig., *difficult*, VII. 47, 3.

**Arecomici**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of the Volcae in the Roman province, south of the Helvii and the Cevennes mountains, about Nîmes, VII. 7, 4, 64, 6.

**Aremoricus**, a, um [Celtic, *by the sea*], *Aremoric*, *Aremorican*, name applied by the Gauls to some tribes on or near the northwestern coast between the Loire and Seine, V. 53, 6, VII. 75, 4.

**argentum**, i, n., *silver*; in the sense also of *silverware*, VII. 47, 5.

**argilla**, ae, f. [ἀργιλλος], *clay*.

**āridus**, a, um [āreō, *be dry*], *dry*.  
Neut. as subst., *dry land*, *beach*.

**ariēs, etis**, m., (ram); fig., in Bel. Gal., *battering ram*; *buttress*, IV. 17, 9.

**Arlovistus**, i, m., a German king, a Suebian, who had subjected a great part of Gaul when Caesar began his operations, I. 31, II, etc.

**Aristus**, i, m., a military tribune, VII. 42, 5, 43, 1.

**arma**, ōrum, n. plu., *implements*, III. 14, 2; especially, *implements of war*, *arms*; *ab armis discēdere* (depart from arms), *lay down arms*; *in armis*, often *under arms*; *in armis esse*, *take the field*, IV. 1, 5.  
**armāmenta**, ōrum, n. plu. [armō], (means of equipping); *equipment*, *tackle*.

**armātūra**, ae [armō], *armor*; in Bel. Gal. only in phrase *levis armātūrae*, (of light armor), *light-armed*.

**armō**, 1st conj. [arma], *equip*, *arm*; **armātī**, ōrum, masc. plu. of perf. part. as subst., *armed men*.

**Arpinēius**, i, m., a Roman knight, V. 27, 1, 28, 1.

**ar-ripiō**, *ripere*, *ripui*, *reptum* [rapiō], *snatch for*, *seize*.

**arroganter**, adv. [arrogāns, part. of ar-rogō, *assume*], *haughtily*, *arrogantly*.

**arrogantia**, ae, f. [arrogāns, part. of ar-rogō, *assume*], *haughtiness*, *arrogance*.

**ars, artis**, f., *skill*; *art*; plu. *the arts*.

**artē**, adv. [artus], *closely*, *tightly*.

**articulus**, i, m. [diminutive of artus, ūs, *joint*] (a little joint), *joint*.

**artificium**, i, n. [artifex, *skilled workman*, from ars, *faciō*], *skilful contrivance*; *accomplishment*, VI. 17, 2.

**artus**, a, um [part. of arceō, *confine*], (close), *dense*, *thick*.

**Avernus**, a, um, *of the Avernī, Avernian*. Masc. as subst., *one of the Avernī, an Avernian*, plu. *the Avernī, the Avernians*, a tribe of south-central Gaul about the head waters of the Allier (Elaver) river, I. 45, 2.

**arx, arcis**, f. [arceō, *confine*], *stronghold*; *fortress*, *citadel*.

**as-**, form of *ad* in comp. before s.

**ā(ad)-scendō**, *scendere*, *scendi*, *scēnsūm* [scandō], (climb to), *ascend*, *climb*, *scale*.

**ā(ad)-scēnsus**, ūs, m. [āscendō], *ascent*, *approach*.

**ā(ad)-sciscō**, *sciscere*, *scivi*, *scitum* [solō, *know*], (ordain to); *accept*, *admit*.

**ā(ad)-spectus**, ūs, m. [-spiciō, *look*], (a looking at); *appearance*, *sight*.

**asper, aspera, asperum**, compar.

**asperior**, super. **asperrimus**, *rough, fierce, desperate*.  
**as-siduus** [**sedeō**, *sit*], *continuous, incessant; long-continued*, VI. 22, 3.  
**as-sistō**, **sistere**, **stiti**, —, *take position near; assistere in cōn-spectū*, *appear* (with), VI. 18, 3.  
**as-suē-faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum** [**suē**, stem of **suēscō**, *become accustomed, faciō*, *make*], (make to become accustomed to); *train*.  
**as-suēscō**, **suēscere**, **suēvi**, **suētum**, *become accustomed to; assuēscere ad hominēs*, *be tamed*.  
**at-**, form of **ad** in comp. before **t**.  
**at**, adversative conj., *but*; after a conditional clause, *at least*.  
**atque**, **āc** [**ad**, **que**], conj., usually emphasizing what follows, *and, and even, and especially*; after terms implying comparison, as **pār**, **Idem**, *equal to, the same as*; **similis ratiō atque ipse fēcerit**, *a method like that which he had used*; **simul atque**, *as soon as*; **aliter āc**, *otherwise than*; **alius—atque, āc**, *other than, different from what*.  
**Atrebās**, **ātis**, m., *one of the Atrebates, an Atrebatian*, plu. *the Atrebates*, a tribe toward the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul, II. 4, 9.  
**Ātrius**, I, m., *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, mentioned in second expedition to Britain, V. 9, 1.  
**at-texō**, **texere**, **texui**, **textum** (*weave on*); *construct upon, attach*.  
**at-tingō**, **tingere**, **tigī**, **tactum** [**tan-gō**], *touch upon, touch; border upon*.  
**at-tribuō**, **tribuere**, **tribui**, **tribū-tum**, *assign*.  
**at-tuli**, perf. of **afferō**.

**auctor**, **ōris**, m. [**augeō**], (*promoter*); *leader, originator*; **aliquō auctōre**, *at the suggestion of any one*, V. 25, 3, 28, 6; *as authority*, V. 29, 3.  
**auctōritās**, **tātis**, f. [**auctor**], *influence, standing, prestige*.  
**auctus**, a, um, part. of **augeō**.  
**audācia**, ae, f. [**audāx**, *daring*, from **audeō**], *daring; effrontery, insolence*.  
**audācter**, adv. [**audāx**, *daring*, from **audeō**], *boldly, daringly*.  
**audeō**, **ēre**, **ausus sum**, *dare, venture; dare to do, attempt*, VI. 13, 1.  
**audiō**, **audire**, **audiui**, **auditum**, *hear, hear of, listen to; give audience to*, IV. 13, 1; **dictō audiēns** (*hearing to the word of command*), *obedient*; **dictō audiēns esse** (*be obedient*), *obey*.  
**auditiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**audiō**], (*a hearing*); *rumor, report*.  
**augeō**, **ēre**, **auxi**, **auctum**, *increase, raise, strengthen*.  
**Aulercus**, I, m., *one of the Aulerci, an Aulercian*, VII. 57, 2; plu. *the Aulerci*, a people of central Gaul, divided into four tribes: **Aulerci Brannovices**, VII. 75, 2; **Aulerci Cenomani**, VII. 75, 3; **Aulerci Ebu-rovices**, II. 34, III. 17, 3, 29, 3, VII. 4, 6; **Diablintes**, III. 9, 10.  
**Aulus**, I, m., a Roman *praenomen*.  
**aureus**, a, um [**aurum**, *gold*], (*golden*), *gold*.  
**auriga**, ae, m., *charioteer, driver*.  
**auris**, is, f. [*connected w. audiō (?)*] *ear*.  
**Aurunculēius**, I, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a *legatus* of Caesar, killed in the disaster at Aduatuca, II. 11, 3, IV. 38, 3, V. 24, 5 ff.

**Ausci**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the eastern part of Aquitania, III. 27, 1.

**ausus**, a, um, part of *audeō*.

**aut**, conj., *or* ; **aut—aut**, *either—or*.

**autem**, conj., adversative, *however* ; copulative, *moreover* ; *now*.

**autumnus**, ī, m. [*augeō*], (the season of increase), *autumn*, *fall*.

**auxiliāris**, e [*auxilium*], *auxiliary*, *belonging to the auxiliaries* ; masc. as subst. (sc. *militēs*), *auxiliary troops*, *auxiliaries*.

**auxilior**, 1st conj. [*auxilium*], *render aid*, *support*.

**auxilium**, ī, n. [*augeō*], *aid*, *assistance*, *support*, *relief* ; dat. of obj. for which, *as a reënforcement* ; **alicui aux. ferre**, *to aid anyone* ; **extrēmum aux.**, *last resource*, III. 5, 2. Plu. *auxiliary forces*, *auxiliaries*, as opposed to the regular legionary forces.

**Avaricēnsis**, e [*Avaricum*], *of or relating to Avaricum* ; w. **praemia**, *bestowed at Avaricum*.

**Avaricum**, ī, n., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges, on the Avera (Yèvre), a tributary of the Loire ; besieged by Caesar in the seventh year of the war, and the inhabitants slain, VII. 13, 3.

**avāritia**, ae, f. [*avārus*], *grasping*, *avarice*, *greed*.

**ā-vehō**, *vehere*, **vexi**, *vectum*, *carry away*, *off*.

**ā-vertō**, *vertere*, **verti**, *versum*, *turn away*, *aside* ; *alienate*, I. 20, 4.

**āversum hostem**, *one of the enemy in retreat*, I. 26, 2 ; **āversū**, *being turned away* (from some of the enemy), i.e. since there were some of the enemy whom they were not facing, II. 26, 2.

**avis**, is, f., *bird*.

**avus**, ī, m., *grandfather*.

**Axona**, ae, m., a river in the country of the Belgae, now the *Aisne*.

## B

**Bācōnis**, is, f., a forest of Germany between the Suebi and the Cherusci, VI. 10, 5.

**Baculus**, ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, an especially brave centurion, II. 25, 1, III. 5, 2, VI. 38, 1.

**Baleāris**, e, *Balearic*, pertaining to the Balearic islands, off the eastern coast of Spain, now *Majorca* and *Minorca*, II. 7, 1.

**balteus**, ī, m., *belt*, from which the sword was suspended.

**Balventius**, ī, m., *Titus Balventius*, a first centurion, V. 35, 6.

**barbarus**, a, um [*βάρβαρος*], *rude*, *uncivilized*, *uncultured*, i.e. not Greek or Roman ; masc. as subst., contemptuously applied to various tribes, *native*, *barbarian*.

**Basilus**, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers, afterward a conspirator against him, VI. 29, 4, 30, 1, VII. 90, 5.

**Batāvi**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe dwelling between the lower Rhine and the Meuse, IV. 10, 1.

**Belgae**, ārum, m. plu., collective name for the inhabitants of the northern of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul, between the Marne and Seine and the Rhine.

**Belgium**, ī, n., the country of the Belgae, Belgic Gaul, V. 12, 2, 25, 4.

**bellicōsus**, a, um [*bellum*], *warlike*.

**bellicus**, a, um [bellum], *relating to war*; **bellica laus**, *glory in war*.

**bellō**, 1st conj. [bellum], (make war), *fight*.

**Bellovacī**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul, II. 4, 5.

**bellum**, l, n. loc., **belli** [old form **duellum**, from duo], *war*.

**bene**, adv., compar. **melius**, super. **optimē** [bonus, melior, optimus], (well, better, best), *successfully*.

**beneficium**, l, n. [bene, faciō], *kindness, service*; **beneficiō obstringere**, (bind by service), *put under obligations*, I. 9, 3; **tantō beneficiō afficere**, *treat (with so great kindness), so kindly*, I. 35, 2; **beneficiō sortium**, (by the kindness of the lots), *thanks to fortune*.

**benevolentia**, ae, f. [bene; volēns, part. of volō], (well-wishing); *loyalty*, V. 25, 2; *favor*, VII. 43, 4.

**Bibracte**, is, n., loc. abl. e or l, capital of the Aedui, situated upon Mont Beuvray, in the central part of their territory, I. 23, 1.

**Bibrax**, bractis, f., a town of the Remi, near a hill now called *Vieux Laon*, II. 6, 1.

**Bibroci**, ōrum, m. plu., a British tribe, V. 21, 1.

**biduus**, a, um [bis, diēs], (of the space of two days), *two days'*. Neut. as subst., sc. **tempus**, (two days' time), *two days*.

**biennium**, l, n. [bis, annus], (the space of two years), *two years*.

**Bigerriōnēs**, ōnum, m. plu., a tribe in southern Aquitania, III. 27, 1.

**bini**, ae, a, distrib. adj., plu. [bis],

(two by two); *two each, two at a time, in pairs*.

**bipedālis**, e [bis, pēs], *of two feet, two foot; two feet thick*, IV. 17, 6.

**bipertitō**, adv. [adj. **bipartitus**, from bis, pars], *in two parts, in two divisions*.

**bis**, adv. [old form **duis**, from duo], *twice*.

**Biturigēs**, um, m. plu., a tribe of central Gaul, I. 18, 6.

**Boduognātus**, l, m. a leader of the Nervii, II. 23, 4.

**Bōii**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe associated in the migration of the Helvetii, afterward received by the Aedui and located in the western part of their territory, probably between the Loire and Elaver rivers, I. 5, 4.

**bonitās**, tātis, f. [bonus], *goodness; fertility*, I. 28, 4. (**agrōrum**, *of the soil*.)

**bonus**, a, um, compar. **melior**, super. **optimus**, *good, better, best*; **bonō animō**, descriptive abl., (of good mind), *well disposed*. Neut. as subst., *good*; *advantage*, I. 40, 6; plu., *goods, property*.

**bōs**, **bovis**, c., gen. plu. **boum**, dat. **būbus**, **bōbus**, [boūs], *ox*, as generic name, VI. 26, 1; esp., *bull, ox, cow*, the domestic animals; plu. *cattle*, VI. 28, 5.

**brācohium**, l, n. [βραχίον], *forearm, arm*.

**Brannovioēs**, um, m. plu. a division of the Aulerci, probably south of the Aedui, toward the sources of the Loire, VII. 75, 2.

**Brātuspantium**, l, n., a stronghold of the Bellovacī, possibly near Breteuil, II. 13, 2.

**brevis**, e, *short*, of space or time ;  
abl. **brevī**, sc. **tempore**, *in a short  
space, sharply*, IV. 33, 3.

**brevitās**, **tātis**, f. [**brevis**], *shortness,  
brevity ; small stature*, II. 30, 4.

**breviter**, adv. [**brevis**], *briefly, in  
few words*.

**Britannī**, **ōrum**, m. plu., *Britons*.

**Britannia**, ae, f. [**Britannī**], *Britain*.

**Britannicus**, a, um [**Britannī**], *Brit-  
ish ; w. bellum, with the Britons*,  
V. 4, 1.

**brūma**, ae, f. [for **brevima**, old  
super. of **brevis**, sc. **diēs**], (the  
shortest day), *the winter solstice*.  
(sub, toward, at the time of.)

**Brūtus**, I, m., *Decimus Junius Bru-  
tus*, a *legatus* of Caesar in both the  
Gallic and the Civil War, afterward  
a conspirator against him, III. 11, 5.

## C

**C**, as numeral = 100 ; but not origi-  
nally because it was the first letter  
of **centum**.

**C.**, abbreviation for **Gāius**, a Roman  
*praenomen*.

**Cabillōnum**, I, n., a city of the Aedui  
on the Saône, now Chalon, VII.  
42, 5, 90, 7.

**Cabūrus**, I, m., *Gaius Valerius  
Caburus*, a distinguished Gaul, a  
staunch friend of the Romans, I.  
47, 4, VII. 65, 2.

**cacūmen**, **minis**, n., *top, summit ;  
small end*, VII. 73, 2.

**cadāver**, **veris**, n. [**cadō**], *corpse,  
(dead) body*.

**cadō**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, *fall*  
(in Bel. Gal. in sense of *be killed*).

**Cadūrcī**, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe of

southern Gaul, south of the Averni,  
of whom they were dependents, VII.  
5, 1, etc.

**caedēs**, **is**, f. [**caedō**], *slaughter*.

**caedō**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **caesum**  
[causative of **cadō**], (cause to fall,  
in any way), *strike down, cut down,  
kill ; of trees, fell*, III. 29, 1.

**caelestis**, e [**caelum**, *sky, heavens*],  
*heavenly, of the heavens*.

**Caemani**, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe of  
Belgae (often called *Paemani*),  
probably between the Meuse and  
Ourthe rivers, II. 4, 10.

**caerimōnia**, ae, f., *religious cere-  
mony*. (**gravis**, *solemn*.)

**Caerōsi**, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe of  
Belgae, northwest of the Moselle in  
its lower course, II. 4, 10.

**caeruleus**, a, um [for **caeluleus**,  
from **caelum**, *sky, heavens*], *deep  
blue, dark blue*.

**Caesar**, **aris**, m., (1) *Gaius Julius  
Caesar*, the great statesman and  
general, author of the *Commen-  
taries*. (2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, a  
distant relative of Gaius, consul  
B.C. 64, VII. 65, 1.

**caespes**, **itis**, m. [**caedō**], *sod, turf*.

**calamitās**, **tātis**, f., *disaster, defeat*.

**Caletī**, **ōrum**, and **Caletēs**, um, m.  
plu., one of the Aremorian tribes,  
on the northwest coast, north of the  
Seine, II. 4, 9, VII. 75, 4.

**callidus**, a, um [**callum**, *thick skin,  
callous*], *experienced, shrewd*.

**calō**, **ōnis**, m., *camp follower ; any  
non-combatant moving with an  
army, including personal servants,  
drivers, sutlers, etc*.

**campester**, **tris**, **tre** [**campus**], *re-  
lating to a level field ; w. mūni-*

**tiōnēs**, *in the plain*; **loca camp.**, *level places, plains.*

**campus**, **i**, **m.**, *level field, plain.*

**Camulogenus**, **i**, **m.**, a chief of the Aulerici, commander-in-chief against Labienus in the seventh year of the war, VII. 57, 3, etc.

**Caninius**, **i**, **m.**, a *legatus* of Caesar, in latter part of the Gallic and in the Civil War, VII. 83, 3, 90, 6.

**canō**, **canere**, **cecini**, —, (make a melodious sound); *sing, play on a musical instrument*; **receptui canere**, *give the signal for retreat, sound the retreat*, VII. 47, 1.

**Cantabri**, **ōrum**, **m. plu.**, a warlike tribe in the north of Spain, III. 26, 6.

**Cantium**, **i**, **n.**, *Kent*, the southeastern part of Britain, V. 13, 1, etc.

**capillus**, **i**, **m.** [**caput**], *hair of the head*. (**prōmissus**, *long*; **passus**, *dishevelled*.)

**capiō**, **capere**, **cēpi**, **captum**, *take*; *occupy, seize*; of ships, *make, reach*; **cōnsilium capere**, *take counsel or decide upon a plan*; **w. nōmen**, *derive*; *take in, deceive*, I. 40, 9, VII. 31, 2; *charm*, VI. 22, 3; *convict*, VII. 43, 3. **Capiō** and its object may often be translated by a single word, suggested by the latter; e.g. **initium capere** (*take a beginning*), *begin*; so with **quiescem**, **coniecturam**, **fugam**.

**capra**, **ae**, **f.** [**caper**, *he-goat*], (*she-goat*); *goat*.

**captivus**, **a**, **um** [**capiō**], *captive*; *masc. also as subst., prisoner*.

**captus**, **ūs**, **m.** [**capiō**], (*a seizing, grasp, mental capacity*), *standard*.

**caput**, **capitis**, **n.**, *head*; *life*;

**capitis poena**, *capital punishment*; of a river, *mouth*; *person, individual* (cf. Eng. "head" of cattle), I. 29, 2, II. 33, 7, IV. 15, 3.

**Carcasō**, **ōnis**, **f.**, a town of the Volcae Tectosages, III. 20, 2.

**careō**, **carēre**, **carui**, **caritum**, *be without, go without*.

**carina**, **ae**, **f.**, *keel*.

**Carnutēs**, **um**, **m. plu.**, a tribe of central Gaul between the Seine and the Loire, II. 35, 3, etc.

**carō**, **carnis**, **f.**, *flesh, meat*.

**carpō**, **carpere**, **carpai**, **carptum** (*pluck*; *pick a flaw*), *criticise*.

**carrus**, **i**, **m.**, *cart*; mentioned only as used by the Gauls.

**Carvilius**, **i**, **m.**, one of the chieftains of Kent, V. 22, 1.

**casa**, **ae**, **f.**, *hut*.

**cāseus**, **i**, **m.**, *cheese*.

**Cassi**, **ōrum**, **m. plu.**, a British tribe.

**Cassiānus**, **a**, **um** [**Cassius**], *relating to Cassius*; **w. bellum**, *with Cassius*.

**cassis**, **idis**, **f.**, *metal helmet*.

**Cassius**, **i**, **m.**, *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul 107 B.C.; defeated and killed by the Helvetians near Lake Geneva, I. 7, 4, 12, 5, 12, 7.

**Cassivellaunus**, **i**, **m.**, the most resolute and able of the British chiefs, V. 11, 8, etc.

**castellum**, **i**, **n.** [*diminutive of castrum*], *fort, redoubt*.

**Casticus**, **i**, **m.**, a powerful chief of the Sequani, I. 3, 4.

**castrum**, **i**, **n.**, *fortress*. **Plu.**, *a camp*, always fortified; with distrib. adj., *day's march*; **in castris**, *in camp life, in war*, I. 39, 5. (**pōnō**, *pitch*; **moveō**, *break*.)

**cāsus**, **ūs**, **m.** [**cadō**], (*a falling, hap-*

pening); *chance, fortune, good or bad; accident, disaster; emergency; cāsū, often accidentally; cāsū dēvenire, happen to come, II. 21, 6; cf. V. 48, 8, VI. 37, 1.*

**Catamantāloedis, is, m.,** the most powerful Sequanian of the generation before Caesar's arrival, I. 3, 4.

**catēna, ae, f.,** *chain.*

**Caturigēs, um, m. plu.,** a tribe in the Graian Alps in the valley of the upper Durance, I. 10, 4.

**Catuvolous, I, m.,** a chief of the Eburones, confederate of Ambiorix, V. 24, 4.

**causa, ae, f.,** *cause, reason; case at law, I. 4, 1, 2; condition, situation, IV. 4, 1, VI. 32, 1. Abl. after a gen., for the sake, for the purpose, on account; w. verbal it denotes purpose, e.g. sui mūniendi causā, to defend himself, I. 44, 6.*

**cautē, adv. [cautus, part. of caveō],** *cautiously.*

**cautēs, is, f.,** *sharp ledge, reef.*

**Cavarillus, I, m.,** an Aeduan prominent in the seventh year of the war, VII. 67, 7.

**Cavarinus, I, m.,** a chief of the Senones, assisted by Caesar, V. 54, 2, VI. 5, 2.

**caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum,** *be on one's guard, I. 14, 2: give security (dē, for).*

**Cebenna, ae, f.,** *the Cevennes, a range of mountains in south central Gaul, boundary of the Roman province, VII. 8, 2, etc.*

**cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum,** (go, go from); *retreat, retire; locō cēdere, leave one's post; yield, w. dat., VII. 89, 2. Pres. part., as*

*subst., those retreating, the retreating (soldiers, enemy).*

**celer, celeris, celere,** compar. *celerior, super. celerrimus, swift, quick, sudden.*

**celeritās, tātis, f. [celer],** *swiftness, rapidity, speed. (ad, in the way of, II. 26, 5.)*

**celeriter, adv. [celer],** *speedily, rapidly, promptly, quickly.*

**cēlō, 1st conj.,** *hide, conceal.*

**Celtae, ārum, m. plu.,** *Celts; in Bel. Gal., the native name for the people living in central Gaul, as distinguished from the Belgae and the Aquitani, I. 1, 1.*

**Celtillus, I, m.,** a powerful chief of the Averni, father of Vercingetorix, VII. 4, 1.

**Cēnabēnsis, e [Cēnabum],** *relating to Cenabum. Masc. plu. as subst., inhabitants of Cenabum.*

**Cēnabum, I, n.,** chief city of the Carnutes, upon the site of Orléans, VII. 3, 1 ff.

**Cēnimagnī, ōrum, m. plu.,** a British tribe, V. 21, 1.

**Cēnomanī, ōrum, m. plu.,** a division of the Auleri, in western Gaul, west of the Carnutes, VII. 75, 3.

**cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēnsum,** (estimate); *judge, hold, be of opinion; of the Roman senate, decree; favor, VII. 77, 2.*

**cēnsus, ūs, m. [cēnseō],** *estimate, enumeration, census.*

**centum, indeclin. card. adj.,** *a hundred.*

**centuriō, ōnis, m. [centum],** *centurion, orig. the commander of a hundred men; a subordinate officer in the Roman legion. See Introduction.*

**cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum,** (separate); *distinguish, make out clearly, perceive.*

**certāmen, minis, n.** [**certō, contend**], *contest, fight, battle.*

**certō, adv.** [**certus**], *certainly, surely; at least, at all events.*

**certus, a, um** [form of part. of **cernō**], *certain, sure, undoubted; w. diēs, locus, appointed, fixed; w. subsidia, regular; aliquem certiōrem facere, inform anyone; direct, III. 5, 3.*

**cervus, l, m., deer, stag;** in military language, "antlers," trunks of trees with branches lopped off and pointed, embedded in the ground and turned toward the enemy: *chevaux-de-frise.*

**cēterus, a, um** (sing. rare), *the other, the rest of; cēterae rēs, the other things that he might need, II. 3, 3. Elsewhere, masc. plu. as subst., the others.*

**Centronēs, um, m. plu.,** (1) a tribe in the Graian Alps, about the headwaters of the Isère, I. 10, 4. (2) a tribe of the Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

**Chēruscī, ōrum, m. plu.,** a German tribe, north of the Hercynian forest, VI. 10, 5.

**chōrus, l, m., the northwest** (wind).

**cibārius, a, um** [**cibus**], *relating to food. Neut. plu. as subst., provisions; molita cibāria, (ground food-stuff), flour.*

**cibus, l, m., food.**

**Cicerō, ōnis, m., Quintus Tullius Cicero,** younger brother of the orator, a *legatus* of Caesar, V. 24, 2, etc.

**Clamberius, l, m.,** a leader of the Suebi, I. 37, 3.

**Oimbri, ōrum, m. plu.,** a Germanic people that overran Gaul in the second century B.C., and gave Rome great uneasiness until defeated by Marius in the north of Italy, 103 B.C.; I. 33, 4, 40, 5, VII. 77, 12, 77, 14.

**Cingetorix, Igis, m.,** (1) a chief of the Treveri, rival and brother-in-law of Indutiomarus, V. 3, 2, etc.; (2) A British chief in Kent, V. 22, 1.

**cingō, cingere, cinxi, cinctum,** *surround; in hostile sense, invest; w. mūrum, man, VI. 35, 9; VII. 72, 2.*

**cippus, l, m., stake.** Retain the Latin word in VII. 73, 4, as a technical term.

**circinus, l, m.** [**κίρκινος**], *pair of compasses.*

**circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc.** [**circus, circle**], *about.*

**circuitus, ūs, m.** [**circumēō**], (a going around); *circumference; detour, circuit; in circuitū, by a circuitous route, I. 21, 1.*

**circum, prep. w. acc.** [acc. of **circus, circle**], *around, about; in the neighborhood of.*

**circum-cidō, cidere, cidi, cisum** [**caedō**], (cut around), *cut out. Perf. part. w. collis, steep, inaccessible.*

**circum-clūdō, clūdere, clūsi, clūsum** [**claudō**], *encircle.*

**circum-dō, dare, dedi, datum,** *put around, I. 38, 6, VII. 72, 4; surround.*

**circum-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum,** *lead around, draw around.*

**circum-eō, ire, (ivi) ii, itum,** *pass*

*around; make the rounds of, inspect*, V. 2, 2; *outflank*, VII. 67, 6.

**circum-fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum**, *pour around*, pass., VI. 34, 8; trans. *surround*, VII. 74, 1; impers. pass., VII. 28, 2; pass. as reflexive (Greek middle), *pour themselves around, pour around*, VI. 37, 4.

**circum-iciō** [pronounced as if spelled **circumjiciō**], **icere, iēcī, lectum [iaciō]**, *throw around*, as military term, II. 6, 2.

**circum-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum**, *send around*.

**circum-mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī** or **mūnī, mūnitum**, (fortify around), *completely invest*.

**circum-plector, plectī, plexus sum [plectō]**, (weave around) *embrace, include*.

**circum-sisto, sistere, stetī, —**, *take a stand around; surround, crowd about, rally around*.

**circum-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectrum**, *look around at; animō circumspicere, consider carefully*, VI. 5, 3; *look around for*.

**circum-vāllō, 1st conj. [vāllum]**, *build a wall around, invest, blockade*.

**circum-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum**, *carry around; pass. as dep., (be carried around), ride around*, VII. 45, 2.

**circum-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum**, *come around, surround; outflank; like Eng. "get around," outwit*, I. 46, 3.

**cis**, prep. w. acc., *on this side of, this side*.

**Cis-alpinus, a, um [Alpēs]**, *Cisalpine, on this side the Alps, i.e. toward Rome, south of the Alps*.

**Cis-rhēnānus, a, um [Rhēnus]**, (*living*) *on this side the Rhine, i.e. toward Rome, south of the Rhine*.

**Cita, ae, m.**, *Gaius Fufus Cita*, a Roman knight, VII. 3, 1.

**citātus, a, um**, part. of **citō**.

**citerior, us**, compar. adj., super. **citimus** [pos. **citer** (rare), from **cis**, **citrā**], *nearer, hither; w. prōvincia, Gallia, Cisalpine*.

**cito**, adv., compar. **citius**, super. **citissimē** [old form **citō**, abl. of **citus**, part. of **cieō**, *cause to move*], *quickly*.

**citō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **cieō**, *cause to move*], *urge on, hurry*. Perf. part., *headlong, swiftly*.

**citrā**, prep. w. acc. [case form of **citer**, see **citerior**], *on this side of, this side*.

**citrō**, adv. [dat. of **citer**, see **citerior**], *to this side, hither; ūltrō citrōque, back and forth*, I. 42, 4.

**civis, is, c.**, citizen.

**civitās, tātis, f. [civis]**, denoting condition, *citizenship*, I. 47, 4; collective, *all the citizens of a state, state*.

**clam**, adv. [**cēlō**, *conceal*], *secretly*.

**clāmītō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **clāmō**, *cry out*], *shout, keep shouting*.

**clāmor, ōris, m. [clāmō, cry out]**, *outcry, shout, shouting*.

**clandestinus, a, um [clam]**, *secret, clandestine*.

**clārus, a, um**, (clear), *loud, distinct*.

**clāssis, is, f.**, *fleet*.

**Claudius, i, m.**, *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, consul 54 B.C., V. 1, 1.

**claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum**, *close, shut; āgmen claudere, close*

*the line of march, bring up the rear.*

**clāvus**, *l*, *m.*, *nail, spike.*

**clēmentia**, *ae*, *f.* [**clēmēns**, *mild*], *mildness, mercy, clemency.*

**cliēns**, *entia*, *c.* [pres. part. of **clueō**, *hear*, with changed spelling], *dependent, retainer, client* (as used of a class in Rome); of tribes, *vassals.*

**clientēla**, *ae*, *f.* [**cliēns**], denoting condition, *dependency*; collective, *dependents, clients*, VII. 32, 5.

**olivus**, *l*, *m.*, *slope.*

**Clōdīus**, *l*, *m.*, *Publius Clodius Pulcher*, a turbulent demagogue at Rome, enemy of Cicero, killed in a political brawl in January, 52 B.C., VII. 1, 1.

**Cl.**, abbreviation for **Gnaeus**, a Roman *praenōmen*.

**co-**, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before vowels and *h*.

**cō-**, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before *gn*.

**co-acervō**, 1st conj. [**acervus**, *pile*], *pile together, heap up.*

**coāctus**, *a*, *um*, part. of **cōgō**.

**coāctus**, *ūs*, *m.* [**cōgō**], *compulsion.*

**co-āgmentō**, 1st conj. [**co-āgmen-tum**, *joint*, from **cōgō**], *fasten together.*

**co-artō**, 1st conj. [**artus**, *narrow*], *crowd together.*

**Cocosātēs**, *um*, *m. plu.*, an Aquitanian tribe, upon the Atlantic coast, probably dependents of the Tarbelli, III. 27, 1.

**co-emō**, **emere**, **ēmī**, **ēemptum**, *buy up, purchase.*

**co-eō**, **ire**, (**ivī**) **il**, **itum**, *come together, meet.*

**coepl**, **coepisse**, (**coeptūrus**), *defec-*

*tive verb, lacking present system* (which is supplied by **incipiō**), *have begun or began*; *w. complementary infin. in pass. voice, coeptus sum, esse*, is used as deponent, I. 47, 1, II. 6, 2, etc.

**co-erceō**, **ercoere**, **ercoī**, **ercitum** [**arceō**, *enclose*], (confine) *restrain.*

**cōgitō**, 1st conj. [for **co-agitō**], (revolve, discuss), *consider.*

**cō-gnātiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* [(**g**)**nāscor**], abstract, *relationship by birth* (**māgna**, *wide*) VII. 32, 4; collective, *clan*, VI. 22, 2.

**cō-gnōscō**, **gnōscere**, **gnōvī**, **gnitum**, (become acquainted with), *learn, find out, ascertain; examine, reconnoitre; cōgnōvī, as pres. perf., *I have become acquainted with; hence, I know*, pluperf. *knew*. Part., **cōgnitus**, *a*, *um*, as adj., *known, noted*, I. 28, 5.*

**cōgō**, **cōgere**, **co-ēgī**, **co-āctum** [for **co-agō**], (drive together), *bring together, gather*; *w. infin. or direct obj., force, compel; perf. part. co-āctus, under compulsion*, I. 17, 6.

**cohors**, **hortis**, *f.*, *cohort*, a tenth of a legion.

**cohortātiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* [**cohortor**], (exhortation), *address before a battle, appeal (to).*

**co-hortor**, 1st conj., *exhort, encourage, address before a battle.*

**col-**, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before *l*.

**collātus**, *a*, *um*, part. of **cōnferō**.

**col-laudo**, 1st conj. [**laus**, *praise*], *praise highly.*

**col-ligō**, 1st conj., *fasten together*, I. 25, 3.

**col-ligō**, **ligere**, **lēgī**, **lēctum** [**legō**,

*gather*], *gather, collect; acquire; sē colligere, recover one's self, collect one's wits.*

**collis, is, m., hill**

**col-locō, 1st conj. [locus], place; settle; give in marriage, I. 18, 6, 7.**

**colloquium, i, n. [colloquor], conversation, conference, interview.**

**col-loquor, loqui, locutus sum, talk with, hold a conference; inter sē colloqui, confer together, IV. 30, 1.**

**colō, colere, colui, cultum, cultivate; worship.**

**colōnia, ae, f. [colōnus, colonist, from colō], colony.**

**color, ōris, m., color.**

**com-, regular form of cum in comp.**

**com-būrō, būrere, būssi, būstum [related to ūrō, burn], burn up.**

**comes, itis, c. [com, eō], companion.**

**comitium, i, n. [com, eō], place of assembly; plu., the Roman people in assembly for election; hence, any election, VII. 67, 7.**

**comitor, 1st conj. [comes], accompany.**

**commeātus, ūs, m. [commeō], a going back and forth, voyage, V. 23, 2, 4; provisions, supplies.**

**com-memorō, 1st conj. [memor, mindful], mention, relate.**

**com-mendō, 1st conj. [mandō], commit, intrust.**

**(commentārius, i, m. [com-mentor, think over], orig., note-book, memorandum; sketch. Not in text of Bel. Gal., but applied to its single books by the grammarians.)**

**com-meō, 1st conj., go back and forth, resort; commeāre ad, visit.**

**com-minus, adv. [manus], hand to hand, at close quarters.**

**commissūra, ae, f. [committō], joint, junction, angle, corner.**

**com-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, (send together), join, mālōs, VII. 22, 5; join, engage in, proelium; intrust; do, I. 14, 2, V. 35, 5; commit, VII. 4, 10; permit, I. 13, 7, 46, 3, VII. 47, 7.**

**Commius, i, m., a chief of the Atrebates, first mentioned IV. 21, 6; loyal to Caesar until the seventh year of the war, VII. 75, 5, etc.**

**commodē, adv. [commodus], conveniently, easily, effectively.**

**com-modus, a, um [modus], (having measure with what is desired), convenient, advantageous. Neut. as subst., advantage, interest; comfort.**

**com-mōne-faciō, facere, feci, factum [moneō, warn], (give a warning about), impress upon.**

**com-moror, 1st conj., delay.**

**com-moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, (move strongly), influence, I. 20, 3; alarm, startle.**

**commūnicō, 1st conj. [commūnis], (make common), share; propose, (cum, to); unite, VI. 19, 1.**

**com-mūniō, mūnīre, mūnivi or mūnii, mūnitum, (fortify completely), fortify strongly, construct.**

**com-mūnis, e [related to mūnus, task], (having tasks together), common, general; w. lēgātio, joint.**

**commūtātiō, ōnis, f. [commūtō], change.**

**com-mūtō, 1st conj., change; w. abl., exchange for, VI. 22, 3,**

**comparō, 1st conj. [com-par, like], (liken), compare, I. 31, 11, VI. 24, 6. For all other passages see comparō, p. 22.**

**com-parō**, 1st conj., *provide, procure, prepare*. For I. 31, 11, VI. 24, 6, see **comparō**, p. 21.

**com-pellō**, *pellere, pulli, pulsum*, (drive together), *gather*, V. 19, i, VII. 71, 7; *drive in confusion*.

**com-pendium**, l, n. [**pendō**, *pay*], *gain, profit*.

**com-periō**, *perire, peri, pertum* [cf. **ex-perior**], *find out, ascertain, learn*.

**com-plector**, *plecti, plexus sum* [**plectō**, *plait*], *embrace*.

**com-pleō**, *plēre, plēvi, plētum*, *fill completely; cover*.

**com-plūrēs**, a or ia, gen. *plūrium* [**plūs**], *several, quite a number of*. Often as subst.

**com-portō**, 1st conj., *bring together, gather, convey*.

**com-prehendō**, *prehendere, prehendi, prehensum* [**prehendō**, *lay hold of*], *grasp with the hand, take hurriedly; w. fūnēs, ignem, catch; catch, arrest, take*.

**com-probō**, 1st conj., *approve of, "smile upon."*

**con-**, form of **cum** (oom) in comp. before most of the consonants.

**cōnātum**, l, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **cōnor**, in pass. sense], (a thing attempted), *attempt*.

**cōnātus**, ūs, m. [**cōnor**], (an attempting), *attempt*.

**con-cēdō**, *cēdere, cēssi, cēssum*, *yield*, IV. 7, 5, VII. 15, 6; *grant, permit*.

**con-cēsus**, ūs, m. [**con-cēdō**], *permission*.

**con-cidō**, *cidere, cidi*, — [**cado**], *fall (in a heap)*.

**con-cidō**, *cidere, cidi, cisum*

[**caedō**], *cut down, kill; cut off*, III. 9, 4.

**con-ciliō**, 1st conj. [**concilium**], *win over; gain*, I. 3, 7, VII. 55, 4.

**con-cilium**, l, n., *assembly, council*.

**con-citō**, 1st conj., *arouse, stir up*.

**con-clāmō**, 1st conj., *cry out, shout*.

**con-clūdō**, *clūdere, clūsi, clūsum* [**claudō**], *shut up, enclose; mare*

**conclūsum**, *landlocked sea*.

**Conconnetodumnus**, l, m., a chief of the Carnutes, VII. 3, 1.

**con-crepō**, *crepāre, crepui, crepitum*, *rattle, clash; armis* (abl. of means), translated as if obj.

**con-currō**, *currere, curri* or *cucurri, cursum, run together, hurry, rally; gather*.

**con-cursō**, *cursāre*, —, — [intensive of **concurrō**], *run to and fro, run about*.

**conkursus**, ūs, m. [**concurrō**], *a running together, rushing about, confusion; charge, onset*, I. 8, 4, VI. 8, 6, VII. 62, 3; w. **nāvium**, *collision*.

**con-demnō**, 1st conj. [**damnō**, *condemn*], *condemn*.

**con-dicō**, *ōnis*, f. [**dicō**], (a saying together), *agreement, terms, condition, state*.

**con-dōnō**, 1st conj. [**dōnum**, *gift*], *forgive, pardon; dat., out of regard for*, I. 20, 5, 6.

**Condrūsī**, *ōrum*, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae upon the eastern bank of the Meuse, II. 4, 10, etc.

**con-dūcō**, *dūcere, dūxi, ductum*, *bring together, gather (of persons); hire*, II. 1, 4, V. 27, 8.

**cōnfectus**, a, um, part. of **cōnficiō**.

**cōn-ferciō**, *fercire, fersi, fertum*

[*farcio*, *stuff*], *crowd together*.  
Perf. part. as adj., *crowded, compact, in close array*.

*cōn-ferō*, *ferre*, *con-tuli*, *col-lātum*, *bring together, collect* (of things), *convey; compare*, I. 31, 11; *attribute*, I. 40, 10; *postpone*, I. 40, 14; *sē cōnferre*, *betake one's self, retire*, I. 26, 1.

*cōnfertus*, a, um, part. of *cōnferoiō*.  
*cōn-fēstim* [cf. *fēstinus*, *hasty*], *promptly, immediately*.

*cōn-ficiō*, *ficere*, *fēcī*, *fectum* [*faciō*], (do completely), *complete, accomplish, finish; exhaust, wear out, overcome; complete the number of, furnish*, II. 4, 5; *make out, execute*, I. 29, 1.

*cōn-fidō*, *fidere*, *fisus sum* (trust firmly), w. ind. dis. or dat., *trust*; w. abl. *rely (on)*.

*cōn-fligō*, *figere*, *fixī*, *fixum*, *fasten (together)*.

*cōn-finis*, e, adj. [*finis*], *adjoining, adjacent*.

*cōnfinium*, l, n. [*cōnfinis*], *territory, neighborhood*.

*cōnfirmātiō*, ōnis, f. [*cōnfirmō*], *assurance*.

*cōn-firmō*, 1st conj., *strengthen, establish; assure, reassure*; w. acc. and infin., *declare, pledge one's self*; espec. w. *iūre iūrاندō*.

*cōn-fisus*, a, um, part. of *cōnfidō*.

*cōn-fiteor*, *fitērl*, *fessus sum* [*fateor*, *acknowledge*], *confess, admit*.

*cōn-fixus*, a, um, part. of *cōnfigō*.

*cōn-flagrō*, 1st conj., (blaze together), *be in flames*.

*cōn-flictō*, 1st conj. [intensive of *cōn-fligō*], (strike against), *assail, harass*.

*cōn-fligō*, *figere*, *fixī*, *flctum*, (strike together), *fight, contend*.

*cōn-fluō*, *fluere*, *fluxī*, (*fluxus*), *flow together; flock together, assemble*.  
Pres. part. as subst., (place where two rivers unite), *confluence*.

*cōn-fugiō*, *fugere*, *fūgī*, (*fugitūrus*), *seek refuge (by flight)*.

*cōn-fundō*, *fundere*, *fūdī*, *fūsum*, *assemble, unite*.

*con-gredior*, *gredi*, *gressus sum* [*gradior*, *step*], *meet*, IV. 11, 1; *unite with*, VI. 5, 5; *meet in battle, contend with, fight with*.

*congressus*, a, um, part. of *con-gredior*.

*congressus*, ūs, m. [*congedior*], *meeting, engagement*.

*cōn-iciō* (pronounced as if spelled *cōn-jiciō*), *icere*, *con-īēcī*, *con-iectum* [*iaciō*], *throw, hurl*; w. in *fugam*, *put (to)*; *place or put hurriedly*; w. *aggerem*, *raise*.

*coniectūra*, ae, f. [*cōn-iciō*], (a putting "two and two" together), *conjecture; coniectūram capere, to conjecture, infer, judge*.

*coniūctim*, adv. [*coniungō*], *jointly, in common*.

*con-iungō*, *iungere*, *iūnxī*, *iūnc-tum*, *join, unite, trans.*; w. reflex., *join, unite, intrans.*

*coniūnx*, *conlugis*, c. [*coniungō*], *spouse; (husband), wife*.

*coniūrātiō*, ōnis, f. [*coniūrō*], (a swearing together), *conspiracy*. (*faciō*, *form*.)

*con-iūrō*, 1st conj., (swear together), *conspire; band together, unite*, II. 1, 1, 2, 3, 2; *take the military oath*, VII. 1, 1.

*cōnor*, 1st conj., *try, attempt; idem*

- cōnārī**, *make the same attempt*; **quicquam cōnārī**, *try to do anything*. Neut. of perf. part. in pass. sense, (a thing attempted), *attempt*.  
**con-quiēscō**, **quiēscere**, **quiēvi**, **quiētum** [quiēs], *rest*; *take a nap*.  
**con-quirō**, **quirere**, **quisivi** or **quisi**, **quisitum** [quaerō], *seek for, look up, collect*.  
**cōn-sanguineus**, a, um [sanguis], (of the same blood), *kindred*. Masc. as subst., *kindred, kinsman*.  
**cōn-scendō**, **scendere**, **scendi**, **scēsum** [scandō, climb], *climb, mount*; (in) **nāvēs cōnscendere**, *go on board, board, embark*.  
**cōn-scientia**, ae, f. [sciēna, part. of sciō, know], *consciousness*.  
**cōn-sciscō**, **sciscere**, **scivi**, **scitum** [sciscō, approve, inceptive (inchoative) of sciō, know], *adjudge, admit*; **sibi mortem cōnsciscere**, *commit suicide*.  
**cōn-scius**, a, um [sciō, know], (knowing in common with some one), *conscious, aware*. An accompanying dat. of reflex. pron., dependent upon con-, is not translated.  
**cōn-scribō**, **scribere**, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, *write (out)*, V. 48, 4; *enlist, enroll*.  
**cōn-secrō**, 1st conj. [sacer, sacred], *consecrate*.  
**cōn-sector**, 1st conj. [intensive of cōnsequor], *overtake*.  
**cōnsecūtus**, a, um, part. of cōnsequor.  
**cōnsēnsiō**, ōnis, f. [cōnsentio, agree], *agreement, unanimous resolve*.  
**cōnsēnsus**, ūs, m. [cōnsentiō, agree], *agreement, consent*;
- cōn-sentiō**, **sentire**, **sēnai**, **sēsum**, (feel the same), *agree*; *be in agreement, join, unite*.  
**cōn-sequor**, **sequi**, **secūtus sum**, (follow and come up with), *overtake*; less exactly, *follow*; w. impers. obj., *gain, attain*.  
**cōn-servō**, 1st conj. [not connected with servus], *preserve (carefully), save, spare*; **iūa**, *observe*.  
**Cōnsidius**, l, m., *Publius Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army, I. 21, 4, 22, 1, 4.  
**cōn-sidō**, **sidere**, **sēdi** (sidi), **sessum** [sidō, from sedeō, sit], (sit down), *settle*; *take position, halt, encamp*; *sit, hold a session*, VI. 13, 10.  
**cōn-silium**, l, n. [cf. cōnsulō, deliberate], *deliberation*, VII. 38, 7; *deliberative assembly, council*; regularly, *counsel, plan of action, design*; *advice*; *discretion, prudence*, III. 5, 2, 16, 2, IV. 21, 7; *strategy*, I. 40, 8.  
**cōn-similis**, e, *quite like, very similar*.  
**cōn-sistō**, **sistere**, **stiti**, —, *take one's stand, take position*; *make a stand*; *come to a halt, stop*; *settle, take up residence*, VII. 3, 1, 42, 5; *in, depend upon*, II. 33, 4, III. 14, 7, VII. 86, 3; *consist of*, VI. 22, 1; *be spent in*, VI. 21, 3.  
**cōn-sōbrīnus**, l, m. [cf. soror, sister], (son of a mother's sister), *cousin*.  
**cōn-sōlor**, 1st conj., *speak kindly to, comfort, console*.  
**cōnspectus**, ūs, m. [cōnspiciō], *view, sight*.  
**cōn-spiciō**, **spicere**, **spexi**, **spec-tum**, (look at attentively), *observe, catch sight of, see*.

**cōn-spīcor**, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], *catch sight of, see*.

**cōn-spīrō**, 1st conj., (breathe together), *combine*; against an enemy, *conspire*.

**cōnstanter**, adv. [cōnstāna, part. of cōnstō, *stand together*], *consistently*, II. 2, 4; *steadily*, III. 25, 1.

**cōnstantia**, ae, f. [cōnstāna, part. of cōnstō, *stand together*], *steadfastness, firmness*.

**cōn-sternō**, sternere, strāvi, strātum, *strew over, cover*.

**cōn-sternō**, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], (bewilder), *dismay, alarm*.

**cōn-stīpō**, 1st conj., *pack together*; w. reflex., *be packed*.

**cōn-stituō**, stituere, stitui, stitutum [statuō, *cause to stand*, causative of stō, *stand*], w. obj., *place, station, halt*; of ships, *moor, anchor*; *establish, appoint, fix*; w. infin. or ut, *determine, decide*. **dē controversiis cōstituere**, *settle disputes*, VI. 13, 5.

**cōn-stō**, stāre, stitī, (stātūrus), *stand the same, remain the same*, VII. 35, 3; w. abl. of price, *cost*, VII. 19, 4; *depend (on)*, VII. 21, 3, 84, 4; elsewhere impers., *it is admitted, it is evident*.

**cōn-suēscō**, suēscere, suēvi, suētum, *become accustomed*; hence perf., *have become accustomed = be accustomed*, plup. *was accustomed*, etc. Often best translated adverbially, e.g. **concedere cōnsuēsse**, *usually grant*, I. 14, 5, etc.

**cōnsuētūdō**, inia, f. [cōnsuēscō], *custom, habit; mode of life*.

**cōnsul**, cōnsulīa, m. [cf. cōnsulō],

*consul*, one of the two chief executive officers at Rome, elected yearly.

**cōnsulātus**, ūs, m. [cōnsul], *consulship, consulate*.

**cōn-sulō**, sulere, suli, sultum, *consult, deliberate*; w. dat., *look out (for), consult the interests (of)*.

**cōn-sultō**, 1st conj. [intensive of cōnsulō], *deliberate repeatedly or with unusual gravity*.

**cōnsultō**, adv. [perf. part. of cōn-sulō, in impers. abl. abs.], (it having been deliberated upon), *deliberately, by agreement, purposely*.

**cōnsultum**, l, n. [perf. part. of cōnsulō, used as subst.], (a thing deliberated upon), *decree*.

**cōn-sūmō**, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūptum, (take together), *use up, consume, spend*.

**cōn-surgō**, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctum, *rise together*; **cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō**, *the council rises, is adjourned*.

**con-tabulō**, 1st conj. [tabula, *board*], *build of boards, erect*, V. 40, 6; **mūrum turribus contabulāre**, *strengthen the wall with towers made of boards*, VII. 22, 3.

**con-tāgiō**, ōnis, f. [tangō, *touch*], *contact, association*.

**con-tāminō**, 1st conj. [for tāgminō, from tag, stem of tangō], (touch with bad effect, cf. Eng. *contagion*), *defile, pollute, contaminate*.

**con-tegō**, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, *cover up, cover*.

**con-temnō**, temnere, tempai, temptum, *despise*; sic **contemnere**, *hold in such contempt*, V. 51, 4.

**contemptiō**, ōnis, f. [contemnō], *contempt*.

**contemptus**, ūs, m. [**contemnō**], *contempt*; **contemptui esse**, *be an object of contempt, be held in contempt*.

**con-tendō**, **tendere**, **tendī**, **tentum**, (strain hard), *hasten; struggle, strive, strive for*; w. acc. and infin., *insist*.

**contentiō**, ōnis, f. [**contendō**], (effort), *struggle, contest*.

**contentus**, a, um, part. of **contineō** (VII. 64, 2) or of **contendō**.

**con-texō**, **texere**, **texui**, **textum**, (weave together), *plait*, VI. 16, 4; *join*, IV. 17, 8; *bind together*, VII. 23, 4.

**continenter**, adv. [**continēns**, part. of **contineō**], *continuously, without interruption*.

**continentia**, ae, f. [**continēns**, part. of **contineō**, w. **sē** understood], *self-control*.

**con-tineō**, **tinēre**, **tinui**, **tentum** [**teneō**], *hold together*, VII. 23, 3; *contain*, V. 24, 7; *occupy*, I. 38, 5; pass., *consist*, VII. 2, 2; *surround, bound; restrain; keep, keep hold of*. Pres. part. as adj., *incessant, continuous, unbroken*; as subst., sc. **terra**, *continent, mainland*.

**con-tingō**, **tingere**, **tingi**, **tactum** [**tangō**], *touch, extend to*; impers., *happen, fall to the lot (of)*, I. 43, 4.

**continuātiō**, ōnis, f. [verb **continuo**], *continue, from continuus*, *succession, continuation*.

**continuo**, adv. [abl. of **continuus**, sc. **tempore**], *immediately, at once*.

**continuus**, a, um [**contineō**], *continuous, successive, in succession*.

**cōntiō**, ōnis, f. [for **conventiō**,

from **conveniō**, *come together*], *general meeting, assembly; speech at such an assembly, harangue*, VII. 53, 1.

**contrā**, (1) adv., *opposite, against* one; **contrā atque**, *contrary to what, otherwise than*, IV. 13, 5. (2) prep. w. acc., *over against, opposite; against*.

**con-trahō**, **trahere**, **trāxi**, **trāctum**, (draw together), *contract, reduce* (a camp); *concentrate* (an army or fleet).

**contrārius**, a, um [**contrā**], *opposite, facing*; **ex contrāriō**, *on the contrary*.

**contrōversia**, ae, f. [**contrōversus**, *opposite*, from **contrō** (like **contrā**) and **vertō**, *turn*], *controversy, dispute, quarrel*.

**contumēlia**, ae, f., *disgrace, insult; buffeting, violence*, III. 13, 3.

**con-valēscō**, **valēscere**, **valui**, — [inceptive (inchoative) of **convaleō**, from **valeō**, *be strong*], (begin to be strong), *get well, regain health*.

**con-vallis**, is, f. [**vallis**, *valley*], *valley enclosed on all sides; ravine, defile*.

**con-vehō**, **vehere**, **vexi**, **vectum**, *draw together, gather, collect*.

**con-veniō**, **venire**, **vēni**, **ventum**, *come together, assemble*; of individuals, *come; meet*, I. 27, 2; *be agreed upon*, I. 36, 5, II. 19, 6; impers., *be fitting, be necessary*, VII. 85, 2.

**conventus**, ūs, m. [**conveniō**], *meeting, assembly*, I. 18, 2, V. 48, 9; *court*.

**conversus**, a, um, part. of **convertō**.

**con-vertō**, **vertere**, **verti**, **versum**, *turn around (trans.)*; pass. or w.

reflex., *turn* (intrans.); *change*, I. 41, 1; **conversa signa inferre**, (bear on the turned standards), *change front and advance*.

**Convictolitavis**, *is*, acc. *im*, a prominent Aeduan, VII. 32, 4, ff. **convictus**, *a*, *um*, part. of **convincō**.

**con-vincō**, *vincere*, *vici*, *victum*, (conquer completely), *prove clearly*; **avaritiam convictam**, *be convicted of avarice*, I. 40, 12.

**con-vocō**, 1st conj., *call together*, *summon*, *call out* (of troops).

**co-orior**, *oriri*, *ortus sum*, *arise*, *rise*, *spring up*, *break out*, often used metaphorically.

**oōpia**, *ae*, *f*. [for **co-opia**, from *opa*, *help*], *plenty*, *supply*, *abundance*; plu. *forces*, *troops*; *wealth*, *supplies*, I. 31, 5, II. 10, 4, IV. 4, 7, VI. 15, 2.

**oōpiōsus**, *a*, *um* [**oōpia**], (full of supplies), *wealthy*, *prosperous*.

**cōpula**, *ae*, *f*. [for **co-apula**, from stem of *apiscor*, *reach*, cf. *aptus*], (anything that joins two objects), *grappling iron*, III. 13, 8.

**cor-**, form of **cum** (**com**) in comp. before *r*.

**cor**, *cordis*, *n.*, *heart*; **oordi esse**, *be dear*.

**cōram**, adv. [**con**; *ōs*, *face*], (face to face), *in person*; **cōram cernere**, **perspicere**, *see with one's own eyes*.

**Coriosolitēs**, *um*, *m*. plu., acc. *as*, a tribe on the northwest coast of Gaul, II. 34.

**corium**, *l*, *n.*, *hide*, *skin*.

**cornū**, *ūs*, *n.*, *horn*; *wing* of an army.

**corōna**, *ae*, *f*. [*κορώνη*], (*wreath*), *crown*; *circle*, *unbroken line*, *cor-*

*don*, VII. 72, 2; **sub corōnā vēndere**, *sell into slavery*, because prisoners of war exposed for sale were crowned like sacrificial victims.

**corpus**, *corporis*, *n.*, *body*, *person*; *dead body*, *corpse*.

**cor-rumpō**, *rumpere*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, (break up), *destroy*, *ruin*.

**cortex**, *corticis*, *m*. and *f*., *bark* of trees.

**cotidiānus**, *a*, *um* [**cotidiē**], *daily*; *regular*, *usual*, I. 19, 3.

**cotidiē**, adv. [*quot*, *each*; *diē*, abl. of *diēs*], *daily*.

**Cotta**, *ae*, *m*., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a *legatus* of Caesar, first mentioned II. 11, 3; killed in the disaster at Aduatrica, V. 24-37.

**Cotuātus**, *l*, *m*., a leader of the Carnutes, VII. 3, 1.

**Cotus**, *l*, *m*., an Aeduan of high rank, VII. 32, 4 ff.

**crassitūdō**, *inis*, *f*. [**crassus**, *thick*], *thickness*.

**Crassus**, *l*, *m*., (1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, who with Caesar and Pompey formed the first triumvirate; killed by the Parthians B.C. 53: I. 21, 4, IV. 1, 1. (2) *Publius Licinius Crassus* (often called *adulēscēns*, junior), younger son of above, *legatus* of Caesar, I. 52, 7, etc. (3) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, elder son, *quaestor* in Caesar's army, V. 46, 1, etc.

**crātēs**, *is*, *f*., sing. rare, *wicker-work*; *fascine*.

**crēber**, **crēbra**, **crēbrum**, compar. **crēbrior**, super. **crēberrimus**, *frequent*, *numerous*, *thick*.

**crēbrō**, adv. [abl. of **crēber**], *frequently*, *at short intervals*.

**orē-dō, dere, didī, ditum** [old stem meaning *faith*, and **dō, dare**], (give credit), *trust, intrust*, VI. 31, 3; *believe*.

**cremō, 1st conj., burn** (of persons); **ignī cremāre**, (burn with fire), *burn to death, burn at the stake*.

**creō, 1st conj., (produce), elect, choose**.

**crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum**, (grow); *become powerful*, I. 20, 2; *become swollen, rise*, VII. 55, 10.

**Orēs, Orētis, m., acc. plu. as, a Cretan**.

**Oritognātus, l, m., an Arvernian of high rank**, VII. 77, 2, 78, 1.

**cruciātus, ūs, m. [cruciō, torture, from cruz, cross], torture**.

**crūdēlītās, tātis, f. [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelty, barbarity**.

**crūdēlīter, adv. [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly, with cruelty**.

**crūs, crūris, m., leg (strictly, below the knee)**.

**cubile, is, n. [cubō, lie down], resting place, bed**.

**culmen, minis, n., summit, top**.

**culpa, ae, f., fault; blame**, IV. 27, 4.

**cultūra, ae, f. [colō, cultivate], cultivation. agri cultūra, agriculture**.

**cultus, ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], manner, habit of life**, VI. 24, 4; *civilization*.

**cum, prep. w. abl., with**, in the sense of *in company* or *association with*; used with abl. of accompaniment (attendance) and manner; see grammatical appendix. Enclitic with the personal pronouns, and often with **quis** and **qui**.

In comp. its regular form is **com-**,

which appears as **co-** before vowels and **h, col- or con-** before **l**, **cor-** or **oon-** before **r**, and **con-** before other consonants. It has the force of *with* or *together*, or in very many cases is simply intensive, like Eng. "burn up," "burn down," "join together," etc.

**cum, subord. conj., when** (w. indic., or, in imperf. and pluperf., either indic. or subjunct.); *since* (w. subjunct.); *although* (w. subjunct.); often with a combination of these meanings. **cum—tum**, (while—especially), *not only—but also, both—and*, II. 4, 7, III. 16, 2, etc. **cum primum**, (when first), *as soon as*, III. 9, 2, 11, 5, etc.

**cunctātiō, ōnis, f. [cunctor], delay, hesitation**.

**cunctor, 1st conj., delay, hesitate**.

**cūctus, a, um [for oon-iūctus, from coniungō, join], sing., entire, all together; plu. all**.

**cuneātīm, adv. [cuneātus, part. of cuneō, wedge, from cuneus], in wedge-shaped formation**.

**cuneus, l, m., wedge; a wedge-shaped formation, or column of troops**, VI. 40, 2.

**cuniculus, l, m. [Spanish], rabbit; hence, underground passage, mine. (agō, open, III. 21, 3.)**

**cupidē, adv. [cupīdus], eagerly, earnestly**.

**cupidītās, tātis, f. [cupīdus], desire, eagerness**.

**cupīdus, a, um [cupīō], desirous, eager (for), fond, w. gen.**

**cupīō, cupere, cupīvi or cupīi, cupītum, desire, be eager (for); be zealous, wish well**, I. 18, 8; w. dat.

**cūr**, adv. [old form **quōr** = **quoi rel**, for *what reason*], *why, wherefore*, interrog. and rel.

**cūra**, ae, f. [cf. **caveō**, *be on one's guard*], *care, concern*. **mihī ea res est cūrae**, (this thing is for a care to me), *I am attending to this*; cf. I. 33, 1, I. 40, 11.

**cūrō**, 1st conj. [**cūra**], *take care*; w. gerundive, *cause* (something to be done), *have* (something done); e.g. **pontem faciendum cūrāre**, *cause a bridge to be built, have a bridge built*, I. 13, 1; so I. 19, 1, III. 11, 4, etc.

**currus**, ūs, m. [**currō**, *run*], *chariot, car*.

**cursus**, ūs, m. [**currō**, *run*], *running; speed*; of ships, *course*.

**cūstōdia**, ae, f. [**cūstōs**], (a guarding), *guard, watch, sentinel*.

**cūstōdiō**, **cūstōdire**, **cūstōdivi** or **cūstōdī**, **cūstōditum** [**cūstōs**], *guard*.

**cūstōs**, **cūstōdis**, c., *guard, watch, sentinel, picket, observer*.

## D

**D**, as numeral = 500.

**D.**, abbreviation for *Decimus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

**d.**, abbreviation for *diem*, in *ante diem*.

**Dāci**, ōrum, m. plu., *the Dacians*, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian mountains, VI. 25, 2.

**damnō**, 1st conj. [**damnum**], *find guilty, condemn*. Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one condemned), *convict, criminal*.

**damnum**, l, n., (harm), *loss*.

**Dānuvius**, l, m., *the Danube*, VI. 25, 2.

**dē**, prep. w. abl., (down) *from*; *concerning, on account of*; in expressions of place from which and separation, *down from, from, out of*; instead of partitive gen. and abl. of material, *of*; w. **causā**, **causis**, *on account of, for*; **dē cōnsiliō**, *by or upon the advice*, VII. 5, 3; of other relations, *concerning, about, for*. **dē tertiā vigiliā**, *during the third watch*, I. 12, 2; **dē imprōvisō**, *unexpectedly, suddenly*.

In comp. the forces are the same, but sometimes, from the meaning of the word with which it is joined, it becomes either intensive or negative. **dēbeō**, **dēbere**, **dēbui**, **dēbitum** [for **de-hibeō**, from **habeō**], (have off from one's possessions), *owe*, VI. 33, 4; *ought* (originally the past of *owe*); **suspiciārī dēbere**, *cannot help suspecting, have good reason to suspect*, I. 44, 10, cf. V. 27, 2.

**dē-cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssum**, (go down from), *withdraw*; sc. **vītā**, (depart from life), *die*, VI. 19, 3.

**decem**, abbreviation **X**, indeclin. card. adj., *ten*.

**dēceptus**, a, um, part. of **decipiō**.

**dē-cernō**, **cernere**, **crēvi**, **crētum**, (separate, distinguish from), *decide*; *decide upon, decree*.

**dē-certō**, 1st conj., *fight a decisive battle*, "*fight it out*."

**dēcēssus**, ūs, m. [**dēcēdō**], *departure, withdrawal*; w. **aestūs**, *ebb*, III. 13, 1.

**Decētia**, ae, f., a town of the Aedui, VII. 33, 2.

- dē-cidō, cidere, cidi, — [cadō],** *fall (from).*
- decimus, a, um [decem],** ord. adj., *tenth, quisquo decimus, (each tenth man), one in ten, V. 52, 2.*
- Decimus, I, m.** a Roman *praenomen.*
- dē-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum [capiō],** (take down from one's security), *deceive.*
- dē-clārō, 1st conj. [clārus, clear],** (set down clearly), *declare.*
- dē-clivis, e [clivus, slope],** *sloping (downward).*
- dēclivitās, tātis, f. [dēclivis],** *downward slope, declivity. ad dēclivitātem, downward.*
- dēcrētum, I, n.** [neut. of perf. part. of **dēcernō**], (a thing decreed), *decree, decision, command, order. (stāre, abide.).*
- decumānus, a, um [decimus, tenth],** *of a tenth; dec. porta, the rear gate of a camp, near which the tenth cohort of a single legion would be stationed.*
- decuriō, ōnis, m. [decem, ten],** *decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a small squad (originally ten men).*
- dē-currō, currere, cucurri or curri, cursum,** *run down, hasten.*
- dē-decus, decoris, m. [decus, honor, from decet, it becomes],** *disgrace, dishonor.*
- dēditiolus, a, um [dēditus, part. of dēdō],** *having surrendered. Masc. as subst., (one who has surrendered), captive, prisoner.*
- dēditiō, ōnis, f. [dēdō],** *surrender. in dēditiōne accipere, recipere, accept the surrender of anyone; in dēditiōnem venire, surrender.*
- dēditus, a, um, part. of dēdō.**
- dē-dō, dere, didi, ditum [dō, dare],** *give up, hand over, surrender, trans.; w. reflex., give up, surrender, intrans.; devote, III. 22, 2, VI. 16, 1.*
- dē-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum,** *lead down; lead away, lead off, withdraw; of ships, launch; when used figuratively, bring; (lead home), marry, V. 14, 5; lead astray, VII. 37, 6.*
- dēfatigātiō, ōnis, f. [dēfatigō],** *weariness, fatigue.*
- dē-fatigō, 1st conj.,** *tire out, exhaust, fatigue.*
- dēfectiō, ōnis, f. [dēficiō, fail],** (a failing), *revolt, defection.*
- dē-fendō, fendere, fendi, fēnsūm,** (strike down), *ward off, repel, I. 44, 6, II. 29, 5, VI. 23, 4; defend, protect.*
- dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f. [dēfendō],** *defence, protection.*
- dēfēnsor, ōris, m. [dēfendō],** (defender), *protection, IV. 17, 10; speciēs dēfēnsōrum praebere, make a show of defence, VI. 38, 5.*
- dē-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum,** (bring down to a destination), *carry; report a matter; pass., of ships, drift, come to land; of troops, wander, come; give, bestow (upon), II. 4, 7, V. 6, 2, VI. 2, 1, VII. 4, 7.*
- dēfessus, a, um, part. of dēfeticor.**
- dē-fetiscor, fetisci, fessus sum [fatiscō (or), gape, faint],** *become exhausted. Perf. part. as adj., worn out, exhausted.*
- dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [faciō],** (make down from anything), *trans.,*

*fail*; intrans., *fail, give out; revolt*, II. 14, 3, III. 17, 2, VII. 10, 1; **dēficere** ab, *forsake, desert*, V. 3, 3, VII. 39, 3; **animō** (abl. of spec.) **dēficere**, *lose heart, be down-hearted*, VII. 30, 1.

**dē-figō**, **figere**, **fixī**, **fixum**, *fix or plant firmly; drive down*.

**dē-finiō**, **finire**, **finivī**, **finitum** [**finis**, *limit*], *define, fix*.

**dē-fore**, fut. infin. of **dēsum**, = **dēfutūrus esse**.

**dē-fōrmis**, e [**fōrma**], *ill-formed; misshapen, scrawny*, IV. 2, 2; *unsightly*, VII. 23, 5.

**dē-fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, —, *flee from, avoid, shun*.

**dē-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **dējiciō**), **icere**, **iēcī**, **iectum** [**iaciō**], *throw down; overthrow, destroy*, IV. 17, 10; *drive from a position; fig., w. abl. of separation, (throw down from), disappoint (in)*, I. 8, 4, V. 48, 1, VII. 63, 8; *in inferiōrem locum dēiectus*, *slipping in a hollow*, V. 44, 12.

**dēiectus**, a, um, part. of **dēiciō**.

**dē-lectus**, ūs, m. [**dēiciō**], (a throwing down); *slope*.

**deinceps**, adv. [cf. **deinde**, **capiō**], (taking next), *one after the other, in succession*.

**de-inde**, adv. [**inde**, *thence, then*], *thereupon, then; in the next place, secondly, further, next*.

**dēlātus**, a, um, part. of **dēferō**.

**dē-lectō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **dē-liciō**, *entice from one's way*], *delight*; pass., w. abl. of cause, *be delighted (with), take pleasure (in)*, IV. 2, 2.

**dēleō**, **dēlēre**, **dēlēvī**, **dēlētum**,

*destroy; wipe out, blot out*, II. 27, 2.

**dē-liberō**, 1st conj. [cf. **libra**, *balance*], (weigh mentally); *consider, deliberate*.

**dē-librō**, 1st conj. [**liber**, *bark*], *strip the bark from, peel*.

**dēlictum**, l, n. [neut. of perf. part of **dēlinquō**, *leave undone, do wrong*], (a thing left undone or wrongly done), *offence, fault*.

**dē-ligō**, 1st conj., (bind down), *tie*; **ad ancorās dēligātae**, (*lying*) *at anchor*.

**dē-ligō**, **ligere**, **lēgī**, **lēctum** [**legō**], *pick out, choose, select*.

**dē-litēscō**, **litēscere**, **lituī**, — [**latēscō**, inceptive (inchoative) of **lateō**, *lie hidden*], *hide away, conceal one's self*.

**dēmentia**, ae, f. [**dēmēns**, *foolish*, from **dē**, **mēns**], *foolishness, folly*.

**dēmessus**, a, um, part. of **dēmetō**.

**dē-metō**, **metere**, **messuī**, **messum**, *mow down, reap, cut*.

**dē-migrō**, 1st conj., *move away, move one's goods, move*.

**dē-minuō**, **minuere**, **minuī**, **minūtum** [**minus**, *less*], *lessen, take away from, diminish*; **quicquam dē voluptāte dēminuere**, *diminish one's delight at all*, I. 53, 6; cf. VII. 33, 2, 43, 4.

**dē-mittō**, **mittere**, **misī**, **missum**, *let down*, VII. 47, 6; *put down, plant*, VII. 73, 3, 6; w. reflex., *get into*; **sē animō dēmittere**, *be disheartened*, VII. 29, 1; **capite dēmissō**, *with bowed head*, I. 32, 2; **loca dēmissa**, *depressed regions, lowlands*.

**dēmō**, **dēmere**, **dēmpsī**, **dēemptum** [**dē**, **emō**], *take down*.

**dē-mōnstrō**, 1st conj., *point out, mention, show ; explain*, V. 1, 2, 38, 2.

**dē-moror**, 1st. conj., *delay* (from anything), *retard*.

**dē-mptus**, a, um, part. of **dēmō**.

**dēmum**, adv., *at length*.

**dē-negō**, 1st conj., (utterly deny), *absolutely refuse*.

**dēnī**, ae, a, distrib. adj. [**decem**], (ten by ten), *ten each*, I. 43, 3; *ten together*, V. 14, 3.

**dēnique**, adv., *finally ; at least*, II. 33, 2.

**dēnsus**, a, um, *dense, thick ; crowded*.

**dē-nūntiō**, 1st conj. [**nūntius**, *message, messenger*], *announce openly, declare plainly, threaten ; order*, VI. 10, 1.

**dē-pellō**, *pellere*, **pulī**, **pulsum**, *drive away, drive off ; avert*, VI. 17, 2.

**dē-perdō**, *perdere*, **perdidī**, **perditum** [**per-dō**, *destroy*], *lose ; forfeit*, V. 54, 5.

**dē-pereō**, *perire*, (**perivī**) **perī**, **peritum** [**per-eō**, *perish*], *perish ; be lost*.

**dē-pōnō**, *pōnere*, **posuī**, **positum**, (put down), *lay down, lay aside ; memoriam dēpōnere, forget ; place for safety*, IV. 19, 2, VII. 63, 3; *leave*, II. 29, 4, VI. 41, 1.

**dē-populor**, 1st conj. [*not connected w. populus*], *ravage, lay waste*.

**dē-portō**, 1st. conj., *carry off*.

**dē-pōscō**, *pōscere*, **popōscī**, —, (ask for earnestly); *demand, call for urgently*.

**dēprecātor**, ōris, m. [**dēprecor**], *advocate, intercessor, mediator*.

**dē-precor**, 1st conj. [**prex**, **precis**, *prayer, entreaty*], (pray to have averted), *pray to be delivered from, ask pardon*, VI. 4, 2; *ask quarter of*, IV. 7, 3.

**dē-prehendō**, *prehendere*, **prehendī**, **prehēsum**, *seize ; surprise*.

**dē-prehēsus**, a, um, part. of **dēprehendō**.

**dē-pūgnō**, 1st conj. [**pūgna**, *fight*], *fight decisively, fight it out*.

**dē-pulsus**, a, um, part. of **dēpellō**.

**dērēctē**, adv. [**dērēctus**, perf. part. of **dērigō**, *lay straight*], *in a straight line ; dērēctē ad perpendiculam, exactly vertically, perpendicularly*.

**dērēctus**, a, um, part. of **dērigō**.

**dē-rigō**, *rigere*, **rēxī**, **rēctum** [**regō**], *lay straight ; arrange*, VII. 27, 1; *form*, VI. 8, 5. Perf. part. as adj., *straight ; perpendicular*, VII. 72, 1. (*magis, more nearly*, VI. 26, 1.)

**dē-rivō**, 1st. conj. [**rivus**, *brook*], of water, *draw down, divert*.

**dē-rogo**, 1st conj. [**rogō**, in legal signification, *propose a law*], (repeal part of a law or restrict a bill), *withdraw, diminish*.

**dē-scendō**, *scendere*, **scendī**, **scēsum** [**scandō**], (climb down), *descend, come down*, VII. 53, 2; *resort to*.

**dē-secō**, *secāre*, **secuī**, **sectum**, *cut off*.

**dē-serō**, *serere*, **seruī**, **sertum**, (disjoin), *abandon, desert*. Perf. part. as adj., *deserted, solitary*, V. 53, 4.

**dēsertor**, ōris, m. [**dēserō**], *deserter, coward*.

**dēsertus**, a, um, part. of **dēserō**.

**dē-siderō**, 1st conj. [cf. **cōn-siderō**],  
*desire, want*; hence, *miss, lose*.

**dēsīdia**, ae, f. [**dēsea**, *idle*, from **dē**  
and **sīdeō**, *sit*], *idleness, laziness*.

**dē-sīgnō**, 1st conj. [**signum**, *mark*],  
(mark down), *designate, mean*.

**dē-siliō**, **silire**, **silui**, **sultum** [**saliō**],  
*jump down, leap down*; *dismount*.

**dē-sistō**, **sistere**, **stiti**, —, (stop  
from doing something), *stop*, VII. 4,  
3; w. infin., *stop* (doing something),  
*cease* (to do something); w. abl.,  
*desist* (from), *give up, cease*.

**dēspectus**, a, um, part. of **dēspiciō**.

**dēspectus**, ūs, m. [**dēspiciō**, *look  
down upon*], *view from a higher  
position*; *in mare*, *of the sea*, III.  
14, 9.

**dēspērātiō**, ōnis, f. [**dēspērō**],  
*despair, desperation, hopelessness*.

**dē-spērō**, 1st conj. [**spēs**, *hope*],  
intrans., *give up hope, despair* (**dē**,  
or abl. of cause, *of*); trans., *despair  
of*; so in abl. abs., e.g. **salūte  
dēspērātā**, *despairing of safety*, etc.  
Perf. part. as adj., *desperate*, VII.  
3, 1.

**dē-spiciō**, **spicere**, **spexi**, **spectum**,  
*look down upon, despise*.

**dē-spoliō**, 1st conj. [**spolia**, *spoils*],  
*despoil, deprive*.

**dēstinō**, 1st conj., *attach, hold*; *de-  
tail*, VII. 72, 2.

**dē-stituō**, **stituere**, **stitui**, **stitūtum**  
[**statuō**], (set apart from one's self),  
*abandon, desert, leave in the lurch*.

**dēstrictus**, a, um, part. of **dēstringō**.

**dē-stringō**, **stringere**, **strinxi**,  
**strictum**, *draw from, draw*.

**dē-sum**, **de-esse**, **dē-ful**, (**dē-futū-  
rus**), (be away from), *be lacking, be  
wanting*.

**dē-super**, adv., *from above*.

**dēterior**, us, compar. adj., super.  
**dēterrīmus**, a, um [**dē**], *lower,  
poorer*; **vectigālia dēteriōra fa-  
cere**, *make the revenues lower,  
lessen the revenues*, I. 36, 4.

**dē-terreō**, **terrere**, **terui**, **terri-  
tum**, (frighten from), *deter, prevent;  
repress*, V. 7, 1.

**dē-tēstor**, 1st conj. [**tēstis**, *witness*],  
(call the gods to witness down upon,  
against one), *curse*.

**dē-tineō**, **tinere**, **tinui**, **tentum**  
[**teneō**], (hold from), *hold back, de-  
tain*.

**dētrāctus**, a, um, part. of **dētrahō**.

**dē-trahō**, **trahere**, **trāxi**, **trāctum**,  
(draw from), *withdraw, remove,  
take*. (**dē**, or dat. of separation,  
*from*.)

**dē-trectō**, 1st conj. [for **dē-trāctō**,  
intensive of **dētrahō**], *withdraw  
from constantly, avoid*.

**dētrimentōsus**, a, um [**dētrimen-  
tum**], *detrimental, dangerous, bad  
policy*.

**dētrimentum**, i, n. [**dē-terō**, *rub  
off, wear away, lose*], *loss, injury,  
defeat; disadvantage, source of in-  
jury*, I. 44, 5.

**dētuli**, perf. of **dēferō**.

**dē-turbō**, 1st conj. [**turba**, *crowd*],  
(crowd off), *drive off, dislodge*.

**de-ūro**, **ūrere**, **ūssi**, **ūstum**, *burn  
down*.

**deus**, i, voc. **deus**; plu., nom. voc.  
**dei**, **diī**, **dī**, gen. **deōrum**, **deum**,  
dat. abl. **deīs**, **dīs**, **dīs**, acc. **deōs**,  
m., *god*.

**dē-vehō**, **vehere**, **vexi**, **vectum**,  
*convey to a destination, transport;  
bring (equi, on horseback)*, I. 43, 2.

**dē-veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum,** *come (down); w. ad, come to, reach.*

**dēvexus, a, um [dēvehō],** *sloping; neut. plu. as subst., sc. loca, (sloping places), slopes.*

**dē-vincō, vincere, vici, victum,** *conquer thoroughly; subdue, completely.*

**dē-vocō, 1st conj. [vōx, vōcis, voice],** *(call down), bring.*

**dēvōtus, a, um, part. of dēvoveō.**

**dē-voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum,** *vow; devote, III. 22, 3; consecrate VI. 17, 3. Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one who has devoted himself to another), devoted follower.*

**dexter, dextera, dexterum,** or in Bel. Gal. always **dexter, dextra, dextrum,** compar. **dexterior,** super. **dextimus,** *right, opp. of left. Fem. as subst., sc. manus, right hand.*

**Diāblintēs, um, m. plu.,** a division of the Auleri, in western Gaul, near, but not on, the coast, III. 9, 10.

**diciō, ōnis, f.,** no plu. in use [cf. **dicō**], *sway, control* (cf. Eng. "say").

**dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum,** *say, state, mention; speak; w. diem, appoint; w. iūs, administer, VI. 23, 5; causam dicere, plead one's case, I. 4, 1, 2.*

**dicō, 1st conj. [secondary form of above],** *(dedicate), devote; w. reflex., attach, VI. 12, 7; in servitūtem sē dicāre, surrender, VI. 13, 2. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., word, order.*

**dictiō, ōnis, f. [dicō],** *speaking; causae dictiō, pleading a case.*

**dictum, l, n. [neut. of perf. part. of**

**dicō, used as subst.],** *(thing said), word, order.*

**dī-,** form of **dis-**, in comp. before some consonants.

**dī-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum,** *(lead apart), divide, distribute.*

**diēs, diēī, m.,** but sometimes fem. in sing., when referring to a definite date, *day; time, I. 7, 6; in diēs, day by day, daily; ad diem, on (a certain) day, promptly, cf. Eng. "on time"; multō diē, late in the day, and so multā nocte; diem ex diē, from day to day, I. 16, 4.*

**dif-,** form of **dis-** in comp. before **l**. **dif-ferō, ferre, dis-tulī, dī-lātum,** *(bear apart), differ, be different; defer, postpone, VII. 11, 5; spread, V. 43, 2.*

**dif-ficilis, e,** compar. **difficilior,** super. **difficillimus [facilis, easy],** *difficult, hard; w. iter, hard to pass over.*

**difficultās, tātis, f. [difficilis],** *difficulty, trouble.*

**difficulter, adv.,** compar. **difficilius,** super. **difficillimē [difficilis],** *with difficulty, compar. with greater difficulty.*

**dif-fidō, fidere, fīsus sum,** *distrust, doubt, w. dat., or ind. dis.*

**diffisus, a, um, part. of diffidō.**

**dif-fluō, fluere, fluxī, (fluxus),** *(flow apart), divide.*

**dif-fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum,** *(pour apart), spread out; pass. like Eng. intrans. use.*

**digitus, l, m.,** *finger; as sometimes in Eng., a finger's breadth, finger, VII. 73, 6; digitus pollex, thumb, III. 13, 4.*

**dignitās, tātis, f. [dignus],** *worth,*

*rank, position, reputation; self-respect*, VI. 8, 1.

**dignus**, a, um, *worthy*; w. abl., translated *of*.

**dī-iūdicō**, 1st conj. [**iūdex**, *judge*], *judge between, decide*.

**dilēctus**, a, um, part. of **diligō**.

**dilēctus**, ūs, m. [**diligō**], (a choosing), *levy*.

**diligenter**, adv. [**diligēns**, pres. part. of **diligō**], *carefully, with care*; **parum dil.**, *with too little care, rather carelessly*, III. 18, 6.

**diligentia**, ae, f. [**diligēns**, pres. part. of **diligō**], *care, accuracy; activity, diligence*.

**dī-ligō**, **ligere**, **lēxi**, **lēctum** [**legō**], *choose out, love, cherish*.

**dīmēnsus**, a, um, part. of **dīmētior**.

**dī-mētior**, **mētiri**, **mēnsus** sum, *measure off, stake off; cut or select (ad, according to), adapt*, IV. 17, 3.

**dīmicātiō**, ōnis, f. [**dīmio**], *contest, struggle*.

**dī-micō**, 1st conj., (flash apart, of swords), *fight, struggle, contend*.

**dī-midius**, a, um [**medius**, *middle*], (divided in the middle), *half*; so **dīm. pars**, *half*; neut. as subst., *half*; **dīmidiō minor**, (smaller by half), *half as large*, V. 13, 2.

**dī-mittō**, **mittere**, **miſi**, **missum**, *send in all directions, send out; send away; w. concilium, adjourn; lose; abandon*.

**dir-**, form of **dis-** in comp. before a vowel.

**dir-imō**, **imere**, **ēmi**, **ēemptum** [**emō**], (take apart), *break up*.

**dī-ripiō**, **ripere**, **ripi**, **reptum**, (seize and tear apart), *plunder, sack, pillage*.

**dis-**, inseparable prep., *apart, asunder*; hence sometimes having negative or intensive force, according to signification of word with which it is joined. It becomes **dir-** before vowels, **dif-** before **f**, and **dī-** before most other consonants.

**Dis**, **Ditis**, m., *Dis*, god of the lower world; *Pluto*.

**dis-cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cēssi**, **cēssum**, (go apart), *go away, depart*; **dis-cēdere ab**, *leave*; **ab armis dis-cēdere**, *abandon hostilities*, V. 41, 8; **hostibus** (dat. of reference) **spēs discēssit**, *hope left the enemy*, II. 7, 2.

**disceptātor**, ōris, m. [**disceptō**, *decide*, from **dis**, **capiō**], *arbitrator, judge, umpire*.

**dis-cernō**, **cernere**, **crēvi**, **crētum**, *separate from one another, distinguish*.

**discēssus**, ūs, m. [**discēdō**], *departure, withdrawal; desertion*, VII. 54, 2.

**disciplina**, ae, f. [for **discipulīna**, from **discipulus**, *pupil*, from **disco**], (instruction), *training, discipline; system of doctrine*.

**dis-clūdō**, **clūdere**, **olūsi**, **olūsum** [**claudō**], (shut apart), *hold apart, separate*.

**discō**, **discere**, **didici**, —, *learn; be taught*, I. 13, 6.

**discrīmen**, **minis**, n. [**discernō**, *separate*], *crisis, critical point, danger*.

**dis-cutiō**, **cutere**, **cussi**, **cussum** [**quatiō**], (shake apart), *remove, clear away*, of snow.

**dis-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **disjiciō**), **icere**, **iēcī**, **iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw in all directions), *break, rout*,

I. 25, 2; *throw into disorder*, III. 20, 4.  
**dis-pār**, gen. **disparis**, adj. [pār], *unequal*, V. 16, 2; *inferior*, VII. 39, 1.  
**dis-parō**, 1st conj., (prepare apart), *separate, divide*.  
**dī-spergō**, **spergere**, **sperai**, **sper-sum** [spargō], *scatter in all directions, disperse*.  
**dispersus**, a, um, part. of **dispargō**.  
**dis-pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, (place apart), *place at intervals*; occasionally in V.-VII., *place in position, dispose*.  
**disputātiō**, ōnis, f. [disputō], *discussion, dispute*.  
**dis-putō**, 1st conj., (think differently), *discuss, argue*.  
**dissēnsiō**, ōnis, f. [dissentiō], *disagreement, dissension*.  
**dis-sentiō**, **sentire**, **sēnsi**, **sēnsum**, *think or feel differently, disagree (with), dissent (from)*.  
**dis-serō**, **serere**, **sēvi**, **situm**, (sow broadcast), *plant, put down at intervals*.  
**dis-simulō**, 1st conj. [similis, like], (make unlike), *disguise, conceal*.  
**dis-sipō**, 1st conj., (throw in all directions), *scatter, disperse*.  
**dis-suādeō**, **suādēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsum**, (persuade differently), *dissuade, advise against, oppose*.  
**dis-tineō**, **tinēre**, **tinui**, **tentum** [teneō], *keep apart, separate; delay, prevent*, VII. 37, 3.  
**dī-stō**, **stāre**, —, —, (stand apart), *be apart, be separated*.  
**dis-trahō**, **trahere**, **trāxi**, **trāctum**, (draw apart), *pry apart*.  
**dis-tribuō**, **tribuere**, **tribui**, **tribū-**

**tum**, *distribute among, to; divide, assign*, IV. 22, 3, 4, V. 24, 6.  
**dītissimus**, a, um, super. of **dives**.  
**diū**, **diūtius**, **diūtissimē**, adv., *long, for a long time; quam diū, as long as*, I. 17, 6.  
**diurnus**, a, um [diēs], *during the day, by day*.  
**diūtinus**, a, um [diū], *long, long-continued*.  
**diūturnitās**, tātis, f. [diūturnus], *length, long duration*.  
**diūturnus**, a, um [diū], *long, long-continued*.  
**diversus**, a, um part. of **dīvertō**.  
**dī-vertō**, **vertere**, **verti**, **versum**, *turn aside or apart, separate*. Perf. part. as adj., *different; stretching away, remote*, VI. 25, 3; *facing in the opposite direction*, VII. 74, 1.  
**dives**, gen. **divitis**; or **dis**, gen. **ditis**; compar. **divitior** or **ditior**, super. **divitissimus** or **dītissimus**, *rich*.  
**Diviciācus**, I, m., (1) the most influential of the Aedui during Caesar's campaign in Gaul, I. 3, 5, etc. (2) A chief of the Suesiones, II. 4, 7.  
**Diviciō**, ōnis, m., leader of the Helvetii in their campaign against Cassius, B.C. 107, and chief of their embassy to Caesar after the destruction of the Tigurini, I. 13, 2, 14, 7.  
**dividō**, **dividere**, **divisi**, **divisum** [dis, video], *divide, separate*.  
**divinus**, a, um, *divine; res divinae, religious matters, public worship*.  
**dō**, **dare**, **dedi**, **datum**, *give, grant, present; afford, allow*, I. 14, 1, 38, 4, VII. 85, 6; *inter se dare, ex-*

*change*; in *fugam dare*, *put to flight*; *operam dare*, *take pains*; *sē ventō dare*, *square away before the wind*, III. 13, 9. In comp. *dō* often = *put*.

**doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum**, (teach), *explain, show, inform, point out*.

**documentum, l, n.** [**doceō**], (means of showing), *proof, evidence*.

**doleō, dolēre, dolui, —, suffer**, I. 14, 5; *grieve, be pained*.

**dolor, ōris, m.** [**doleō**], *grief, pain, distress*; *dolōre affici*, (be affected with grief), *be distressed*, I. 2, 4. (*capio*, *feel*, I. 20, 2.)

**dolus, l, m.** *device; cunning, deceit*.

**domesticus, a, um** [**domus, house**], (of the house), *native, domestic; local*, II. 10, 4; w. *bellum*, *civil*.

**domicilium, l, n.** [**domus, house**], *dwelling-place, dwelling, residence, house*.

**dominor, 1st conj.** [**dominus**], *be master, rule*.

**dominus, l, m.** [**domus, house**], *master*, VI. 13, 3; *lord*.

**Domitius, l, m.**, *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul 54 B.C., V. 1, 1.

**domus, gen. domūs, dat. domui, acc. domum, abl. domō, loc. domi (domui); plu. nom. domūs, gen. domōrum, dat. abl. domibus, acc. domōs, domūs, f., house, home; domō exire, (go out from home), *emigrate*.**

**Domnotaurus, l, m.**, a leader of the Helvii, VII. 65, 2.

**dōnō, 1st conj.** [**dōnum**], *present*.

**dōnum, l, n.** [**dō**], *gift, present*.

**dorsum, l, n.** (sometimes *dorsus, l, m.*), *back; ridge (of a hill)*.

**dōs, dōtis, f.** [**dō**], *dowry, marriage gift* from the bride's family.

**druides, um, m. plu.**, *druids*, the priests of the Gauls and Britons.

**Dūbia, is, m.**, a river of Gaul, tributary to the Arar (Saône), now the *Doubs*, I. 38, 4.

**dubitātiō, ōnis, f.** [**dubitō**], *doubt, hesitation*.

**dubitō, 1st conj.** [**dubius**], *hesitate*; when followed by *quīn*, *doubt*, except II. 2, 5; when followed by *dē*, *doubt, entertain doubts*, and so I. 41, 3.

**dubius, a, um** [**duo, two**], *doubtful, uncertain*; *nōn est dubium quīn*, (it is not doubtful but that), *there is no doubt (but) that*, I. 3, 7; neut. as subst., *doubt*; *in dubium dēvocāre*, (bring into doubt), *risk*, VI. 7, 6.

**ducenti, ae, a, card. adj.** [**duo, centum**], *two hundred*.

**dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum**, *lead*; of carts, *move, take*, I. 6, 1; of earthworks, *construct; put off, delay*, I. 16, 4, 5, VII. 11, 4; *prolong*, I. 38, 4; *consider*, I. 3, 2, IV. 30, 2, etc.; *in mātirimōnium dūcere*, *marry*.

**ductus, ūs, m.** [**dūcō**], *lead, leadership*.

**dum, subord. conj.**, *while, as long as; until*. See Appendix.

**Dumnorix, Igis, m.**, a turbulent Aeduan, I. 3, 5, etc.; close of his career described, V. 6, 7.

**duo, ae, o, gen. ōrum, ārum, ōrum, dat. and abl. ōbus, ābus, ōbus, acc. ōs or o, ās, o, card. adj.**, *two*.

**duo-decim, indeclin. card. adj.** [**decem**], *twelve*.

**duo-decimus, a, um, ord. adj.** [**duo-decim**], *twelfth*.

**duo-dēni**, ae, a, distrib. adj. [**duo-decim**], (twelve by twelve), *twelve each; twelve together*, V. 14, 4.

**duo-dē-septuāgintā**, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from seventy), *sixty-eight*; for *LXVIII.*, I. 29, 3.

**duo-dē-trigintā**, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from thirty), *twenty-eight*; for *XXVIII.*, V. 2, 2.

**duo-dē-vigintī**, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from twenty), *eighteen*.

**duplex**, plicis, adj. [**duo**; **plicō**, *fold*], (two-fold), *double*.

**duplicō**, 1st conj. [**duplex**], *double*.

**dūritia**, ae, f. [**dūrus**], (hardness), *hardship*.

**dūrō**, 1st conj. [**dūrus**], *harden, toughen, make hardy*.

**Dūrocortorum**, I, n., a town of the Remi, now Reims, VI. 44, 1.

**dūrus**, a, um, *hard; difficult*; **tempus anni**, *inclement season*, VII. 8, 2.

**Dūrus**, I, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune of the soldiers, V. 15, 5.

**dux**, duois, c. [**dūcō**, *lead*], *leader, commander; guide*, I. 21, 2, II. 7, 1.

## E

**ē**, form of **ex**, before the consonants b, d, g, i consonant, f, l, m, n, r, v, but not in all cases.

**eā**, adv. [abl. of **is**, sc. **parte** or **viā**], *on that side, there*.

**Eburōnēs**, um, m. plu., tribe of Belgae, dwelling chiefly between the Rhine and the Meuse, II. 4, 10, etc.

**Eburovicēs**, um, m. plu., a division of the Aulerci, in the northwestern part of Gaul, south of the Seine near its mouth, III. 17, 3, VII. 75, 3.

**ē-disōō**, **dīscere**, **didici**, —, *learn by heart, commit to memory*.

**ēditus**, a, um, part. of **ēdō**.

**ē-dō**, **dere**, **didī**, **ditum** [**dō**, **dare**], (put forth), *inflict, indulge in*, I. 31, 12. Perf. part. as adj., *elevated, rising, high*.

**ē-dōceō**, **docēre**, **docui**, **doctum**, (explain out), *explain, show exactly*.

**ē-dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxi**, **ductum**, *lead out*; without obj., *move*, VII. 10, 1; w. **gladium**, *draw*.

**ef-**, form of **ex** in comp. before f.

**ef-fēminō**, 1st conj. [**fēmina**, *woman*], (make womanish), *weaken, enervate, enfeeble*.

**ef-ferciō**, **fercire**, —, **fortum** [**far-ciō**], (stuff out), *fill compactly*.

**ef-ferō**, **ferre**, **ex-tuli**, **ē-lātum**, *bear out, carry away, take; disclose, relate, spread abroad; lift up*, lit. VII. 47, 7; fig. *elate* (cf. Eng. "carried away"), V. 47, 4, VII. 47, 3.

**ef-ficiō**, **ficere**, **fēci**, **fectum** [**faciō**], (make out, complete), *effect; cover*, IV. 35, 3; *render*, I. 38, 6, III. 24, 5, V. 33, 5; *produce; construct, complete; furnish*, VII. 4, 8; followed by **ut**, *bring about, effect*, a construction usually to be condensed in translation with the following verb.

**ef-fodiō**, **fodere**, **fōdī**, **fossum**, *dig out, gouge out*.

**effossus**, a, um, part. of **effodiō**.

**ef-fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgi**, **fugitum**, *flee from, escape*.

**egeō**, **egēre**, **egui**, —, *need, be in want*; w. gen., *lack*, VI. 11, 4; Pres. part. as subst. in plu., *the destitute, the needy*.

**egestās, tātis, f.** [egeō], *poverty, destitution.*

**ego, mei, mihi (mī), mē, mē; nōs, nostrī** (objective) or **nostrum** (partitive), **nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs**, pers. pron., first person, *I*, etc.

**ego-met, nōs-met**, etc., emphatic forms of **ego, nōs**, etc., VII. 38, 7.

**ē-gredior, gredi, gressus sum** [gradior, *step*], *go out*; w. **ex** or **abl.** alone, *leave*; of ships, *land, disembark.*

**ēgregiē**, adv. [ēgregius], *excellently, remarkably well.*

**ē-gregius, a, um** [grex, *flock*], (out of the common), *conspicuous, marked.*

**ēgressus, a, um**, part. of **ēgredior**.

**ēgressus, ūs, m.** [ēgredior, *land*], *landing.*

**ē-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled ējiciō), **icere, iēcī, iectum**, *throw out, cast, fling*; often w. reflexive, *rush; banish, expel*, IV. 7, 3, VII. 4, 4; *drive*, V. 10, 2.

**ē-lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum**, (slip out), *escape.*

**ēlātus, a, um**, part. of **ēfferō**.

**Elaver, veris, n.**, a tributary of the Liger (Loire), now the *Allier*, VII. 34, 2, etc.

**ēlēctus, a, um**, part. of **ēligō**.

**elephantus, ī, m.** [ἐλεphas], *elephant.*

**Eleuteti, ōrum, m.**, a tribe whose name and location are both doubtful, clients of the Averni, so probably near them, VII. 75, 2.

**ē-liciō, licere, licui, —** [laciō], *entice out, entice, draw out.*

**ē-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum** [legō], *pick out, choose, select.*

**Elusātēs, ium, m. plu.**, a tribe of central Aquitania, III. 27, 1.

**ē-migrō, āre, āvi, —**, *move out, emigrate.*

**ē-mineō, minēre, minui, —**, (rise out of), *project.*

**ē-minus**, adv. [manus, *hand*], *at a distance, from some distance away.* Opposite of **com-minus**.

**ē-mittō, mittere, misi, missum**, *send out; throw, hurl; drop, cast away; manū ēmittere, let go of*, I. 25, 4.

**ēmō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum**, (take); *buy.*

**ē-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum**, (be born from), *grow out.*

**enim**, coörd. conj., *for*; **neque enim**, implying an ellipsis, *and* (this is true) *for—not*, in which the *and* is best omitted in translation.

**ē-nūntiō, īst conj.** [nūntius, *messenger, message*], (tell out), *disclose; reveal.*

**ēō, ire, ivi or ii, itum**, *go; march; start*, V. 31, 3.

**ēō**, adv. [old dat. of **is**], (to that point), *thither; there* (in the inexact Eng. use); often better translated by a prepositional phrase, e.g. *on them*, I. 42, 5.

**ēōdem**, adv. [old dat. of **idem**], *to the same point or place; eōdem illō* (adv.) **pertinēre**, (hold along to that same place), *be along that same line, be of that same nature*, I. 14, 4; *be for that same end*, IV. 11, 4.

**ephippiātus, a, um** [ephippium], *using saddle-cloths.*

**ephippium, ī, n.** [ἐπί, *upon*, ἵππος, *horse*], (something upon a horse), *saddle-cloth.*

**epistula, ae, f.** [ἐπιστολή], *letter, despatch.*

**Eporēdorix**, *igis*, m., (1) the leader of the Aedui in their war with the Sequani before Caesar came to Gaul, VII. 67, 7; (2) a younger Aeduan chief, VII. 38, 2, etc.

**epulae**, *ārum*, f. plu., *banquet, feast*.

**eques**, *equitis*, m. [*equus*], *horseman, rider, cavalryman*; plu., *horsemen, cavalry*; as member of a social class, *knight*; at Rome, one of the moneyed class, next to the aristocracy; among the Aedui, one of the class that corresponded to this.

**equester**, *tris, tre* [*eques*], (pertaining to a horseman), *of cavalry, cavalry*.

**equitātus**, *ūs*, m. [*eques*], *cavalry*.

**equus**, *ī*, m., *horse*.

**Eratosthenēs**, *is*, m., a well-known Greek writer of the third century B.C., librarian of the great library at Alexandria; he wrote upon geography, mathematics, history, grammar, poetry, and philosophy; VI. 24, 2.

**ērēctus**, *a, um*, part. of *ērigō*.

**ēreptus**, *a, um*, part. of *ēripiō*.

**ergā**, prep. w. acc., *toward*.

**ergō**, adv., *therefore, then* (inferential).

**ē-rigō**, *rigere, rēxi, rēctum* [*regō*], *raise out of*; w. reflex., *rise*, VI. 27, 2. Perf. part. as adj., *straight, high*; *straight and high*, III. 13, 2.

**ē-ripiō**, *ripere, ripui, reptum* [*rapio*], (snatch out), *take away*; *save*, w. reflex., (free one's self), *escape*.

**errō**, 1st conj., *wander*; fig. *be mistaken, err*, V. 41, 5, VII. 29, 3.

**ē-rumpō**, *rumpere, rūpi, ruptum*,

*break out, burst forth, make a sortie*.

**ēruptiō**, *ōnis*, f. [*ērumpō*], (a breaking out), *sortie, sally; invasion, raid*, VII. 7, 2.

**essedārius**, *ī*, m. [*essedum*], (one who fights from a chariot), *man in a chariot, chariot-fighter*.

**essedum**, *ī*, n., *war-chariot* of the Britons.

**Elsuvī**, *ōrum*, m. plu., a tribe in western Gaul, probably divided into cantons, two of which were on the coast, II. 34.

**et**, coörd. conj., *and*; **et—et**, *both—and*.

**etiam**, adv. [*et, iam, already*], *also, even*; **nōn solum—sed etiam**, *not only—but also*. **quīn etiam**, *further also, in fact*.

**etsī**, subord. conj., (even if), *although*.

**ē-vādō**, *vādere, vāsi, vāsum*, (go out), *escape*.

**ē-vellō**, *vellere, velli, vulsum*, *pull out*.

**ē-veniō**, *venire, vēni, ventum*, *come out, turn out, result*.

**ēventus**, *ūs*, m. [*ēveniō*], *outcome, result*; *fate*, IV. 31, 1; *vicissitude*, VI. 42, 1.

**ē-vooō**, 1st conj. [*vōx, vōcis, voice*], *call out, summon, invite; challenge*, V. 58, 2. Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one especially summoned or reënlisted), *veteran*, VII. 65, 5, and see III. 20, 2.

**ē-volō**, 1st conj., *fly out* (fig.), *rush out*.

**ex**, *ē*, prep. w. abl., *out from, out of, less exactly, from*; in partitive expressions, *of*; *in accordance with, as a result of, in consequence of*,

*by reason of.* In comp., *out, from*, sometimes intensive (cf. Eng. "out and out") or negative from the relation of its meaning to that of the word with which it is joined. It becomes *ef* before *f*, and *ē* before *b*, *d*, *g*, *l* consonant, *l*, *m*, *n*, and *v*.

**exāctus**, *a, um*, part. of **exigō**.

**ex-agitō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **agō**], (keep driving out of one place after another), *harass*.

**exāminō**, 1st conj. [**exāmen**, *tongue* of a balance], *weigh*.

**ex-animō**, 1st conj. [**animus** or **anima**], when from **animus**, *deprive of life, kill*; perf. part. *dead*; when from **anima**, *deprive of breath, render breathless*; perf. part. *breathless, out of breath*, II. 23, 1, III. 19, 1.

**ex-ārdēscō**, **ārdēscere**, **ārsī**, **ārsum** [**ārdeō**], *begin to blaze out*; fig. *become excited, enraged, be incensed*.

**ex-audiō**, **audire**, **audivī** or **audiī**, **auditum**, *hear from a distance, overhear*.

**ex-cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cēssī**, **cēssum**, *go out of, withdraw; advance from*, V. 35, 1.

**ex-cellō**, **cellere**, **cellui**, **celsum**, (rise out of), *excel, surpass*. Perf. part. as adj., *high; long*, VI. 26, 1.

**ex-ceptō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **ex-cipiō**], *take, catch hold of*.

**ex-cidō**, **cidere**, **cidi**, **cisum** [**caedō**], (cut out), *cut down, break down*.

**ex-cipiō**, **cipere**, **cēpi**, **ceptum** [**capiō**], (take one after another), *relieve; pick up*, III. 5, 3; *receive*, VII. 28, 6; *meet*, I. 52, 4, III.

13, 1, IV. 17, 9; *catch*, VI. 28, 4, 35, 6, VII. 20, 9.

**ex-oiō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **oiō**, *cause to move*], *arouse out of anything, excite, stir up*; of fire, *feed*; of towers, *raise, erect*.

**ex-clūdō**, **clūdere**, **clūsī**, **olūsum** [**claudō**], (shut out), *cut off; prevent*.

**ex-cōgitō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **cōgō**], *think out, think of*.

**ex-cruciō**, 1st conj. [**crux**, **crucis**, *cross*], *torture*.

**excubitor**, **ōris**, *m.* [**excubō**], *sentinel, picket*, doing duty at night.

**ex-cubō**, **cubāre**, **cubui**, **cubitum**, *lie out of doors, lie under arms*; of a commander, *watch*.

**ex-oulcō**, **culcāre**, **āvi**, —, [**calx**, **calcis**, *heel*], (tread out), *pack down*.

**excursiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* [**ex-currō**, *run out*], (a running out), *sortie, sally*.

**excūsātiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* [**excūsō**], *excuse, apology*.

**ex-cūsō**, 1st conj. [**causa**], (reason out), *excuse, apologize*.

**exemplum**, *l, n.*, [**ex-imō**, from **emō**, *take*], (something taken out, a sample); *example, precedent; sort, kind*, I. 31, 12.

**ex-eō**, **ire**, (**ivi**) **ii**, **itum**, *go out, set out*; **exire dē** or **ex**, *leave*.

**ex-erceō**, **ercōre**, **ercui**, **ercitum** [**aroeō**], (keep out of anything, keep busy), *exercise, train*.

**exercitātiō**, **ōnis**, *f.* [**exercitō**], *training, practice, exercise*.

**exercitō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **exerceō**], *train thoroughly*.

**exercitus**, **ūs**, *m.* [**exerceō**], (a training), *trained, disciplined, or regular army*.

**ex-hauriō, haurire, hausī, haustum,**  
(drain out), *remove, take out.*

**ex-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum [agō],**  
(drive out), *end, finish.*

**exiguē, adv. [exiguus],** *barely, hardly.*

**exiguitās, tātis, f. [exiguus],** (smallness); w. *temporis, shortness, lack*; w. *castrorum, pellium, small size*; w. *oōpiārum, small numbers. (tanta, such.)*

**exiguus, a, um [exigō, limit],**  
*limited, small, slender.*

**eximius, a, um [eximō, take out],**  
*exceptional, high.*

**existimātiō, ōnis, f. [existimō],**  
*opinion, judgment.*

**ex-istimō, 1st conj. [aestimō, estimate, judge],** *think, consider, suppose.*

**exitus, ūs, m. [exeō, go out],** (a going out), *exit, escape, VII. 44, 4; passage, outlet, VII. 28, 3; outcome, result; close, conclusion, IV. 8, 1.*

**ex-pediō, pedire, pedivī or pedil, peditum [pēs, pedis, foot],** (get one's foot out, disentangle), *get ready, provide*; of troops, *station in readiness for assault.* Perf. part. as adj., *free, easy*; compar. *less occupied, I. 52, 7; light-armed, without baggage*; as subst., *unencumbered traveller, VI. 25, 1.*

**expeditiō, ōnis, f. [expediō],** *raid, rapid march, expedition.*

**expeditus, a, um, part. of expediō.**

**ex-pellō, pellere, pulli, pulsum,**  
*drive out, expel, banish; remove, V. 48, 10.*

**ex-perior, periri, pertus sum,** *try; wait for, III. 3, 4; fortunam, experience, endure.*

**ex-plō, 1st conj. [pius, dutiful],**  
(fill out one's duty), *atone for, wipe out.*

**ex-pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum,** *fill out, fill up, fill; make good, VII. 31, 4; reach, VII. 23, 4.*

**explōrātor, ōris, m. [explōrō],** *scout.*

**ex-plōrō, 1st conj.,** (cause to flow out), *find out; explore, reconnoitre.* Perf. part. as adj., *assured, certain*; *prō explōrātō habere, consider as certain, VI. 5, 3.*

**ex-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum,**  
*set forth, tell; disembark; array, draw up, IV. 23, 2.*

**ex-portō, 1st conj.,** *carry away, remove.*

**ex-pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, —,**  
*demand earnestly.*

**ex-primō, primere, pressī, pressum [premō],** (press out), *force from any one, extort; erect.*

**expūgnātiō, ōnis, f. [expūgnō],** *a taking by storm.*

**ex-pūgnō, 1st conj. [pūgna, hand to hand fight],** (fight and drive out), *take by storm, or, of ships, by boarding; take, overcome, VII. 10, 1.*

**expulsus, a, um, part. of expellō.**

**ex-quirō, quirere, quisivī or quisil, quisitum [quaerō],** *seek out, find out; ask, inquire, III. 3, 1.*

**ex-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum,**  
(follow up), *assert.*

**ex-serō, serere, serui, sertum,** (disjoin), *thrust out.* Perf. part. as adj., *uncovered, exposed, bare.*

**ex-sistō, sistere, stitī, —,** *stand out, project, VI. 26, 1; arise, ensue; come on, follow, III. 15, 3.*

**ex-spectō, 1st conj. [intensive of -spiciō, look],** (look out for), *wait,*

*wait to see ; wait for, await ; expect*, VI. 1, 1, 36, 2, VII. 29, 3, 43, 5, 77, 1, 85, 3.

**ex-spoliō**, 1st conj. [*spolia, spoils*], (despoil), *rob, deprive*.

**ex-stinguō**, *stinguere, stinxi, stinctum*, (punch out), *destroy*.

**ex-stō**, *stāre*, —, —, *stand out, project*.

**ex-struō**, *struere, struxi, strūctum*, (pile out), *pile up*, III. 29, 1 ; *build, erect, construct*.

**exsul**, *sulis*, c. [cf. *saliō, leap*], *exile*.

**exter** or **exterus**, a, um, compar. **exterior**, super. **extrēmus** or **extimus**, *outside ; compar. outer, exterior ; super. farthest, most distant, last ; the last part of, the extremity of, the close of, the end of, etc.* **ad extrēmum**, *finally*, IV. 4, 2. Masc. plu. as subst., *the last, i.e. those at the rear, the rear*, V. 10, 2.

**ex-terreō**, *terrere, terrui, territum*, (frighten out of one's wits), *strike with terror, terrify*.

**ex-timēscō**, *timēscere, timui*, — [inceptive of *timeō*], (begin to) *fear greatly, dread*.

**ex-torqueō**, *torquere, torui, tortum*, (twist out), *force from anyone, extort*.

**extrā**, prep. w. acc. [**ex**], *outside, outside of, beyond*.

**ex-trahō**, *trahere, traxi, trāctum*, *drag out, consume by delay*.

**extrēmus**, a, um, super. of **exter** (**exterus**).

**ex-trūdō**, *trudere, trūsi, trūsum*, *thrust out, shut out*.

**ex-uō**, *uere, ui, ūtum*, (put out), *strip, deprive (of)*.

**ex-ūrō**, *ūrere, ūssi, ūstum*, (burn out), *burn to the ground*.

## F

**faber, fabri**, m., *workman, artisan*, espec. a carpenter or a blacksmith.

**Fabius**, 1, m., (1) *Quintus Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus*, who defeated the Allobroges, Averni, and Ruteni in B.C. 121, I. 45, 2. (2) *Gaius Fabius*, a *legatus* of Caesar in Gaul, V. 24, 2, etc. (3) *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion, VII. 47, 7 ; 50, 3.

**facile**, adv., compar. **facilius**, super.

**facillimē** [*facilis*], *easily, readily*.

**facilis**, e, compar. **facilior**, super.

**facillimus** [*faciō*], *easy*.

**facinus, facinoris**, n. [*faciō*], *action, deed*, VI. 20, 2 ; *misdeed, crime*.

**faciō, facere, feci, factum** (pass. *fiō, fieri, factus sum* ; see *fiō*), *do, make ; build, construct, furnish, cause, form ; iter facere, march ; aliquem certiōrem facere*, (make anyone more certain), *inform anyone ; w. vim, use ; w. imperāta, obey ; fidem facere, give assurance*, IV. 11, 3. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., *a thing done*, VII. 80, 5 ; *deed, act ; action*, I. 42, 5.

**factiō, ōnis**, f. [*faciō*], (a taking sides) ; *party, faction*.

**factum**, 1, n. [neut. of perf. part. of *faciō*], *a thing done*, VII. 80, 5 ; *deed, act, action*, I. 42, 5.

**facultās, tātis**, f. [*facilis*, *easy* ; coördinate form of *facilitās*], (ease, facility) ; *opportunity, chance, power ; (opportunity of procuring), supply*, I. 38, 3 ; plu., *resources*.

**fāgus**, 1, f., *beech tree, beech*.

**fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum**, *deceive*.

Perf. part. as adj., *false, unfounded*.

**falsus**, a, um, part. of *fallō*.

**falx, falcis, f.** (sickle); *sickle-shaped hook*, for catching hold of anything, sometimes sharpened, as III. 14, 5.

**fāma, ae, f.** [for, *speak*], (speech); *report, rumor; reputation*, VII. 77, 15.

**famēs, is, f.** *hunger, famine, starvation*. **famem tolerāre**, (satisfy hunger), *live*, I. 28, 3.

**familia, ae, f.** [famulus, *servant*], (body of servants), *retinue*, I. 4, 2; *household, family*; **pater familiae**, (father of a family), *head of a household*, VI. 19, 3; **māter familiae**, *matron*.

**familiāris, e** [familia], *belonging to the household*; **rēs familiāris**, *private property*. Masc. as subst., *intimate friend*.

**fās**, indeclinable noun, only nom. and acc. used [for, *speak*; cf. **fātum**], (what is ordained by divine destiny, opposite of **iūs**, what is right according to men), *right*; freely, as if adj., *permissible, allowable*.

**fāstigātē**, adv. [fāstigātus, part. of fāstigō], *obliquely sloping*.

**fāstigium, l, n.**, *top*, VII. 69, 4; *slope*.

**fāstigō**, 1st conj. [fāstigium], *bring to a point*. Perf. part. as adj., *sloping*.

**fātum, l, n.** [neut. of perf. part. of for, *speak*, in pass. sense; cf. **fās**], (what is ordained by divine destiny), *fate*.

**faveō, favēre, fāvi, fautum**, *be favorable*; w. dat., *favor*.

**fax, facis, f.** *torch*.

**fefelli**, perf. of fallō.

**fēlicitās, tātis, f.** [fēlix, fēlicia, (fruitful), *lucky*], *good fortune, success*.

**fēliciter**, adv. [fēlix, fēlicia, (fruitful), *lucky*], *fortunately, successfully*.

**fēmina, ae, f.**, *woman*; *the female of animals*, VI. 26, 3.

**femur, feminis or femoria, n.**, *thigh*.

**fera, ae, fem.** of ferus, a, um.

**ferāx, ferācia, adj.** [ferō], *fertile, productive*.

**ferē**, adv., *almost; about, nearly; generally, usually*.

**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum**, *bear, carry, bring; receive; take, endure*, as w. **graviter** or **dolōre**, *be annoyed, be grieved*; w. **cāsum, exitum, fortūnam**, *suffer, experience*; w. **opiniō, oōnsuētūdō**, *be; offer*, IV. 11, 3; *call*, VI. 17, 1; pass., *flow*, IV. 10, 3; pass. as middle voice, *rush*, II. 24, 3; **signa ferre**, *march, move, advance*.

**ferrāmentum, l, n.** [ferrum], *iron tool*.

**ferrārius, a, um** [ferrum], *relating to iron*. Fem. as subst. (sc. **fodina**, *a digging*), *iron mine*.

**ferreus, a, um** [ferrum], *of iron, iron*.

**ferrum, l, n.**, *iron; sword*, V. 30, 3. (**nāscitur**, *is found*, V. 12, 5.)

**fertilis, e** [ferō], *fertile, productive*.

**fertilitās, tātis, f.** [fertilis], *fertility, productiveness*.

**ferus, a, um**, *wild, fierce, ferocious*. Fem. as subst. (sc. **bestia**, *beast*), (*wild*) *beast*.

**ferve-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum**, (make hot), *heat*. Perf. part. as adj., *red hot*, V. 43, 1; *melted*, VII. 22, 5.

**ferveō, fervēre, fervī, —, or fervō, fervere, ferbui, —**, (*seethe*), *be glowing, be red hot*.

**fībula**, ae, f. [cf. **figō**], (clasp), *brace*.

**fidēlis**, e [fidēs], *faithful, loyal*.

**fidēs**, ei, f., only nom. and acc. in plu. [cf. **fidō**, *trust*], *confidence, trust*, I. 19, 3, 41, 4, V. 54, 4, VI. 23, 8; *faithfulness, loyalty; pledge; w. permittō, veniō, sequor* (accept), **implōrō**, **recipiō**, **sum**, *protection; fidem facere*, *give a pledge*, IV. 11, 3; *make one believe anything*, V. 41, 4; VI. 41, 2; **per fidem**, *treacherously*, I. 46, 3; **fidem interpōnere**, *pledge one's honor*, V. 6, 6, 36, 2.

**fidūcia**, ae, f. [fidus, *faithful*], *trust, reliance, confidence*.

**figūra**, ae, f. [stem of **figō**], *form, shape*.

**filia**, ae, f., dat. and abl. plu. **filia-bus**, *daughter*.

**filius**, I, m., *son*.

**figō**, **ingere**, **finxi**, **fictum**, (form, shape), *invent*, VI. 37, 8; *control*, I. 39, 4; **ficta respondēre**, (answer things made up), *make up answers*, IV. 5, 3.

**finiō**, **finire**, **finivi** (**finii**), **finitum** [**finis**], *limit, bound; measure*, VI. 25, 1.

**finis**, is, m., *limit*, II. 19, 5; *end; plu., (limits), territory, boundaries*.

**finitimus**, a, um [**finis**], *neighboring, often, adjoining*. Masc. plu. as subst., *neighbors*.

**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum** [pass. of **faciō**, *make, do*], *be made, be done; happen, become*.

**firmiter**, adv. [**firmus**], *firmly*.

**firmitūdō**, **dinis**, f. [**firmus**], *strength, rigidity*.

**firmō**, 1st conj. [**firmus**], (make firm), *secure, strengthen*.

**firmus**, a, um, *strong, firm; effective*, VII. 60, 2.

**fistūca**, ae, f., *rammer; some kind of pile-driver*.

**Flaccus**, I, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus*, proprætor of the province of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. 47, 4.

**flāgitō**, 1st conj., *demand urgently*.

**flamma**, ae, f., *fire, flame*.

**flectō**, **flectere**, **flexi**, **flexum**, *bend, turn, trans.; w. reflex., bend, turn, intrans.*

**flēns**, **flentis**, part. of **fleō**.

**fleō**, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētum**, *weep, cry; pres. part., (weeping), with tears*.

**flētus**, ūs, m. [**fleō**], *weeping, wailing; māgnō flētū*, *with many tears*.

**flō**, 1st conj., *blow*.

**flōreō**, **flōrēre**, **flōrui**, — [**flōs**], (bloom), *flourish*, IV. 3, 3; pres. part. as adj., *prosperous, in a prosperous condition*, I. 30, 3; *influential*, VII. 32, 4.

**flōs**, **flōris**, m., *flower*.

**flūctus**, ūs, m. [**fluō**], (a flowing), *wave; water, sea*, IV. 28, 3.

**flūmen**, **minis**, n. [**fluō**], (that which flows), *river*.

**fluō**, **fluere**, **fluxi**, (**fluxus**), *flow*.

**fodiō**, **fodere**, **fōdi**, **fossum**, *dig*.

**foedus**, **eris**, n., *treaty, league*.

**fore**, occasional form for **futūrus**, a, um **esse**, fut. infin. of **sum**.

**foris**, adv., (out doors), *outside, without*.

**fōrma**, ae, f., *shape, form; construction, structure*, VII. 23, 1.

**fors**, abl. **forte** (no plu.), f., *chance, accident*. Abl. often best rendered with force of governing verb in Eng., e.g. **forte statuere**, (to de-

- cide by chance), *chance to decide*, II. 31, 4; so III. 12, 3.
- forte**, abl. of *fors*, as adv.
- fortis**, e, *brave*.
- fortiter**, adv. [**fortis**], *bravely*.
- fortitūdō**, inis, f. [**fortis**], *bravery*.
- fortuitō**, adv. [abl. of **fortuitus**, *happening by chance*, from *fors*], *accidentally*.
- fortūna**, ae, f. [**fors**], *fortune, luck, chance*, in general; *good fortune*, I. 40, 12, IV. 26, 5, VI. 37, 10, VII. 54, 4; *property, possessions*, I. 11, 6, V. 43, 4, VI. 35, 8; *interest*, VII. 8, 4.
- fortūnātūs**, a, um [**fortūna**], *fortunate, lucky*.
- forum**, i, n., *market-place*.
- fossa**, ae, f. [fem. of perf. part. of **fodiō**, *dig*, sc. *terra*], *trench, ditch, fosse*.
- fovea**, ae, f. *pit, pitfall*.
- frangō**, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctum**, (break), *crush*, I. 31, 7; *wreck, shatter*, IV. 29, 3.
- frāter**, tris, m., *brother*; often figuratively in plu. *brethren*, as term of honor, I. 33, 2, 44, 9, II. 3, 5.
- frāternus**, a; um [**frāter**], *of a brother, brotherly*; w. *nōmen*, *of brothers*, I. 36, 5.
- fraus**, **fraudis**, f., *deception*.
- fremitus**, ūs, m. [**fremō**, *roar*], *noise, din*.
- frequēns**, entis, adj., sing., *repeated*; plu., *in large numbers*.
- frētus**, a, um, *relying (on)*, w. abl.
- frigidus**, a, um [**frigus**], *cold*.
- frigus**, oris, n., *cold*; plu., (cold spells), in same sense.
- frōns**, **frontis**, f., *forehead*, VI. 26, 1; *front*. (*ā*, in, II. 23, 4.)
- frūctuōsus**, a, um [**frūctus**], (fruitful), *fertile, productive*.
- frūctus**, ūs, m. [**fruor**], (enjoyment, fruit); *result, fruit*; *profit, income*, VI. 19, 2.
- frūmentārius**, a, um [**frūmentum**], *relating to grain*; *productive of grain*, I. 10, 2; *rēs frūmentāria*, *supply of grain, supplies*.
- frūmentātiō**, ōnis, f. [**frūmentor**], *procuring grain, foraging*.
- frūmentor**, 1st conj. [**frūmentum**], *procure or cut grain, forage*.
- frūmentum**, i, n. [**fruor**], *grain*; plu. usually *grain in the fields, standing grain*.
- fruor**, **frui**, **frūctus sum**, *enjoy*, w. abl.
- frūstrā**, adv., *in vain, ineffectually, without effect*. (*sūmō*, *expend*, III. 14, 1).
- frūx**, **frūgis**, f., mostly plu., *produce; grain, crops*.
- Fūfius**, i, m., *Gaius Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight, VII. 3, 1.
- fuga**, ae, f. [cf. **fugiō**], *flight*. in **fugam dare**, *put to flight*.
- fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitum** [cf. **fuga**], *flee*; *avoid*, VII. 30, 1.
- fugitivus**, a, um [**fugiō**], *fleeing, fugitive*. Masc. as subst., *deserter*.
- fugō**, 1st conj. [**fuga**], *put to flight, rout*.
- fūmō**, 1st conj. [**fūmus**], *smoke, send forth smoke*.
- fūmus**, i, m., *smoke*.
- funda**, ae, f., *sling*.
- funditor**, ōris, m. [**funda**], *slinger*.
- fundō**, **fundere**, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, *pour*, VII. 24, 4; *scatter, rout*, III. 6, 3.
- fūnebris**, e [**funus**], *relating to a burial or funeral*. Neut. plu. as subst., *burial or funeral rites*.

**fungor, fungi, fūnotus sum, discharge, perform; w. abl.**

**fūnia, ia, m., rope, III. 14, 6; cable.**

**fūnus, eris, n., (funeral procession), burial, funeral.**

**furor, ōris, m. [furō, rage], frenzy, rage, fury, excitement.**

**fūrtum, i, n. [fūr, thief], theft, stealing.**

**fūsilis, e [fundō, pour], (melted), fused, red-hot.**

**futūrus, a, um, part. of sum.**

## G

**Gabali, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of northeastern Gaul near the headwaters of the Allier, clients of the Arverni, VII. 7, 2, etc.**

**Gabinus, i, m., Aulus Gabinius, consul 58 B.C., I. 6, 4.**

**gaesum, i, n., a heavy Gallic javelin or spear.**

**Gālus, i, m., abbreviation G., a Roman praenomen.**

**Galba, ae, m., (1) Servius Sulpicius Galba, a legatus of Caesar, III. 1-6. (2) "king" of the Suessiones, II. 4, 7, 13, 1.**

**galea, ae, f., helmet, usually of leather.**

**Gallia, ae, f. [Gallus], Gaul; (1) in widest sense (not in Caesar), including Gallia Cisalpina and Gallia Transalpina, the latter applying to an indefinite region embracing modern France, part of Switzerland, and all the territory north of this to the Rhine; (2) in the sense merely of Gallia Transalpina, as above, e.g. I. 1, 1; (3) the central division of the latter, described in I. 1, 6.**

**Gallicus, a, um [Gallus], Gallic.**

**gallina, ae, f. [gallus, cock], hen.**

**Gallus, a, um, relating to Gaul, of Gaul, Gallic. Masc. as subst., (1) a Gaul, one of the Gauls; (2) Marcus Trebius Gallus, a Roman officer, III. 7, 4.**

**Garumna, ae, m. or f., the Garonne river, in southwestern Gaul.**

**Garumni, ōrum, m. plu., a people of Aquitania, near the sources of the Garonne, III. 27, 1.**

**Gatēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe of central Aquitania, III. 27, 1.**

**gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus sum, rejoice, be pleased, governing ind. dis.**

**gavisus, a, um, part. of gaudeō.**

**Geidumni, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.**

**Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva; on Lake Geneva at its outlet into the Rhone, I. 6, 3.**

**gener, eri, m., son-in-law.**

**generātīm, adv. [genus], by tribes.**

**gēns, gentis, f. tribe; clan, VI. 22, 2.**

**genus, generis, n., race; family, IV. 12, 4, VI. 15, 2, VII. 39, 1; kind; class, VI. 13, 1, 3, 15, 1; species, VI. 25, 5, 28, 1; method, IV. 33, 1.**

**Gergovia, ae, f., the chief city of the Averni, near the river Elaver (Allier), VII. 4, 2, etc.**

**Germānia, ae, f. [Germānus], Germany, the name applied by the Romans to all the country embraced between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.**

**Germānicus, a, um [Germānus], relating to Germany. bellum Germānicum, war with the Germans.**

**Germānus, a, um, German.** Masc. plu. as subst., *the Germans*.

**gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, bear,** carry on, e.g. w. **bellum**, wage; w. **rem**, conduct, manage (an affair); pass., *be carried on, be going on, happen*.

**gladius, I, m., sword.**

**glāns, glandis, f., (acorn), bullet,** slug, ball, of metal, VII. 81, 4, of clay, V. 43, 1.

**glōba, ae, f., (clod of earth), lump,** mass.

**glōria, ae, f., renown, fame, glory** (in), reputation (for); w. gen.

**glōrior, 1st conj. [glōria], boast (of),** w. abl. of cause.

**Gnaeus, I, m., abbreviation Gn.,** a Roman *praenomen*.

**Gobannitiō, ōnis, m.** an uncle of Vercingetorix, VII. 4, 2.

**Gorgobina, ae, f.,** a city within the Aeduan territory, settled by the Boii after the Helvetian war, VII. 9, 6.

**Graecus, a, um, Greek.** Masc. as subst., *a Greek*.

**Graiocellī, ōrum, m. plu.,** a Gallic tribe inhabiting the Graian Alps, I. 10, 4.

**grandis, e, large, great.**

**grātia, ae, f. [grātus], favor, good-**will, influence; **grātiām habēre,** be thankful; **grātiām referre,** make return; plu. *thanks, gratitude*; **grātiās agere,** thank; abl. sing. like **causā,** for the purpose, VII. 43, 2.

**grātulātiō, ōnis, f. [grātulor], con-**gratulation; joy, satisfaction. **grātulātiō fit,** congratulations are offered.

**grātulor, 1st conj. [grātus], con-**gratulate, offer congratulations.

**grātus, a, um, acceptable, pleasing,** pleasant. Neut. as subst., *a favor*, I. 44, 12.

**gravis, e, heavy,** IV. 24, 2, V. 8, 4; severe, serious; w. **aetās,** more advanced, III. 16, 2; w. **caerimōnia,** impressive, VII. 2, 2.

**gravitās, tātis, f. [gravis], weight.** V. 16, 1; importance, IV. 3, 4.

**graviter, adv. [gravis], heavily,** III. 14, 4; severely, bitterly; **graviter ferre,** be displeased.

**gravō, 1st conj. [gravis], (load);** pass. as dep., *object, hesitate*.

**Grudiī, ōrum, m. plu.,** a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

**gubernātor, ōris, m. [gubernō,** steer], pilot, helmsman, steersman.

**gustō, 1st conj. [gustus, a tasting],** taste.

## H

**habēō, habēre, habui, habitum,** have; hold, consider, regard; keep, I. 44, 10, VI. 19, 2; **cēnsum habēre,** take a census, make an enumeration, I. 29, 3; **ōrātiōnem habēre,** make a speech, deliver an address, **sē habēre,** (have itself), be, II. 19, 1.

**haesitō, 1st conj. [intensive of haereō, cling], (stick), be embar-**rassed.

**hāmus, I, m., hook,** such as could be inserted in a small stake.

**harpagō, ōnis, f. [ἀπράγην], hook** for demolishing walls, including a long, stout shaft.

**Harūdēs, um, m. plu.,** a German tribe allied to those under Ariovistus, I. 31, 10, etc.

**hand, adv.,** *not, by no means;* usually w. adverbs, though not in Bel. Gal.

**Helvēticus, a, um [Helvētius],** relating to the Helvetii, Helvetian; w. **proelium**, with the Helvetii.

**Helvētius, a, um,** of the Helvetii, Helvetian. Masc. plu. as subst., the Helvetii, the inhabitants of part of modern Switzerland, I. 1, 4, etc.

**Helvii, ōrum, m. plu.,** a tribe of the Province, on the western bank of the Rhone, VII. 7, 5, etc.

**Hercynius, a, um,** Hercynian. Fem. sing. as subst., sc. **silva**, the Hercynian forest, in southern Germany, of indefinite extent, VI. 24-28.

**hērēditās, tātis, f. [hērēs, heir],** inheritance.

**Hibernia, ae, f.,** Ireland, V. 13, 2.

**hibernus, a, um [hiems, winter],** of winter, winter. Neut. plu. as subst., sc. **castra**, winter quarters.

**hic, haec, hoc, dem. pro.,** this, plu. these; of that which is near in actual time or space, or in a narrative; thus used of anything either preceding or following immediately; often best translated by pers. pro. **hic** — **ille**, regularly the latter—the former.

**hic, adv.** [old form **heic**, loc. of pro. **hic**], here, either (lit.) of place or (fig.) of time.

**hiemō, 1st conj. [hiems],** pass the winter, winter.

**hiems (hiemps), hiemis, f.,** winter; stormy (wintry) weather, IV. 36, 2.

**hinc, adv.** [old loc. of pro. **hic**], hence, from this point.

**Hispania, ae, f. [Hispanus],** Spain.

**Hispanus, a, um,** Spanish.

**homō, hominis, c.,** (human being), man, in the generic sense; person; plu., men, fighting men, persons, people; **multitūdō hominum**, population, I. 2, 5, VI. 24, 1.

**honestus, a, um [honōs],** (regarded with honor), honored, respected; **locus honestus**, illustrious family.

**honōrificus, a, um, compar. honōrificentior, super. honōrificentissimus [honōs, faciō],** honorable.

**honōs or honor, honōris, m.,** honor, esteem, distinction; honorable position, high office, VII. 57, 3; **honōris causā**, as a mark of honor (to), II. 15, 1.

**hōra, ae, f. [ōpa],** hour, one of the twelve equal divisions of the day, opposed to the watches (**vigiliae**) of the night; the Roman hour thus varied in length with the season of the year, but the seventh always began at noon.

**horreō, horrēre, horruī, —,** (bristle), shudder at, tremble at.

**horribilis, e [horreō],** (terrible), formidable.

**horridus, a, um [horreō],** (rough, bristling), frightful.

**hortor, 1st conj.,** urge, encourage; address, III. 19, 2.

**hospes, pitis, c.,** (host), guest, I. 53, 6, VI. 23, 9; friend, through ties of hospitality.

**hospitium, i, n. [hospes],** hospitality, friendship.

**hostis, is, m.,** enemy, of the state; sing. of an individual, an enemy, one of the enemy, I. 26, 2, 44, 11, III. 6, 5, V. 28, 1, 28, 6, 36, 4;

elsewhere, sing. generically, plu. collectively, *the enemy*.

**hūc**, adv. [old loc. of pro. **hic**], *hither, to this place*; often less accurately, *here, in this place*; w. **accōdō**, **addō**, *to this or these*.

**hūmānitās**, **tātis**, f. [**hūmānus**], (humanity), *refinement*.

**hūmānus**, a, um [**homō**, *man*], (human), *civilized*.

**humilis**, e, compar. **humilior**, super. **humillimus** [**humus**, *ground*], *low*, V. 1, 2; *weak, inferior, humble*.

**humilitās**, **tātis**, f. [**humilis**], *low-ness*, V. 1, 3; *weakness, insignificance*.

## I

**I**, as numeral = 1.

**I-**, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before g.

**iaceō**, **iacēre**, **iacul**, — [intrans. of **iaciō**], (be thrown, lie prostrate), *have fallen, lie dead*. Pres. part. as subst., *one who has fallen, the fallen*, II. 27, 3, VII. 25, 3.

**iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcō**, **iactum**, *throw*; w. **ancorās**, *cast, drop; throw up, construct*, II. 12, 5.

**iactō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **iaciō**], *cast, toss; discuss*, I. 18, 1; *wrench, jerk back and forth*, I. 25, 4.

**iactūra**, ae, f. [**iaciō**], (a throwing away), *loss; sacrifice, concession*, VI. 12, 2.

**iaculum**, i, n. [**iaciō**], *javelin*.

**iam**, adv., of present time *now*, of past time *already*, of future time *presently*, always denoting time relative to the verb with which it is connected; perhaps in the sense of

*actually*, III. 17, 6; w. negatives, *any longer*, e.g. **neque iam**, *and no longer*, IV. 13, 1; similarly II. 20, 4, 25, 1.

**ibi** or **ibi**, adv., *there, in that place*.

**Icoius**, i, m., a leader of the Remi, II. 3, 1, etc.

**Ictus**, ūs, m. [**icō**], *strike*, *blow, force*; w. **scorpiōnis**, *shot*.

**Id.**, abbreviation for **Idūs**.

**id-circō**, adv. [**id**, neut. acc. of **is**, w. abl. of **circus**, cf. **circum**], (about this), *on this account, for this reason*.

**Idem**, **eadem**, **idem**, gen. **ēiusdem**, etc., dem. pro., *the same*; best translated *again*, I. 32, 3; *likewise*, VI. 13, 5. (**atque**, following **Idem**, as, II. 6, 2.)

**identidem**, adv. [**idem et idem**], *again and again, repeatedly*.

**idōneus**, a, um, *suitable*.

**Idūs**, **Iduum**, f. plu., *the Ides*, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of other months.

**Ignis**, is, m., *fire; camp-fire*, II. 7, 4; *signal fire, beacon*, II. 33, 3.

**I-gnōbilia**, e [in-; (g)nōbilia, *known*], (unknown), *obscure*.

**I-gnōminia**, ae, f. [in-; (g)nōmen, *name*], (loss of one's good name), *disgrace*.

**I-gnōrō**, 1st conj. [**I-gnārus**, *unacquainted*; cf. **ignōscō**, **ignōtus** for vowel change], *be unacquainted with, be ignorant of, not know*; pass., *be unknown, be overlooked*, I. 27, 4.

**I-gnōscō**, **gnōscere**, **gnōvī**, **gnōtum** [in-], (not to know), *pardon*; w. dat.

**I-gnōtus**, a, um [in-; (g)nōtus, part.

of (g)nōscō, *know*], (unknown), *unfamiliar, strange*.

**il-**, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **l**.  
**illātus**, a, um, part. of **inferō**.

**ille**, **illa**, **illud**, gen. **illius**, etc., demon. pro. *that*, plu. *those*; used of that which is remote in space or time, usually referring to a preceding word; **hic—ille**, *the latter—the former*; contrasted also with **ipse**; when used substantively, often best translated by an emphatic *he, she it*, etc.

**illīc**, adv. [old loc. of **ille**], *there, in that place*.

**il-ligō**, 1st conj., (bind on to), *bind fast*, V. 45, 4; *bind, fasten*, IV. 17, 7.

**illō**, adv. [old dat. of **ille**], *thither, to that place*, **eōdem** (adv.) **illō pertinēre**, (hold along to that same place), *be along that same line, be of the same nature*, I. 14, 4; *be for that same end*, explained by following clause, IV. 11, 4.

**il-lūstris**, e [lūx, *light*], *conspicuous, distinguished*.

**Illyricum**, l, n., the country along the eastern coast of the Adriatic, a part of Caesar's province, now Istria and Dalmatia, II. 35, 2, III. 7, 1, V. 1, 5.

**im-**, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **b**, **m**, and **p**.

**imbēcillitās**, tātis, f. [im-bēcillus, *weak*, probably from **bacillus**, *staff*], *weakness, feebleness*.

**imber**, bris, m., *rain, shower, rain-storm*.

**imitor**, 1st conj., *copy, imitate*.

**im-mānis**, e, *huge, immense, enormous*.

**im-mineō**, minēre, —, —, (overhang), *be close at hand*.

**im-mittō**, mittere, misi, missum, (send or let go into); w. **equitātum**, *send against*; w. **pilum**, *hurl*; *let down*, IV. 17, 4; *set in between*, IV. 17, 6; *send down*, IV. 17, 10.

**im-molō**, 1st conj. [**mola**, *meal*], (sprinkle meal upon a victim for sacrifice); *sacrifice*.

**im-mortālis**, e [in-; **mors**, *death*], (not liable to death), *immortal*.

**im-mūnis**, e [in-; **mūnus**, *duty*], (without task); *exempt from tribute*.

**im-mūnitās**, tātis, f. [immūnis], (freedom from tasks); *exemption, immunity*.

**im-parātus**, a, um [in-; **parō**, *prepare*], *unprepared*.

**impedimentum**, l, n. [impediō], *hindrance*; plu., (the things that hinder an army), *baggage, baggage-train*.

**im-pediō**, pedire, pedivi (pedi), **pedītum** [pēs, *foot*], (cause some one's foot to be entangled); *hinder, encumber, embarrass, interfere with*; *engage*, V. 7, 5; pass., *be at a disadvantage*, II. 9, 1. Perf. part., besides being used strictly as such, is also used as an adj. as follows: *impassable, inaccessible*, III. 28, 4, V. 19, 1, 21, 3, VI. 8, 3, 34, 2, VII. 19, 1; *difficult*, III. 9, 4, V. 7, 3; **nihil impeditum**, *no obstacle*, II. 28, 1.

**impeditus**, a, um, part. of **impediō**.

**im-pellō**, pellere, puli, pulsum, (drive on), *incite, urge, influence*.

**im-pendeō**, pendere, —, —, *overhang*; meaning in the case of a mountain, *rise abruptly close by*.

**im-pendō**, pendere, pendi, pēn-

- sum**, (weigh out money for something, pay out). Perf. part. as adj. w. **pretium**, *heavy, high*.
- impēnsus**, a, um, part. of **impendō**.
- imperātor**, ōris, m. [**imperō**, *command*], *commander, commander-in-chief*.
- imperātum**, l, n. [neut. of perf. pass. part. of **imperō**], (a thing commanded), *order, command*. (**faciō**, *execute, obey*.)
- im-perfectus**, a, um [**in-**; **perficiō**, *complete*], *incomplete, unaccomplished*.
- im-peritus**, a, um [**in-**], (unskilled), *inexperienced, unacquainted (with)*, w. gen.; **imperitus rērum**, *ignorant of events, unpractical*.
- imperium**, l, n. [cf. **imperō**], *command, order; power, control; dominion*, IV. 16, 4; plu., *authority*, V. 27, 3; **nova imperia**, (new forms of government), *revolution*, II. 1, 3.
- im-perō**, 1st conj. [**parō**, *prepare*], (prepare upon), *impose, levy; give orders to, command; rule, exercise authority over*, I. 31, 12, 36, 1.
- im-petrō**, 1st conj. [**patrō**, *execute*], *obtain one's request; when obj. is expressed, obtain by request*.
- im-petus**, ūs, m. [**petō**, *seek*, cf. Eng. "go for"], *charge, assault, attack, onset; impetuosity*, V. 18, 5; *fury, force*, III. 8, 1, 13, 6, IV. 17, 5; *rush*, VII. 28, 2.
- im-plus**, a, um [**in-**; **plus**, *dutiful*], *wicked, impious*.
- im-plicō**, **plicāre**, **plicāvī** or **plicuī**, **plicātum** or **plicitum**, (fold in); *entwine, interweave*.
- im-plōrō**, 1st conj., (cry out for), *beseech, implore; beg, seek*.
- im-pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, *place upon*, I. 42, 5, 51, 3 (**eō**, *adv., upon these*); w. **stipendium**, *levy, impose; hurry on board*, VII. 58, 4.
- im-portō**, 1st conj., *bring in, import*.
- im-probus**, a, um [**in-**], (not good); *wicked, malicious*.
- imprōvisō**, adv. [abl. of **imprōvisus**, sc. **tempore**], *unexpectedly, suddenly*.
- im-prōvisus**, a, um [**in-**; **prōvideō**, *foresee*], *unforeseen*. **dē imprōvisō**, adverbial phrase as adv., *unexpectedly, suddenly*.
- im-prūdēns**, entis, adj. [**in-**; **prūdēns** = **prōvidēns**, pres. part. of **prō-vidēō**, *foresee*], (not foreseeing); (*being*) *off one's guard, (when) off one's guard*.
- imprudentia**, ae, f. [**imprūdēns**], (lack of foresight); *indiscretion*.
- im-pūbēs**, beris, adj. [**in-**], (not full grown); *chaste, unmarried*.
- im-pūgnō**, 1st conj., *attack, assail; press forward*, III. 26, 4.
- impulsus**, a, um, part. of **impellō**.
- impulsus**, ūs, m. [**impellō**], (a driving on); *instigation*.
- impūne**, adv. [**im-pūnis**, *unpunished*, from **in-**, and **poena**, *punishment*], *without punishment, with impunity*.
- impūnitas**, tātis, f. [**im-pūnis**, *unpunished*, from **in-**, and **poena**, *punishment*], *exemption from punishment, impunity*.
- imus**, a, um, super. of **inferus**.
- in**, prep. w. acc. and abl. (1) With acc., *into*, less exactly *to, toward*, of motion toward: hence of hostile relations, *against*; w. terms of ex-

tent, *lātitudinem*, *longitudinem*, *altitudinem*, *partem* (IV. 17, 7), *quincūncem*, *in*; of purpose, design, *for*, e.g. I. 3, 2, 30, 4, etc.; w. *iūs*, *potestātem*, *over*.—(2) With abl., *in*; less exactly, *at*, *on*, *upon*, *over*, *among*; w. names of tribes, *among*, *in the country of*; *in the case of*, *about*, *in connection with*; *considering*, *in view of*; *within*.—(3) In comp., *in* generally becomes *il-* before *e*, *im-* before *b*, *m*, *p*, *ir-* before *r*; it may have the force of any of the meanings mentioned in (1) and (2).

*in-*, inseparable prefix, giving negative force—generally to nouns and adjectives. In assimilation it may have any of the forms of the preposition *in*.

*inānis*, *e*, *empty*; *hollow*, VII. 19, 3.

*incautē*, adv. [*incautus*], *carelessly*.

*in-cautus*, *a*, *um* [*in-*; *oaveō*, *be on one's guard*], *off one's guard*, *unsuspecting*.

*incendium*, *l*, *n*. [*incendō*], *fire*, *burning*, *conflagration*.

*in-cendō*, *cendere*, *cendī*, *cēsum*, *set fire to*; *burn*; fig., *excite*, *rouse*, *fire*, VII. 4, 1.

*incēsus*, *a*, *um*, part. of *incendō*.

*inceptus*, *a*, *um*, part. of *incipiō*.

*in-certus*, *a*, *um* [*in-*], *uncertain*; w. *rūmor*, *untrustworthy*; w. *ōrdinēs*, *in confusion*; w. *iter*, *vague*.

*in-cidō*, *cidere*, *cidī*, *cāsum* [*cadō*], *fall upon*, VI. 30, 2; *fall into the hands (in, of)*, I. 53, 5, *happen*, *occur*.

*in-cidō*, *cidere*, *cidī*, *cīsum* [*caedō*], *cut into*.

*in-cipiō*, *cipere*, *cēpī*, *ceptum* [*capiō*], (*take into*), *begin*.

*incisus*, *a*, *um*, part. of *incidō*.

*in-citō*, 1st conj. [intensive of *oleō*, *move*], (*put in quick motion*), *urge on*, *urge*; of ships, *drive*, *propel*; w. reflex., *come in*, III. 12, 1; *come down*, IV. 17, 7. Perf. part., *aroused*, *excited*.

*in-cōgnitus*, *a*, *um* [*in-*; *cōgnōscō*, *ascertain*], *unknown*.

*in-colō*, *colere*, *colui*, —, *live in*, *dwelt in*, *inhabit*; intrans., *live*, *dwelt*.

*in-columbia*, *e*, *unharmful*, *safe*; *without loss*.

*in-commodē*, adv. [*incommodus*], (*inconveniently*), *unfortunately*.

*in-commodus*, *a*, *um* [*in-*; *cum*, *with*, *modus*, *measure*], (*inconvenient*). Neut. as subst., *disadvantage*, V. 35, 5, VII. 16, 3, 33, 1, 45, 9; *disaster*, *loss*, *reverse*.

*in-crēdibilis*, *e* [*in-*; *crēdō*, *believe*], *unbelievable*, *incredible*, *extraordinary*.

*in-crepitō*, *āre*, —, — [intensive of *in-crepō*, *rebuke*], *reproach*, *upbraid*; *taunt*, II. 30, 3.

*in-cumbō*, *cumbere*, *cubi*, *cubitum* [*cubō*, *lie*], (*bend forward to*); *apply or devote one's self*.

*in-cursiō*, *ōnis*, *f*. [*in-currō*, *run upon*, *invasion*, *inroad*, *raid*].

*incursus*, *ūs*, *m*. [*in-currō*, *run upon*], *charge*, *attack*, *onset*; *assault*, *rush*, VII. 36, 7.

*in-cūsō*, 1st conj. [*causa*], (*make charge against*), *blame*, *reproach*.

*inde*, adv., *thence*; *from that place*; *from that point*, IV. 21, 3, 25, 1, 33, 3; *then*, II. 19, 3, VII. 48, 1.

**indictum**, I, n. [**indico**, *point out*], *information, evidence*; by metonymy, *informers*, I. 4, 1.

**in-dico**, *dicere*, **dixi**, *dictum*, (proclaim); *call, summon*.

**indictus**, a, um, part. of **indico**.

**in-dictus**, a, um [**in-**; **dico**] (unspoken); *unheard*, VII. 38, 2.

**indignē**, adv. [**indignus**], *unworthily, shamefully*.

**indignitās**, *tātis*, f. [**indignus**], (unworthiness); *indignity, outrage; disgrace*, VII. 56, 2.

**indignor**, 1st conj. [**indignus**], (consider unworthy), *be angry*.

**in-dignus**, a, um [**in-**], *unworthy*.

**in-diligēns**, *entis* [**in-**; **diligēns**, pres. part. of **diligō**, *choose*], (not choosing); *negligent, careless, heedless*.

**indiligenter**, adv. [**indiligēns**], *carelessly*.

**indiligentia**, ae, f. [**indiligēns**], (carelessness); *negligence*.

**in-dūcō**, *dūcere*, **dūxi**, *ductum*, (lead on); *influence, induce; cover*, II. 33, 2.

**inductus**, a, um, part. of **indūcō**.

**indulgentia**, ae, f. [**indulgēns**, pres. part. of **indulgeō**], *indulgence, leniency*.

**in-dulgeō**, *dulgēre*, **dulsi**, *ductum*, (be kind to); *favor, indulge*, w. dat.

**in-duō**, *duere*, **dulsi**, *dūtum*, *put on*, II. 21, 5; w. reflex., *impale one's self*.

**industriō**, adv. [**industrius**, *active*], *energetically*.

**indūtiae**, *ārum*, f. plu., *truce, armistice*.

**Indutiomārus**, I, m., a chief of the

Treveri, rival of Cingetorix, and opponent of Caesar. V. 3, 2; death described, V. 58, 6.

**in-eō**, *ire*, **ivi** or **ii**, *itum*, (go into, enter); *enter upon, form*; w. **grātiā**, *gain*; **initā aestāte**, (the summer having been gone into), *at the beginning of summer*; so w. **hieme**, **vigiliā**; w. **numerus**, *enter*.

**in-ermis**, e [**in-**; **arma**, *arms*], *unarmed, without one's arms*.

**in-ers**, *ertis*, adj. [**in-**; **ars**, *skill*], (unskilful); *unmanly, shiftless*.

**in-**, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before f and s.

**in-fāmia**, ae, f. [**in-**; **fāma**, *reputation*], *disrepute*, VI. 23, 6; *dishonor*, VII. 56, 2.

**in-fāns**, *antis*, adj. [**in-**; **fāns**, pres. part. of **for**, *speak*], (not speaking). Masc. or fem. as subst., *child, infant*.

**in-fectus**, a, um [**in-**; **faciō**, *do, make*], *unfinished*. **rē infectā**, (the thing being unfinished), *without accomplishing one's purpose*.

**inferior**, us, compar. of **inferus**.

**in-ferō**, *ferre*, **in-tuli**, *il-lātum*, *bring in, import*, II. 15, 4; w. **bellum**, *wage* (offensive) *war*; w. **alacritātem**, **terrōrem**, **spem**, *inspire*; w. **iniūriam**, **calamitātem**, **vulnera**, *inflict*; w. **signa**, *advance*; w. **cōversa signa**, (advance the standards turned), *change front and advance*, I. 25, 7, II. 26, 1; *cause*, V. 16, 3; *put*, VI. 19, 4; *set*, VII. 22, 4; *lift*, VI. 30, 4.

(**inferus**, a, um,) compar. **inferior**, super. **infimus** or **imus**, (*below*), compar., *lower; inferior*, II. 8, 3;

used of the more *westerly* cape of Britain, V. 13, 1; super., (the lowest part of), *the base of, the bottom of*; **ab infimō**, *at the bottom*, **ad infimum**, *toward the bottom*, VII. 73, 5; **ab Imō**, *from the bottom*, III. 19, 1; *at the lower end*, IV. 17, 3. **In-fēstus**, a, um, *hostile, threatening*. **signis infēstis**, (with threatening standards), *ready to charge*. **In-ficiō**, **ficere**, **fēci**, **fectum** [**faciō** *do, make*], (put on to), *stain*. **In-fidēlis**, e [**in-**; **fidēs**, *faith*], *unfaithful, unreliable*. **In-figō**, **figere**, **fixi**, **fixum**, *fix in, insert*. **Infimus**, a, um, super. of **Inferus**. **In-finitus**, a, um [**in-**; **finiō**, *limit*], (unlimited); *immense, vast; countless*. **Infirmitas**, tātis, f. [**Infirmus**], *weakness*, VII. 26, 3; *fickleness*. **In-firmus**, a, um, [**in-**], (not strong), *weak; depressed*, III. 24, 3. **In-flectō**, **flectere**, **flexi**, **flexum**, *bend over, bend*. **Inflexus**, a, um, part. of **Inflectō**. **In-fluō**, **fluere**, **fluxi**, **fluxum**, *flow into, empty into*. **In-fodiō**, **fodere**, **fodi**, **fossum**, (dig and put a thing into the hole), *bury*. **Infrā**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [for **Inferā**, sc. **parte**], *below*; either literally or in transferred sense, e.g. *smaller than*, VI. 28, 1. **In-gēns**, **gentis**, adj. [**in-**; **gen**, stem of (g)nāscor, **genus**, etc.], (not natural), *enormous, vast*. **In-grātus**, a, um [**in-**], *unacceptable, displeasing*. **In-gredior**, **gredi**, **gressus sum** [**gradior**, *step*], (go into), *enter*.

**In-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **injiō**), **ioere**, **iēci**, **iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw into), *inspire; place upon*, IV. 17, 8. **Iniectus**, a, um, part. of **Iniciō**. **Inimicitia**, ae, f. [**inimicus**], (unfriendliness), *hostility, feud*. **In-imicus**, a, um, [**in-**; **amicus**, *friendly*], (unfriendly), personally hostile. Masc. as subst., *rival*, V. 44, 9, 14; *personal enemy*, I. 10, 2. **Iniquitās**, tātis, f. [**iniquus**], (unevenness, unfairness), *unfavorable character; tanta rerum iniquitās*, *such varied circumstances*, II. 22, 2; **condiōnis iniquitās**, *inequality (of condition) of the conditions*, VII. 19, 3; *misconduct*, VII. 19, 5. **In-iquus**, a, um [**in-**; **aequus**, *even*], (uneven), *unfavorable; unfair, unjust*, I. 44, 4, 8. **initium**, I, n. [**ineō**, *begin*], *beginning*; w. **silvārum**, *edge*; w. **Rēmōrum**, *frontier*; plu., *elements*, VI. 17, 2. **initus**, a, um, part. of **ineō**. **In-iungō**, **iungere**, **iūxi**, **iūctum**, (join on), *impose*. **iniūria**, ae, f. [**iniūrus**, *wrong*, from **in-**, and **iūs**, *right*], *wrong, injustice*, I. 12, 7, 14, 2, 20, 5, 36, 4, IV. 8, 2; *damage, injury, outrage*; abl. of manner, *unjustly*, I. 35, 3, 36, 5. **In-iūssū**, adv. [**in-**; **iūssū**, *by one's order*], *without an order*; modified by poss. pro. or gen., as though, like **iūssū**, still a noun, **suō et civitātis**, *without his order or (that) of the state*. **In-nāscor**, **nāsci**, **nātus sum**, (be born in), *be inborn, be ingrained*.

**in-nītor**, nīti, nixus or nixus sum, *rest upon, lean on*, w. abl. of means.

**innixus**, a, um, part. of innītor.

**in-nocēns**, entis, adj. [in-; noceō, *harm*], (not harming, harmless). Masc. and fem. as subst., *an innocent person*; plu., *the innocent*, VI. 9, 7, 16, 5.

**innocentia**, ae, f. [innocēns], (blamelessness), *integrity*.

**in-opia**, ae, f. [in-; opa, *aid*], lack of resources), *lack, want, need, scarcity*.

**in-opināns**, antis, adj. [in-; opinor, *be of opinion*], *not expecting, unaware*; when modifying an object, often rendered by adverb, *unexpectedly, unawares*.

**inquam**, inquis, inquit, defective verb, *say*, used only within direct quotation.

**in-sciēns**, entis, adj. [in-; sciō, *know*], *not knowing*; w. ipsa, in abl. abs., (themselves not knowing), *without their knowledge*, I. 19, 1; so V. 7, 5.

**inscientia**, ae, f. [insciēns], (lack of knowledge), *ignorance, lack of acquaintance (with); foolishness, folly*, III. 19, 3.

**in-scius**, a, um [in-; sciō, *know*], *not knowing, ignorant; unaware*, or, translating by adv., *unawares*, IV. 4, 5.

**insecutus**, a, um, part. of insequor.

**in-sequor**, sequi, secutus sum, (*follow upon*), *follow up, pursue*.

**in-serō**, serere, serui, sertum, (*bind into*), *insert*.

**insidiae**, ārum, f. plu. [in-sideō, *sit in wait for*], *ambuscade*, III. 20,

4, V. 32, 1; *stratagem; per insidias, by stratagem*.

**insidior**, 1st conj. [insidiae], *lie in ambush, lie in wait*.

**in-signia**, e [signum, *sign, mark*], (having a sign or mark upon it); *marked, signal*, I. 12, 6. Neut. as subst., *sign, signal*, II. 20, 1, VII. 50, 2, 88, 1; plu. *ornaments, decorations, insignia*.

**in-siliō**, siliire, silui, —, [siliō], *leap upon*.

**in-simulō**, 1st conj. [similis, *like*], (make suspected), *charge (with), accuse (of)*, w. gen.

**in-sinuō**, 1st conj. [sinus, *fold*], *wind in, work in*; w. reflex. same meanings, intrans.

**in-sistō**, sistere, stiti, —, (*stand upon*); *take one's stand, take a stand; follow, pursue*, III. 14, 3; *devote one's self (tōtus, wholly)*, VI. 5, 1.

**insolenter**, adv. [insolēns, entis, adj., *unaccustomed, immoderate*, from in-, and soleō, *be accustomed*], (*immoderately*), *haughtily*.

**in-spectō**, 1st conj. [intensive of inspiciō, *look at*], (*gaze at*), *watch, look on*.

**in-stabilis**, e [in-; stō, *stand*], (*not able to stand*), *unstable, unsteady*.

**in-star**, n., indeclin. [stō, *stand*], *image, likeness*; w. mūrī, (*the likeness of a wall*), *like a wall*.

**in-stigō**, 1st conj., *goad on, stimulate*.

**in-stituō**, istituere, stitui, stitutum [statuō, *cause to stand*], (*put in place*), *establish; undertake, begin; prepare*, V. 11, 4, 40, 6; *prepare for*, IV. 18, 4; *procure*, III. 9, 1; w.

**aciem**, *draw up; train, teach*, I. 14, 7; *plan*, VI. 3, 4, 44, 3. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., (a thing established), *institution, custom; plan*.

**Institūtum**, I, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **institūō**, as subst.], (a thing established), *institution, custom; plan*.

**Institūtus**, a, um, part. of **institūō**.

**In-stō**, *stāre*, *stiti*, *stātum*, (stand upon); *press forward; be close at hand*, I. 16, 5. Pres. part. as adj., *immediate*, VI. 4, 3.

**Instrūmentum**, I, n. [**instruō**], (means of constructing, tool); w. **militāre**, *weapon*, VI. 30, 2; *furnishing*, V. 31, 4.

**In-struō**, *struere*, *struxi*, *strūctum*, *build, construct*, II. 30, 3; of ships, *equip; arrange, draw up*.

**Insuēfactus**, a, um [**Insuē**, stem of **Insuēscō**, *become accustomed*, **faciō**, *make*], (made accustomed), *trained* (to enter the water, IV. 24, 3).

**In-suētus**, a, um [**in-**; **suēscō**, *become accustomed*], *unaccustomed* (to), w. gen.

**Insula**, ae, f., *island*.

**In-super**, adv., ("on top"), *above*.

**In-teger**, *gra*, *grum* [**in-**; **teg**, stem of **tangō**, *touch*], (untouched), *whole, complete, not damaged, unimpaired*; of men, often as subst., *fresh, with unimpaired strength*; **rē integrā**, (the thing being untouched), *before any action was taken*.

**In-tegō**, *tegere*, *tēxi*, *tēctum*, *cover over, cover*.

**intel-**, form of **inter** in comp. before l.

**intel-legō**, *legere*, *lēxi*, *lēctum*,

(pick out between or among); *understand*.

**in-tendō**, *tendere*, *tendi*, *tentum* (**tēnsūm**), (stretch upon); *direct toward*. Perf. part. as adj., (intent), *occupied* (with), III. 22, 1; translated as adv., *intently*, VII. 80, 2.

**intentus**, a, um, part. of **intendō**.

**inter**, prep. w. acc., of two, *between*, of more than two, *among; within, for*, I. 36, 7; less exactly, *in the midst of, in*. **inter sē**: *dare, exchange; w. contendere, colloqui, iungere, commūnēs, with each other; w. agere, between them; w. cohortārī, each other; w. differre, from each other; w. sancire, mutually; w. cōniūrāre, together*.

In comp., *among, between, in the midst, asunder, at intervals*.

**inter-cēdo**, *cēdere*, *cēssi*, *cēssum*, (go between); *be between; intervene*, I. 7, 6; *exist between*, I. 43, 6, *occur between*, w. dat. V. 11, 9 (**cum**, *and*); *elapse*, V. 53, 5.

**inter-cipiō**, *cipere*, *cēpi*, *ceptum* [**capiō**], (take between); *intercept; cut off*, V. 39, 2.

**inter-clūdō**, *clūdere*, *clūsi*, *clūsum* [**claudō**], (shut between); *cut off*.

**inter-dicō**, *dicere*, *dixi*, *dictum*, (put a command between a person and his desire); w. obj. clause, *warn; forbid*, w. abl. translated as direct obj., I. 46, 4; *exclude, cut off*.

**inter-diū**, adv. [connected w. **diēs**, *day*], *during the day, by day, in the daytime*.

**inter-dum**, adv., ("between whiles"), *for a while*, I. 14, 5; *sometimes*.

**inter-eā**, adv. [old case form of **is**],

- (in the midst of this), *meanwhile, meantime.*
- inter-eō, ire, il, itum,** (go among other things, be lost); *perish.*
- inter-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum,** [faciō], (put among other things, put out of the way), *kill.*
- inter-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **interjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, lectum,** [iaciō], (throw between); *place between; pass., intervene; occur at intervals, III. 8, 1.*
- interiectus, a, um,** part. of **inter-iciō.**
- interim,** adv. [inter], *meanwhile, meantime.*
- interior, ua,** compar. adj., super.
- intimus** [inter], *inner, interior; masc. and fem. plu., as subst., those who live in the interior, V. 14, 2; those in the town, VII. 82, 3; 86, 4.*
- interitus, ūa, m.** [intereō], *death, destruction.*
- inter-mittō, mittere, misī, missum,** (let go between); *interrupt, discontinue; stop, cease, II. 25, 1, IV. 31, 1; let pass, permit to elapse; pass., intervene, e.g. I. 27, 4; separate, VII. 23, 3.*
- interneciō, ōnis, f.** [inter-necō, *destroy*], *utter destruction, annihilation.*
- inter-pellō, 1st conj.** [cf. **pellō, ere**], (drive into), *disturb.*
- inter-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum,** (put between), *interpose, IV. 9, 3, 11, 4; fidem interpōnere, pledge one's honor; pass., intervene, VI. 38, 5; appear, IV. 32, 1. Perf. part. as adj., alleged, I. 42, 5.*
- inter-pres, pretis, m.,** (one who explains between), *interpreter.*
- interpretor, 1st conj.** [interpres], *explain.*
- inter-rogō, 1st conj.,** (ask into), *question.*
- inter-rumpō, rumpere, rūpl, ruptum,** (break asunder), *break down, destroy.*
- inter-scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum,** (cut asunder), *break down, destroy.*
- inter-sum, esse, fui, futurus,** *be between, I. 15, 5, VI. 36, 2; be concerned with, VI. 13, 4; take part, IV. 16, 2, VII. 87, 5. Impersonal, it concerns, II. 6, 2; w. māgnī, gen. of value, it is of great importance; it makes a difference, VII. 14, 8.*
- inter-vāllum, 1, n.** [vāllum, *rampart*], (space between two walls); *distance, interval.*
- inter-veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum,** (come into the midst), *arrive; appear upon the scene, VI. 37, 1.*
- interventus, ūa, m.** [interveniō], *arrival, intervention.*
- in-texō, texere, texuī, textum,** (weave in), *interweave, plait.*
- intoleranter, adv.** [intolerāna, *impatient*, from in- and tolerō, *bear*], *recklessly.*
- intrā, adv. and prep. w. acc.** [for **interā**, old abl. of **interus**, pos. of **interior**, sc. **parte**], *within, inside; of time, before, VI. 21, 5.*
- in-tritus, a, um** [in-; **terō, rub**], (unworn), *unfatigued, fresh.*
- intrō-, adv.,** used in comp., *inside, within.*
- intrō, 1st conj.** [cf. **inter, intrā, intrō**], *enter.*

**intrō-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum,**  
*lead into, introduce.*

**intro-eō, ire, ii, —, go inside,**  
*come in.*

**introitus, ūs, m. [introeō],** (an  
entering); *entrance.*

**intrō-mittō, mittere, misi, missum,**  
*send inside; let in, V. 58, 1.*

**intrōrsus, adv. [contracted from**  
**intrō-versus, turned toward the**  
**inside], inside, within.**

**intrō-rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, rup-**  
**tum, break into, burst into.**

**in-tueor, tuēri, tuitus sum, look**  
**upon, gaze at.**

**intuli, perf. of inferō.**

**intus, adv. [in], within, inside.**

**in-ūsītātus, a, um [in-; ūsītōr,**  
**intensive of ūtor, use], (unusual),**  
**strange, new, unfamiliar.**

**in-ūtilis, e, [in-], useless, of no use;**  
**unsuitable, VII. 27, 1.**

**in-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum,**  
**(come upon); find; find out, learn.**

**inventor, ōris, m. [inveniō], (one**  
**who comes upon anything), origi-**  
**nator, discoverer, inventor.**

**in-veterāscō, veterāscere, vete-**  
**rāvi, — [vetus, old], (grow old**  
**in); gain a permanent foothold, II.**  
**1, 3; become established.**

**in-victus, a, um [in-; vincō, con-**  
**quer], unconquered; hence, less**  
**exactly, invincible.**

**in-videō, vidēre, vidi, visum**  
**(look askance at); envy.**

**invidia, ae, f. [invideō], envy.**

**in-violātus, a, um [in-; violō,**  
**violate], inviolable, sacred.**

**in-vitō, 1st conj. [for vocitō, in-**  
**tensive of vocō, call], (call into);**  
**invite; attract, V. 51, 1; VI. 35, 7.**

**in-vitus, a, um [in-], unwilling;**  
**best translated by adv., unwillingly,**  
**reluctantly, against one's will. eō**  
**invitō, abl. abs., (he unwilling),**  
**without his consent, against his**  
**will; so w. sē and Sēquania.**

**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive de-**  
**monstrative pro., himself, herself,**  
**itself, plu. themselves; often trans-**  
**lated by emphatic pers. pro., he,**  
**etc.; very; gen. his own, their own,**  
**etc., often in this sense merely more**  
**emphatic than suus.**

**ir-, form of in or in- in comp. be-**  
**fore r.**

**irācundia, ae, f. [irācundus], anger,**  
**VI. 5, 2; passion.**

**irācundus, a, um [irā, wrath],**  
**(liable to wrath); passionate.**

**ir-rideō, ridēre, risi, risum, laugh**  
**at (anything).**

**irridiculō, adv. [adj. irridiculus,**  
**not laughable, from in- and rideō,**  
**laugh], unwittily, without wit; nōn**  
**irridiculē, not without wit, quite**  
**wittily, humorously.**

**ir-rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptum,**  
**break into, burst into; rush into,**  
**V. 44, 4.**

**irruptiō, ōnis, f. [irrupō], (a**  
**rushing upon or into); raid, VII.**  
**7, 2; attack.**

**is, ea, id, demonstrative and pers.**  
**pro.; as weak demonstr. (generally**  
**when agreeing with a noun imme-**  
**diately following), this, that, plu.**  
**these, those, not very definite; as**  
**pers. pro. (generally when not agree-**  
**ing with anything directly), he, she,**  
**it, they, etc.; when used merely as**  
**antecedent of relative, that, those;**  
**when relative is attracted into a**

preceding clause, *this, these*; when followed by subjunct. of characteristic often translated *such*, like a weak *tālis*, e.g. III. 12, 1.

**iste, ista, istud**, demonstr. pro. (of 2d pers.), (that of yours); *that*, used with sense of contempt, VII. 77, 5.

**ita**, adv., *so, in such a manner*, referring to something either preceding or following; w. adj., *so very*, V. 47, 3, *such a very*, IV. 37, 1.

**Italia**, ae, f., *Italy*.

**ita-que**, adv., *and so, therefore, so*.

**item**, adv., *likewise, in the same way*.

**iter, itineris**, n. [eō, go], *journey*, I. 3, 4, VI. 17, 1; *march, line of march, movement*; **iter facere**, *march*; w. **dare**, *passage, permission to pass*, I. 8, 3; w. **prohibere**, *passing*; w. **tūtum**, *passage*; **ex itinere**, *while on the march*. (**māgnus**, *long, forced*).

**iterum**, adv., *again, a second time*.

**Itius**, I, m., the harbor from which Caesar sailed to Britain, probably modern Wissant, V. 2, 3, 5, 1.

**iuba**, ae, f., *mane*.

**iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussum**, *order*.

**iūdiōium**, I, n. [iūdiō], *judgment*, I. 41, 3, VI. 11, 3, 13, 10; *trial*, I. 4, 2, VI. 44, 3; abl. *deliberately*, V. 27, 3, VI. 31, 1; **optimum iūd. facere**, *express such an excellent opinion*, I. 41, 2.

**iūdiō**, 1st conj. [iūdex, iudicia, *judge, from iūs, right, diō, point out*], *judge*; *decide*, V. 44, 3; *declare*, V. 56, 3.

**iugum**, I, n. [same stem as iungō, *join*], (that which joins); *yoke*, used

in attaching horses to a chariot, IV. 33, 3; *yoke*, formed of three spears, two planted in the ground, the third across the top of these; a symbol of surrender and slavery, I. 7, 4, 12, 5; *ridge*, connecting two or more summits or forming the summit; *chain of hills, range*, VI. 40, 3, 6, VII. 36, 2, 44, 3.

**Iūlius**, I, m., a Roman family name.

**iumentum**, I, n. [for iūg-mentum, from iungō], (*yoke animal*); *draught animal, beast of burden*, applied to horses, mules, oxen.

**iūnotūra**, ae, f. [iungō], *connection*.

**iūnotus**, a, um, part. of iungō.

**iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnotum**, *join, unite*.

**iūnior, us**, compar. of iuvenia.

**Iūnius**, I, m., *Quintus Junius*, a Spaniard or a Roman from Spain, V. 27, 1, 28, 1.

**Iuppiter, Iovis**, m., *Jupiter*, the great divinity of the Romans.

**Iūra**, ae, f., the Jura mountains, a range extending northeast from the Rhone west of Lake Geneva to the Rhine, I. 2, 3.

**iūrandum**, I, neut. of gerundive of iūrō, used only with iūs, which see. **iūrō**, 1st conj. [iūs], *take oath, swear*; *take the oath*, I. 31, 8.

**iūs, iūria**, n., *right, rights; law*; **iūs iūrandum**, (*sworn duty*), *oath*.

**iūssus, ūs**, m., found only in abl. sing. [iubeō], *order, command*.

**iūstitia**, ae, f. [iūstus], *justice; fairness*, I. 19, 2, II. 4, 7.

**iūstus**, a, um [iūs], *just, rightful; regular*, VI. 19, 4, VII. 23, 4.

**iuvenia**, e, compar. iūnior [for iuvenior] or minor (nātū), super.

**minimus** (nātū), *young*. Compar. masc. plu. as subst., *the men of military age*, i.e. between seventeen and forty-six years, VII. 1, 1.

**iuventūs, tūtis**, f. [*iuvenis*], (youth, primarily abstract, then collective); *young men, men of military age*, i.e. between seventeen and forty-six years.

**iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum**, *help, assist, aid*.

**iuxtā**, adv., *near by, close by*.

## K

**Kal.**, abbreviation for **Kalendae**.

**Kalendae, ārum**, f. plu. [cf. καλέω, *call*], *the Kalends*, the first day of the Roman month, so called from the proclamation of the calendar for the following month made on that day.

## L

**L**, as numeral = 50.

**L.**, abbreviation for **Lucius**.

**Laberius, l**, m., *Quintus Liberius Durus*, a tribune of soldiers, V. 15, 5.

**Labiēnus, l**, m., *Titus Labienus*, the foremost of Caesar's *legati*, his chief lieutenant throughout the Gallic war, where he "never made a mistake." In the civil war, thinking his services indispensable, he deserted Caesar, who ironically sent his baggage after him; his painstaking care was no match for Caesar's genius, and he fell at the battle of Munda: I. 10, 3, etc.

**labōr, ōris**, m., *toil, exertion, labor; endurance*, IV. 2, 2.

**lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum**, (slip); *become disaffected, escape one's control*, V. 3, 6. Perf. part., *disappointed*, V. 55, 3.

**labōrō**, 1st conj. [**labor**], (labor); *strive*, I. 31, 2, VII. 31, 1; *be hard pressed, be in danger*. Pres. part. often equivalent to rel. clause, e.g. I. 52, 7, *who were hard pressed*.

**labrum, l**, n., *lip*, V. 14, 3; *rim*, VI. 28, 6; *edge*, VII. 72, 1.

**lāc, lactis**, n., *milk*.

**laccessō, laccessere, laccessivi** (*laccessi*), **laccessitum**, *provoke, harass; take the offensive against*, IV. 34, 2.

**lacrima, ae**, f., *tear*.

**lacrimō**, 1st conj. [**lacrima**], *weep*.

**lacus, ūs**, m., dat. and abl. plu. **lacubus** or **lacibus**, *lake*.

**laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum**, (harm); **fidem laedere**, *break one's pledge*.

**laetitia, ae**, f. [**laetus**], *joy*; **laetitiā affici**, *be rejoiced*.

**laetus, a, um**, *joyful, happy*.

**languidē**, adv. [**languidus**], (feebly); *with little energy*.

**languidus, a, um**, [**languēō**, *be faint*], *weary, exhausted*.

**languor, ōris**, m. [**languēō**, *be faint*], *weariness, exhaustion*.

**lapis, idis**, m., *stone*.

**laqueus, l**, m., *noose*.

**largior, largiri, largitus sum** [**largus, abundant**], (give abundantly); *afford, present*; gerund, *bribery*, I. 18, 4.

**largiter**, adv. [**largus, abundant**], (abundantly); **largiter posse**, *be very powerful, have great influence*.

**largitiō, ōnis**, f. [**largior**], *lavish giving, profuse generosity*.

**lassitūdō, dinis, f.** [**lassus, tirca**]. *exhaustion, fatigue.*

**lātē, adv.** [**lātus**], *widely, extensively; far*, IV. 3, 1, VI. 23, 1 (*circum sē, on all sides*); **longē lātēque, far and wide.**

**latebra, ae, f., usually plu.** [**lateō**], *hiding place.*

**lateō, latēre, latui, —, lie hidden, be concealed; escape notice**, III. 14, 8.

**lātītūdō, dinis, f.** [**lātus**], *width, breadth*; **regiōnum lātītūdō, area**, III. 20, 1; **in lātītūdinem, in width; laterally or horizontally**, II. 17, 4.

**Latobrigi, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Gauls located probably upon the farther bank of the Rhine, north of the Helvetii, near the sources of the Danube**, I. 5, 4, 28, 3, 29, 2.

**latrō, ōnis, m., robber.**

**latrōcinium, i, n.** [**latrō**], *highway robbery; raid for the purpose of plundering, predatory raid*, VI. 35, 7.

**lātus, a, um, wide, broad; extensive**, II. 4, 6, VI. 22, 3.

**latus, lateris, n., side; of an army, flank.** (**ab, on; apertum, exposed, unprotected**, usually the *right*, since the shield was carried on the left arm.)

**laudō, 1st conj.** [**laus**], *praise.*

**laus, laudis, f., praise, glory; glory (in), renown (for)**, VI. 24, 3, 40, 7, VII. 76, 2.

**lavō, lavāre (lavere), lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, (wash); pass. as middle, (wash one's self), bathe.**

**laxō, 1st conj.** [**laxus, loose**], (*loosen*), **manipulōs laxāre, open or extend ranks.**

**lēgātīō, ōnis, f.** [**lēgō, send with a commission**], *mission*, I. 3, 3; *embassy, deputation; envoys.*

**lēgātus, i, m.** [*masc. of perf. part. of lēgō, send with a commission, appoint as deputy*], *envoy, ambassador; lieutenant to a commander-in-chief, lieutenant-general, legatus, an officer under the control of the commander-in-chief alone, who might command any portion of the army, either in battle or on detached service.*

**legiō, ōnis, f.** [**legō, collect**], (*a collecting*); *legion, the unit of the Roman army. See Introduction.*

**legiōnārius, a, um** [**legiō**], (*belonging to a legion*), *legionary*, **legiōnārii militēs, corresponding to our "regular" troops.**

**Lemannus, i, m., w. lacus, Lake Lemman, the lake of Geneva, Lake Geneva.**

**Lemovicēs, um, m. plu., a tribe in southwestern Gaul, between the Santones and the Averni**, VII. 4, 6, 75, 3, 88, 4.

**lēnis, e, (smooth, soft); mild, moderate, gentle.**

**lēnitās, tātis, f.** [**lēnis**], *smoothness.*

**lēniter, adv.** [**lēnis**], *gently, gradually.*

**Leponti, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe living in the Alps, southeast of the Helvetii, north of Lake Maggiore**, IV. 10, 3.

**lepus, leporis, m., hare.**

**Leuci, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe between the Marne river and the Vosges mountains, about the source of the Moselle**, I. 40, 11.

**Levacī, ōrum, m. plu.,** a tribe in Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

**levis, e, light** (in weight), w. *armātūra*; *slight, unimportant; weak*, V. 28, 6.

**levitās, tātis, f. [levis],** (lightness); *light weight*, V. 34, 4; *fickleness, thoughtlessness*.

**levō, 1st conj. [levis],** (lighten); *relieve* (of), w. abl. of separation.

**lēx, lēgis, f., law,** as a formal resolution of the people; *decree*, I. 3, 2.

**Lexovī, ōrum, m. plu.,** a tribe of Normandy on the coast, just west of the mouth of the Seine, III. 9, 10 ff., VII. 75, 3.

(*lib.*, abbreviation for *liber*.)

**libenter, adv. [libens, willing,** connected w. *libet, it pleases*], *willingly, gladly*.

(*liber, librī, m., book.* Not in text of Bel. Gal.)

**liber, libera, liberum, compar. liberior, super. liberrimus, free;** *unrestricted*, VII. 36, 5.

**liberālitās, tātis, f. [liberālis, befitting a free man, open, generous],** *kindness; generosity, liberality*.

**liberāliter, adv. [liberālis, befitting a free man, open, generous],** *graciously; liberāliter pollicērī, (promise graciously), make gracious promises*, IV. 21, 6.

**liberō, adv., compar. liberius, super. liberrimō [liber],** *freely; boldly*, V. 19, 2, VII. 49, 2; *openly*, VII. 1, 3.

**liberī, ōrum, m. plu. [strictly masc. plu. of liber],** (those born free); *children of free parents*.

**liberō, 1st conj. [liber],** *free*.

**libertās, tātis, f. [liber],** *freedom*.

**librīlis, e [libra, pound],** (of a pound); *funda librīlis, a sling throwing stones that weigh a pound, unusually heavy*.

**licentia, ae, f. [licēns, pres. part. of licet as adj., unrestrained],** (lack of restraint); *insubordination*.

**liceor, licērī, licitus sum, bid** (at auction).

**licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est,** (it is lawful, it is permitted); w. complementary infin. it is translated by *may, might*; e.g. *ut id sibi facere licēret*, (that it might be permitted to them to do it), *that they might do it*.

**Liger, Ligeris, m., acc. -im, abl. -ī,** the *Loire*, the largest river of southern France, III. 9, 1, etc.

**lignātiō, ōnis, f. [lignor, get wood, from lignum, wood],** *getting wood*.

**lignātor, ōris, m. [lignor, get wood, from lignum, wood],** (one who gets wood); *wood-cutter, wood-gatherer*.

**lilium, l, m., lily;** applied ironically by the Romans to the pitfalls constructed at Alesia.

**lineus, a, um [linum, flax],** (linen). Fem. as subst., sc. *rēs*, (a linen thread), *line*.

**Lingonēs, um, m. plu., acc. plu.** sometimes *-as* (Greek), a tribe in central Gaul, north of the Aedui, I. 26, 5, etc.

**lingua, ae, f.,** (tongue); by metonymy, *language*.

**lingula, ae, f. [dimin. of lingua],** (a little tongue); *tongue of land, a narrow point projecting into the sea*.

**linter, tris, m., canoe, boat, skiff**.

**linum, l, n., flax**.

**lis, litis**, m., (strife, lawsuit) ; *damages*.

**Liscus**, l, m., chief magistrate of the Aedui, I. 16, 5, etc.

**Littaviccus**, l, m., an Aeduan nobleman who took part in the conspiracy for the revolt of his tribe in the seventh year of the war, VII. 37, 1 ff.

**littera**, ae, f. [*linō*, *smear*, from the wax tablets early used in writing], *letter* of the alphabet, I. 29, 1, V. 48, 4 ; *writing*, VI. 14, 3, 4 ; plu., (letters of the alphabet), a *letter* (epistle), *despatch* ; *documents*, V. 47, 2 ; *letters*, V. 40, 1.

**litus, litoris**, n., *shore, beach* of the ocean.

**locus**, l, m., plu. regularly *loca*, *ōrum*, n. (masc. plu. only in sense *topics, passages* in a book), *place* ; *locality* ; *situation* ; *opportunity*, I. 40, 9, V. 44, 3 ; *space*, II. 8, 3 ; abl. sing., w. gen., (in the place of) *as*, I. 42, 6, etc. ; *light*, I. 26, 6 ; *point*, VI. 11, 1 ; *condition*, II. 26, 5 ; plu., *space*, II. 19, 5 ; *country, locality*, III. 9, 4 ; *region*, e.g. *in his locis, in this region*.

**longē**, adv. [*longus*], *far* ; of time, *long*, IV. 1, 7, VII. 71, 4.

**longinquus**, a, um [*longus*], *distant* ; *long-continued*, I. 47, 4 ; *protracted*, V. 29, 7.

**longitūdō, dinis**, f. [*longus*], *length*.

**longurius**, l, m. [*longus*], *long pole*.

**longus**, a, um, *long* ; *distant*, I. 40, 14 ; *nāvis longa, war-ship, galley*.

**loquor, loqui, locūtus sum**, *speak* ; *talk*, I. 20, 6.

**lōrica**, ae, f. [*lōrum, strap*], (coat of mail) ; *breastwork, parapet*.

**Lūcānius**, l, m., *Quintus Lucanius*, a brave centurion, V. 35, 7.

**Lucius**, l, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

**Lucterius**, l, m., a chief of the Cadurci, who supported the revolt of Vercingetorix, VII. 5, 1 ff.

**Lugotorix**, lglis, m., a British chief, V. 22, 2.

**lūna**, ae, f., *moon* ; personified, *Luna*, VI. 21, 2.

**Lutetia**, ae, f., the chief city of the Parisii, now *Paris*, VII. 57, 1, etc.

**lūx, lūcis**, f., *light, daylight* ; *prima lūx, daybreak*.

**lūxuria**, ae, f. [*lūxus, excess*], *extravagance, high living*.

## M

**M**, as numeral = 1000 ; but not originally because it was the first letter of *mille*.

**M**, abbreviation for **Mārcus**, a Roman *praenomen*.

**māceria**, ae, f. [*mācerō, soften*, from *maoer, lean*], (wall of soft clay) ; *wall, breastworks*.

**māchinātiō, ōnis**, f. [*māchinor, contrive*, from *māchina*, cf. *μηχανή*], *machine, engine* ; in IV. 17, 4, some sort of floating derrick.

**maestus**, a, um [*maereō, be sad*, cf. *miser, wretched*], *sad, despondent*.

**Magetobriga**, ae, f., the place where Ariovistus defeated the Aedui and their allies, possibly near the confluence of the Saône and the Oignon, I. 31, 12.

**magis**, compar. adv., super. **māximē** (positive supplied by **māgnopere**,

*much*) [māior, māximus], *more; rather*, I. 13, 6; *super.*, *most, very, especially*; with verbs, always *especially*, but *quam māximē*, *as much as possible; implicitly*, I. 42, 5.

**magistrātus**, ūs, m. [magister, *master*, from *magis*], (position of a master), *magistracy, office*; by metonymy, *magistrate, officer*.

**māgnificus**, a, um, compar. **māgnificentior**, super. **māgnificentissimus** [māgnus, faciō], *elaborate, magnificent*.

**māgnitūdō**, inis, f. [māgnus], (*greatness*); *extent, size*; also, *great size, great extent, especially* I. 39, 6, II. 30, 4; **māgnitūdō animi**, *great courage*, II. 27, 5; **māgnitūdō venti**, *high wind*, V. 43, 2—and so perhaps some other phrases.

**māgnopere**, adv. [contracted from **māgnō opere** by elision of final -ō], (*with great effort*); *earnestly; greatly*, IV. 26, 1, VII. 57, 4; *especially*, I. 13, 5.

**māgnus**, a, um, compar. **māior**, super. **māximus**, *great; loud*, IV. 25, 4; gen. of price, *of great weight, great*, IV. 21, 7; **māgni interesse**, *be of great importance*, V. 4, 3, VI. 1, 3; **māior nātū**, (*greater with respect to birth*), *older*; masc. plu. as subst., *elders*, II. 13, 2, 28, 1, IV. 13, 4; **māiōrēs** (with **nātū** understood), *ancestors*, I. 13, 6, 14, 7, III. 8, 4, IV. 7, 3, etc.; **māximum iter**, *forced march*.

**māiestās**, tātis, f. [māior], (*superiority*); *dignity, majesty, greatness*.

**māior**, us, compar. of **māgnus**.

**malacia**, ae, f. [μαλακία], *calm*.

**male**, adv., compar. **pēius**, super.

**pessimē** [malus], *badly, male rē gestā*, abl. abs., (*a thing having been badly carried on*), *on account of bad management*.

**maleficiūm**, i, n. [male, faciō], (*wrong-doing*); *harm, outrage, mischief*.

**mālō**, māllo, mālui, — [magis, *more*, volō, *wish*], (*wish one thing more than another*), *prefer*.

**malus**, a, um, compar. **pēior**, super. **pessimus**, *bad, worse, worst*; **pēius**, *a worse fate*, I. 31, 10.

**mālus**, i, m., (*an upright pole*); *mast*, III. 14, 6; *corner timber*, VII. 22, 5.

**mandātum**, i, n. [neut. of perf. part. of mandō, *order*], (*a thing ordered*); plu. *instructions; messages*, I. 37, 1.

**mandō**, 1st conj. [manus, dō], (*put into some one's hands*), *intrust*; **fugae sē mandāre**, (*intrust one's self to flight*), *take to flight, take flight; charge, commission, direct*, I. 30, 5, 47, 5, III. 11, 2, IV. 21, 2, etc.

**Mandubii**, ōrum, m. plu., a small tribe, probably dependents of the Aedui, north of their territory; chief city Alesia, where Vercingetorix made his last stand in the seventh year of the war; VII. 68, 1, etc.

**Mandubracius**, i, m., a chief of the Trinobantes, a British tribe, who was loyal to Caesar, V. 20, 1, etc.

**māne**, adv., *in the morning*.

**maneō**, manēre, mānsi, mānsum, *remain, stay*; **in eō manēre**, *abide by that*, I. 36, 5.

**manipulāris**, e [manipulus], (*belonging to a manipule*); as subst. w. **suus**, *men of one's own manipule*.

**manipulus**, i, m. [manus, *hand*, pleō,

*fill*], (a handful, i.e. of 'hay, because the standard of the manipule originally bore a handful of hay tied to a pole); *maniple*, one-third of a cohort, the smallest division of the Roman army; roughly, like our *platoon*.

**Manlius**, I, m., *Lucius Manlius*, Roman proconsul, defeated in Aquitania, B.C. 78, by Hirtuleius, the quaestor of Sertorius, the exiled Roman general, who held his own in Spain for several years; III. 20, 2. **mānsuē-faciō**, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factum*, pass. **mānsuē-fiō**, *fieri*, *factus sum* [*manus* and *suē*, stem of *suēscō*, *become accustomed*], (make accustomed to the hand), *tame*.

**mānsuētūdō**, *dinis*, f. [*manus*, *hand*, *suē*, stem of *suēscō*, *become accustomed*], (state of being accustomed to the hand; tameness, gentleness); *kindness*.

**manus**, *ūs*, f., *hand*; **nātūrā et manū**, *naturally and artificially*; **per manūs**, *from hand to hand*; **manū**, *vigorously*, V. 7, 8; *band of men*, *force*, I. 37, 4, II. 2, 4, 5, 2, III. 11, 4, etc.

**Marcomani**, *ōrum*, m. plu., a German people, of whose location nothing is certainly known, I. 51, 2.

**Mārcus**, I, m., a Roman *praenomen*. **mare**, *is*, n., *the sea*; **mare Ōceanus**, *the ocean*.

**maritimus**, *a, um* [**mare**], (pertaining to the sea); *maritime*, II. 34, V. 11, 8; *w. pars, regiō*, *the coast*; *w. ōra*, *shore*; *w. aestus*, *tide*; *w. rēs*, *navigation*.

**Marius**, I, m., *Gaius Marius*, consul seven times, conqueror of the

Cimbri and Teutones 106 B.C., opponent of the aristocratic party, died 80 B.C. I. 40, 5.

**Māra, Mārtis**, m., *Mars*, the Roman god of war; by metonymy, **aequō Mārte**, *on even terms*, VII. 19, 3.

**mās**, *maris*, adj., *male*. Masc. as subst., *the male*, VI. 26, 3.

**matara**, *ae*, f. [Celtic], *pike*, Celtic *javelin*.

**māter**, *tris*, f. [cf. *μήτηρ* and *mother*], *mother*; **māter familiae** (old gen. *familiās*), *matron*; **soror ex mātre**, *half-sister*, having the same mother.

**māteria**, *ae*, f., *timber*, *lumber*.

**māterior**, 1st conj. [**māteria**], *get timber*, *get wood*.

**Mātisō**, *ōnis*, f., a town of the Aedui, VII. 90, 7.

**mātrimōnium**, I, n. [**māter**], (motherhood); *marriage*; **in mātrimōnium**, *in marriage*; **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, (lead into marriage), *marry*, used always of the husband.

**Matrona**, *ae*, f., the *Marne*, tributary of the Seine on the left bank, dividing Belgic from Celtic Gaul, I. 1, 2.

**mātūrē**, adv., compar. **mātūrius**, super. **mātūrrimē** [**mātūrus**], *early*. **mātūrēscō**, **mātūrēscere**, **mātūruī**, — [**mātūrus**], *begin to ripen*.

**mātūrō**, 1st conj. [**mātūrus**], (make ripe); *hasten*.

**mātūrus**, *a, um*, *ripe*; *early*, IV. 20, 1.

**māximē**, super. of *magis*.

**māximus**, *a, um*, super. of *māgnus*.

**Māximus**, I, m., a Roman *cognomen*, I. 45, 2.

**medeor, medēri, —**, (heal); *remedy*, w. dat.

**mediocris, cre [medius]**, (medium); *moderate; ordinary*, III. 20, 1. (nōn, no.)

**mediocriter, adv. [mediocris]**, (moderately), *to an ordinary degree*. (nōn, no.)

**Mediomatrici, ōrum, m. plu.**, a tribe north of the Vosges mountains, between the Sequani and Treveri, IV. 10, 3, VII. 75, 3.

**mediterrāneus, a, um [medius, middle, terra, land]**, *inland; w. regiōnēs, the interior*.

**medius, a, um, adj.** having partitive force, *the middle of, the midst of*. in mediō colle, *half way up the hill; medius utriusque, midway between the two*.

**Meldi, ōrum, m. plu.**, a tribe in north central Gaul, exact location uncertain, V. 5, 2.

**melior, us, compar.** of bonus.

**melius, adv.**, compar. of bene.

**membrum, I, n.**, *limb*.

**memini, meminisse, —**, defective, *remember*.

**memoria, ae, f. [memor, mindful]**, *memory, recollection; record*, VII. 25, 1; **memoriam dēpōnere**, w. gen., (lay aside the memory), *forget*; **memoriam retinēre** w. gen., (retain the memory of), *remember*; **memoriā tenēre**, (hold in memory), *remember*; **nostrā memoriā**, (within our memory), *in our day*; **memoriā patrum (nostrōrum)**, (within the memory of our fathers), *a generation ago*; **suprā hanc memoriā**, (above this memory), *before this generation*. (prōdō, hand down.)

**Menapii, ōrum, m. plu.**, the northernmost tribe of Belgae, mostly south of the Rhine at its mouth, and extending to the Scheldt, north of the Nervii and Eburones, II. 4, 9, etc.

**mendācium, I, n. [mendax, lying, from mentior, lie]**, *lie*.

**mēns, mentis, f.**, *mind*, especially the intellect, as distinguished from the emotions and the will; often in the sense of a *state of mind*, as in common Eng. phrase, "*change one's mind*," e.g. I. 41, 1, VII. 64, 7; *resolution*, III. 19, 6.

**mēnsis, is, m.**, *month*.

**mēnsūra, ae, f. [metior, measure]**, (a measuring), *measurement; measure*. **ex aquā mēnsūra**, (measure from water), *clepsydra, water-clock*, an instrument for measuring time by means of water escaping from a graduated basin; **mēnsūra itinerum**, (measurement of journeys), *how to measure distances*, i.e. in units of distance.

**mentiō, ōnis, f. [cf. memini, etc.]**, *mention*.

**mercātor, ōris, m. [mercor, trade]**, *trader, peddler*.

**mercātūra, ae, f. [mercor, trade]**, *trade, traffic, commerce*.

**mercēs, ēdis, f. [merx, merchandise, from mereō, deserve]**, (what is deserved), *pay, wages*; **mercēde arcessere**, (summon by promise of pay), *hire*.

**Mercurius, I, m. [merx, merchandise]**, *Mercury*, god of trade, patron of traders and thieves; also of eloquence, hence messenger of the gods, etc., VI. 17, 1.

- mereō, merēre, merui, meritum**, also dep., *deserve; serve*, VII. 17, 5.
- meridiānus, a, um** [meridiēs], *of midday; meridiānum tempus, noon*.
- meridiēs, diēi, m.** [for medi-diēs, from medius, diēs], *midday, noon; from the position of the sun at noon, south*, V. 13, 1.
- meritum, i, n.** [neut. of perf. part. of mereō, as subst.], (a thing deserved), *merit if good, fault if bad; deserts; plu. services*.
- meritus, a, um**, part. of mereō.
- Messāla, ae, m.**, *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul 61 B.C., I. 2, 1, 35, 4.
- met**, enclitic syllable, adding emphasis to a pronoun.
- mētior, mētiri, mēnsus sum**, *measure (out)*.
- Metiosēdum, i, n.**, a town of the Senones, upon an island in the Seine, twenty-eight miles above Paris, now *Melun*, VII. 58, 2, etc.
- Metius, i, m.**, *Marcus Metius*, sent to Ariovistus by Caesar as an envoy, I. 47, 4, 53, 8.
- metō, metere, messui, messum**, *reap, harvest, cut and bring in*.
- metus, ūs, m.**, *fear, anxiety, apprehension*.
- meus, a, um**, voc. sing. masc. **mi**, gen. plu., masc. and neut., sometimes **meum**, poss. pron. of the first pers. sing. [**me**, stem of oblique cases of **ego, I**], *my (mine)*.
- miles, militis, m.**, *soldier*.
- milia, ium**, see **mille**.
- militāris, o** [miles], (relating to a soldier), *military; rēs militāris, military affairs, the art of war, warfare, military operations; signa militāria, battle-standards*.
- militia, ae, f.**, w. loc. **militiae** [miles], *military service; warfare, war*, VI. 14, 1.
- mille**, indeclin. card. adj., abbreviation **M**, *a thousand*; sometimes subst.; plu. always as subst., **milia, milium, n.**, *thousands, thousand*, followed by gen. of the whole (partitive gen.); e.g. **duo milia passuum**, (two thousands of paces), *two thousand paces, two miles*.
- Minerva, ae, f.**, goddess of wisdom and of the arts, VI. 17, 2.
- minimō, adv.**, super. of **parum**.
- minimus, a, um**, super. of **parvus**.
- minor, us**, compar. of **parvus**.
- Minucius, i, m.**, *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's prominent officers, but probably not a *legatus*, VI. 29, 4, VII. 90, 5.
- minuō, minuere, minui, minūtum** [minus, less], *lessen; of the tide, ebb*.
- minus, adv.**, compar. of **parum**.
- miror, 1st conj.** [mirus], *wonder*, I. 32, 2; *wonder at*, V. 54, 5.
- mirus, a, um**, *wonderful; strange*, I. 34, 4; **mirum in modum**, (in a wonderful manner), *wonderfully*.
- miser, misera, miserum**, compar. **miserior**, super. **miserrimus**, *wretched*.
- miseriordia, ae, f.** [miseriorea, tender-hearted, from miser, and cor, heart], *pity, compassion*. (ūtor, take; recipiō, admit.)
- miseror, 1st conj.** [miser], *bewail, lament, deplore*.
- missus, a, um**, part. of **mittō**.
- missus, ūs, m.**, used in abl. sing.

only [mittō], (a sending); **missū Caesaris**, upon a mission for Caesar.  
**mitius, mitissimē**, adv., in compar. and super. [mitis, mild, mellow], (more) mildly.  
**mittō, mittere, misi, missum**, send; throw, hurl, I. 25, 2, III. 4, 2, 5, 3, etc. (In comp. mittō often = let go, allow to go.)  
**mōbilis, e** [for movibilis, from moveō], (capable of being moved), fickle, changeable, easily influenced.  
**mōbilitās, tātis, f.** [mōbilis], (capability of being moved), mobility, quickness, speed; of mind, fickleness, changeability.  
**mōbiliter**, adv. [mōbilis], quickly, easily.  
**moderor**, 1st conj. [modus], check, IV. 33, 3; control.  
**modestia, ae, f.** [modestus, keeping due measure], self-control, moderation.  
**modo**, adv. [shortened abl. of modus], (by a measure); only; only recently, VI. 39, 2; just, just now, VI. 43, 4.  
**modus, i, m.** (measure); amount, VI. 22, 2; size, V. 1, 2; manner, way; **ēius modi, hūius modi**, sometimes written as one word, (of this kind), of such kind, such; **sublicae modō**, (in the manner of a pile), like a pile; **ōrātōris modō**, as an envoy; **ad hunc modum**, in this way; **quem ad modum**, (in what way), as, I. 36, 1, how, VII. 43, 5.  
**moenia, ium, n. plu.** [cf. mūniō, fortify], walls (for defence).  
**mōlēs, is, f.**, (a huge structure), dike.  
**molestē**, adv. [molestus, troublesome], with vexation; **molestē**

**ferre**, (bear with vexation), be annoyed, be vexed.  
**mōlimentum, i, n.** [mōlior, exert one's self, from mōlēs], exertion, trouble.  
**molitus, a, um**, part. of molō.  
**molliō, mollire, molliui or mollii, mollitum** [mollis, soft], (soften); make easier.  
**mollis, e**, (soft); smooth; weak, III. 19, 6.  
**mollitia, ae, f.** [mollis], (softness); weakness.  
**mollitiēs, ēi, f.** [mollis], (softness); weakness.  
**molō, molere, molui, molitum** [mola, a grindstone], grind; **molita oibāria**, (ground food-stuff), flour, meal.  
**mōmentum, i, n.** [for movimentum, from moveō], (movement; what causes movement), weight, influence, VII. 85, 4; importance, moment, VII. 39, 3.  
**Mona, ae, f.**, an island between Wales and Ireland, now Anglesey, V. 13, 3.  
**moneō, monēre, monui, monitum**, advise.  
**mōns, montis, m.**, mountain, mountain range.  
**mora, ae, f.**, delay.  
**morātus, a, um**, part. of moror.  
**morbus, i, m.**, sickness, disease.  
**Morini, ōrum, m. plu.**, a tribe of Belgae, between the Scheldt and the ocean, opposite Britain, II. 4, 9, etc.  
**mорий, mori (moriri), mortuus sum**, fut. part. **moritūrus** [cf. mors], die.  
**Moritasgus, i, m.**, a chief of the Senones, V. 54, 2.

**moror**, 1st conj. [**mora**], trans. *delay*, intrans. *wait, delay*.

**mors**, **mortis**, f. [cf. **morior**], *death*.

**mortuus**, a, um, part. of **morior**.

**mōs**, **mōris**, m., *custom*.

**Mosa**, ae, f., French *Meuse*, German *Maas*, a river of northern Gaul rising in the Vosges mountains, flowing northward into the *Waal* (*Vaculus*), IV. 9, 3, etc.

**mōtus**, ūs, m. [**moveō**], (a moving); of ships, etc., *motion*; of oars, *action*; *disturbance, uprising*.

**moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtum**, *move*; w. *castra*, *break*; fig. *influence*, VII. 76, 2.

**mulier**, **mulieris**, f., *woman*.

**mūliō**, ōnis, m. [**mūlus**], *mule-driver*.

**multitūdō**, dinis, f. [**multus**], *number*; *large number*; *the common people, general body of soldiers*.

**multō**, 1st conj. [sometimes **multotō**; **multa**, **multota**, a *fine*], (punish); *deprive*, VII. 54, 4.

**multō**, **multum**, see **multus**.

**multus**, a, um, *much*, plu. *many*; **multō diē**, *in broad day*, or *late in the day*. **multum**, n., and **multō**, n., used respectively as adverbial acc. and abl. of degree of difference, to take the place of a corresponding adverb, which does not exist in separate form for this word, *much*.

Compar., in sing. as subst. only, **plūs**, **plūris**, n., no dat. or abl., plu. **plūrēs**, **plūra**, gen. **plūrium**, etc., sing. *more* (in amount), either substantively, often w. gen. of the whole, or adverbially (adverbial acc.); plu. (more in number, more

than one), *several*; *many*, comparatively; *quite a number*.

Super., **plūrimus**, a, um, sing. neut. as subst., *very much, much, a great deal*, V. 27, 2; usually plu., *very many, many*; perhaps *most*, VI. 17, 1. **plūrium**, n., used as adverbial acc., corresponding to **multum** and **plūs**, *very much*; **plūrium posse, valēre**, *be very powerful or influential*

**mūlus**, l, m., *mule*.

**Mūnātius**, l, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, V. 24, 3.

**mundus**, l, m., *the universe*.

**mūnimentum**, l, n. [**mūniō**], *fortification*.

**mūniō**, **mūnīre**, **mūnīvi** or **mūnīl**, **mūnītum** [**moenia**, *walls for defence*], (build walls), *fortify*; *protect*, I. 44, 6, II. 5, 5, VI. 5, 4; *construct*, VII. 58, 1.

**mūnitiō**, ōnis, f. [**mūniō**], (a fortifying), *fortifying*, I. 49, 3, V. 9, 8; *constructing a fortification*, V. 39, 2, 40, 2, VII. 45, 6, 48, 2; *fortification*; *strength*, I. 8, 4; *being fortified*, VII. 14, 9, 20, 3.

**mūnus**, **mūneris**, n., *task, service*; *gift*, I. 43, 4. **mūnera amplissimō mittere**, (send gifts most generously), *send most generous gifts*.

**mūrālis**, e [**mūrus**], relating to a wall, mural); **mūrālis falx**, a strong hook on the end of a stout pole, for tearing down a wall, *wall-hook, hook for tearing down walls*; **mūrālia pīla**, spears for use when fighting from a wall, *heavy spears*.

**mūrus**, l, m., *wall*, a general term.

**mūsculus**, l, m. [dimin. of **mūs**,

*mouse*], (a little mouse); a small, strong *shed*, under which soldiers could work while conducting siege operations.

**mutilus**, a, um [μύτιλος, μίτυλος], (maimed, mutilated); **mutilus oornibus**, abl. of specification, (mutilated in respect to their horns), either *without horns* or *short-horned*.

## N

**nactus**, a, um, part. of **nanciscor**.

**nam**, coörd. conj., *for*, introducing a reason considered to be more evident than **quod**; as enclitic, appended to interrogative word adding an idea of doubt as to a thing's possibility, scarcely translatable, II. 30, 4.

**Nammēlus**, l, m., an envoy sent by the Helvetians to Caesar, I. 7, 3.

**Namnetēs**, um, m. plu., a tribe upon the western coast of Gaul, north of the Loire, III. 9, 10.

**nam-que**, conj., (and—for), *for*; an omission is always implied, as "and (this is so), for," "and (this occurred with good reason), for."

**nanciscor**, **nancisci**, **naotus** (**nactus**) **sum**, (get), *come upon*, *find*.

**Nantuātēs**, um, m. plu., a tribe on both sides of the River Rhone above Lake Geneva, III. 1, 1, etc.

**Narbō**, ōnis, m., the chief city of the Roman province (*Gallia transalpina*), on the Mediterranean, now *Narbonne*, III. 20, 2, VII. 7, 2, 4.

**nāscor** (for **gnāscor**), **nāsci**, **nātus sum**, *be born*; *be found*, of metals, V. 12, 5, of wild animals, VI. 25, 5; of domestic animals, *be bred*, *be raised*, IV. 2, 2; of a hill, *rise*, II.

18, 2; *arise*, VI. 22, 3; *cause*, VII. 43, 5; *originate*, V. 12, 1.

**Nasua**, ae, m., one of two chiefs, brothers, leaders of the Suebi, I. 37, 3.

**nātālis**, e [nātus], *relating to birth*; **diēs nātālis**, *birthday*.

**nātiō**, ōnis, f. [nāscor], (birth); *race*, *nation*; of divisions of Gaul, *state*, *tribe*.

**nātīvus**, a, um [nātus], (relating to birth), *natural*.

**nātūra**, ae, f. [nāscor], (birth); (natural constitution), *nature*, VI. 7, 7, 26, 3, 43, 5; abl., (by nature), *naturally*; *character*.

**nātūs**, ūs, m. [nāscor], *birth*; **māior nātū**, used as compar. of **senex**, (greater by birth), *older*, plu. **māiōrēs nātū**, *elders*, *old men*, super. **māximus nātū**.

**nauta**, ae, m. [for **nāvita**, from **nāvis**, cf. *ναύτης*], *sailor*.

**nauticus**, a, um [nauta; cf. *ναυτικός*], (pertaining to ships or sailors), *nautical*, *naval*; **rēs nauticae**, *naval affairs*, *nautical matters*, *navigation*, *seamanship*.

**nāvālis**, e [nāvis], *naval*, *nautical*; **nāvālis pūgna**, *sea-fight*; **nāvālia castra**, *camp on the beach*, to protect the ships.

**nāvicula**, ae, f. [dim. of **nāvis**], *small boat*, *boat*.

**nāvigātiō**, ōnis, f. [nāvigō], *navigation*, *sailing*; *voyage*, V. 23, 3.

**nāvigium**, l, n. [nāvigō], (that which sails); *ship*, *vessel*; **speculātōrium nāvigium**, *picket-boat*; **vectōriis gravibusque nāvigis**, *though their ships were transports and (therefore) heavy*, abl. abs.

**nāvigō**, 1st conj. [**nāvis**; **agō**, *drive*], (drive a ship), *sail*.

**nāvis**, *is*, f. [cf. *vaūs*], *ship*, *boat*.

**nāvis longa**, *war-ship*; **nāvis onerāria**, *transport*.

**nāvō**, 1st conj. [(g)**nāvus**, *busy*], (work busily), *accomplish*; **operam nāvāre**, (succeed in one's effort), *do one's best*.

**-ne**, interrogative enclitic particle used when there is no other interrogative word in the sentence, and implying nothing as to answer expected; in direct question translated merely by making sentence interrogative, VII. 77, 10; in simple indirect question, *whether*, V. 54, 5; in disjunctive question, **-ne—an**, *whether—or*. **velint-ne**, *whether they wished to do so (or not)*, V. 27, 9.

**nē**, adv., *not*, only in phrase **nē—quidem**, *not—even*, emphasizing the word between.

**nē**, subord. conj., in purpose clauses, *lest*, *that—not*, *in order that—not*; as negative of a subjunct. in ind. dis. representing an imper. of dir. dis., I. 13, 5, 7, 26, 6, II. 31, 4, etc.; after verb of fearing, *that*.

**neo**, form of **neque**.

**necessārius**, a, um [**necesse**], *necessary*; *critical*, I. 16, 6; *sufficient* I. 39, 3; **rēs necessāria**, *urgent matter*, I. 17, 6, plu. *necessaries*, *necessities*, VII. 66, 5. Masc. as subst., *close friend*, *friend*, I. 11, 4. Abl. sing. neut. as adv., *of necessity*; *necessarily*, III. 14, 7, 29, 2.

**necesse**, indeclin. adj., *necessary*; always **necesse est** (or similar form), w. acc. and infin. as subject; best

translated adverbially, *necessarily*; e.g. **necesse est eōs paenitēre**, (it is necessary that they repent), *they necessarily repent*, IV. 5, 3; **quod necesse erat accidere**, *which necessarily happened*, IV. 29, 3.

**necessitās**, *tātis*, f. [**necesse**], *necessity*; w. **temporis**, *urgency*; *interest*, VII. 89, 1.

**necessitūdō**, *diuis*, f. [**necesse**], *close relationship*.

**neo-ne**, conj. and adv., *or not*; see **-ne**.

**necō**, 1st conj., *put to death*; **ignī necāre**, *burn at the stake*.

**nēo-ubi**, subord. conj. and adv. [**nē**; (c)**ubi**, *where*], *that nowhere*.

**nefārius**, a, um [**nefās**], *abominable*, *awful*.

**nefās**, indeclin. noun [**ne**, *not*, **fās**, *right*, *spoken by divine decree*, from **for**, **fārī**, *speak*], *crime*.

**neglegō**, **neglegere**, **neglēxi**, **neglēotum** [**neo**, **legō**], (not choose), *disregard*, *neglect*.

**negō**, 1st conj., *deny*; used to introduce a negative sentence of ind. dis., the negative being incorporated into the introductory verb, from which it should be separated in translation; e.g. **negat sē posse dare**, (he denies that he can give), *he says that he cannot give*; w. dir. obj. and dat., *deny*, *refuse*.

**negōtior**, 1st conj. [**negōtium**], *do*, *carry on*, or *transact business*.

**negōtium**, *l*, n. [**nec**; **otium**, *leisure*], *business*, I. 34, 4; *work*, V. 2, 3; *movement*, VII. 61, 2; *action*, V. 33, 1, elsewhere *trouble*, *difficulty*. **negōtiō dēsistere**, (stand down from the matter), *retreat from*

*the position he had taken*, I. 45, 1; **negōtium cōficere**, (finish a matter), *end matters*; **negōtium dare** w. dat., (give a task), *charge*.

**Nemetēs, um**, m. plu., a German tribe that crossed the Rhine under the protection of Ariovistus and fought with him against Caesar; what became of the survivors after the defeat of the former is uncertain; I. 51, 2, VI. 25, 2.

**nēmō**, gen. supplied by **nūllus**, dat. **nēmīnī**, acc. **nēminem**, abl. supplied by **nūllō**, **nūllā**, c. [**nē**, **homō**], *no one, nobody*.

**nē-quāquam**, adv. [**nē**; **quāquam**, abl. of **quisquam**, *any*, sc. **viā**], (not in any way), *by no means*.

**ne-que, nec** [**nē**], conj., *nor, and—not*; **neque—neque**, *neither—nor*.

**nē-qui-quam**, adv. [**nē**; **qui-quam**, old abl. of **quisquam**], (not to any purpose), *without hope of success*.

**Nervius, a, um** [**Nervius**], *relating to the Nervii*; w. **proelium**, *with the Nervii*.

**Nervius, l, m.**, *one of the Nervii*; masc. plu., *the Nervii*, a particularly warlike tribe of Belgae, west of the Scheldt, II. 15, 3, etc.

**nervus, l, m.** [cf. *νεῦρον*], (any cord of the body); *nerve*, VI. 21, 4; *strength*, I. 20, 3.

**neu**, form of **nēve**.

**neuter, tra, trum**, gen. **neutrius**, dat. **neutrī** [**nē**; **uter**, indef., *either*], *neither*; plu. used of two parties.

**nē-ve, neu**, coörd. and subord. conj. combined, (or that not) *and* (that) *not*. (**-que, et**, following, is best translated *but*, to avoid confusion).

**nex, necis**, f., (violent) *death*.

**nihil**, indeclin. noun [**nē**; **hilum**, *trifle*], *nothing*; often w. gen. of the whole, e.g. **nihil reliqui**, (nothing of left), *nothing left*, I. 11, 5; **nihil vini**, *no wine*, II. 15, 4; used adverbially (adverbial acc.), *not at all, not—at all*, or merely emphatic *not*; **nōn nihil**, (NOT not at all), *to some extent, somewhat*.

(**nihilum**), **nihili**, abl. **nihilō** [**nihil**], *nothing*; in Bel. Gal. only in abl. of degree of difference, (by nothing), *none*; **nihilō minus, nihilō setius**, (none the less), *nevertheless*.

**nimius, a, um** [**nimis**, adv., *too much*], (too great), *excessive*.

**nisi**, subord. conj. [**nē**, **sī**], *if not*, I. 44, 11, V. 1, 8, VI. 16, 3, VII. 19, 5, 85, 3, 88, 6; *unless*; it negatives the entire protasis of a conditional sentence, while **sī nōn** negatives a single word; also w. many other expressions than conditional clauses, *unless; except, unless*, IV. 24, 2, VI. 18, 3, 20, 3, etc.; *except that*, V. 13, 4.

**Nitlobrogēs, um**, m. plu., a tribe in the extreme southern part of Gaul, on both sides of the Garonne river, VII. 7, 2.

**nitor, nīti, nixus sum** (usually in lit. sense) or **nisus sum** (usually in fig. sense), (rest, press upon); *strive; rely* (on), I. 13, 6; w. abl. of means.

**nix, nivis**, f., gen. plu. **nivium**, *snow*.

**nōbilis, e** [cf. **nōscō**, *know*], (known, noted); *well-known, renowned*, VII. 77, 15; *high-born, of noble birth, noble, aristocratic*; plu. as subst., *men of high rank, nobles*.

**nōbilitās, tātis, f. [nōbilis]**, (nobility); abstract, **summa nōbilitās**, *the highest rank*, II. 6, 4; elsewhere collective, (the nobility as a class), *the nobles*.

**nocēns, nocentis**, pres. part. of **noceō**.

**noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum**, (do harm), *injure*, always w. dat., so impers. in pass. Plu. of pres. part. as subst., (those who do harm), *the guilty*, VI. 9, 7.

**noctū**, adv. [old abl. of 4th decl. noun, from **nox**], *at night, by night, in the night*.

**nocturnus, a, um [nox]**, *of the night, night, at night*.

**nōdus, I, m.**, (knot), *enlargement*.

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, — [**nē** (**nōn**, in compound forms), **volō**, *wish, be willing*], *be unwilling, not wish*.

**nōlite exspoliāre**, (be unwilling to deprive), *do not deprive*, VII. 77, 9.

**nōmen, minis, n. [nōscō]**, (a means of knowing); *name; designation, name*, III. 2, 5, VII. 77, 3; **suō nōmine**, *on his (their) own account*.

**nōminātīm**, adv. [**nōminō**], (name by name); *by name*, II. 25, 2; *individually; in detail*, I. 29, 1.

**nōminō**, 1st conj. [**nōmen**], (name), *call*, VII. 73, 9; *mention*.

**nōn**, adv., *not*.

**nōnāgintā**, indeclin. card. adj., *ninety*.

**nōn-dum**, adv., *not yet*.

**nōnus, a, um** [for **novēnus**, from **novem**], ord. adj., *ninth*.

**Nōrēia, ae, f.**, the chief town of the Norici, I. 5, 4.

**Nōricus, a, um**, *of the Norici*, a tribe between the Danube and the

summits of the Alps, I. 5, 4; fem. as subst., *one of the Norici*, I. 53, 4.

**nōs**, plu. of **ego**.

**nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, (nōtum)** [for **gnōscō**], (come to know); perf. *know*, pluperf. *knew*, etc.; perf. part. *known, familiar; being known, being familiar*, IV. 26, 2; super. *perfectly familiar*, IV. 24, 3.

**nōs-met**, emphatic form of **nōs**, *met* being a strengthening enclitic.

**noster, tra, trum [nōs]**, *our*; masc. plu. as subst., *our men, our soldiers, our troops*.

**nōtitia, ae, f. [nōtus]**, *knowledge*.

**nōtus, a, um**, part. of **nōscō**.

**novem**, indeclin. card. adj., *nine*.

**Noviodūnum, I, n.**, (1) a town of the Aedui upon the northern bank of the Loire, now *Nevers*, VII. 55, 1, 5; (2) a town of the Bituriges, in the northern part of their territory, now possibly *Villate*, VII. 12, 2, 14, 1; (3) the chief town of the Suessiones, now probably *Soissons*, II. 12, 1.

**novitās, tātis, f. [novus]**, (newness), *novelty, strangeness*.

**novus, a, um**, no compar., *new*; w. **copiae**, *fresh*; super. **novissimus**, *last*, IV. 16, 7; **novissimum āgmen**, (the newest part of a marching column), *the rear, rear-guard*; so masc. plu. of super. as subst., *those in the rear, the rear-guard*; **novae rēs**, *change of government, revolution*; **nova imperia**, (new forms of government), *revolution*.

**nox, noctis, f.**, gen. plu. **noctium**, *night*; **primā nocte**, (in the first part of the night), *as soon as it was dark*; **multā nocte**, *late at night*.

**noxia**, ae, f. [**noceō**, *injure*], *crime*.  
**nūbō**, **nūbere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, (veil one's self), *marry*; used of the woman.

**nūdō**, 1st conj. [**nūdus**], (make bare); *expose*; *leave vacant*, VII. 70, 7; w. abl. of separation, *strip* (of).

**nūdus**, a, um, *naked, bare*; *unprotected*, I. 25, 4.

**nūllus**, a, um, gen. **nūllius**, dat. **nūlli** [**nē**, **ūllus**], (not any), *no*, adj.; as subst., sing. *no one*, plu. *none*.  
**nōn nūllus** [often written as one word], as adj. or as subst., *some*.

**num**, interrog. particle, placed at beginning of a question to show that the answer "No" is expected. In I. 14, 3, it is untranslatable by any separate word, but contributes indignant emphasis to **posse**, "COULD *he*?"

**nūmen**, **minis**, n. [**nuō**, *nod*], (nod; divine will); *power, divinity*.

**numerus**, I, m., *number; amount; account*, VI. 13, 1; abl. **numerō**, or **in numerō**, w. gen., (in the number of), *as*.

**Numidae**, **ārum**, m. plu. [**νομᾶς**, **νομᾶδος**, *nomad, wanderer*], *Numidians*, inhabitants of northern Africa, used as light-armed auxiliaries by the Romans, since they were skilful archers; II. 7, 1, etc.

**nummus**, I, m., *a coin*; **prō nummō**, *as money*.

**numquam**, adv. [**nē**; **umquam**, *ever*], *never*.

**nunc**, adv., *now*.

**nūntiō**, 1st conj. [**nūntius**], *announce, report*; *direct*, IV. 11, 6.

**nūntius**, a, um [for **noventius**, from **novus**, which accounts for the

**ū** before **nt**], (bringing news); masc. as subst., *messenger; message; news, tidings*.

**nuper**, adv., super. **nuperrimē**, *recently*.

**nūsqum**, adv. [**nē**; **ūsqum**, *anywhere*], *nowhere*.

**nūtus**, **ūs**, m. [**nuō**, *nod*], *nod*; **ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem**, "at his *nod and beck*"; *bidding, command*, IV. 23, 5; *gesture, sign*, V. 43, 6.

## O

**ob**, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for*; in Bel. Gal. always w. **rem**, **rēs**, **causam**, **causās**, and a rel. or demonstrative pro., *on this account, for this reason*, etc.; **quam ob rem**, (for what reason), *why*, I. 50, 4, **quam** here being interrogative. In comp., *toward, against*.

**ob-aerātus**, a, um [**aes**, **aeris**, *copper money*], having money against one), *in debt*. Masc. as subst., (one in debt), *debtor*.

**ob-dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxi**, **duotum** (lead across a path), *construct at right angles*.

**ob-eō**, **ire**, (IVI) **īl**, **ītum**, (go against, meet), *attend to*.

**ob-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **objiciō**), **icere**, **icī**, **iectum**, (throw against); *throw up*, I. 26, 3; *expose*, I. 47, 3; perf. pass., *be in the way; be situated close by*, V. 13, 3; perf. part., *opposite*, V. 13, 6.

**obitus**, **ūs**, m. [**obeō**, *perish*], *destruction*.

**oblātus**, a, um, part. of **offerō**.

**obliquē**, adv. [**obliquus**], *obliquely, slanting*.

- obliquus**, a, um, *oblique, slanting, cross.*
- ob-liviscor**, livisci, litus sum, *forget, w. gen.*
- ob-necrō**, 1st conj. [**sacer**, *sacred*], *entreat* (by what is sacred), *implore, beseech.*
- obsequentia**, ae, f. [**obsequēna**, part. of **ob-sequor**, *yield*], *compliance.*
- ob-servō**, 1st conj., (watch for), *watch*, VII. 16, 3; *follow, heed*, I. 45, 3, V. 35, 1; *reckon*, VI. 18, 2.
- obses, sidis**, c. [**obsideō**], (one who sits over against an agreement), *hostage.*
- obsessiō, ōnis**, f. [**obsideō**], *siege; state of siege*, VI. 36, 2.
- obsessus**, a, um, part. of **obsideō**.
- ob-sideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum**, (sit over against), *besiege; w. viam, blockade, guard.*
- obsidiō, ōnis**, f. [**obsideō**], *siege; pressure*, IV. 19, 4.
- ob-signō**, 1st conj. [**signum**, *seal*], (put a seal upon), *seal.*
- ob-sistō, sistere, stitī, stitum**, (stand against), *withstand.*
- obstinātē**, adv. [**obstinātus**, part. of **ob-stinō**, from **ob-stō**, *stand against*], *persistently, steadily.*
- obstrictus**, a, um, part. of **obstringō**.
- ob-stringō, stringere, strinxī, stric-tum**, (bind to anything), *bind; put under obligations*, I. 9, 3.
- ob-struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum**, (build against), *barricade, block up.*
- ob-temperō**, 1st conj. [**tempus**, see **temperō**], (comply with), *obey, submit to, w. dat.*
- ob-tēstor**, 1st conj. [**tēstis**, *witness*], (call the gods to witness against), *entreat solemnly, implore.*
- ob-tineō, tinēre, tinui, tentum** [**teneō**], *hold* (against); *constitute*, I. 1, 5; of territory, *dwelling, inhabit.*
- obtuli**, perf. of **offerō**.
- ob-veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum**, (come against), *encounter, attack*, II. 23, 1; *be assigned.*
- ob-viam**, adv. [acc. fem. sing. of **ob-vius**, adj., *opposite*, from **ob**, **via**, modifying an unexpressed **viam**, a cognate acc.], *to meet.*
- oc-**, form of **ob** in comp. before **c**.
- occāsiō, ōnis**, f. [**ocoidō**], (a falling upon), *opportunity.*
- occāsus, ūs**, m. [**ocoidō**], (a falling upon); *setting; occāsus sōlis*, (setting of the sun), *sunset; west*, I. 1, 7, IV. 28, 2.
- oc-cidō, oldere, cidī, cāsum** [**cadō**], (fall against), *fall, be killed*. Pres. part. as adj. w. **sōl**, (the setting sun), *the west.*
- oc-cidō, cidere, cidī, cisum** [**caedō**], (cut down), *kill.*
- oc-culō, culere, cului, cultum**, *cover; perf. part. as adj., hidden, blind*, VI. 34, 4; as subst., *in occultō*, *in concealment; in secret*, I. 32, 4; *in occultum abdere*, *go into hiding; ex occultō insidiārī*, *lie in wait (and rush forth) from one's hiding place.*
- occultātiō, ōnis**, f. [**occultō**], *hiding, concealment.*
- occultē**, adv. [**occultus**], *secretly.*
- occultō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **oc-culō**, *cover*], *hide, conceal.*
- occultus**, a, um, part. of **occulō**.
- occupātiō, ōnis**, f. [**occupō**], *occupation, employment; occupātiō rei*

**pūblicaē, public duty.** (*tantulārum rērum, in such trifling matters.*)

**oc-cupō, 1st conj.** [cf. **capiō**], *take possession of, seize; cover, occupy*, II. 8, 3; perf part., *occupied, busy*, II. 19, 8, IV. 32, 5, 34, 3, V. 15, 3, VII. 22, 4.

**oc-currō, currere, cucurri or curri, cursum**, (run against); *meet*, II. 24, 1, V. 47, 3, VII. 88, 3; *rush*, III. 4, 2, VII. 24, 4, 84, 3; *encounter*, III. 6, 4, IV. 6, 1, VII. 22, 1; *engage (with)*, II. 27, 1; *find*, II. 21, 4, IV. 26, 1; w. **rēbus** (*conditions*), *face*, I. 33, 4; impers., *arrange*, VII. 16, 3; w. ind. dis., *rush*, VII. 85, 2.

**Ōceanus, 1, m.** [*Ὠκεανός*], the Atlantic Ocean.

**Ocelum, 1, m.**, "the most western town of the nearer province," probably on the site of modern *Avigliana*, I. 10, 5.

**ootāvus, a, um** [ootō], ord. adj., *eighth*.

**octingenti, ae, a** [octō, centum], card. adj., *eight hundred*.

**octō, indeclin. card. adj.**, *eight*.

**Octodūrus, 1, m.**, a town of the Veragri, near the confluence of the Rhone and the Dranse, upon the site of *Martigny*, III. 1, 4.

**ootōgēni, ae, a** [octō], distrib. adj., *eighty (each)*.

**ootōgintā** [octō], indeclin. card. adj., *eighty*.

**ootōni, ae, a** [octō], distrib. adj., *eight each*, VII. 75, 3; *eight*.

**oculus, 1, m.**, *eye*.

**ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus**, defective, lacking pres. system and pass., *hate*.

**odium, 1, n.** [ōdī], *hatred*.

**of-**, form of **ob** in comp. before **f**.

**of-fendō, fendere, fendi, fēnsum**, (strike against), *hurt, offend (animus, feelings)*, I. 19, 2; impers., **offendi potest**, (it can be harmed), *disaster can occur*, VI. 36, 2.

**offēnsiō, ōnis, f.** [offendō], *hurting*, w. objective gen. translated as object.

**of-ferō, ferre, ob-tuli, ob-lātum**, (bear against); *offer; expose*, IV. 12, 6, VII. 77, 5; *do*, VI. 42, 3; *take*, II. 21, 1, VII. 87, 5; pass. w. dat., *fall into one's hands*, IV. 13, 6.

**officium, 1, n.** [for **opi-ficium**, from **opus, work, faciō, do**], *service, duty*, IV. 1, 9; *doing one's duty*, I. 40, 10; *sense of duty*, I. 40, 14; **officium praestāre**, *do one's duty; allegiance; plu. services*.

**Ollovicō, ōnis, m.**, king of the Nitiobroges, VII. 31, 5.

**o(ob)-mittō, mittere, misi, missum**, (let go by); *neglect*, II. 17, 5; *put aside*, VII. 34, 1; *drop*, VII. 88, 2.

**omniō, adv.** [omnis], *in all, altogether; w. negatives, at all*.

**omnis, e, sing.** usually, *every*, plu. *all*; but sing. also *all*, in sense of *as a whole*, e.g. I. 1, 1.

**onerārius, a, um** [onus], *of burden; nāvis onerāria, transport*.

**onerō, 1st conj.** [onus], *load*.

**onus, oneris, n.**, *load*, III. 19, 2; *weight*; **tanta onera navium**, (so great weights of ships), *such heavy ships; cargo*, V. 1, 2.

**op-**, form of **ob** in comp. before **p**.

**opera, ae, f.** [opus], *exertion*, V. 11, 5; *aid, assistance, services*; **operam navāre**, (succeed in one's

- effort), *do one's best*; **operam dare**, *take pains*.
- opiniō, ōnis**, f. [**opīnor**, *think*], *belief, idea; appearance, impression*.  
 III. 17, 6, 18, 1, 24, 5, 25, 1, V. 57, 4; *reputation*, II. 8, 1, 24, 4, IV. 16, 7 (twice), VI. 24, 3, VII. 59, 5, 83, 4; *expectation*, III. 3, 2, V. 48, 1, VI. 30, 1, VII. 9, 1, 56, 3; *reports*, II. 35, 1; *opinion* (ad, *for influencing*), VI. 1, 3; **omnium opiniōne**, (than the belief of all), *than any one expected*, II. 3, 1.
- oportet, oportēre, oportuit**, *impers.*, *it is necessary, it is proper, it must, it ought*; usually w. acc. and infin. or w. pass. infin. used impersonally, and to be translated by *must* or *ought* as auxiliaries; e.g. **illum venire oportet**, (it is proper that he come), *he ought to come*, I. 34, 2, etc.; **poenam sequi oportēbat**, (that the punishment should follow was proper), *the punishment would have to follow*, I. 4, 1.
- oppidānus, a, um** [**oppidum**], *of a town*; masc. plu. as subst., *towns-people*.
- oppidum, l, n.**, *walled town*.
- op-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum**, (place against); *oppose*; perf. part. *be in the field*, VI. 36, 2; *block the way*, VII. 56, 2.
- opportūnē**, adv. [**opportūnus**], *advantageously, conveniently*.
- opportunitās, tātis**, f. [**opportūnus**], *favorable character, advantage; opportunity*, III. 17, 7.
- op-portūnus, a, um** [**portus**], (before the port), *suitable, favorable, advantageous*.
- oppositus, a, um**, part. of **oppōnō**.
- op-primō, primere, pressi, pressum** [**premō**], (*press against*); *overwhelm; crush*; w. **inopinantēs** or **subitō**, *fall upon*.
- oppūgnātiō, ōnis**, f. [**oppūgnō**], *assault, attack; method of assault*. II. 6, 2, VII. 29, 2.
- op-pūgnō**, 1st conj. [**pūgna**, *fight*]. (*fight against*), *attack*; of fortifications, *assault*; of extended operations, *besiege, lay siege to*.
- ops, opis**, f., nom. and dat. not used, *help, aid*; plu. *resources; strength*.
- optimē**, adv., super. of **bene**.
- optimus, a, um**, super. of **bonus**.
- optō**, 1st conj., *wish, desire*; perf. part. as adj., *welcome*.
- opus, operis**, n., *work; work of fortifying, fortifying, fortification*. **quantō opere** (often written **quantopere**), as adv., *how much, how greatly*, II. 5, 2; followed by **tantō opere** (**tantopere**), *as much as—so much*, VII. 52, 3. **tantō opere, tantopere**, *fiercely, desperately*, I. 31, 4.
- opus, n.**, indeclin., *need*; **opus est**, *there is need, it is needful*, often w. abl.; I. 34, 2, 42, 5, II. 8, 5, 22, 1, III. 1, 3, V. 40, 5, VII. 54, 1. See Appendix.
- ōra, ae**, f., *coast, shore*; often like Eng., meaning *the inhabitants of the coast*.
- ōrātiō, ōnis**, f. [**ōrō**], *speech, address*.
- ōrātor, ōris**, m. [**ōrō**], *speaker*; **ōrātōris modō**, (in the manner of an envoy), *as an envoy*.
- orbis, is**, m., *circle*; **orbis terrarum**, (circle of the lands, i.e. about the Mediterranean), *the world*.
- Orcynia, ae**, f., *the way in which*

Eratosthenes spelled the name of the great forest in Germany, VI. 24, 2. **ōrdō**, **ōrdinis**, m., *row*, VII. 23, 5, 73, 4, 5, 8; *rank*; *layer*, *course*, V. 51, 4, VII. 23, 3; *order*, II. 11, 1, 19, 1, 22, 1; **prīmī ōrdinēs**, *centurions of the first rank*, V. 30, 1, VI. 7, 8.

**Orgetorix**, **Igis**, m., a powerful Helvetian chief, I. 2, 1 ff.

**orior**, **oriri**, **ortus sum**, imperf. subjunct. sometimes **orērētur**, *rise*, *arise*, *begin*; *be descended*, II. 4, 1, V. 12, 2; *be born*, VII. 77, 3; **oriēns sōl**, (rising sun), *east*; **ortā lūce**, (the light having risen), *at daybreak*.

**ōrnāmentum**, l, n. [**ōrnō**], (means of equipping); *mark of honor*, *distinction*.

**ōrnō**, 1st conj., *equip*; *honor*, VII. 33, 1; perf. part. as adj. in super., *thoroughly equipped*.

**ōrō**, 1st conj. [**ōs**], *beg*, *entreat*.

**ortus**, **ūs**, m. [**orior**], *rising*; **ortus sōlis**, (rising of the sun), *sunrise*.

**ōs**, **ōris**, n., (mouth); *face*.

**os-**, form of **ob** in **ostendō** and **ostentō**.

**Osismi**, **ōrum**, m. plu., one of the Aremoric tribe, in the extreme western part of Gaul, II. 34, etc., **os-tendō**, **tendere**, **tendī**, **tentum**, (stretch toward); *show*; as military term, *display*, *unmask*.

**ostentātiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**ostentō**], *display*; *boastfulness*, VII. 53, 3.

**os-tentō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **ostendō**], *display*, *show*; *produce*, V. 41, 4.

**ōtium**, l, n., *quiet*.

**ōvum**, l, n., *egg*.

## P

**P.**, abbreviation of **Publius**, a Roman *praenomen*.

**pābulātiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**pābulor**], *foraging*; *foraging expedition*, VII. 16, 3.

**pābulātor**, **ōris**, m. [**pābulor**], *forager*.

**pābulor**, 1st conj. [**pābulum**], *forage*.

**pābulum**, l, n. [**pāscō**, *feed*], (food); *fodder*, the green or dry stalks of corn or grain, as food for animals.

**pācō**, 1st conj. [**pāx**], (pacify), *subdue*.

**pāctus**, a, um, part. of **pangō**.

**Padus**, l, m., *the Po*, the great river of northern Italy, V. 24, 4.

**paene**, adv., *almost*.

**paeniteō**, **paenitēre**, **paenitui**, —, (make sorry, cause to repent); impers., **paenitet**, **paenitēre**, **paenituit**, *it repents*, w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, **eōs paenitet**, (it repents them), *they repent*.

**pāgus**, i, m., *district*, *canton*, a division of a Gallic or German tribe.

**palam**, adv., *openly*, *publicly*.

**palma**, ae, f. [**παλάμη**], (palm of the hand; palm tree); **palmae ramique**, *hendiadys*, *palm branches*.

**palūs**, **ūdis**, f., *marsh*, *swamp*.

**palūster**, **tris**, **tre** [**palūs**], *marshy*, *swampy*.

**pandō**, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passum**, *spread*; **passis manibus**, *with outstretched hand*; **passis capillis**, *with streaming hair*.

(**pangō**, **pangere**,) **pepigi**, **pāctum**, *agree*, VII. 50, 2. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., (a thing agreed upon, method), *manner*, VII. 83, 5.

**pār**, **paris**, adj., *equal*; *same*; **parēs** **pūgnandi**, *equal in fighting ability*, V. 34, 2; **par atque**, *the same as*, I. 28, 5, V. 13, 2.

**parātus**, a, um, part. of **parō**.

**parcē**, adv., no super. [**parcus**, *sparing*, cf. **parcō**], *sparingly*.

**parcō**, **parcere**, **peperci** (**parci**), **parsūrus**, *spare*; w. dat.

**parēns**, **entis**, c. [**pariō**], *parent*; *father*, V. 14, 4.

**parentō**, 1st conj. (no perf.) [**parēns**], (make sacrifice in honor of dead parents); *take revenge* (for), *revenge*; w. dat.

**pareō**, **parēre**, **parui**, —, *obey*; w. dat.

**pariō**, **parere**, **peperi**, **partum** (**paritūrus**), (give birth to, bring forth); *gain*, *acquire*.

**Parisii**, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe upon the Seine, whose chief city was Lutetia, now Paris; VI. 3, 4, etc.

**parō**, 1st conj., *prepare*, *get ready*; *purchase*, IV. 2, 2; *procure*, V. 55, 3; *acquire*, VI. 22, 3. Perf. part. usually as adj., *prepared*, *ready*; compar. *better prepared*, *more ready*, I. 5, 3; super. *perfectly ready*, *quite ready*, I. 41, 2.

**pars**, **partis**, f., *part*; often when acc. after preps. **ad** and **in**, and not modified by a gen., *direction*; e.g. **in utram partem**, *in which direction*, I. 12, 1; often w. **ab** and **ex**, *side*, e.g. **unā ex parte**, *on one side*, I. 2, 3.

**partim**, adv. [old. acc. of **pars**], *partly*.

**partior**, **partiri**, **partitus sum** [**pars**], *divide*.

**partus**, a, um, part. of **pariō**.

**parum**, adv. [cf. **parvus**], *too little*, *not enough*; compar. **minus**, *less*; super. **minimē**, *least*, II. 33, 2; *very little*, VI. 29, 1; *not at all*, III. 19, 6; **minimē saepe**, (not at all often), *very seldom*; **minimē firmus**, (least firm), *weakest*.

**parvulus**, a, um [dimin. of **parvus**], (very little), *slight*, V. 52, 1; **parvulum proelium**, *skirmish*; **ab parvulis**, *from boyhood*; *very young*, VI. 28, 4.

**parvus**, a, um, *little*, *small*, *slight*; w. **pretium**, *low*; compar. **minor**, **minus**, *less*, *smaller*; neut. as subst., w. part. gen., *less*; super. **minimus**, *least*; neut. acc. sing. as adv., **minimum posse**, *have very little power*, I. 20, 2.

**passim**, adv. [**pandō**], *in all directions*.

**passus**, a, um, part. of **pandō**, I. 51, 3, II. 13, 3, VII. 47, 5, 48, 3; elsewhere part. of **patior**.

**passus**, **ūs**, m. [**pandō**], *pace*, with the Romans a double step, a little less than five English feet; **mille passūs** or **passuum**, (a thousand paces), a Roman *mile*.

**pate-faciō**, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, pass. **pate-fīō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, (make to be open), *open*.

**patens**, **entis**, part. of **pateō**.

**pateō**, **patēre**, **patui**, —, (lie open), *be open*, VI. 23, 9, VII. 8, 3; *extend*. Pres. part. as adj., *open*.

**pater**, **patri**, m. [**πατήρ**], *father*.

**patienter**, adv. [**patiōns**, pres. part. of **patior**], *patiently*.

**patientia**, ae, f. [**patiōns**, pres. part. of **patior**], *patient endurance*, VI.

**24, 4**; *patient waiting, forbearance*, VI. 36, 2.  
**patior, pati, passus sum**, *suffer*, in any sense; *allow; endure*, II. 31, 6, VII. 30, 4; *stand*, V. 10, 2.  
**patrius, a, um [pater]**, (of a father); *ancestral*.  
**patrōnus, l, m. [pater]**, *protector, patron*.  
**patruus, l, m. [pater]**, (father's brother), *uncle* on the father's side.  
**paucitās, tātis, f. [paucus]**, (smallness), *small numbers; small number*, III. 9, 4, V. 45, 1.  
**paucus, a, um**, rare in sing., *little, small*; plu., *few*; neut. plu. w. **respondēre**, (a few things), *briefly*.  
**paulatim, adv. [paulum]**, *little by little*, *gradually*; *a few at a time*, IV. 30, 2.  
**paulisper, adv. [paulum, per]**, (*for*) *a little while*.  
**paululum, adv. [acc. sing. neut. of paululus, dimin. of paulus]**, *very little, very slightly*.  
**paulus, a, um, little**, neut. as subst., *a little*; especially **paulum** and **paulō**, adverbial acc. and abl. of degree of difference respectively, used as adverbs, *a little*.  
**pāx, pācis, f.**, *peace*.  
**peccō, 1st conj.**, (do wrong), *injure*; **peccandī causa**, *motive for injury*.  
**pectus, pectoris, n.**, *breast*.  
**pecūnia, ae, f. [pecus]**, *property*, originally reckoned in terms of cattle; *money*.  
**pecus, pecoris, n.**, *cattle; beef*, IV. 1, 8.  
**pedālis, e [pēs]**, (of a foot); *a foot thick*.

**pedes, peditis, m. [pēs]**, *foot soldier*; plu., *foot soldiers, infantry*.  
**pedester, tris, tre [pedes]**, (*on foot*); **pedestrēs cōplae**, *infantry*; **pedestria itinera**, *approach by land*; **pedestre proelium**, *land battle*.  
**peditātus, ūs, m. [pedes]**, *infantry*.  
**Pedius, l, m.**, *Quintus Pedius*, a *legatus* of Caesar, II. 2, 1, 11, 3.  
**pēior, us**, compar. of **malus**.  
**pellis, is, f.**, *skin, hide*.  
**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum**, *drive*, I. 31, 11; *rout*; when connected w. **superāre**, *drive back, put to flight*.  
**pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum**, (*hang, weigh out*), *pay*.  
**penes, prep. w. acc.**, *in the hands of, in the power of*.  
**penitus, adv.**, (*inwardly*), *far into the interior*.  
**per, prep. w. acc.**, *through*, in various senses as in Eng.; of space, *through, across, over, among*; of time, *through, during*; of agency, *through, by means of, by*; of cause, *through, because of*. **per se**, *so far as he was concerned*, I. 42, 1, V. 41, 6; *on one's own responsibility*, II. 20, 4, VI. 13, 1; *alone*, V. 33, 3, VI. 12, 2, 37, 5; *in itself, of itself*, V. 49, 7; *separately*, VII. 59, 2.  
In comp., *through; thoroughly* (*through* and *thorough* were formerly the same in Eng., and cf. Eng. "through and through"); hence often having intensive force, especially w. adj.  
**per-agō, agere, ēgī, āctum**, (*drive through, put through*); *adjourn*.

**per-angustus**, a, um, *very narrow*.  
**per-cipiō**, cipere, cōpi, ceptum [capiō], (take through); *acquire*, VI. 40, 6; *win*, VII. 27, 2; *hear of*, VI. 8, 7; *hear*, V. 1, 8.  
**percontātiō**, ōnis, f. [per-contor, *inquire*], *inquiry*.  
**per-currō**, currere, cucurri or curri, cursum, (run through), *run along, run out on*.  
**percussus**, a, um, part. of percutiō.  
**per-cutiō**, cutere, cussi, cussum [quatiō], (shake through); *thrust through, run through*.  
**per-discō**, discere, didici, —, (learn thoroughly), *learn by heart*.  
**perditus**, a, um, part. of per dō.  
**per-dō**, dere, didi, ditum [dō, dare], (put through life, destroy); *ruin*. Perf. part. as adj., *outlawed, desperate*; as subst., *outcast, outlaw*.  
**per-dūcō**, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, (lead through); *lead safely*, III. 6, 5; *bring*, VII. 13, 2, 67, 7; of ships, *bring into harbor*; *raise*, VII. 39, 1; of earthworks, *construct*, I. 8, 1, etc.; *bring over*; *prolong*, V. 31, 3; *rēs ad extrēmum per-dūcitur*, *things are reduced to extremities*.  
**perendinus**, a, um [perendiō, adv., *day after to-morrow*, from πέραν, across, diēs, day], *of the day after to-morrow*; *perendinus diēs*, *day after to-morrow*.  
**per-eō**, ire, (ivi) ii, itum, (go through life); *perish*.  
**per-equitō**, 1st conj. [eques], *ride through*; of chariots, *drive through*.  
**per-exiguus**, a, um, *very small*.  
**per-facilis**, e, *very easy*.

**perfectus**, a, um, part. of perficiō.  
**per-ferō**, ferre, tuli, lātum, (bear through); of tidings, *bear, carry, report*, and so V. 53, 4; *endure, submit to*.  
**per-ficiō**, fierē, feci, factum [faciō], (make or do through), *finish*, I. 47, 1; *carry out, accomplish*, I. 3, 6, VII. 37, 6; *construct*; *arrange*, I. 9, 4.  
**perfidia**, ae, f. [per-fidus, *faithless*, from fides, *faith*], *faithlessness, perfidy, treachery*; eādem perfidiā ūsus, (having used the same treachery), *with the same treachery*; cf. similar use of ἔχωρ.  
**per-fringō**, fringere, frēgi, fractum [frangō], *break through*.  
**perfuga**, ae, m. [perfugiō], (one who has fled through the lines), *deserter*. (prō, as.)  
**per-fugiō**, fugere, fūgi, fugitum, (flee through the lines of an army), *flee, take refuge (with)*; *desert, escape*, I. 27, 3.  
**perfugium**, i, n. [perfugiō], *place of refuge, refuge*.  
**pergō**, pergere, per-rēxi, per-rēc-tum [per, regō], (keep straight on through), *proceed directly*.  
**periolitor**, 1st conj. [periculum], *make a trial, make a test*, (quid, to see what), II. 8, 2; *be endangered*, VI. 34, 8; *encounter danger*, VII. 56, 1.  
**periculōsus**, a, um [periculum], (full of danger), *dangerous*.  
**periculum**, i, n. *trial, test*, I. 40, 5; *attempt*, IV. 21, 1; *danger*.  
**peritus**, a, um, *skilled, experienced (in), familiar (with)*; w. gen.  
**perlātus**, a, um, part. of perferō.

**per-legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, read through.**

**per-luō, luere, luī, lūtum, wash ;** pass. as middle, (wash themselves), *bathe*.

**per-māgnus, a, um, very great, very large.**

**per-maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, (remain through quite a time), remain, continue.**

**per-misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtum or mistum, mix, mingle.**

**per-mittō, mittere, misi, missum, (let go through) ;** when w. dir. obj., *yield, intrust*, and so V. 11, 8, VII. 79, 1 ; *submit*, VII. 63, 6 ; *permit*.

**permixtus, a, um, part. of permisceō.**

**permōtus, a, um, part. of permovēō.**

**per-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move strongly) ; influence. induce ; alarm, disturb.**

**per-mulceō, mulcēre, mulsi, mulsum, (smooth over) ; calm.**

**permulsus, a, um, part. of permulceō.**

**perniciēs, ēī, f., no plu., destruction, ruin.**

**per-paucus, a, um, rare in sing., very small ; plu., only a very few.**

**perpendiculum, l, n. [per-pendō, hang], plumb-line ; dēreōctum ad perpendiculum, exactly perpendicularly.**

**per-petior, petī, pessus sum [patior], suffer, endure.**

**per-petuus, a, um [petō], (ever seeking) ; unbroken, continuous, perpetual ; w. vīta, whole ; w. controversia, incessant ; in perpetuum (sc. tempus), forever ; abl.**

sing. neut. as adv. (sc. tempore), *forever*, I. 31, 7 ; *continually*, VII. 41, 2.

**per-quirō, quirere, (quisivī), quisitum [quaerō], (inquire thoroughly about), inquire about.**

**per-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, break through ; break into, break in ; force a passage, I. 8, 4.**

**perruptus, a, um, part. of per-rumpō.**

**per-scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, (write carefully), write in detail ; report, V. 49, 3.**

**per-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow up, pursue ; bellō persequi, (follow one up with war), prosecute the war, I. 13, 4 ; bellō civitātem persequi, make war upon the state ; avenge, VII. 38, 8, 10.**

**per-sevērō, 1st conj. [per-sevērus, very strict], (be very strict), persist, a following infin. being translated by in w. the Eng. verbal noun in -ing.**

**per-solvō,olvere, solvī, solūtum, (loose ; pay in full) ; pay. (poenā, penalty.)**

**perspectus, a, um, part. of perspicō.**

**per-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spectrum, (see through, look through) ; see, perceive, ascertain ; look, see, II. 17, 4 ; see into, II. 18, 2 ; inspect, examine, IV. 21, 9, VII. 36, 1, 44, 1, 68, 3.**

**per-stō, stāre, stitī, stātum, (stand through), persist.**

**per-suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, (advise successfully), persuade ; the name of the person persuaded is in the dat., and the thing persuaded**

is represented by a neut. acc. pronoun or an object clause of purpose; e.g. **id eis persuādēre**, (persuade this to them), *persuade them to do this*; **hōc sibi (eis) persuādēre**, *persuade him (them) of this*, V. 29, 5, VI. 14, 5; impers. in pass., e.g. **sibi persuādētur**, (it is persuaded to him), *he is persuaded*, I. 40, 3.

**per-terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum**, (frighten thoroughly), *frighten, greatly alarm, demoralize*; perf. part., *panic-stricken, demoralized*.

**pertinācia, ae, f. [pertināx, obstinate, from pertineō], obstinacy.**

**per-tineō, tinēre, tinui, — [teneō]**, (hold through), of actual space, *extend*; w. **ad**, *pertain (to), concern*; w. adv., **eōdem (illō) pertinēre**, *be along the (that) same line, be of the same nature*, I. 14, 4; *be for that same end*, explained by following clause, IV. 11, 4.

**perturbātiō, ōnis, f. [perturbō], excitement, alarm.**

**per-turbō, 1st conj. [turba, confusion]**, *confuse greatly, disturb, throw into confusion*; pass., *be troubled, be in grave doubt*, IV. 14, 2.

**per-vagor, 1st conj. [vagus, wandering]**, (wander extensively), *scour the country*.

**per-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum**, (come through), *arrive (at), reach; revert*, VI. 19, 2.

**pēs, pedis, m., foot**; as a measure of length, a very little less than the standard English foot; **pedem referre**, *retreat*; **ad pedēs dēsilire**, *leap to the ground*; **pedibus aditus**, *approach by land*; **pedibus proeliārī**, *fight on foot*.

**petitus, a, um, part. of petō.**

**petō, petere, petivi or petiī, petitum**, *seek*; w. object clause of purpose, *seek, request*.

**Petrocoriī, ōrum, m. plu.**, a tribe of southern Gaul, about the Dordogne river, VII. 75, 3.

**Petrōnius, ī, m., Marcus Petronius**, a brave centurion, VII. 50, 4.

**Petrosidius, ī, m., Lucius Petrosidius**, a brave standard bearer, V. 37, 5.

**phalanx, phalangis, f.**, sometimes w. Greek acc. sing. **phalanga [φάλαγξ]**, *phalanx*, used by Caesar to describe any close, compact formation of troops.

**Pictonēs, um, m. plu.**, a tribe on the west coast of Gaul, south of the Loire, III. 11, 5, etc.

**pietās, tātis, f. [pius, dutiful]**, *devotion, loyalty*.

**pīlum, ī, n.**, *spear, javelin*; especially those used by the Romans as their line of battle and the enemy's were nearing.

**pīlus, ī, m.**, a division of the reserves in the Roman army; **primī pīlī centuriō**, *first centurion of a legion*; **primum pīlum dūcere**, *be first centurion of a legion*; cf. **primipīlus**.

**pinna, ae, f.**, (feather); *battlement, parapet*.

**Pirūstae, ārum, m. plu.**, a tribe in Illyricum, V. 1, 5, 7.

**piscis, is, m.**, *fish*, either singular or collective in sense, like Eng.

**Pisō, ōnis, m.**, (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso*, consul 61 B. C., I. 2, 1, 35, 4. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesarianus*, consul 58 B. C., father-in-law of Caesar, I. 6, 4, 12, 7. (3) *Lucius*

*Calpurnius Piso Caesonius*, consul 112 B.C., grandfather of the last named, I. 12, 7. (4) *Piso*, an Aquitanian noble, IV. 12, 4.

**pix**, **picis**, f., *pitch*.

**placeō**, **placēre**, **placui**, **placitum**, *please*; in Bel. Gal. always impers., *it pleases*, w. dat.; **placuit ei** (it pleased him), *he decided*; **maiori placuit parti**, (it pleased the greater part), *the majority thought it best*.

**placidē**, adv. [**placidus**, *calm*], *calmly*.

**plācō**, 1st conj. [cf. **placeō**], *appease*.

**Plancus**, l, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, a *legatus* of Caesar in the fifth year of the war, V. 24, 3, 25, 4.

**plānē**, adv. [**plānus**], *plainly, clearly; altogether, quite*, VI. 43, 4.

**plānitia**, ēi, f., no plu. [**plānus**], *plain*.

**plānus**, a, um, *level; flat and broad*, III. 13, 1.

**plēbs**, **plēbis**, and **plēbēs**, **plēbēi**, f., *the common people, populace*.

**plēnē**, adv. [**plēnus**], *fully, completely*.

**plēnus**, a, um [**plēō**, *fill*], *full*; w. gen., VII. 76, 6.

**plērumque**, adv. [acc. sing. neut. of **plērusque**], *generally, usually*.

**plērusque**, **plēraque**, **plērumque**, regularly only in plu., *most, most of*; often best rendered by adverb, *generally*. Masc. plu. as subst., *most people*, IV. 5, 3; neut. plu. as subst., *most things*, VII. 12, 3.

**Pleumoxii**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. 39, 1.

**plumbum**, l, n. *lead*; **album plumbum**, (white lead), *tin*.

**plūrēs**, **plūrimus**, compar. (plu.) and super. of **multus**.

**plūs**, compar. of **multus**.

**pluteus**, l, m., *breastwork, screen*, placed upon a rampart as protection to a soldier fighting there.

**pōoulum**, l, n., *drinking cup*.

**poena**, ae, f. [cf. *ποινή*, and **pūniō**, *punish*], *penalty*, V. 1, 9; *punishment*; **poenās pendere** or **persolvere**, *pay the penalty*; **poenās repetere**, *seek satisfaction*.

**pollex**, **pollicis**, m., *thumb*; **digitus pollex**, (thumb finger), *thumb*.

**polliceor**, **pollicēri**, **pollicitus sum**, *promise*; **liberāliter pollicēri**, (promise graciously), *make gracious promise*, IV. 21, 6.

**pollicitātiō**, ōnis, f. [**polliceor**], *promise*.

**pollicitus**, a, um, part. of **polliceor**.

**Pompeius**, l, m., (1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, Pompey the Great, Roman statesman and soldier, born 106 B.C., member with Caesar and Crassus of the first triumvirate, consul with the latter 55 B.C., Caesar's son-in-law and rival, later conquered in battle of Pharsalus, and finally murdered in Egypt; IV. 1, 1, VI. 1, 2, 4, VII. 6, 1. (2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter with Sabinus, V. 36, 1.

**pondus**, **ponderis**, n. [**pendō**, *hang, weigh*], *weight*.

**pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *place, put*; *lay down*, IV. 37, 1; *set aside*, VI. 17, 5; **castra pōnere**, (pitch camp), *encamp*; perf. pass., of locations, *be situated*; **sibi praesi-**

**dium pōnere**, (place a defence for one's self), *take refuge*.

**pōns, pontis**, m., *bridge*.

**populātiō, ōnis**, f. [**populor**], *laying waste a country*.

**populor**, 1st conj. [NOT connected w. **populus**], *lay waste, ravage*.

**populus**, l, m., *people*; used of other than the Roman people, I. 3, 8 (*peoples, nations*), VI. 13, 6, VII. 32, 5.

**porrēctus**, a, um, part. of **porrigō**.

**por-rigō, rigere, rēxi, rēctum** [**prō, regō**], *reach forward, stretch, extend. porrēctum pertinēre*, (extend, stretched out), *extend*, II. 19, 5.

**porrō**, adv. [**prō**], *furthermore*.

**porta**, ae, f., *gate of a town; of a camp, gate, entrance*.

**portō**, 1st conj., *carry, take, convey*.

**portōrium**, l, n. [**portō**], *customs duty; tax, toll*, III. 1, 2.

**portus, ūs**, m. [**portō**], *harbor, port*.

**pōsoō, pōscere, popōsci**, —, *demand*.

**positus**, a, um, part. of **pōnō**.

**possessiō, ōnis**, f. [**possideō** or **pos-sidō**], (a possessing, in the sense either of having possession or of gaining possession), *possession*.

**pos-sideō, sidēre, sēdi, sessum** [**prō; sedeō, sit**], (sit before, have possession of), *possess*, I. 34, 3, II. 4, 6, VI. 12, 4.

**pos-sidō, sidere, sēdi, sessum** [**prō; sidō, settle**], (settle in front of), *take possession of*, IV. 7, 4.

**possum, posse, potui**, — [**potis, able, sum**], *be able; w. complementary infin., be able to, can; without infin., be able to do, can do, can effect; multum posse,*

*be powerful; plurimum or largiter posse, be very powerful, be very influential; minimum posse, have very little power.*

**post**, (1) adv., *afterwards*; (2) prep. w. acc., of time, *after*; of place, *behind*.

**post-eā**, adv. [old acc. plu. neut. of **is**], (after these things), *afterwards*.

**postea quam**, as subord. conj., often written as one word, (later than), *after*.

**posterus**, a, um, compar. **posterior**, super. **postrēmus** and **postumus** [**post**], *next, the following*; masc. plu. as subst., *descendants, later generations*, VII. 77, 13.

**post-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum**, (place after), *lay aside*, V. 7, 6; *disregard*, VI. 3, 4. (**omnia, everything else.**)

**post-quam**, subord. conj., (later than), *after*.

**postrēmō**, adv. [abl. of **postrēmus**, super. of **posterus**, sc. **tempore**], *at last, finally*.

**postrī-diē**, adv. [loc. of **posterus** and **diēs**], *on the following day, the next day*; followed by **ēius diēi**, (on the following day of this day), *the next day*.

**pōstulātum**, l, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **pōstulō**], (a thing demanded), *demand*.

**pōstulō**, 1st conj. [**pōscō**], *demand; request*, I. 31, 9.

**potēns, potentis**, adj. [pres. part. of **possum**], *powerful*; compar. as subst., sing. *a more powerful man*, plu. *the more powerful*; so super. plu. as subst., *the most powerful*, VI. 22, 4.

**potentātus, ūs, m.** [potēns], (power), *supremacy, leadership.*

**potentia, ae, f.** [potēns], *power, influence.*

**potestās, tātis, f.** [potis, *able*], (ability), *power*; **potestātem facere**, *give opportunity or chance*, and so I. 48, 3, II. 6, 3, V. 51, 3. (suī, *of getting at him*, I. 40, 8.)

**potior, potiri, potitus sum** [potis, *able*], (make one's self powerful), *gain control, obtain possession*; w. abl. translated by *of*; also w. gen., I. 3, 8.

**potius, compar. adv.** [potis, *able*], super. **potissimum**, *rather* (which is strictly a compar. in Eng.).

**prae, prep. w. abl.**, (in front of, before), *in comparison with*, II. 30, 4; *on account of*, VII. 44, 1. In comp., *in front, before.*

**prae-acuō, acuere, acui, acūtum** [acer, *sharp*], *sharpen in front, sharpen at the end.*

**praeacūtus, a, um, part. of prae-acuō.**

**praebeō, praebēre, praebui, praebitum** [prae, *habeō*], (hold before, hold out), *furnish, give.*

**prae-caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum**, (be on one's guard in advance), *look out.*

**prae-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum**, (go ahead of), *excel, surpass.*

**prae-ceps, cipitis, adj.** [cf. *caput, head*], (head first), *headlong, precipitously*; w. *locus*, *steep.*

**praeceptum, ī, n.** [neut. of perf. part. of *praecipitō*], (a thing commanded), *command, direction.*

**prae-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum** [capiō], (take beforehand); *order,*

*direct. opiniōne praecipere*, (take beforehand in thought), *anticipate.*

**praecipitō, 1st conj.** [praeceps], *fling headlong.*

**praecipuō, adv.** [praeipuus], *especially.*

**prae-cipuus, a, um** [capiō], (taking the first place), *special.*

**prae-clūdō, clūdere, clūsi, clūsum** [claudō], (close in advance), *close.*

**praecō, ōnis, m.** [prae; vocō, *call*], (one who calls in front), *herald.*

**Praecōninus, ī, m.**, *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a Roman *legatus*, of whom nothing is known beyond Caesar's statement in III. 20, 1.

**prae-currō, currere, oucurri or curri, cursum**, (run ahead), *hasten ahead; anticipate*, VII. 9, 4.

**praeda, ae, f.**, *booty, spoil, plunder.*  
**prae-dicō, 1st conj.**, *set forth*, IV. 34, 5; *declare; boast* (*multa, a great deal*), I. 44, 1.

**praedor, 1st conj.** [praeda], *obtain booty, plunder.*

**prae-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum**, (lead in front), *construct.*

**praefectus, ī, m.** [masc. of perf. part. of *praeficiō*], (one put in command), *commander*, especially a *praefect* of the cavalry, commanding a battalion.

**prae-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum**, (bear in front), *consider to surpass*; w. reflex., *outdo, surpass*, II. 27, 2.

**prae-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, factum** [faciō], (put in front), *put* (some one) *in command* (of); w. dat.

**prae-figō, figere, fixī, fixum**, (fix in front), *drive in front.*

**prae-metūō, metuere, —, —, —**, (fear before), *be anxious.*

**prae-mittō, mittere, mīsi, missum,**  
*send ahead, forward, or in advance.*

**praemium, ī, n.** [for **prae-emium**,  
from **emō, take**], (something taken  
in advance, an advantage), *reward.*

**prae-occupō, 1st conj.,** *seize in ad-  
vance.*

**prae-optō, 1st conj.,** *choose in pref-  
erence, choose.*

**prae-parō, 1st conj.,** *get ready be-  
forehand, prepare in advance.*

**prae-pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum,**  
(place in front), *place (some one) in  
command (of); w. dat.*

**prae-rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, rup-  
tum,** (break in front), *break; pass.,  
part. Perf. part. as adj., w. loca,*  
*steep; w. ripa, abrupt, steep.*

**prae-saepiō, saepire, saepsi, saep-  
tum [saepēs, hedge],** (hedge in  
front), *cut off.*

**prae-scribō, scribere, scripsi,  
scriptum,** (write in advance), *dic-  
tate.*

**praescriptum, ī, n.** [neut. of perf.  
part. of **praescribō**], (a thing dic-  
tated), *dictation.*

**praesēns, entis, pres. part. of prae-  
sum.**

**praesentia, ae, f. [praesēns],** (a  
being at hand), *presence, V. 43, 4.*

**praesentia, neut. plu. of praesēns.**

**prae-sentiō, sentire, sēsi, sēsum,**  
*perceive in advance.*

**prae-sertim, adv. [serō, join],**  
(joined in advance), *especially.*

**praesidium, ī, n. [prae-sideō, sit  
in front of, guard],** *garrison for  
a fortification; guard; praesidiō  
esse, (be for a guard), guard, w.  
another dat.; assistance, V. 41, 5,  
VI. 14, 4; protection, VI. 5, 7,*

**VII. 10, 1, 38, 9; sibi praesidium  
pōnere,** (place a defence for one's  
self), *take refuge.*

**prae-stō, stāre, stiti, stitum,** (stand  
before); intrans., w. abl. of specifi-  
cation, *be superior, excel; impers.,  
it is better; trans., show, exhibit,  
possess, IV. 33, 3; w. officium, do.*  
**praestō, adv., at hand; praestō  
esse, be waiting.**

**prae-sum, esse, fui, —,** (be in  
front), *be at the head (of), be in  
charge (of), be in command (of), w.  
dat. Pres. part., praesēns, entis,  
being present; plūribus praesenti-  
bus, abl. abs., (more being present),  
in the presence of others, I. 18, 1,  
and similarly in each abl. abs.; as  
adj., present; immediate; in per-  
son, VII. 62, 2; neut. plu. as subst.  
in phrase in praesentia (sc. tem-  
pora), for the present.*

**praeter, prep. w. acc. (beyond);  
past, I. 48, 2; contrary to, III. 3,  
2, VI. 8, 6, 40, 8, VII. 61, 3; ex-  
cept, besides.**

**praeter-eā, adv. [old acc. neut. plu.  
of is], besides this, besides, more-  
over.**

**praeter-eō, ire, (ivi) ii, itum,** (go  
past), *pass over. Perf. part. as adj.,  
(gone past), past; neut. plu. as  
subst., (the things gone past, "by-  
gones"), the past.*

**praeteritus, a, um, part. of prae-  
tereō.**

**praeter-mitto, mittere, mīsi, mis-  
sum,** (let go past, let slip), *lose.*

**praeter-quam, prep. w. acc., (other  
than), besides, except.**

**praetor, ōris, m. [for prae-itor, from  
prae-eō], (one who goes ahead,**

commander); **lēgātus prō prae-  
tōre**, (lieutenant as commander),  
*lieutenant general*.

**praetōrius**, a, um [praetor], relat-  
ing to a *praetor*; **praetōria cohors**,  
*praetorian cohort, general's guard,*  
*bodyguard*.

**prae-ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstum**, (burn  
in front), *burn at the end, burned to*  
*a point*.

**prae-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum**,  
(turn in advance), *anticipate, fore-*  
*stall*.

**prāvus**, a, um, *bad, vicious*.

**premō, premere, pressī, pressum**,  
*press*; in military expressions, *press*  
*hard*; *weigh down, oppress*; **quibus**  
**angustis Caesar premitur**, (in  
what straits Caesar is pressed), *how*  
*hard pressed Caesar is*, III. 18, 3;  
**ipsōs sē premere**, *embarrass each*  
*other*, VII. 28, 3.

**prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēn-  
sum** [contracted from **prēhendō**],  
*grasp, seize*.

**pretium**, l, n., *price*.

**prex, precis, f.**, generally plu.,  
*prayer, entreaty; curse, imprecation*,  
VI. 31, 5.

**prīdiē**, adv. [a form of the stem of  
**prior**, and loc. abl. of **diēs**, cf.  
**postrīdiē**], *on the preceding day,*  
*the day before*; w. **ēius diēī**, (on  
the preceding day of this day), *the*  
*day before*.

**prīmī-pīlus**, l, m. [compound noun  
formed from **prīmus pīlus**, see  
**pīlus**], *first centurion*.

**prīmō**, adv. [abl. of **prīmus**, sc.  
**tempore**], *at first*.

**prīmum**, adv. [acc. of **prīmus**], *first,*  
*in the first place. quam prīmum,*

*as soon as possible; cum prīmum,*  
*(when first), as soon as*.

**prīmus**, a, um, super. of **prior**.

**prīnceps, cīpis**, adj. [**prīmus,**  
**cīpiō**], (taking first place), *first*, I.  
7, 3, 12, 6, 41, 2, VII. 2, 1; masc.  
as subst., *leader, chief*.

**prīncipātus, ūs**, m. [**prīnceps**],  
*leadership, supremacy*; of an indi-  
vidual in a state, *foremost position*.

**prior, prius**, compar. adj. [formed  
on ā stem of **prae** and **prō**], *former;*  
*first*, VII. 82, 3; **priōrēs inferre**,  
*be the first to wage*, IV. 7, 3; masc.  
plu. as subst., *those in front, the*  
*foremost*, II. 11, 5; super. **prīmus,**  
a, um, *first*; having partitive force,  
w. **nox, impedimenta, obsidiō,**  
**finēs**, *the first part of, the first of*;  
masc. plu. as subst., *leaders, chiefs*;  
**in prīmīs**, (among the first), *espe-*  
*cially*.

**prīstinus**, a, um [for **prius-tinus**, cf.  
**prior** and **teneō**], *former, earlier*;  
w. **diēs**, *previous*.

**prius**, compar. adv. [**prior**], *earlier,*  
*sooner*; **prius quam, priusquam**,  
subord. conj., (earlier than, sooner  
than), *before*.

**prīvātīm**, adv. [**prīvātus**], *privately,*  
*individually*; *as private citizens*, I.  
17, 1.

**prīvātus**, a, um [part. of **prīvō**,  
**deprive**], (apart from the state), *per-*  
*sonal, private*; masc. as subst.,  
*individual, person*, VI. 13, 6.

**prō**, prep. w. abl., of place, *before, in*  
*front of*; of defence or protection,  
*in behalf of, for*; of substitution,  
*in place of, instead of, as, for*; of  
relation, *in proportion to, in accord-*  
*ance with. In comp., forth, before.*

**probō**, 1st conj. [**probus**, *estimable*], *prove*, I. 3, 6, V. 44, 3; *approve*, *approve of*.

**prō-cēdō**, *cēdere*, *cēssi*, *cēssum*, (go forward), *advance*, *proceed*.

**prō-clinō**, 1st conj., (lean forward), *start*.

**prō-cōnsul**, *ulis*, m., *proconsul*, an ex-consul sent from Rome at the end of his term to govern a province.

**procul**, adv., *at a distance*, *far off*; *from a distance*, IV. 12, 6, V. 34, 3, VI. 39, 4.

**prō-cumbō**, *cumbere*, *cubui*, *cubitum* [cf. *cubō*], *lie down*, VI. 27, 1; *fall*, *throw one's self*, VII. 15, 4; *incline*, *bend forward*, IV. 17, 4; *sink to the earth*, II. 27, 1; *be beaten down*, VI. 43, 3.

**prō-cūrō**, 1st conj., (care for in advance, look out for), *attend to*.

**prō-currō**, *currere*, *cucurri* or *curri*, *cursum*, *run forward*; *rush out*.

**prōd-**, a form of **prō** in comp. before vowels.

**prōd-eō**, *ire*, (ivī) *ii*, *itum*, (go forth), *come out*; *advance*, I. 48, 7.

**prōdesse**, infin. of **prōsum**.

**prōditio**, *ōnis*, f. [**prōdō**], (a betraying), *treason*, *treachery*.

**prōditor**, *ōris*, m. [**prōdō**], *traitor*.

**prō-dō**, *dere*, *didī*, *dītum* [**dō**, *dare*], (give forth); *give out*, VI. 20, 3; *hand down*; *betray*, IV. 25, 3.

**prō-dūcō**, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductum*, *lead forth*, *bring out*; *prolong*, IV. 30, 2.

**proellor**, 1st conj. [**proelium**], *fight*.

**proelium**, I, n., *battle*.

**profectio**, *ōnis*, f. [**proficiscor**], *departure*.

**prōfectus**, a, um, part. of **prōficiō**, IV. 19, 4.

**profectus**, a, um, part. of **proficiscor**.

**prō-ferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*, *bring forth*, *bring out*.

**prō-ficiō**, *ficere*, *fēcī*, *fectum* [**faciō**], (make forth, make out), *accomplish*, *effect*.

**pro-ficiscor**, *ficisci*, *fectus sum* [**prōficiō**], *set out*, *depart*.

**pro-fiteor**, *fitēri*, *fessus sum* [**fatēor**], (confess openly), *declare*; *signify*, VI. 23, 7.

**prō-fligo**, 1st conj., (strike to the ground), *rout*, *put to flight*.

**prō-fluō**, *fluere*, *fluxī*, —, (flow forth), *rise*.

**pro-fugiō**, *fugere*, *fūgī*, *fugitum*, (flee forth), *flee*, *escape*.

**prō-gnātus**, a, um [part. of (g)nāscor, *be born*], (born from), *sprung*, *descended*.

**prō-gredior**, *gredi*, *gressus sum* [**gradior**, *step*], (go forth), *advance*.

**progressus**, a, um, part. of **prō-gredior**.

**pro-hibēō**, *hibēre*, *hibui*, *hibitum* [**habeō**], (hold forth from anything);

w. acc. and infin., *prevent*, the infin. being translated by *from*

with the verbal noun in -ing, e.g. **prohibēre Teutonōs ingredi**, *prevent the Teutons from entering*,

II. 4, 2; so also w. acc. and an abl. of separation of a verbal noun

in which the acc. represents the subject of the verbal idea, *prevent*,

e.g. **exercitum itinero prohibēre**, *prevent the army from marching*;

w. acc. and abl. of any other nouns than the above, *keep*,

*cut off; protect*, V. 21, 1, VI., 10, 5, 23, 9; when without an abl. or an infin., *check, stop*, I. 6, 1, 8, 2, 47, 6, V. 9, 3.

**prō-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **prōjiciō**), **icere**, **iēcī**, **lectum** [**iaciō**], (throw forward), *throw, cast; betray*, II. 15, 5.

**pro-inde**, adv., (thenceforward), *hence, therefore*.

**prō-mineō**, **minēre**, **minui**, —, *lean forward*.

**prō-miscuē**, adv. [**prō-miscuus**, from **miscēō**, *mix*], *all together, promiscuously*.

**prōmissus**, a, um, part. of **prō-mittō**.

**prō-mittō**, **mittere**, **misī**, **missum**, *let go forth*. Perf. part. as adj. w. **capillus**, *long, flowing*.

**prōmō**, **prōmere**, **prōmpsi**, **prōmp-tum** [contracted from **pro-emō**], *take out*. Perf. part. as adj., *ready, quick, prompt*.

**prō-moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mō-tum**, *move forward*.

**prōmptus**, a, um, part. of **prōmō**.

**prōmunturium**, l, n. [**prōmineō**], (projection), *headland, promontory*.

**prōnē**, adv. [**prōnus**, *inclined*, cf. *πρηνής*], *inclined*.

**prō-nūntiō**, 1st conj. [**nūntius**], (announce forth), *announce, declare; give orders*, V. 33, 3, 34, 1, 3.

**prope**, adv. and prep., compar. **pro-plus**, super. **proximē** [**propior**], *near; of degree, nearly, almost; super., last*.

**prō-pellō**, **pellere**, **puli**, **pulsum**, (drive forth), *drive off, drive back*.

**properō**, 1st conj. [**properus**, *quick*], *hurry, hasten*.

**propinquitās**, **tātis**, f. [**propin-quus**], (nearness), *proximity; relationship*, II. 4, 4.

**propinquus**, a, um [**prope**], *near; w. dēspectus, close*. Masc. as subst., *relative, kinsman; fem., female relative*, I. 18, 7.

**propior**, us, compar. adj. [cf. **prope**], *nearer; super. proximus, nearest; of time, next; last*, VII. 32, 4, 67, 7.

**propius**, adv., compar. of **prope**.

**prō-pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *set forth, disclose, explain; raise, display*, II. 20, 1; w. **praemia**, *promise; place before*, VII. 15, 2; *propose*, VII. 47, 1; *present*, IV. 17, 2, VII. 14, 9.

**prōpositus**, a, um, part. of **prō-pōnō**.

**proprius**, a, um [**prope**], (one's own), *private*, VI. 22, 2; *characteristic*, VI. 23, 2.

**propter**, prep. w. acc. [**prope**], *on account of*.

**propter-eā**, adv. [old case form of **is**], (on account of this), *on this account; propterea quod*, (on this account, because), *because*.

**prōpugnātor**, **ōris**, m. [**prōpugnō**], *defender*.

**prō-pūgnō**, 1st conj. [**pūgna**, *fight*], (fight an enemy forth, make sallies in defence); *make sallies or sorties*; pres. part. as subst., *defender*, VII. 86, 5.

**prō-pulsō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **prō-pellō**], *drive off, drive back*, I. 49, 4; *defend one's self against*, VI. 15, 1.

**prōra**, ae, f. [**prō**; cf. *πρῶρα*, from *πρό*], *pro, bow*.

**prō-ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum, throw down, demolish.**

**prō-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, (follow forth), follow up, pursue; liberāliter ōrātiōne prōsequī, dismiss with gracious words.**

**prōspectus, ūs, m. [prōspiciō], view, outlook; sight, V. 10, 2.**

**pro-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spectum, look out, provide (for), w. dat. or purpose clause.**

**prō-sternō, sternere, strāvi, strātum, (strew forth), overthrow.**

**prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fui, (prō-futūrus), (be for), be advantageous, be of advantage.**

**prō-tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, (cover in defence), cover.**

**prō-terreō, terrere, terrui, territum, frighten off; drive off.**

**prō-tinus, adv. [tenu, as far as], (so far forth), forthwith, immediately.**

**pro-turbō, 1st conj. [turba, crowd], throw into confusion, II. 19, 7; frighten, drive, VII. 81, 2.**

**prōvectus, a, um, part. of prōvehō.**

**prō-vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum, bear forth on any vehicle; pass., (be borne forth), drive, V. 8, 2; put to sea, IV. 28, 3.**

**prō-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, come forward.**

**prōventus, ūs, m. [prōveniō], (a coming forth), outcome, result.**

**prō-vidēō, vidēre, vidi, visum, foresee, II. 22, 1; provide, make provision; pass. often impersonal, prōvidētur, provision is made.**

**prō-vincia, ae, f. [vincō, conquer], (a conquered region beyond the borders of a country), province;**

*especially the Province, meaning Transalpine Gaul, the southeastern part of modern France.*

**prōvinciālis, o [prōvincia], of the province.**

**prōvisus, a, um, part. of prōvideō.**

**prō-volō, 1st conj., (fly forth), rush out.**

**proximē, adv., super. of prope.**

**proximus, a, um, super. of propior.**

**prūdētia, ae, f. [prūdēns, for prōvidēns, from prōvideō], foresight, prudence.**

**Ptiāniī, ōrum, m. plu., an Aquitanian tribe, of whose location nothing is known, III. 27, 1.**

**pūbēs, pūberis, adj., full grown. Masc. as subst., adult.**

**pūblicē, adv. [pūblicus], officially; as a state, IV. 3, 1.**

**pūblicō, 1st conj. [pūblicus], (make public), confiscate.**

**pūblicus, a, um [populus], (of the the people); public; pūblicum cōsiliū, official action; in pūblicum, publicly, VI. 28, 3; into the streets, VII. 26, 3; in pūblicō, in public; rēs pūblica, the state, especially Rome; state affairs, I. 34, 1, VI. 20, 1, 3.**

**Pūblius, i, m., a Roman praenomen.**

**pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est, impers., it shames anyone, w. acc. of person expressed or understood; hence, be ashamed.**

**pudor, ōris, m. [pudet], (shame), sense of shame.**

**puer, pueri, m., boy.**

**puerilis, e [puer], of a boy; puerilis aetās, boyhood.**

**pūgna, ae, f., (hand to hand encounter), fight, battle.**

**pūgnō**, 1st conj. [**pūgna**], *fight*.

**pulcher**, **chra**, **chrum**, compar.

**pulchrior**, super. **pulcherrimus**,  
*beautiful; glorious*, VII. 77, 13.

**Pullō**, **ōnis**, m., a brave centurion,  
V. 44, 1, 13.

**pulsus**, **a**, **um**, part. of **pellō**.

**pulsus**, **ūs**, m. [**pellō**, *drive*], (a  
driving); *working*.

**pulvis**, **pulveris**, m., *dust*.

**puppis**, **is**, f., *stern*.

**pūrgō**, 1st conj. [for **pūrigō**, from  
**pūrus**, *pure*, **agō**, *drive*], (cleanse);  
*excuse*. Perf. part. as adj., *blameless*, *clear*.

**putō**, 1st conj., (reckon); *think*.

**Pyrēnaeus**, **a**, **um** [**Πυρηναῖος**], w.  
**montēs**, *the Pyrenees*.

## Q

**Q.**, abbreviation for **Quintus**, a  
Roman *praenomen*.

**qua**, neut. plu. of **quī** (indef.), II.  
14, 6.

**quā**, rel. adv. [abl. of **quī**, sc. **viā** or  
**parte**], *where*, I. 6, 1, 8, 4, 10, 3,  
38, 5, II. 33, 2, etc.

**quadrāgēnī**, **ae**, **a**, gen. **um**, distrib.  
adj. [**quadrāgintā**], *forty* (each).

**quadrāgintā**, indeclin. card. adj.  
[**quattuor**], *forty*.

**quadrīngentī**, **ae**, **a**, gen. **um**, card.  
adj. [**quattuor**, **centum**], *four hun-*  
*dred*.

**quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī** or  
**quaesī**, **quaesitum**, *inquire*, *ask*;  
*inquire for*, *ask for*, II. 21, 6; *seek*,  
VII. 37, 6.

**quaestiō**, **ōnis**, f. [for **quaesitiō**,  
from **quaerō**], (inquiry), *investiga-*  
*tion*, *examination*.

**quaestor**, **ōris**, m. [for **quaesitor**,  
from **quaerō**], *quaestor*, the pay and  
quarter master of a Roman army.

**quaestus**, **ūs**, m. [for **quaesitus**,  
from **quaerō**], (a seeking); *acqui-*  
*sition*, *gain*.

**quālis**, **o**, interrog. adj., *of what*  
*sort? what?*

**quam**, adv. [case form of **quis**, **quī**],  
after any compar., *than*; after  
**praestat** and **mālō**, verbs implying  
comparison, *rather than*, *than*;  
before super., *as* (meaning of modi-  
fied word in positive) *as possible*, or  
*the* (meaning of modified word in  
super.) *possible*—e.g. **quam māxi-**  
**mus**, *as great as possible* or *the*  
*greatest possible*, I. 3, 1; before  
positive of adj., *how*, I. 43, 6, 7,  
VII. 54, 3; **quam diū**, *as long as*,  
I. 17, 6.

**quam-vis**, adv. [**quīvis**], (however  
you wish), *however*, *no matter how*,  
IV. 2, 5. See also **quīvis**.

**quandō**, adv., (when?); indefinite  
after **sī** (like **quis**), *ever*, III. 12, 3.

**quantus**, **a**, **um**, w. subj. in ind.  
question, *how great*; **tantus**—**quan-**  
**tus**, *as much—as*; without **tantus**  
expressed, *as much as*, *as far as*;  
neut. as subst. w. gen. of the whole,  
**quantum bonī**, *how much advan-*  
*tage*, I. 40, 6, **quantum agrī**, *as*  
*much land as*, VI. 22, 2; **quantō**  
**opere** (**quantopere**), *how much*,  
*how greatly*, II. 5, 2; followed by  
**tantō opere** (**tantopere**), *as much*  
*as—so much*, VII. 52, 3.

**quantus-vis**, **quanta-vis**, **quantum-**  
**vis** [**vis**, 2d pers. of **volō**], (as  
great as you wish), w. **cōpiās**, *any*  
*forces however great*, V. 28, 4.

**quārē, quā rē**, see **rēs**.

**quārtus, a, um** [quattuor], ord. adj., *fourth*.

**qua-si**, subord. conj. [quam, si], *as if*.

**quattuor**, indeclin. card. adj., *four*.

**quattuor-decim** [decem], indeclin. card. adj., *fourteen*.

**-que**, enclitic coörd. conj., *and*; appended to the word or to the first word (usually) of a phrase or clause which it connects.

**quendam**, acc. sing. masc. of **quidam**.

**queror, queri, questus sum**, intrans., *complain*; trans., *complain of*; *lament*, I. 39, 4, VII. 63, 8.

**questus, a, um**, part. of **queror**.

**qui, quae, quod**, gen. **cūius**, etc., (1) rel. pro. as subst., nom. *who*, *which*, poss. *whose*, obj. *whom*, *which*; *that*; neut. w. antecedent omitted, *what*; as adj., *which*. (2) interrog. pro. as adj., *what*.

**qui, quae or qua, quod**, indef. pro., generally used as adj., *any, anyone*, usually after **si, nisi, nē, num** or a rel. pro. **Si qui**, etc., *whatever*, VI. 32, 2, VII. 28, 1, 67, 4.

**quoquam**, neut. of **quisquam**.

**qui-cunque, quae-cunque, quod-cunque**, indef. rel. pro., *whoever, whichever, whatever*; obj. case in Eng., *whomsoever*.

**quid**, neut. of **quis**.

**qui-dam, quae-dam, quid-dam** (subst.) or **quod-dam** (adj.), indef. pro., as subst., *a certain one, a certain thing*, plu. *certain ones, certain things*; as adj., *a certain, plu. certain*.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed, at least, em-*

*phasizing a preceding word*; **nē—quidem**, *not even*, emphasizing the intervening word.

**quiēs, ētis**, f., *rest, repose, quiet*.

**quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvi, quiētum** [quiēs], *rest*. Perf. part. as adj., *quiet, peaceful*.

**quiētus, a, um**, part. of **quiēscō**.

**quīn** [qui, old abl., **nē**, negative particle], (1) subord. conj. w. subjunct., (so that not), *but that*; preceded by expressed or implied negation, *that*; **temperāre quīn exeant**, *refrain from passing out*, I. 33, 4; similarly, I. 47, 2, II. 3, 5; **recusāre quīn contendat**, *refuse to contend*, IV. 7, 3; *than that*, VII. 44, 4. (2) coörd. conj., **quīn etiam**, *moreover*.

**qui-nam, quae-nam, quid-nam**, gen. **cūius-nam**, etc., interrog. adj. pro., giving sarcastic force, *what, now? what, pray?*

**quīncūnx, ūncis**, f. [quīnque; ūncis, *twelfth*], (five twelfths); *the five-spot on dice*; in **quīncūncem**, *alternately*, so that if objects are arranged in three parallel rows those in the middle row will be opposite the spaces in the others.

**quīn-decim** [decem], indeclin. card. adj., *fifteen*.

**quīn-genti, ae, a** [centum], card. adj., *five hundred*.

**quīni, ae, a** [quīnque], distrib. adj., *five each*; *five each day*, I. 15, 5.

**quīnquāgintā** [quīnque], indeclin. card. adj., *fifty*.

**quīnque**, indeclin. card. adj., *five*.

**quīntus, a, um** [quīnque], ord. adj., *fifth*.

**Quīntus**, I, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

**qui-piam, quae-piam, quod-piam**,

gen. **cūius-pīam**, etc., indef. adj. pro., *any*, V. 35, 1.

**quis**, —, **quid**, gen. **cūius**, etc.

(1) interrog. pro., generally subst., *who? what? whose? whom?* Neut. acc. sing. used adverbially, *why?* I. 40, 4, VI. 35, 8. (2) indef. pro., generally subst., *anyone, anything*, usually after **sī**, **nīsi**, **nō**, **num**, or a pro.; **sī quī**, *whoever*, VII. 29, 3.

**quis-pīam**, —, **quid-pīam**, gen. **cūius-pīam**, etc., indef. subst. pro., *anyone, anything*, VI. 17, 5.

**quis-quam**, —, **quid-quam** (subst.) or **quod-quam** (adj.), gen. **cūius-quam**, etc., indef. pro., *anyone, anything; any* (at all).

**quis-que**, **quae-que**, **quid-que** (subst.) or **quod-que** (adj.), indef. pro., *each one, each*.

**quis-quis**, **quae-quae**, **quid-quid**, gen. **cūius-cūius**, etc., indef. pro., *whoever, whatever*.

**quī-vīs**, **quae-vīs**, **quod-vīs**, gen. **cūius-vīs**, etc., indef. adj. pro. [**vīs**, 2d pers. sing. of **volō**], (any you wish), *any—whatever*, II. 31, 6, III. 13, 3, IV. 2, 5.

**quō**, abl. of **quis** and **quī**.

**quō**, adv. [old dat. of **quis**, **quī**], interrog. or rel., *whither*; less exactly in common English, *where*; indef. after **sī** (like **quis**, **quī**), *to any point, anywhere*, I. 48, 7.

**quō**, subord. conj. [abl. of **quī**, (measure of difference), = **ut eō**], *that, in order that*, generally introducing purpose clauses in which there is a comparative. **quō minus**, *that not, in order that not; so that not*, IV. 22, 4; **recusāre quō minus sint**, *refuse to be*, I. 31, 7;

**terrēre quō minus hostēs insequantur**, *prevent the enemy from pursuing*, VII. 49, 2.

**quo-ad**, subord. conj., (up to the time that), *as long as*, IV. 12, 5; *until*.

**quod** [acc. of **quī**], (in respect to which); (1) subord. conj., *because; the fact that, that; in regard to the fact that*. **propterea quod**, (on this account, because), *because*. (2) when followed by **sī**, coörd. conj., *but, and, moreover, however*, according to the sense. See also **quī**.

**quoniam**, subord. conj. [**quom**, old form of **cum**, *when, since*; **iam**, *already*], *since*.

**quoque**, adv., *also*, following emphasized word.

**quōque**, abl. of **quisque**, V. 33, 3, VII. 22, 1, 36, 4.

**quō-que**, i.e. **et quō**, VII. 83, 5.

**quōque**, adv. [old dat. of **quisque**, cf. **quō** (adv.), from **quis**, **quī**], only in phrase **quōque versus**, (turned each way), *in every direction*, III. 23, 2, VII. 4, 5, 14, 5.

**quot**, indeclin. interrog. adj., *how many*.

**quot-annis**, adv. [**quot**, *each*; **annus**, *year*], *every year, annually*.

**quotiens**, adv. [**quot**], *how many times, how often*, I. 43, 7; *as often as*, V. 34, 2.

## R

**rādix**, **icis**, f., *root*, VI. 27, 4; **w collis**, *foot-hill*; **w. mōns**, *spur*.

**rādō**, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, (scrape), *shave*.

**raeda**, ae, f. [Celtic], *wagon, a travelling-carriage with four wheels*.

**rāmus**, I, m. *branch*; **palmae rāmi-que**, hendiadys, *palm branches*.

**rapiditās**, tātis, f. [**rapidus**, *swift*, from **rapiō**, *snatch*], *swiftness*.

**rapīna**, ae, f. [**rapiō**, *snatch*], *plundering*.

**rārus**, a, um, (of loose texture); plu., *scattered, in small groups*.

**rāsus**, a, um, part. of **rādō**.

**ratio**, ōnis, f. [**reor**, *reckon*], *a reckoning*, I. 29, 1; *calculation*, I. 40, 8, VII. 16, 3, 71, 4, 75, 1; *account*, V. 30, 2, VI. 14, 3, 19, 2; *method*, I. 40, 9, III. 14, 3, VII. 21, 1, 37, 6; *system*, in this sense only in nom.; *regard*, V. 27, 7, VII. 71, 3; *consideration*, II. 10, 5; *reason*, I. 28, 4; *manner*, in this sense only in abl. of manner; *plan*, VI. 33, 5, VII. 63, 4; *measure*, VII. 71, 9.

**ratis**, is, f., *raft*.

**Rauraci**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe north of the Helvetii, on both sides of the Rhine, I. 5, 4, etc.

**re-**, **red-**, inseparable particle (i.e. used only in comp.), *back, again*.

**rebelliō**, ōnis, f. [cf. **rebellō**], *renewal of hostilities, rebellion*.

(**re-bellō**, 1st conj. [**bellum**], *make war again, renew a war*. Not in text of Bel. Gal.)

**re-cēdō**, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, (go back), *withdraw*.

**recēns**, entis, adj., *recent*; of troops, *fresh, rested*.

**re-cēnsēō**, cēnsēre, cēnsui, —, (reestimate), *review*.

**receptāculum**, I, n. [**receptō**, intensive of **recipiō**], *place of refuge, retreat*.

**receptus**, a, um, part. of **recipiō**.

**receptus**, ūs, m. [**recipio**], *retreat*; *refuge*, VI. 9, 2 (ad, among).

**recēssus**, ūs, m. [**recēdō**], (withdrawal), *opportunity of retreat*.

**re-cidō**, cidere, cidi, cāsum [**cadō**], (fall back), *happen*; *be reduced*, V. 48, 1.

**re-cipiō**, cipere, cēpi, ceptum [**capiō**], (take back), *regain*, VII. 13, 3; **sē recipere**, (recover one's self), *recover*, II. 12, 1, IV. 27, 1, 34, 1, VII. 12, 6; *receive*; **sē recipere**, except as above, (take one's self back), *retreat*, and so without **sē**, I. 48, 7, VII. 52, 1; *withdraw*, VII. 71, 8.

**re-citō**, 1st conj., *read aloud*.

**re-clinō**, 1st conj., (bend back), *lean*. (ad eōs or hūc, *against these*.)

**rēctō**, adv. [**rēctus**], (rightly), *safely*, VII. 6, 4; *bravely*, VII. 80, 5.

**rēctus**, a, um, part. of **regō**.

**re-cuperō**, 1st conj. [cf. **recipiō**], *regain, recover*.

**re-cūsō**, 1st conj. [**causa**], (give back a reason); *refuse* (**quān contendant, to fight, quo minus essent, to be**); *object*, V. 6, 2; *decline, spurn*, I. 44, 5.

**red-** form of **re-** in comp.

**redāctus**, a, um, part. of **redigō**.

**redditus**, a, um, part. of **reddō**.

**red-dō**, dere, didi, ditum [**dō**, *dare*], (give back), *return*; *grant*, VI. 13, 7; *render*, II. 5, 5, in different sense, VII. 90, 8; *give*, VI. 16, 3.

**redēptus**, a, um, part. of **redimō**.

**red-eō**, ire, ivi or il, itum, (go back), *return*; *be referred*, VI. 11, 3; *slope back*, II. 8, 3.

**red-igō**, igere, ēgi, āctum [**agō**],

(drive back), *reduce; render*, II. 27, 5, IV. 3, 4; *bring*, II. 34, V. 29, 4.

**red-imō**, *imere*, **ēmī**, **ēemptum**, [**emō**], (buy back), *purchase; buy up, farm*, I. 18, 3.

**red-integrō**, 1st conj. [**integer**, *untouched*], (render whole again); *renew, restore, revive*.

**reditiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**redeō**], *returning, return*.

**reditus**, **ūs**, m. [**redeō**], *return*.

**Redonēs**, **um**, m. plu., a tribe in western Gaul, near or on the coast, II. 34, VII. 75, 4.

**re-dūcō**, *dūcere*, **dūxi**, **ductum**, *lead back; bring, draw, move back; extend back*, VII. 72, 2.

**refectus**, **a, um**, part. of **reficiō**.

**re-ferō**, *ferre*, **ret-tuli**, **re-lātum**, *bring back*, V. 58, 6; *carry back*, IV. 28, 2; *bring*, VI. 28, 3; *report; turn over*, I. 29, 1, VII. 88, 4; **pedem referre**, (draw back the foot), *retreat*; **grātiā referre**, *make return*.

**reficiō**, *ficere*, **fēci**, **fectum** [**faciō**], (make again), *repair, rebuild*; w. **sē**, **exercitum**, *refresh*.

**refrāctus**, **a, um**, part. of **refringō**.

**re-fringō**, *fringere*, **frēgi**, **frāctum**, (break back), *break; break open*, II. 33, 6.

**re-fugiō**, *fugere*, **fūgi**, —, (flee back), *retreat in flight; escape*, VII. 31, 3.

**Rēginus**, **i**, m., *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. 1, 1, etc.

**regiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**regō**], (direction); *region, district; tract*, VII. 13, 3; **rēctā regiōne**, *in a straight line*,

VII. 46, 1; w. gen., *parallel (to)*, VI. 25, 2; **ē regiōne**, w. gen., *opposite*.

**rēgius**, **a, um** [**rēx**], *royal, kingly*.

**rēgnō**, 1st conj. [**rēgnum**], *rule*, intrans.

**rēgnum**, **i**, n. [**regō**], *royal power; control*, I. 3, 4; *government*, II. 1, 4; *kingdom*, V. 26, 2, 38, 1, 54, 2.

**regō**, *regere*, **rēxi**, **rēctum**, (rule), *control*, III. 13, 6; *conduct*, VI. 17, 2. Perf. part. as adj., (ruled), *straight*; **rēctā regiōne**, *in a straight line*, VII. 46, 1; w. gen., *parallel (to)*, VI. 25, 2.

**rē-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **rējiciō**), *icere*, **iēcī**, **iectum**, *throw back*, I. 46, 2; *drive back; drop*, I. 52, 4.

**rēiectus**, **a, um**, part. of **rēiciō**.

**re-languēscō**, *languēscere*, **languī**, —, *become enfeebled, be weakened*.

**relātus**, **a, um**, part. of **referō**.

**re-lōgō**, 1st conj., (send back, out of the way), *banish*.

**reliotus**, **a, um**, part. of **relinquō**.

**religiō**, **ōnis**, f. [**re-ligō**, *bind*], (the tie between God and man), *religious obligation*, VI. 17, 5; *religious belief, vow*, V. 6, 3; *superstition*.

**re-liquō**, *linquere*, **liquī**, **lictum**, (leave behind), *leave; abandon, give up*, III. 3, 3, V. 33, 3, 49, 1, VII. 17, 6, 66, 5; *retain*, V. 19, 1; **relinquēbātur**, (was left), *there remained*, I. 9, 1.

**reliquus**, **a, um** [cf. **relinquō**], (remaining), *rest of*; plu. as subst., *the rest*; *left*, I. 12, 2; *further*, IV. 15, 2 (w. **fugā**), V. 53, 4; *else*, IV. 7, 5; **nihil reliquī**, (nothing of left), *nothing left*, I. 11, 5;

**nihil reliqui facere**, *leave nothing undone*, II. 26, 5 (*ad*, *in the matter of*).

**re-maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsūm**, *remain behind, remain*.

**rēmex, rēmigis, m.** [**rēmus**, *oar*, **agō**, *drive*], (*one who PUSHES an oar, as on the ancient galleys, rower*).

**Rēmi, ōrum, m. plu.**, a tribe of Belgae north of the Marne, about the headwaters of the Axona (Aisne), who allied themselves with Caesar, II. 3, 1, etc.

**rēmigō, 1st conj.** [**rēmex**], *row*.

**re-migrō, 1st conj.**, (*remove back*), *return*.

**re-minīscor, minīscī, —, recall, remember, w. gen.**

**remissus, a, um, part. of remittō.**

**re-mittō, mittere, misi, missum**, *send back, return, restore; throw back*, II. 27, 4; *impair, lose*, II. 15, 4, VI. 14, 4; *w. dē, relax*, V. 49, 6; *diminish*, I. 44, 5. Perf. part. as adj., (*relaxed*), *mild*, V. 12, 6.

**re-mollēscō, mollēscere, —, —** [**mollis, soft**], (*become soft again*), *lose strength*.

**re-moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum**, (*move back*), *withdraw, draw away; dismiss*, I. 19, 3. Perf. part. as adj., (*removed*), *remote*.

**re-mūneror, 1st conj.** [**mūnus, gift**], *repay, reward*.

**rēmus, ī, m.**, *oar*.

**Rēmus, ī, m.**, *one of the Remi*.

**rēnō, ōnis, m.** [**Celtic**], *reindeer skin, deer skin*.

**re-novō, 1st conj.** [**novus, new**], *renew*.

**re-nūntiō, 1st conj.** [**nūntius, mes-**

**senger**], *bring back word, report; declare elected*, VII. 33, 3.

**re-pellō, pellerē, ppuli, pulsaum**, *drive back*.

**repente, adv.** [**abl. of repēns, sudden**], *suddenly*.

**re-pentīnus, a, um** [**repēns, sudden**], *sudden, hasty*.

**re-periō, perire, pperi, pertum**, (*find by inquiry*), *find out, find; pass., originate*, VI. 13, 11.

**re-petō, petere, petivi or peti, petitum**, *seek again; try to get back*, I. 31, 7; **poenās repetere**, *seek satisfaction*.

**re-pleō, plēre, plēvi, plētum**, (*re-fill*); *amply supply*.

**re-portō, 1st conj.**, *carry back, transport*.

**re-pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, —**, (*ask back*), *demand*.

**re-praesentō, 1st conj.** [**praesēns, present**], (*make present again*), *do at once*.

**re-prehendō, prehendere, prehendi, prehensum**, (*hold back*), *blame, find fault with*.

**repressus, a, um, part. of reprimō.**

**re-primō, primere, pressi, pressum** [**premō**], (*press back*), *check*.

**re-pudiō, 1st conj.** [**re-pudium, divorce**], *reject*.

**re-pūgnō, 1st conj.** [**pūgna, fight**], (*fight back*), *resist; stand in the way of*, *w. dat.*

**repulsus, a, um, part. of repellō.**

**re-quirō, quīrere, quīsi or quisi, quisiūm** [**quaerō**], (*seek back*), *demand, require; miss*, VII. 63, 8.

**rēs, rei, f.**, *thing, matter, fact, circumstance, etc.*; cf. various words *w. which it is joined in use*. **quā rē**

(often written as one word), (on account of which thing, wherefore) *therefore; on account of which*, I. 14, 2; *quā rē putāret*, (why he should think), *to think*, I. 33, 2.

**re-scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum**, (cut back), *destroy; tear down*, VII. 86, 5.

**re-sciō, sciocere, solvi or sciī, scitum** [*sciō, know*], *ascertain*.

**re-scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum**, (write again), *transfer*.

**re-servō, ist conj.**, (keep back), *reserve*.

**re-sideō, sidere, sedi, —**, [*se-deō*], (sit back, remain behind), *remain*.

**re-sidō, sidere, sedi, —**, (settle back), *become calm*.

**re-sistō, sistere, stitī, —**, (stand back), *remain behind*, V. 11, 1, VII. 35, 2; *resist*.

**re-spiciō, spicere, spexi, spectum**, *look back*, II. 24, 2; *look behind one*, V. 43, 4; (look back at), *have regard for*, VII. 77, 7; *consider*, VII. 77, 16.

**re-spondeō, spondere, spondi, spōnsum**, (promise back), *answer, reply*.

**respōnsum, l, n.** [neut. of perf. part. of *respondeō*], (a thing answered), *answer*.

**re-spuō, spuerē, spui, —**, (spit back), *spurn, reject*.

**re-stinguō, stinguere, stinxi, stinctum**, (quench again); intrans., *put out a fire*; w. *aggerem*, *put out the fire in*.

**re-stituō, stituere, stitui, stitutum** [*statuō*], (replace), *restore; rebuild*; w. *proelium*, *renew*.

**retentus, a, um**, part. of *retineō*.

**re-tineō, tinēre, tinui, tentum** [*teneō*], (hold back); *detain; maintain*, V. 48, 6; *hold*, VII. 21, 3; *keep back*, II. 32, 2, 33, 2; *restrain*, VII. 47, 2, 52, 1, I. 47, 2 (*nē cōicerent, from throwing*); *memoriam retinēre*, w. gen., (retain the memory of), *remember*.

**re-trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctum**, (drag back), *bring back by force*.

**re-vellō, vellere, velli, vulsum**, (wrench back), *pull back*, I. 52, 5; *tear up*, VII. 73, 3.

**reversus, a, um**, part. of *revertor*.

**re-vertor, verti, verti, versum** [*vertō*], dep. in present system and perf. part., (turn back), *return, come back*.

**re-vinciō, vincere, vixi, vincitum**, (bind back), *fasten*.

**revinctus, a, um**, part. of *revinciō*.

**re-vocō, ist conj.** [*vōx, voice*], *call back, recall*.

**rēx, rēgis, m.** [*regō, rule*], *king*.

**Rhēnus, l, m.**, *the Rhine*, I. 1, 6, etc.

**Rhodanus, l, m.**, *the Rhone*, I. 6, 2, etc.

**ripa, ae, f.**, *bank of a stream*.

**rivus, l, m.**, *brook, small stream*.

**rōbur, rōboris, n.**, *oak*.

**rogō, ist conj.**, *ask, request*; *cōn-sulis sacrāmentō rogāre*, (require answer under the consul's oath), *enlist*.

**Rōma, ae, f., loc.** **Rōmae**, *Rome*.

**Rōmānus, a, um** [*Rōma*], *Roman*. Masc. as subst., *a Roman*, plu. *Romans*.

**Rōscius, l, m.**, *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's *legati*, V. 24, 2, etc.

**rōstrum**, I, n. [rōdō, *gnaw*], *beak*, of a bird or ancient ship; the projecting end of the prow, corresponding to the modern ram.

**rota**, ae, f., *wheel*.

**rubus**, I, m., *bramble*.

**Rūfus**, I, m. [rūfus, *reddish*], *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, IV. 22, 6.

**rūmor**, ōris, m., *report*.

**rupēs**, is, f., *cliff, steep rock*.

**rūrsus**, adv. [contracted from *revorsus*, for *reversus*], (turned back), *again, back again; in turn*, V. 44, 13, VII. 47, 7, 51, 2.

**Rutēni**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of southern Gaul and the province (hence *prōvinciālēs*, VII. 7, 4), west of the Cevennes, between the rivers Lot and Tarn, I. 45, 2, etc.

**Rutilus**, I, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VII. 90, 5.

## S

**Sabinus**, I, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, II. 5, 6, etc.; killed in the disaster at Aduatuca, V. 24 ff.

**Sabis**, is, m., the *Sambre*, a tributary of the Meuse (Mosa) in Belgic Gaul, II. 16, 1, 18, 1.

**sacer-dōs**, dōtis, c. [sacer, *sacred*, dō, *give, put*], *priest, (priestess)*.

**sacrāmentum**, I, n. [sacrō, *set apart as sacred*, from *sacer, sacred*], (means of sanctifying), *oath*. cōn-sulis sacrāmentō rogāre, (require answer under the consul's oath), *enlist*.

**sacrificium**, I, n. [sacrificus, *sacri-*

*ficial*, from *sacer, sacred*, faciō, *make*], *sacrifice*.

**saepe**, adv., compar. *saepius*, super. *saepissimē*, *often*; compar. *repeatedly*, I. 32, 3, *too often*, III. 6, 4. **saepe numerō**, (often in number), *often*. **minimē saepe**, (by no means often), *very seldom*.

**saepēs**, is, f., *hedge*.

**saeviō**, saevire, saevivī, saevitum [saevus, *fierce*], *be fierce, blow hard*.

**sagitta**, ae, f., *arrow*.

**sagittārius**, I, m. [sagitta], *archer, Bowman*.

**sagulum**, I, n. [dim. of *sagum*, a *short military cloak*], *small cloak*.

**saltus**, ūs, m., *forest, woods; defile*, VII. 19, 2.

**salūs**, ūtis, f. [salvus, *safe*], *safety; welfare*, II. 5, 2, VII. 2, 1.

**Samarobrīva**, ae, f., loc. ae, a city of the Ambiani on the Somme (Samarā), now *Amiens*, V. 24, 1, etc.

**sanciō**, sancire, sānxi, sānctum, *ordain, solemnly agree*. Perf. part. as adj., (ordained), *sacred; solemn*, VII. 66, 7.

**sānotus**, a, um, part. of *sanciō*.

**sanguis**, guinis, m., *blood*.

**sānitās**, tātis, f. [sānus], (soundness of mind and body), *good sense*. ad sānitātem reverti, *come to one's self, come to one's senses*.

**sānō**, 1st conj. [sānus], (make sound), *remedy*.

**Santonēs**, um, or **Santonī**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of southwestern Gaul on the coast north of the Garonne, I. 10, 1, etc.

**sānus**, a, um, *sound*, of mind and

body, *sane*; **prō sãnō**, (as a sane man), *rational*.

**sapiō, sapere, sapivi (ui)**, —, (have a flavor, have a taste, have discernment), *understand, not be fools*.

**sarcinae, ārum**, f. plu., *packs, luggage*; **sub sarcinās**, *while carrying their packs*.

**sarciō, sarcire, sarci, sartum**, (patch), *repair, make good*.

**sarmentum, i**, n. [**sarpō, prune**], (what is pruned off), *brushwood*.

**satis**, (1) adv., (sufficiently); *quite*, III. 14, 3, IV. 22, 2; *enough* (following the adj. it modifies), IV. 17, 1; *quite*, I. 43, 1; **satis prōvidēre**, *make sufficient provision*, III. 3, 1; **satis commodē**, *very well*, I. 25, 3, III. 13, 6, 14, 4, *fast enough*, I. 39, 6; **satis māgnus**, *large enough*, I. 16, 2, *quite a large*, V. 21, 2, *quite a broad*, VII. 47, 2. (2) indeclin. adj. used as subst., *enough; sufficient*; **satis habēre**, (consider sufficient), *be satisfied*. **satis praesidi**, *a large enough garrison*; **satis causae**, *reason enough*; **satis facere**, *make restitution*, I. 14, 6, V. 1, 7, *appease*, VII. 89, 2, *apologize*, I. 41, 3, V. 54, 3; *satisfy*, V. 27, 7 (**prō pietāte**, *of his loyalty*).

**satisfactiō, ōnis**, f. [**satis, faciō**, see **satis**], *apology, excuse*.

**saucius, a, um**, *wounded*; masc. as subst., *a wounded soldier, one who is wounded*.

**saxum, i**, n., *rock, (large) stone*.

**scālae, ārum**, f. plu. [**scandō, climb**], (steps), *scaling ladders*.

**Scaldis, is**, m., the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul, which Caesar incor-

rectly says empties into the Meuse, VI. 33, 3.

**scapha, ae**, f. [**σκάφη**], *boat, carried on a galley*, IV. 26, 4.

**scelerātus, a, um** [perf. part. of **scelerō, pollute, from scelus**], *criminal*.

**scelus, sceleris**, n., *crime*.

**scienter**, adv. [**sciōns**, pres. part. of **sciō**], (knowingly), *skilfully*.

**scientia, ae**, f. [**sciōns**, pres. part. of **sciō**], *knowledge*.

**scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum**, (split); *tear down*.

**sciō, scire, scivi, scitum**, *know*.

**scorpiō, ōnis**, m. [**σκορπιων**], *scorpion*; in military language, an engine for throwing darts or other missiles, VII. 25, 3; also a *missile (ball, shaft) from a scorpion*, VII. 25, 2.

**scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum**, *write*.

**scrobis, is**, m. or f., *pit*.

**scūtum, i**, n., *oblong shield*.

**sē, sēsē**, acc. of **sui**.

**sē-, sēd-**, inseparable prep., *apart, aside*.

**sēbum, i**, n., *suet, tallow*.

**secō, secāre, secuī, sectum**, *cut*.

**sēcrētō**, adv. [abl. of **sēcrētus**, part. of **sē-cernō, separate**], *secretly, privately*.

**sectiō, ōnis**, f. [**secō**], (share); *booty*.

**sector**, 1st conj. [intensive of **sequor**], (follow), *run after*.

**sectūra, ae**, f. [**secō**], (cutting), *quarry*.

**secundum**, prep. w. acc. [**secundus**], (following); *along*, II. 18, 3, VII. 34, 2; *besides*, I. 33, 2; **secundum nātūram flūminis**, (following the nature of the river),

*in the direction of the current*, IV. 17, 4.

**secundus**, a, um [sequor], (following), w. **aciēs**, **vigilia**, **locus**, *second*; *favorable*, *successful*; **secundiōrēs rēs**, *greater prosperity*; **secundō flūmine**, *down stream*.

**secūria**, is, f., acc., **im**, **em**, abl. I, e [secō, cut], *axe*; espec., as the axes carried by the Roman lictors were symbols of authority, *power*, *authority*, VII. 77, 16.

**sed**, coörd. conj., *but*.

**sēd-**, form of **sē-**, in comp. before some vowels.

**sē-decim**, **sex-decim**, indeclin. card. adj. [sex, decem], *sixteen*.

**sēdēs**, is, f. [sedēō, sit], (seat), *settlement*, *habitation*; **locus āc sēdēs**, hendiadys, *dwelling place*.

**sēditio**, ōnis, f. [sēd-, eō], (a going apart), *revolt*.

**sēditiosus**, a, um [sēditio], *seditionous*, *treasonable*.

**Sedulius**, I, m., leader of the Lemo-vices, VII. 88, 4.

**Sedūni**, ōrum, m. plu., an Alpine tribe, south of the upper Rhone, III. 1, 1 ff.

**Sedusi**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Germans, location uncertain, I. 51, 2.

**seges**, **segetis**, f., *grainfield*.

**Segni**, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe between the Eburones and the Treveri, about the modern town Sinei or Signi, in the province of Namur, VI. 32, 1.

**Segontiāci**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the southern part of Britain, V. 21, 1.

**Segovax**, actis, m., a British chief in Kent, V. 22, 1.

**Seguslāvi**, ōrum, m. plu., a Gallic tribe south of the Aedui, west of the Rhone, I. 10, 5, etc.

**semel**, adv., *once*; **semel atque iterum**, *time and again*.

**sēmentis**, is, f. [sēmen, seed], *sowing*; **sēmentēs quam māximās facere**, (make the greatest possible sowings), *sow as much land as possible*, *sow as much grain as possible*.

**sēmita**, ae, f., *path*, *trail*.

**semper**, adv., *always*.

**Semprōnius**, I, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VII. 90, 4.

**senātor**, ōris, m. [senex], *senator*, name applied by Caesar to a member of the council among the Nervii, corresponding to the Roman senate.

**senātus**, ūs, m. [senex], (council of elders), the Roman *senate*; what corresponded to it among the Gallic tribes, *council*.

**senex**, **senis**, compar. **senior** or **māior** (nātū), super. **māximus** (nātū), *old*; as subst., *old man*.

**sēni**, ae, a [sex], distrib. adj., *six each*, VII. 75, 3, *six each day*, I. 15, 5.

**Senonēs**, um, m. plu., a powerful Gallic tribe about the Yonne river, whose chief city was Agedincum, now *Sens*, II. 2, 3, etc.

**sententia**, ae, f. [sentio], *view*, *motion*, *idea*, *proposition*; *opinion*, III. 3, 3, 8, 5 (**dicere**, *give*, *express*); *resolution*, II. 10, 5; *effect*, I. 45, 1; *purpose*, VI. 4, 2; *sentence*, VI. 44, 2; *determination*, IV. 21, 6 (**manēre**, *continue*).

**sentio**, **sentire**, **sēnsi**, **sēnsu**, *perceive* through any of the senses; w.

neut. acc. pro., *entertain* — *idea*; *know*, VII. 52, 3.

**sentis, is, m.**, *thorn, briar*.

**sēparātim**, adv. [**sēparātus**], *separately, by themselves*.

**sēparātus, a, um**, part. of **sēparō**.

**sē-parō**, 1st conj., (prepare apart), *separate*; perf. part. as adj., (separated), *separate*.

**septem**, indeclin. card. adj., *seven*.

**septen-triō, ōnis, m.**, generally plu. [**septem**; **triō**, *plough-ox*], *the seven plough-oxen, the seven stars that form the constellation of the Great Bear; hence, the north*.

**septimūs, a, um** [**septem**], ord. adj., *seventh*.

**septingentī, ae, a** [**septem, centum**], card. adj., *seven hundred*.

**septuāgintā**, indeclin. card. adj. [**septem**], *seventy*.

**sepultūra, ae, f.** [**sepeliō**, *bury*], *burial*.

**Sēquana, ae, m.**, *the Seine, the most important river of northern France*, I. 1, 2, etc.

**Sēquani, ōrum, m. plu.**, one of the most powerful tribes of central Gaul before Caesar's arrival, the chief of the states that opposed the supremacy of the Aedui, I. 1, 5, etc.

**Sēquanus, a, um**, *Sequanian, of the Sequani*; masc. sing. as subst., *a Sequanian, one of the Sequani*.

**sequor, sequi, secūtus sum**, *follow; accompany, join*, II. 17, 2; **fidem sequi**, *accept protection; take advantage of*, V. 8, 3; *refuse to give up*, VII. 63, 7.

**Ser.**, abbreviation for **Servius**, a Roman *praenomen*.

**sermō, ōnis, m.** [**serō**, *weave*], *con-*

*versation, speech*; **sermōnis adi-**  
**tum**, (access for conversation), *per-*  
*sonal acquaintance*.

**s. serō, serere, sēvi, satum**, *sow, plant*.

**sēi, ō**, adv., compar. **sērius**, super.

**sē-rissimē**, (late), *too late*.

**Sertōrius, l, m.**, *Quintus Sertorius, a Roman general of the party of Marius, who held Spain against the consular armies for many years*, III. 23, 5.

**servilis, e** [**servus**], *of slaves, equivalent to servōrum*, I. 40, 5; *the same as in the case of slaves*, VI. 19, 3.

**serviō, servire, servivi or servii, servitum** [**servus**], (serve); *be a slave*, IV. 5, 3; *devote one's self*, VII. 34, 1.

**servitūs, tūtis, f.** [**servus**], (the condition of a slave), *slavery; subjection, bondage*.

**Servius, l, m.**, a Roman *praenomen*.

**servō**, 1st conj., *keep; save; watch, observe*, V. 19, 1.

**servus, l, m.**, *slave*.

**sēs-centī, ae, a, or sex-centī, ae, a**, card. adj. [**sex, centum**], *six hundred*.

**sēsqui-pedālis, o** [**sēsqui**, *one half more; pēs, foot*], *a foot and a half (thick)*.

**sētius**, compar. adv., *less*; **nihilō** (abl. of measure of diff.) **sētius**, (none the less), *nevertheless*.

**seu**, form of **sive**.

**sevēritās, tātis, f.** [**sevērus, se-**  
**vere**], *severity*.

**sē-vocō**, 1st conj. [**vōx, voice**], *call aside*.

**sex** [ēē], indeclin. card. adj., *six*.

**sex-āgintā**, indeclin. card. adj. [**sex**], *sixty*.

**sex-centī**, ae, a, or **sēs-centī**, ae, a, card. adj. [**sex**, **centum**], *six hundred*.

**Sextius**, I, m., (1) *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a very brave centurion, II. 25, 1, III. 5, 2, VI. 38, 1, 4; (2) *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. 1, 1, VII. 49, 1, 51, 2, 90, 6.

**sī**, subord. conj., *if*, **sī quidem**, (if indeed), *since*, VI. 36, 2. **quod sī**, see **quod**.

**Sibuzātēs**, um, m. plu., an Aquitanian tribe, probably in the southwestern part of the country, III. 27, 1.

**sic**, adv., *so*, *in such a manner*.

**siccitās**, tātis, f. [**siccus**, *dry*], *dryness*; plu. *drought*.

**sic ut**, **sic utī**, conj., often written as one word, (so as), *just as*; *just like*, VI. 26, 2.

**sīdus**, **sīderis**, n., *constellation*; plu., *heavenly bodies*, the stars, etc.

**signi-fer**, **ferī**, m. [**signum**, **ferō**], *standard-bearer*.

**significātiō**, ōnis, f. [**significō**], *intimation, announcement*; *signal*, II. 33, 3; *decanor*, actions, VII. 12, 6.

**significō**, 1st conj. [**signum**, **faciō**], (show by signs), *indicate by signs*, *announce by word of mouth*.

**signum**, I, n., *signal*; *military standard*.

**Silānus**, I, m., *Marcus Silanus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. 1, 1.

**silentium**, I, n. [**silēs**, pres. part. of **sileō**, *be silent*], *silence*; abl. of manner, often as adv., *silently*.

**Silius**, I, m., *Titus Silius*, an officer with Crassus in Aquitania, III. 7, 4, 8, 2.

**silva**, ae, f., *forest, woods*.

**silvestris**, o [**silva**], *wooded*.

**similis**, e, compar. **similior**, super.

**simillimus**, *like, similar*. **vērī** (gen. w. adj.) **simile**, (similar to the truth), *probable, likely*.

**similitudinē**, inis, f. [**similis**], *similarity, resemblance*.

**simul**, adv., *at the same time*; **simul**—**simul**, *both—and, not only—but also*; **simul atque**, and **simul** alone, IV. 26, 5, *as soon as*.

**simulācrum**, I, n. [**simulō**], (likeness), *figure, image*.

**simulātiō**, ōnis, f. [**simulō**], *pretence*.

**simulō**, 1st conj. [**similis**], (make like); *pretend*.

**simultās**, tātis, f. [**simul**], (a being together), *rivalry*.

**sīn**, subord. conj. [**sī**, **ne**], *but if*.

**sincērō**, adv. [**sincērus**, *pure*], *honestly*.

**sine**, prep. w. abl., *without*.

**singillatim**, adv. [**singuli**], *one at a time, singly, individually*.

**singulāris**, e [**singuli**], *single*, VII. 8, 3; *singly*, IV. 26, 2; *extraordinary, unequalled*.

**singuli**, ae, a, distrib. adj., *one by one, one each*; *single, separate*.

**sinister**, tra, trum, *left*; as subst., sc. *manus* or *cornū*, *the left; the left hand*, I. 25, 3. (sub, on.)

**sinistrōrsus**, adv. [for **sinistrōversus**], (turned toward the left), *to the left*.

**situs**, ūs, m. [**sinō**, *lay*], *situation, site*.

**sive**, or **seu**, conj. [**sī**, **-ve**], (or) *if*.

IV. 17, 10; **sive—sive**, *whether—or, either—or*.

**socer, socerī**, m., *father-in-law*.

**societās, tātis**, f. [**socius**], (*companionship*); *alliance*.

**socius**, ī, m., (*companion*); plu., *allies*.

**sōl, sōlis**, m., no gen. plu., *sun*; **oriēns sōl**, (*the rising sun*), *the east*; **occidēns sōl**, (*the setting sun*), **occāsus sōlis**, (*the setting of the sun*), *the west*; personified, *Sol, the Sun*, VI. 21, 2.

**sōlācium**, ī, n. [**sōlor**, *console*], *consolation, comfort*.

**soldurius**, ī, m., the name applied by the Aquitanians to close personal followers or retainers of a chief, described III. 22, 1; best left untranslated.

**soleō, solēre, solitus sum**, *be accused*.

**sōlitūdō, dinis**, f. [**sōlus**], (*loneliness*); *wilderness, waste*.

**sollertia, ae**, f. [**sollers**, *skilful*], *skill, adroitness*.

**sollicitō**, 1st conj. [**sollicitus**, *agitated*], *stir up*; *tempt, tamper with*, VII. 37, 1.

**sollicitūdō, dinis**, f. [**sollicitus**, *agitated*], *anxiety*.

**solum**, ī, n., *bottom*, VII. 72, 1, 73, 7; *soil*, I. 11, 5; *ground*, VI. 23, 1.

**solum**, adv. [acc. of **sōlus**], *only*; **nōn solum—sed etiam**, *not only—but also*.

**sōlus, a, um**, gen. **sōlius**, dat. **sōli**, *alone, only*.

**solvō,olvere, solvi, solūtum**, *loose*; **nāvēsolvere**, (*loose the ships*), *set sail, weigh anchor*; so also w. **nāvēs** omitted.

**sonitus, ūs**, m. [**sonō**, *sound*, from **sonus**], (*sound*), *splash*.

**sonus**, ī, m., *sound*.

**soror, sorōris**, f., *sister*; **soror ex mātre**, (*sister from one's mother*), *half-sister* by the same mother.

**sora, sortis**, f., *lot*.

**Sotiātēs, um**, gen. plu., a tribe in the northern part of Aquitania, near modern *Lot*, III. 20, 2, etc.

**spatium**, ī, n., *space*, either properly, or in time; *distance; time, interval*.

**speciēs, ēī**, f., only nom. and acc. in plu. [**-speciō**, *look*], *appearance*; **ad (in) speciem**, *for show*, I. 51, 1, V. 51, 4.

**spectō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **-speciō**, *look*], (*look*), *extend, stretch*; trans., (*look at*), *consider*.

**speculator, ōris**, m. [**speculor**], *scout, spy*.

**speculātōrius, a, um** [**speculātor**], (*used for scouting, etc.*); **spec. nāvigium**, *picket boat, small boat*.

**speculor**, 1st conj. [**specula**, *watch tower*, from **-speciō**, *look*], *spy, act as spies*.

**spērō**, 1st conj. [**spēs**], *hope*.

**spēs, speī**, f., only nom. and acc. in plu., *hope*.

**spiritus, ūs**, m. [**spirō**, *breath*], (*breath*); plu. *pride*, cf. Eng. "airs."

**spoliō**, 1st conj. [**spolium**, *spoil*], *despoil, deprive, strip*.

**sponte, spontis**, f., abl. and gen. of noun (**spōns**), whose other cases are not found, *free will*; **suā sponte**, *by their own influence*, I. 9, 2; *of their (his) own accord*.

**stabiliō, stabilire, stabilivī, stabilitum** [**stabilis**, *steady*], (*make steady*), *secure, fasten*.

**stabilitās, tātis**, f. [**stabilis**, *steady*], *steadiness*.

**statim**, adv. [**stō**], (on the spot), *immediately*.

**statiō, ōnis**, f. [**stō**], (a standing), *guard*; *picket*, II. 18, 3; *sentinel*, VII. 69, 7; *reserve*, V. 16, 4. (*in, on.*)

**statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum** [**status**], (settle), *place*, IV. 17, 5; *determine, decide*; *take measures*, I. 19, 5; **quid gravius statuere**, (decide anything quite severe), *take any very severe measures*, I. 20, 1.

**statūra, ae**, f. [**stō**], (standing), *height, stature*.

**status, ūs**, m. [**stō**], (standing, status), *condition, situation*.

**stimulus, i**, m. [cf. στήλω, *prick*], *goad, spur*; *prick*, facetiously applied to sharp metal hooks set in the ground, VII. 73, 9, 82, 1.

**stipendiārius, a, um** [**stipendium**], *tributary*. Masc. plu. as subst., *dependents*.

**stipendium, i**, n. [**stips**, *gift*; **pendō**, *pay*], *tribute*.

**stipes, stipitis**, m., *stake, post*.

**stirps, stirpis**, f., (m. or f. in poetry), *stock* of a plant or tree; *race*, VI. 34, 8; *stock*, VI. 34, 5.

**stō, stāre, steti, stātum**, *stand*; *abide* (by), VI. 13, 6.

**strāmentum, i**, n. [**sternō**, *strew*], *straw*; *pack saddle*, VII. 45, 2.

**strepitus, ūs**, m. [**strepō**, *make a noise*], *noise*.

**studeō, studēre, studui**, —, w. **novis rēbus (imperis)**, *be eager* (for), *desire, care* (about); *pay attention*, VII. 4, 8; *be looking*, VI. 21, 3; *strive*, VII. 14, 2; *be bent*

(upon), VII. 20, 5; *look, pay any attention*, VII. 28, 3.

**studiōsē**, adv. [**studiōsus**, *eager*, from **studium**], *eagerly*.

**studium, i**, n. [**studeō**], *eagerness, enthusiasm*; *devotion*, I. 19, 2; *pursuit*, VI. 21, 3.

**stultitia, ae**, f. [**stultus**, *foolish*], *folly*.

**sub**, prep., (1) w. acc. when implying motion, *under*; *close up to*, I. 24, 5; in expressions of time, *towards*; (2) w. abl. when implying rest, *under, at the foot of, close by*. In comp. the same as above; also, *from under*, i.e. *up*; *slightly, somewhat*.

**subāctus, a, um**, part. of **subigō**.

**sub-dolus, a, um** [**dolus**, *device*], (somewhat deceitful), *crafty, cunning*.

**sub-dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum**, (lead from below), *lead up*; of ships, *draw up*. (*in, on to.*)

**subductiō, ōnis**, f. [**subdūcō**], *drawing up* (on shore), *beaching*.

**sub-eō, ire, (ivi) ii, itum**, *go under, enter*, I. 36, 7; w. **periculum**, *undergo*; w. **condiciōnem**, *submit to*; *come up*, II. 25, 1, VII. 85, 5; *approach*, II. 27, 5.

**sub-fodiō, fodere, fodi, fossum**, (dig underneath), *stab underneath*.

**subfossus, a, um**, part. of **sub-fodiō**.

**sub-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **subjiciō**), **icere, ieci, lectum** [**iaciō**], (throw under), *subject*; *place below*, IV. 17, 9; *expose*, IV. 36, 2; (throw from under), *thrust from below*, I. 26, 3.

**subiectus, a, um**, part. of **subiciō**.

**sub-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum [agō],** (drive under, subdue), *constrain, confront.*

**subitō, adv. [abl. of subitus], sud-**  
*denly.*

**subitus, a, um [part. of subeō],**  
(having "come up"), *sudden.*

**sublātus, a, um, part. of tollō.**

**sub-levō, 1st conj. [levia, light],**  
(lighten from underneath); *help, aid, support; assist (by), hold on (to), I. 48, 7; raise, VI. 27, 2; lighten, VI. 32, 5; lift up, VII. 47, 7.*

**sub-lica, ae, f., pile.**

**sub-luō, luere, —, lūtum, (wash**  
*below), wash.*

**sub-ministrō, 1st conj. [minister,**  
*servant], furnish, provide.*

**sub-mittō, mittere, mīsi, missum,**  
(send under, as for support), *send, submit.*

**sub-moveō, movēre, mōvi, mō-**  
*tum, (move from under), drive back.*

**sub-ruō, ruere, rui, rutum, under-**  
*mine, II. 6, 2; dig under, loosen, VI. 27, 4.*

**sub-sequor, sequi, secūtus sum,**  
*follow closely, follow up.*

**subsidiū, I, n. [subsīdō], reserve,**  
*reēnforcement; aid; plu., marches as reēnforcements, VII. 88, 6.*

**sub-sīdō, sīdere, sēdi, sessum, (sit**  
*at the bottom), remain behind.*

**sub-sistō, sistere, stiti, —, (stand**  
*under), halt, make a stand.*

**sub-sum, esse, —, be close at hand,**  
*be close by.*

**sub-trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctum,**  
(draw from underneath), *w. ouni-*  
*culia, undermine, VII. 22, 2; re-*  
*move, set at liberty, I. 44, 5.*

**subvectiō, onis, f. [subvehō], trans-**  
*portation.*

**sub-vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum,**  
(carry to a position under), *bring up.*

**sub-veniō, venire, vēni, ventum,**  
(come up under), *come to the aid (of).*

**suc-, form of sub- in comp. before c.**  
**suo-oēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum,**  
(go close up to, go under); *succeed,*  
*in the sense either of take one's place,*  
*or be successful, VII. 26, 1; ap-*  
*proach, I. 24, 5, 25, 6; be next to*  
*anyone, IV. 3, 3.*

**suc-cendō, cendere, cendi, cēnsum,**  
(kindle beneath), *set on fire.*

**suc-cidō, cidere, cidi, cīsum**  
**[caedō], (cut under), cut down.**

**suc-cumbō, cumbere, cubui, —**  
**[cf. cubō], (lie down under), yield,**  
*succumb.*

**suo-currō, currere, cucurri, cur-**  
*sum, (run under), run to the help*  
*(of), rush to aid; as w. auxiliō.*

**sudis, is, f., stake, pile.**

**Suēba, ae, f., a Swabian (woman).**

**Suēbi, ōrum, m. plu., the Suebi,**  
*Swabians, the most powerful Ger-*  
*man tribe in Caesar's time, I. 37,*  
*3, etc.*

**Suessiōnēs, um, m. plu., a Belgic**  
*tribe about the Marne, II. 3, 5 ff.*

**suf-, form of sub- in comp. before f.**  
**suf-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum**  
**[faciō], (put under, be sufficient),**  
*hold out.*

**suffrāgium, I, n., (voting tablet),**  
*vote.*

**Sugambri, ōrum, m. plu., a German**  
*tribe north of Cologne, IV. 16, 2,*  
*etc.*

**sug-, form of sub- in comp. before g.**  
**suggestus, ūs, m. [sug-gerō, (bear**

from under), *raise*], *platform*.  
(*prō*, *from*.)

**sui**, gen., dat. *sibi*, acc. and abl. *sē* or *sēsē*, sing. or plu., reflex. pro., 3d pers., *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*; *him*, *her*, when Eng. usage makes the reflexive meaning clear.

**Sulla**, ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, consul B.C. 88, dictator, 81–79, I. 21, 4.

**Sulpicius**, l, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, an officer with Caesar, probably a *legatus*, VII. 90, 7.

**sum**, *esse*, *ful* (*futūrus*), *be*; *exist*.

**summa**, ae, f. [fem. of *summus*, sc. *rēs*], (highest thing); *sum*, I. 29, 2, 3; *whole*, VI. 34, 3; *most*, *greatest part*, VI. 11, 5; *summa imperii*, *chief authority*, *general management*; *summam imperii tenēre*, *be commander-in-chief*; w. *belli*, *control*, *conduct*; *test*, VII. 21, 3.

**summus**, a, um, super. of *superus*.

**sūmō**, *sūmere*, *sūmpsi*, *sūmptum* [for sub-*imō*, from *emō*], (take away from anyone); *take*; *sibi sūmere*, (take to one's self), *assume*; *spend*, III. 14, 1; *supplicium dē aliquō sūmere*, (take punishment from anyone, cf. Eng. "take it out of" anyone), *inflict punishment on anyone*, *punish anyone*.

**sūmptuosus**, a, um [*sūmptus*], *costly*.

**sūmptus**, ūs, m. [*sūmō*], *expense*.

**super-**, prep. in comp., *over*.

**superbē**, adv. [*superbus*, *proud*, from *super*, cf. Eng. "uppish"], *haughtily*.

**superō**, 1st conj. [*superus*], (get above); *overcome*; *prevail*, V. 31,

3; *surpass*, III. 14, 8, VI. 24, 1; *exceed*, III. 14, 4; *survive*, VI. 19, 2 (sc. *vitā*).

**super-sedeō**, *sedēre*, *sēdī*, *sessum*, (sit over, be superior to, "be above"); *refrain*.

**super-sum**, *esse*, *ful*, —, (be over); *be left*, *remain*.

**superus**, a, um [*super*], *high*; compar. *superior*, of place, *higher*, *upper*; of time, *former*; of a battle, *superior*, *more successful*; *super. suprēmus*, *summus*, of place, *highest*; w. most other nouns, *greatest*; *summae rēs*, *most important matter*; often w. partitive force, as w. *mōna*, *collis*, *iugum*, *fossa*, *the top of*, *the summit of*; so neut. as subst., *the top*, *summit*, *end*; *summa vis*, *main strength*; w. *speciēs*, *exact*; *all*, *whole*, V. 17, 5, VII. 39, 2, 41, 2. See also *summa*.

**sup-**, form of *sub* in comp. before *p*.

**sup-petō**, *petere*, *petivi* or *petii*, *petitum*, (come to the aid of), *be on hand*, *be available*; *hold out*, VII. 77, 2, 85, 6.

**sup-plēmentum**, l, n. [*sup-pleō*, *fill up*], *reēnforcement*.

**sup-plex**, *plicia*, adj. [cf. *plicō*, *fold*], (bending under, kneeling); *submissive*; as subst., *submissive men*.

**supplicātiō**, ōnis, f. [*sup-plicō*, *fold under*, from *supplex*], (a kneeling), *thanksgiving*.

**suppliciter**, adv. [*supplex*], *humbly*, *submissively*.

**supplicium**, l, n. [*supplex*, in sense of *bending to receive lashes*], *punish-*

*ment*; often in the sense of *capital punishment, execution*.

**sup-portō**, 1st conj., *bring up*.

**suprā**, adv. and prep. w. acc. [case form of *superus*], *above*; of time, *before*, VI. 19, 4.

**sus-**, form of *sub* in comp. before *o*, *p*, and *t*.

**sus-cipiō**, *cipere*, *cēpl*, *ceptum* [*capiō*], (take under), *undertake*; *sibi suscipere*, (take upon one's self), *assume*.

**sū(sub)-spiciō**, *spicere*, *spexi*, *spectum*, (look askance at), *suspect*.

**sūspiciō**, *ōnis*, f. [*sūspiciō*], *suspicion*.

**sūspicior**, 1st conj. [cf. *sūspiciō*], *suspect*.

**sus-tentō**, 1st conj. [intens. of *sus-tineō*], *sustain*, sc. *bella*, II. 14, 6; *impers.*, *the attack was sustained*, II. 6, 1; *endure*, V. 39, 4; *avoid*, VII. 17, 3.

**sus-tineō**, *tinēre*, *tinui*, *tentum* [*teneō*], (hold under), w. *impetum*, *vim*, *āspectum*, *haec*, *sustain*; *withstand*; *intrans.* *hold out*; *hold*, V. 10, 2; *bear, endure*, I. 31, 13, VI. 18, 3; *check*, IV. 33, 3; *carry*, VII. 56, 4; *sē sustinēre*, *stand upright*, II. 25, 1.

**sua**, *a*, *um* [cf. *sui*], reflex. poss. pro., 3d pers., *his, her, its, their*, the gender and number depending upon the antecedent; *his own*, etc.; w. *locus*, *favorable*, IV. 34, 2; *one's usual, well known*, e.g. w. *clementia*, II. 14, 5, 31, 4; as subst., masc. plu., *one's own men, countrymen, friends*, etc.; neut. sing., *their standing*, I. 43, 8; plu. *their (his) property, possessions*.

## T

**T.**, abbreviation for *Titus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

**tabernāculum**, *l*, n. [dimin. of *taberna*, *hut*], *tent*.

**tabula**, *ae*, f., (board, writing tablet), *list*.

**tabulātum**, *l*, n. [*tabula*], (system of boarding, flooring), *story*.

**taceō**, *tacēre*, *tacui*, *tacitum*, *be silent*; trans., *be silent about*. Perf. part. as adj., *silent*.

**tacitus**, *a*, *um*, part. of *taceō*.

**tālea**, *ae*, f., *rod or bar*.

**tālis**, *e*, *such*.

**tam**, adv., *so*, to such a degree.

**tamen**, adv., *yet, nevertheless; indeed; however*.

**Tamesis**, *is*, m., acc. *im*, the *Thames*.

**tam-etsi**, subord. conj. [*tamen, etsi*], (however, although), *although*.

**tandem**, adv. [for *tam-dem*, (cf. *Idem*)], *at length*; giving impatient force to questions, *quid tandem, what in the world*, I. 40, 4.

**tangō**, *tangere*, *tetigi*, *taotum*, (touch), *border upon*.

**tantopere**, adv. [for *tantō opere*; see *opus*], *fiercely, desperately*.

**tantulus**, *a*, *um* [dimin. of *tantus*], *such little; such slight*, II. 30, 4; *tantulae rēs*, *such trifles*.

**tantum**, adv. [*tantus*; adverbial acc.], *so much*, V. 54, 4, VI. 12, 3; w. restrictive force, (so much and no more), *enough*, VI. 27, 4, 38, 5; *tantum modo*, (so much only), *merely*, III. 5, 3; *tantum—quantum*, *only as much as*, V. 19, 3.

**tantundem**, adv. [neut. acc. of *tan-*

- tusdem**, from **tantus**, **Idem**], (so much the same), *just so much*.
- tantus**, a, um, *so great, so much* ;  
**tantus—quantus**, *as much as* ; **tantī**,  
 gen. of value, *of so great account*,  
 I. 20, 5.
- Tarbelli**, ōrum, m. plu., an Aquitanian tribe upon the Atlantic coast, III. 27, 1.
- tardē**, adv. [**tardus**], *slowly* ; compar., *rather slowly*.
- tardō**, 1st conj. [**tardus**], (make slow), *retard, check*.
- tardus**, a, um, *slow* ; compar., *rather slow*.
- Tarusātēs**, ium, m. plu., a tribe of western Aquitania, III. 23, 1, etc.
- Tāsgētius**, l, m., a chief of the Carnutes, supported by Caesar, V. 25, 1, 29, 2.
- taurus**, l, m., *bull*.
- Taximagulus**, l, m., a British chief of Kent, V. 22, 1.
- taxus**, l, f., *yew-tree*, or its leaves or berries.
- tē**, acc. of **tū**.
- Tectosagēs**, um, m. plu., a division of the Volcae, in the Province ; principal cities Toulouse (Tolosa) and Narbonne (Narbo), VI. 24, 2.
- tēctum**, l, n. [neut. of perf. pass. part. of **tegō**], (a thing covered), *shelter, house*.
- tegimentum**, l, n. [**tegō**], (means of covering), *covering*.
- tegō**, **tegere**, **tēxi**, **tēctum**, *cover*, V. 43, 1 ; *conceal*.
- tēlum**, l, n., any weapon intended to be thrown, *spear, dart*.
- temerārius**, a, um [**temerē**], *rash, reckless*.
- temerē**, adv., *rashly, recklessly*.
- temeritās**, tātis, f. [**temerē**], *rashness, recklessness*.
- tēmō**, ōnis, m., *pole* of a chariot.
- temperantia**, ae, f. [**temperāns**, pres. part. of **temperō**], *moderation*.
- temperō**, 1st conj. [cf. **tempus**], (mingle properly, exercise moderation, practise self-control), *refrain*. Perf. part. as adj., *temperate, mild*.
- tempestās**, tātis, f. [**tempus**], *weather*, IV. 23, 1, 36, 3, V. 7, 4 ; (stormy weather) ; *storm*.
- temptō**, 1st conj., intens. of [**tendō**], *try* ; *approach* with treasonable intent, VI. 2, 2 ; w. **fortūnam**, *tempt* ; w. **iter**, *try to force* ; *make an attempt upon*, VII. 73, 1, 86, 4.
- tempus**, temporis, n., *time* ; in **religuum tempus**, *in the future* ; **omni tempore**, *always* ; **prō tempore et prō rē**, *according to the time and circumstance*, V. 8, 1.
- Tencteri**, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe, driven by the Suebi from their homes, who appeared about the lower part of the Rhine in the winter of 56–55 B.C., IV. 1, 1, etc.
- tendō**, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tentus** and **tēsus**, *stretch* ; *pitch one's tent*, VI. 37, 2.
- tenebrae**, ārum, f. plu., *darkness*.
- teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenui** [**tentum**], *hold, have* ; *restrain*, I. 31, 9, 39, 4 ; *occupy*, VII. 48, 1, 80, 2 ; **circus tenet**, *the circumference is*, VII. 69, 6 ; **sē tenēre**, (hold one's self), *remain*.
- tener**, **tenera**, **tenerum**, compar. **tenerior**, super. **tenerrimus**, *tender, young*.
- tenuis**, e, (thin) ; *delicate*, V. 40, 7 ; *precarious, meagre*, VI. 35, 8.

**tenuitās, tātis, f.** [**tenuis**], (thinness); *poverty*.

**tenuiter, adv.** [**tenuis**], *thinly*.

**ter, num. adv.** [cf. **tres**], *three times*.

**teres, teritis, adj.** [cf. **terō, rub**], *smooth, round*.

**tergum, l, back**; **post tergum, ā tergō, behind one, in the rear**.

**ternī, ae, a, distrib. adj.** [**ter**], *three each, three at a time*.

**terra, ae, f., (dry) land, I. 30, 3, and when in connection w. the sea; earth, ground; plu. world, and so orbis terrarum (circle of the lands, i.e. about the Mediterranean); lands, VII. 77, 14.**

**Terrasidius, l, m., Titus Terrasidius, an officer with Crassus in Aquitania, III. 7, 4 ff.**

**terrēnus, a, um [terra], of earth.**

**terreō, terrere, terrui, territum, frighten; before quō minus, prevent.**

**territō, territāre, —, — [intens. of terreō], frighten greatly, terrify; metū territāre, fill with apprehension.**

**terror, ōris, m. [terreō], fear, dread, terror; terrōri esse, terrōrem inferre, strike terror.**

**tertius, a, um, ordinal adj. [ter], third.**

**tēstāmentum, l, n. [tēstor, bear witness, from tēstis], will.**

**tēstimōnium, l, n. [tēstor, bear witness, from tēstis], evidence, proof.**

**tēstis, is, c., witness.**

**tēstūdō, dinis, f. [tēsta, earthenware, shell], tortoise; as military term, testudo, a close formation for assault, shields lapping, II. 6, 2, V. 9, 7, VII. 85, 5; or movable shed,**

**under which soldiers could work, V. 42, 4, 43, 3, 52, 2.**

**Tentomatus, l, m., king of the Nitiobroges, VII. 31, 5, 46, 5.**

**Teutonī, ōrum, or Teutonēs, um, m. plu., the Teutons, a Germanic tribe which, with the Cibri, roamed over Gaul in the second century B.C., then turned toward Italy and was finally defeated by Marius, 102 and 101 B.C.; I. 33, 4, etc.**

**tignum, l, n., timber, log, pile.**

**Tigurinus, a, um, name of a canton of the Helvetii, I. 12, 4; masc. plu. as subst., the Tigurini, I. 12, 7.**

**timeō, timēre, timui, —, trans., fear, be afraid of; intrans., fear, be afraid. Pres. part. plu., as subst., the timid.**

**timidē, adv. [timidus], timidly; nōn timidē, fearlessly.**

**timidus, a, um [timeō], timid, cowardly, afraid.**

**timor, ōris, m. [timeō], fear, cowardice.**

**Titurius, l, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a legatus of Caesar, killed with his command by the Eburones in the autumn of the fifth year of the war, II. 5, 6, etc.**

**tolerō, 1st conj., endure; w. vitam, sustain; impers. pass., hold out, VII. 71, 4.**

**tollō, tollere, sus-tuli, sub-lātum [perf. and supine from suf(sub)-ferō], w. clāmōrem, ancorās (but see below), ululātum, raise; take away, take on board, IV. 28, 1; destroy, wipe out, VI. 34, 8; prevent, cancel, I. 42, 5; technically w. ancorās, weigh; perf. part. sub-lātus, a, um, elated, I. 15, 3, V. 38, 1.**

**Tolōsa**, ae, f., one of the chief cities of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Province, now *Toulouse*, III. 20, 2.

**Tolōsātēs**, lum, m. plu. [**Tolōsa**], a tribe about *Toulouse*, I. 10, 1, VII. 7, 4.

**tormentum**, i, n. [**torqueō**, *twist*], *windlass*, VII. 22, 2; **tormentum**, plu. *tormenta*, military engine for throwing darts and other missiles; see Introduction; *torture*, VI. 19, 3, VII. 4, 10.

**torreō**, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostum**, (parch), *roast*, *singe*.

**tot**, indeclin. numeral adj., *so many*.

**totidem**, indeclin. numeral adj. [**tot**, **Idem**], (just so many), *as many, the same number of*.

**tōtus**, a, um, gen. **totius**, dat. **tōti**, *the whole, all, all the, entire*; translated adverbially, *wholly, entirely*, III. 13, 3, VI. 5, 1, VII. 73, 9.

**trabs** (pronounced as if spelled **traps**), **trabīs**, f., *beam, timber*.

**trāctus**, a, um, part. of **trahō**.

**trā-**, form of **trāns** in comp.

**trā-dō**, **dere**, **didi**, **ditum** [**dō**, **dare**], *hand over*, VI. 4, 4; *hand down*, IV. 7, 3; *pass on*, VII. 3, 2; *pass*, VII. 25, 2; *give up, surrender*; w. **imperium**, **summa imperiī**, *intrust*; *yield*, I. 44, 13; *impart, teach*, VI. 14, 6, 17, 2, VII. 22, 1; *introduce*, VII. 39, 1.

**trā-dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxi**, **ductum**, *lead across, lead over*; *promote*, VI. 40, 7; *bring over*, VI. 12, 3, VII. 37, 3.

**trāgula**, ae, f., *javelin, lance*, with a thong or strap to assist in hurling.

**trahō**, **trahere**, **trāxi**, **trāctum**, *drag, draw; hurry along*, I. 53, 5.

**trā-iciō** (pronounced as if spelled **trājiciō**), **icere**, **iēcī**, **iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw across), *pierce*.

**trāiectus**, a, um, part. of **trāiciō**.

**trāiectus**, ūs, m. [**trāiciō**], (crossing), *passage*.

**trā-nō**, 1st conj., *swim across, swim over*.

**tranquillitās**, **tātis**, f. [**tranquillus**], *still, calm*.

**trāns**, prep. w. acc., *across, over, on the farther side of, beyond*.

**Trāns-alpinus**, a, um [**Alpēs**], (beyond the Alps), *Transalpine*.

**trān-scendō**, **scendere**, **scendi**, — [**scandō**], (climb across); *climb over*; **trānscendere in**, *board*.

**trāns-eō**, **ire**, **ivi** or **ii**, **itum**, (go across), *cross*; *pass through*, I. 8, 2, 9, 4; *go over*, III. 18, 2, V. 51, 3; *pass*, III. 2, 1; *pass over*, VI. 14, 5.

**trāns-ferō**, **ferre**, **tuli**, **lātum**, *bring over*; *transfer, adjourn*, VI. 3, 4; *direct (against)*, VII. 8, 4.

**trāns-figō**, **figere**, **fixi**, **fixum** (fasten across); *pierce*.

**trāns-fodiō**, **fodere**, **fōdi**, **fossam**, (dig across); *pierce*.

**trāns-gredior**, **gredi**, **gressus sum** [**gradior**], *step across*, VII. 25, 3; *cross*, II. 19, 4; *climb over*, VII. 46, 4.

**trānsitus**, ūs, m. [**trānseō**], (a going over), *passage, passing*.

**trāns-lātus**, a, um, part. of **trāns-ferō**.

**trāns-marīnus**, a, um [**mare**], *beyond the sea, across the sea*.

**trānsmissus**, ūs, m. [**trānsmittō**], *passage, crossing*.

**trāns-mittō**, **mittere**, **miſi**, **missum**, (send across), *transport*.

**trāns-portō**, 1st conj., *carry across, transport.*

**Trāns-rhēnānus**, a, um [Rhēnus], *across the Rhine, beyond the Rhine.* Masc. plu. as subst., *those living across the Rhine.*

**trānstrum**, l, n. [trāns], *crossbeam.*

**trāns-versus**, a, um [vertō], (turned across); **trānsversa fossa**, *cross ditch.*

**Trebius**, l, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, an officer w. Crassus in Aquitania, III. 7, 4 ff.

**Trebonius**, l, m., (1) *Gaius Trebonius*, a *legatus* of Caesar, V. 17, 2, etc. (2) *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman knight, VI. 40, 4.

**trecenti**, ae, a, card. adj. [trēs, centum], *three hundred.*

**trepidō**, 1st conj. [trepidus, restless], *hurry around anxiously*; impers., w. loc. abl., *be in confusion.*

**trēs, tria**, gen. **trium**, dat. **tribus**, card. adj. [cf. τρεῖς], *three.*

**Trēveri**, ōrum, m. plu., a strong Belgic tribe, about the Meuse (Moselle), I. 37, 1, etc.

**Triboci**, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe about the Rhine, east of the Vosges mountains, I. 51, 2, IV. 10, 3.

**tribūnus**, l, m. [tribus, tribe], (orig., head of a tribe), *tribune*, an officer of the legion in Caesar's army, attached to it rather than a part of it, who commanded detachments, secured supplies, etc.

**tribuō**, **tribuere**, **tribui**, **tribūtum** [tribus, tribe], *assign, attribute*, I. 13, 5, VII. 53, 1; *grant* (for the sake of), VI. 1, 4; *bestow; pay attention*, VII. 37, 4.

**tribūtum**, l, n. [neut. of perf. part. of tribuō], (a thing assigned), *tribute, tax.*

**triduum**, l, n. [trēs, diēs], (space of three days), *three days.*

**triennium**, l, n. [trēs, annus], (space of three years), *three years.*

**trigintā**, indeclin. card. adj. [trēs], *thirty.*

**trini**, ae, a, distrib. adj. [trēs], (three each), w. **castra**, **hiberna**, *three*, used to show that these nouns are plu. in signification; *triple*, I. 53, 5.

**Trinovantēs**, um, m. plu., a British tribe in what is now Essex and part of Suffolk, V. 20, 1 ff.

**tripertitō**, adv. [abl. of tripertitus, from trēs, pars], *in three divisions.*

**triplex**, **triplicis**, adj. [trēs, plicō], (threefold), *triple.*

**triquetrus**, a, um [trēs, quattuor], ("three square"), *three-cornered, triangular.*

**tristis**, e, *sad, dejected*; translated as if adv., *sadly.*

**tristitia**, ae, f. [tristis], *sadness, dejection.*

**Troucillus**, l, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul of the Province, a personal friend of Caesar.

**truncus**, l, m., *tree-trunk.*

**tū**, **tu**, **tibi**, **tē**, **tē**; **vōs**, **vestrum** or **vestri**, **vōbis**, 2d pers. pro., (thou), *you.*

**tuba**, ae, f., *trumpet.*

**tueor**, **tuērī**, **tuitus** (tūtus) **sum**, (watch), *defend, protect.*

**tuli**, perf. of **ferō**.

**Tulingi**, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe north of the Helvetii, allied w. the latter in their migration, I. 25, 6, etc.

**tum**, adv., *then*; **cum—tum**, both —and, not only—but also, II. 4, 7, III. 16, 2, V. 4, 3, 54, 5, etc.

**tumultuor**, 1st conj. [**tumultus**], *be in confusion*; absolutely, *there is confusion*.

**tumultuōsō**, adv. [**tumultuōsus**, *tumultuous*], *tumultuously*; compar., *with more confusion than usual*.

**tumultus**, ūs, m. [cf. **tumēō**, *swell*], *noise, uproar*; *revolt, uprising*, I. 40, 5, V. 26, 1.

**tumulus**, l, m. [cf. **tumēō**, *swell*], *mound, hillock*.

**tunc**, adv., *then*.

**turma**, ae, f., *troop, squadron*, a division of cavalry of about 30 men.

**Turonī**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of west central Gaul, on both banks of the Loire (Liger), about modern Tours, II. 35, 3, etc.

**turpis**, e, (ugly), *disgraceful, shameful*.

**turpiter**, adv. [**turpis**], *disgracefully*.

**turpitūdō**, dīnis, f. [**turpis**], *disgrace*.

**turris**, is, f., acc. īm, em, abl. l, e, *tower*, including the movable tower used by the Romans in their siege operations.

**tūtō**, adv. [**tūtus**], *safely*.

**tūtō**, adv., super. **tūtissimō** [abl. of **tūtus**, sc. **locō**], *in safety, safely*.

**tūtus**, a, um [perf. pass. part. of **tueor**, *defend*], (defended), *safe*.

**tuus**, a, um, poss. pro., 2d pers. sing. [**tū**], (thy), *your*.

## U

**ubi**, ubi, rel. adv. [old form **cubi**, for **quō-bi**, loc. of **qui**], *where*,

*when*; **ubi primum**, (when first), *as soon as*.

**ubique**, adv. [**ubi**; cf. **quisque**, **uterque**, etc.], (anywhere), *everywhere*.

**Ubius**, a, um, of the *Ubii*. Masc. plu. as subst., *the Ubii*, a German tribe, opposite the Ardennes, friendly to Caesar, I. 54, 1, etc.

**ulciscor**, **ulciscor**, **ultus sum**, *avenge*, I. 12, 7; *take vengeance*, VI. 34, 7; *punish, take vengeance upon*.

**ūllus**, a, um, gen. **ūllius**, dat. **ūlli**, *any*; as subst., *anyone, anything*.

**ūltior**, ius, compar. adj., super. **ūltimus** [**ultrā**], *farther*; as subst., *those farther distant*, VI. 2, 2; super., *farthest, most distant*; as subst., *the last, those in the rear*, V. 43, 5.

**ūltrā**, prep. w. acc., *beyond*.

**ūltrō**, adv., *to the farther side*; *voluntarily, of one's own accord*; *besides*, V. 28, 4; *actually*, V. 40, 7, VI., 35, 4; **ūltrō citrōque**, *back and forth*.

**ultus**, a, um, part. of **ulciscor**.

**ululātus**, ūs, m. [**ululō**, *yell*], *shout, yell*.

**umerus**, l, m., *shoulder*.

**umquam**, adv., *ever*.

**ūnā**, adv. [abl. of **ūnus**, sc. **viā**], *together*, espec. w. **cum**; *with, along with* some one or something. supplied from context; *in one place*, VI. 22, 2; *at the same time*, VII. 67, 2.

**unde**, rel. adv., *whence, from which*; less exactly, *where*, V. 53, 4.

**ūn-decim**, indeclin. card. adj. [**ūnus**, **decem**], *eleven*.

**ūn-decimus**, a, um, ord. adj. [**ūn-decim**], *eleventh*.

**ūn-dē-quadrāgintā**, card. adj., (one down from forty), *thirty-nine*.

**ūn-dē-vigintī**, card. adj., (one down from twenty), *nineteen*.

**undique**, adv. [**unde**, cf. **ubique quisque**, etc.], (from all sides), *on all sides*.

**ūni-versus**, a, um [**ūnus**, **vertō**], (turned into one), *all together, all, the whole of*. Masc. plu. as subst., *the whole body, all the men together*.

**ūnus**, a, um, gen. **ūnius**, dat. **ūnī**, card. adj., *one; alone, only, only one*; plu., *alone, only*; **ad ūnum**, *to a man*.

**urbānus**, a, um [**urbs**], (of the city), *in the city, i.e. Rome*.

**urbs** (pronounced as if spelled **urps**), **urbis**, f., *city*; referring to Rome, I. 7, 1, 39, 2, VI. 1, 2.

**urgeō**, **urgēre**, **ursi**, —, *press*; pass., *be hard pressed*.

**ūrus**, l, m., an animal described by Caesar, probably the *urochs*, VI. 28, 1.

**Usipetēs**, um, m. plu., a German tribe driven by the Suebi from their homes, who appeared about the lower part of the Rhine in the winter of 56–55 B.C., IV. 1, 1, etc.

**ūsītātus**, a, um [perf. pass. part. of **ūsitor**, intensive of **ūtor**], (usual), *familiar*.

**ūsq̄ue**, adv., (all the way), w. **ad**, *even, clear*; so w. **eō** (adv.), *even to this point*.

**ūsus**, a, um, part. of **ūtor**.

**ūsus**, ūs, m. [**ūtor**], *use*, III. 13, 6, V. 42, 3; *experience*; **ūsui esse** (dat. of purpose), *be of use, be useful, be advantageous*; so also **ex**

**ūsū**, *of use, advantageous*; **ūsū venire**, *come to pass*; of ships, *handling, management*; *necessity*, IV. 2, 3, VI. 15, 1, VII. 80, 1.

**ut** or **utī**, subord. conjunc., w. subj. of purpose, *that, in order that*; w. subj. of result, *that, so that*; w. indic. or subj. in ind. dis. representing indic., *as*; in phrases of comparison where verb is omitted, *as if, as*; **ut primum**, *as soon as*; concessive, *although*, III. 9, 6; *when*, I. 31, 12.

**uter**, **utra**, **utrum**, gen. **utrius**, dat. **utrī**, interrog. or rel. pro., subst. or adj., *which of two, whichever*.

**uterque**, **utraq̄ue**, **utrumque**, gen. **utriusque**, dat. **utrique**, indef. pro., subst. or adj., *each of two, both*. Plu., *each side, both forces, tribes, etc.*

**utī**, form of **ut**.

**ūtilis**, e [**ūtor**], *useful*.

**ūtilitās**, **tātis**, f. [**ūtilis**], *advantage, use*.

**ūtor**, **utī**, **ūsus sum**, *use, employ*, w. abl.; w. pred. adj. modifying abl. noun, *find*, V. 25, 2, VII. 76, 1; *show*, II. 14, 5, 28, 3, IV. 24, 4; *avail one's self* (of), *accept*, II. 32, 4, IV. 11, 3; *enjoy*, I. 44, 4, 45, 3, 47, 4, VI. 12, 6; *obtain*, III. 22, 4; w. **cōnsiliō**, *adopt*; part. best translated *with*, cf. **ἐχω**, I. 46, 4, IV. 13, 4, VI. 8, 2.

**utrimque**, adv. [**uterque**], *on each side, on both sides*.

**utrum**, coörd. conjunc. [neut. of **uter**], *whether*, used in first part of double question, not translatable unless question is indirect.

**uxor**, **ōris**, f., *wife*.

## V

**V**, as numeral = 5, this character being half of X = 10.

**Vaculus**, I, m., *the Waal*, a branch of the Rhine, joining the Meuse or Maas (Mosa).

**vacātiō, ōnis**, f. [**vacō**], *exemption from service*.

**vacō**, 1st conj., *be unoccupied*.

**vacuus, a, um** [**vacō**], *empty, vacant; stripped*. (ab, of, II. 12, 2.)

**vadum**, I, n., *ford*; plu., *shoals*, III. 9, 6, 12, I, 13, I, 9, IV. 26, 2.

**vāgina, ae**, f., *scabbard, sheath*.

**vagor**, 1st. conj., *roam, wander*.

**valeō, valēre, valui, valitum**, *be strong, be powerful; prevail*, I. 40, 14; *contribute*, VI. 30, 4, VII. 84, 4; **minimum valēre**, *have very little power*; **tantum valēre**, *have so much weight*; **plūrimum valēre**, *be very strong, be very influential*.

**Valerius**, I, m., (1) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor (propraetor) of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. 47, 4; (2) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a *legatus* defeated and killed in Aquitania, III. 20, 1; (3) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship, I. 47, 4; (4) *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of above, I. 47, 4, 53, 5; (5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, brother of above, VII. 65, 2; (6) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a prominent Gaul of the Province, I. 19, 3.

**Valetiācus**, I, m., "vergobret" of the Aedui, 53 B.C., VII. 32, 4.

**valētūdō, dinis**, f. [**valeō**], *health, state of health, whether good or bad*.

**vallēs, is**, f., *valley*.

**vāllum**, I, n. [**vāllus**], *rampart, wall* of Roman fortifications, which was strengthened with stakes.

**vāllus**, I, m., *stake*, VII. 73, 4.

**Vangionēs, um**, m. plu., a German tribe with Ariovistus, later living about modern Worms, I. 51, 2.

**varietās, tātis**, f. [**varius**], *variety, variation*, VII. 23, 5; *different colors*, VI. 27, 1.

**varius, a, um**, *various, different*.

**vāstō**, 1st conj. [**vāstus**], (make empty), *ravage, devastate, lay waste*.

**vāstus, a, um**, (empty, waste); *vast, boundless*.

**vāticinātiō, ōnis**, f. [**vaticinor**, *prophecy*, from **vāticinus**, *prophetic*, from **vātēs**, *prophet*, and **canō**, (sing), *predict*], *prophecy*.

**-vō**, enclitic conj., *or*.

**vectigal, vectigālis**, n. [**vehō**], *revenue*, I. 18, 3, 36, 4; *tribute*, V. 22, 4.

**vectigālis, e** [**vectigal**], *tributary*, III. 8, 1, IV. 3, 4.

**vectōrius, a, um** [**vector**, *carrier*, from **vehō**], *adapted to carry*; **vect. navigium**, *transport*.

**vehementer**, adv. [**vehemēns**, *eager*], *exceedingly*; w. verbs of fighting, *vigorously, desperately*; w. **incūsō**, *severely*.

**vel**, conj. [orig. 2d pers. sing. of **volō**, *wish*], *or*; **vel—vel**, *either—* or; **aut—aut** is used when the two alternatives exclude each other, **vel—vel** when they do not.

**Velānius**, I, m., *Quintus Velanius*, an officer with Crassus in Aquitania, III. 7, 4, etc.

**Vellocassēs, ium**, m. plu., a tribe in

Belgic Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine, II. 4, 9, VII. 75, 3.

**Vellaunodūnum**, I, n., a city of the Senones, somewhere between Sens and Orleans, VII. 11, 1, etc.

**Vellavi**, ōrum, m. plu., a small state in the Cevennes, under the protection of the Averni, VII. 75, 2.

**vēlōitās**, tātis, f. [**vēlōx**], *speed*.

**vēlōciter**, adv. [**vēlōx**], *swiftly, quickly*.

**vēlōx**, vēlōcis, adj., *swift, active, quick*.

**vēlum**, I, n., *sail*.

**vel-ut**, adv., *just as*.

**vēnātiō**, ōnis, f. [**vēnor**, *hunt*], *hunting, the chase*.

**vēnātor**, ōris, m. [**vēnor**, *hunt*], *hunter*.

**vēn-dō**, dere, didi, dītum [**vēnum**, *sale*, dō, dare, (give), *put*], (put on sale), *sell*.

**Venelli**, ōrum, m. plu., a maritime tribe on the northern coast of Brittany, II. 34, etc.

**Veneti**, ōrum, m. plu., a maritime tribe on the southern coast of Brittany, II. 34, III. 7, 4, etc.

**Venetia**, ae, f. [**Veneti**], *the country of the Veneti*.

**Veneticus**, a, um [**Veneti**], *of the Veneti, with the Veneti*.

**venia**, ae, f., *pardon; permission*, VII. 15, 6.

**veniō**, venire, vēni, ventum, *come; in spem venire*, (come into the hope), *entertain hope, begin to hope*; often impers. pass. **ventum est**, (it was come), *they came*.

**ventitō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **veniō**], *come often, keep coming*.

**ventus**, I, m., *wind*.

**vēr**, veris, n., *spring*. (**primus**, *the beginning of*.)

**Veragri**, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the Alps southeast of Lake Geneva, III. 1, 1.

**Verbigenus**, I, m., a canton of the Helvetii, east of the Tigurini, I. 27, 4.

**verbum**, I, n., *word*; **verba facere**, *speak*.

**Vercassivellaunus**, I, m., one of the Averni, cousin of Vercingetorix, VII. 76, 3, etc.

**Vercingetorix**, Iglis, m., one of the Averni, commander-in-chief of the Gauls in their great struggle of the seventh year of the war, VII. 4, 1, etc.

**vereor**, verēri, veritus sum, *fear, be afraid*.

**vergō**, vergere, —, —, (incline), *lie, be situated, extend*.

**vergobretus**, I, m., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui, I. 16, 5.

**veritus**, a, um, part. of **vereor**.

**vērō**, adv. [abl. of **vērus**, *true*], (in truth), *indeed, in fact; but, while; and, emphatic*.

**versō**, 1st conj. [intensive of **vertō**], (turn), *treat in turn*, V. 44, 14; elsewhere deponent in middle voice, (turn one's self about), *engage; move about*, V. 45, 4; *be*, II. 24, 2, 26, 5; *remain*, II. 1, 3; *ride*, VII. 40, 5.

**versus**, ūs, m. [**vertō**], (a turning); *line, verse*.

**versus**, adv. [part. of **vertō**], (turned); following an acc. of place to which, it gives it the force *toward*, VI. 33, 1, VII. 7, 2, 8, 5, 61, 5; **quōque versus**, (turned each way),

- in every direction*, III. 23, 2, VII. 4, 5, 14, 5; see *quōque*.
- Verticō, ōnis**, m., a Nervian of prominence, V. 45, 2, 49, 2.
- vertō, vertere, verti, versum**, *turn*.
- Verucloetius**, I, m., a Helvetian nobleman, I. 7, 3.
- vērus, a, um**, *true*, I. 18, 2, 20, 2; *right, fair*, IV. 8, 2. Neut. as subst., *truth*; **vērī similis**, (like the truth), *probable*, III. 13, 6. See **vērō**.
- verūtum**, I, n. [**verū**, *spit*, for holding meat to roast], *javelin, dart*.
- Vesontiō, ōnis**, m., the chief city of the Sequani, now Besançon, I. 38, 1, 39, 1.
- vesper, vesperī or vesperis**, m., *evening*.
- vester, tra, trum**, poss. pro., 2d pers. plu. [**vōs**], *your, yours*.
- vēstīgium**, I, n., *footprint, track*; *spot*, IV. 2, 3; **ē vēstigiō**, *on the spot*; w. **temporis**, *moment*.
- vestiō, vestire, vestivī or vestī, vestitum** [**vestis**], *clothe; cover*, VII. 23, 2.
- vestis, is**, f., *clothing*.
- vestitus, ūs**, m. [**vestiō**], *clothing*; *uniform*, VII. 88, 1.
- veterānus, a, um** [**vetus**], *veteran*.
- vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitum**, *forbid*.
- vetus, veteris**, adj., *old*, V. 1, 1; *former*; of soldiers, *veteran*; *long-standing*, I. 43, 6.
- vēxillum**, I, n. [cf. **vēlum**, *sail*], *flag*, for any especial purpose or signal. (**prōpōnere**, *raise*.)
- vēxō**, 1st conj., *harass, assail; overrun*, II. 4, 2; *ravage, lay waste*, IV. 15, 5.
- via, ae, f.**, *way, road, route; journey, march*.
- viātor, ōris**, m. [**via**], *traveller, wayfarer*.
- vicēni, ae, a**, distrib. adj. [**viginti**], *twenty each, twenty*.
- vicēsīmus, a, um**, ord. adj. [**viginti**], *twentieth*.
- vicīōs**, num. adv. [**viginti**], *twenty times*.
- vicinitās, tātis**, f. [**vicinus**, *neighboring*], denoting condition, (*neighborhood*); collective, *people of the neighborhood*.
- vicis, is**, f., only gen., acc., and abl. sing., and nom., dat., acc., and abl. plu., *change*; **in vicem**, *in turn*.
- victima, ae, f.**, *victim, sacrifice*.
- victor, ōris**, m. [**vincō**], *conqueror, victor*, I. 44, 2, II. 28, 1; elsewhere, as if adj., *victorious*.
- victōria, ae, f.** [**victor**], *victory*.
- victus, a, um**, part of **vincō**.
- victus, ūs**, m. [**vivō**, *live*], (*living*), *food*, VI. 22, 1, 23, 9, 24, 4; **cōnsuetūdō victūs**, *mode of life*, I. 31, 11.
- vicus, I, m.**, *village*.
- videō, vidēre, vidi, visum**, *see*; pass. usually as dep., *seem; seem best*, II. 20, 4, IV. 8, 1, V. 36, 3, 58, 3, VI. 20, 3, 22, 2; in regular sense, *be seen*, II. 18, 3, V. 48, 10, VI. 1, 3; *appear*, I. 47, 2, II. 33, 2, V. 9, 4.
- Vienna, ae, f.**, principal city of the Allobroges, on the east bank of the Rhone, now *Vienne*, VII. 9, 3.
- vigilia, ae, f.** [**vigil**, *watchman*], *watch*, one of the four equal divisions of the night; *sleeplessness, wakefulness*, V. 31, 4, 32, 1.

**viginti**, indeclin. card. adj., *twenty*.  
**vimen**, **minis**, n., *twig, osier, withe*.  
**vinciō**, **vincere**, **vinxi**, **vinotum**,  
*bind*.

**vincō**, **vincere**, **vici**, **victum**, *conquer, overcome, defeat; outdo, surpass*, VI. 43, 5; *have one's way*, V. 30, 1.

**vinculum**, l, n. [**vinciō**], *chain*; in **vincula cōnīcere**, (throw into chains), *imprison*. (**ex**, **in**.)

**vindicō**, 1st conj. [**vindex**, *defender*], (assert a claim), *assert*, VII. 76, 2; *restore*, VII. 1, 5; **in**—**vindicāre**, *punish*, III. 16, 4.

**vineā**, ae, f. [**vinum**], (vine-arbor); movable *shed*, used for protection of soldiers engaged in siege works.

**vinum**, l, n., (vine), *wine*.

**violō**, 1st conj. [cf. **vis**], *do violence to, injure; invade*, VI. 32, 2.

**vir**, **virī**, m., *man; husband*, VI. 19, 1, 3.

**virēs**, **īum**, etc., plu. of **vis**.

**virgō**, **ginis**, f., *maiden*.

**virgulta**, **ōrum**, m. plu. [for **virgulēta**, from **virgula**, from **virga**, *twig*], *brushwood, brush*.

**Viridomārus**, l, m., an Aeduan of rank, at first loyal, then opposed, to Caesar, VII. 38, 2, etc.

**Viridovix**, **icis**, m., a leader of the Venelli and their allies against Sabinus, III. 17, 2, etc.

**virītim**, adv. [**vir**], (man by man), *to each individual*.

**Viromandui**, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe in the western part of Belgic Gaul, about the headwaters of the Somme, II. 4, 9.

**virtūs**, **tūtis**, f. [**vir**], (manliness), *bravery, valor; energy*, VII. 6, 1,

22, 1, 59, 6; *spirit*, V. 8, 4; *worth*, I. 47, 4; plu., *virtues, merits*.

**vis**, **vis**, **vi**, **vim**, **vi**, f., *force, violence; strength*, VI. 28, 2; *power*, VI. 14, 6; *influence*, VI. 17, 1; *number*, VI. 36, 3; *attacks*, I. 11, 4, IV. 3, 1, 4, 1, VI. 30, 3, VII. 87, 5; **summa vis**, *main strength*; plu., **virēs**, **virium**, (physical forces), *strength*.

**visus**, a, um, part. of **videō**.

**vita**, ae, f. [cf. **vivō**], *life*.

**vitō**, 1st conj., *avoid*.

**vitrum**, l, n., *woad*, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

**vivō**, **vivere**, **vixi**, **victum**, *live*.

**vivus**, a, um [**vivō**], *alive, living*; masc. plu. as subst., *the living*.

**vix**, adv., *barely, scarcely, hardly*.

**Vocātēs**, **ium**, m. plu., a tribe of northwestern Aquitania, III. 23, 1, 27, 1.

**Vocciō**, **ōnis**, m., king of the Norici, I. 53, 4.

**vocō**, 1st conj. [**vōx**], *call*, usually in sense of *summon*; in sense of *name*, V. 21, 3.

**Vocontii**, **ōrum**, m. plu., a tribe of the Province, south of the Isère, I. 10, 5.

**Volcae**, **ārum**, m. plu., a tribe in the southwestern part of the Province, having two divisions, *Arecomici* and *Tectosages*, the latter including the *Tolosates*, VI. 24, 2, VII. 7, 4, 64, 6.

**Volcātius**, l, m., *Gaius Volcatius Tullus*, an officer placed in command of the garrison which protected the second bridge over the Rhine, VI. 29, 3.

**volō**, **velle**, **volui**, —, irreg., *wish, be willing; desire, want*; idiomatic

phrases, *sī quid mē* (acc.) *vis*, if you want anything of me, I. 34, 2; *quid tibi vis*, what do you mean? I. 44, 8.

**voluntārius**, a, um [voluntās], willing, voluntary; masc. as subst., volunteer.

**voluntās**, tātis, f. [volō], wish, desire; consent, esp. w. *licet*; goodwill, I. 19, 2, V. 4, 3, VII. 10, 2; w. *contrā*, will; attitude, purpose, V. 54, 4.

**voluptās**, tātis, f. [volō], pleasure; enjoyment, V. 12, 6.

**Volusēnus**, l, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a tribune in Caesar's army, III. 5, 2, IV. 21, 1, etc.

**Vorēnus**, l, m., *Lucius Vorenius*, a brave centurion, V. 44, 1.

**Vosegus**, l, m., *the Vosges*, a range of mountains in eastern Gaul, IV. 10, 1.

**voveō**, **vovēre**, **vōvī**, **vōtum**, *vow*.

**vōx**, **vōcis**, f., *voice*, II. 13, 2, IV. 25, 4, V. 30, 1; *word*, I. 32, 3, 39, 5, V. 43, 6; *expression*, III. 24, 5, VI. 36, 2; *speech*, V. 40, 7; *statement*, I. 39, 1; *talk*, III. 17, 5; **vōcibus increpitāre**, *taunt*, II. 30, 3.

**Vulcānus**, l, m., *Vulcan*, Roman god of fire and metal-working.

**vulgus**, l, n., acc. **vulgus**, n., or **vulgum**, m., *common people*, *multitude*; *common soldiers*; **in vulgum efferre**, *spread abroad*. Abl. as adv., *generally*, I. 39, 5, II. 1, 4, V. 33, 6.

**vulnerō**, 1st conj. [vulnus], *wound*.

**vulnus**, **vulneris**, n., *wound*.

**vultus**, ūs, m., *expression of the face*; **vultum fingere**, *control one's face*.

## X

**X**, as numeral = 10.







